

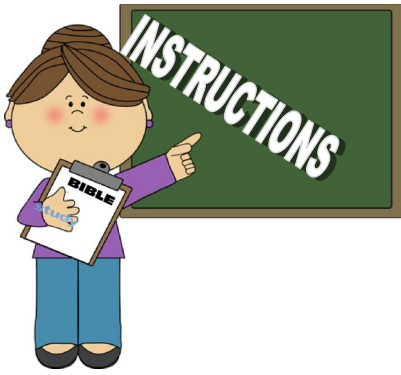
# Jesus Christ Prison Ministry



*Change Your Life Biblically*

**8-Step Bible Study Program**





My child, listen closely to my teachings and learn common sense.

My advice is useful, so don't turn away.

When I was still very young and my mother's favorite child, my father said to me: "If you follow my teachings and keep them in mind, you

will live.

Be wise and learn good sense; remember my teachings and do what I say.

If you love Wisdom and don't reject her, she will watch over you.

The best thing about Wisdom is Wisdom herself; good sense is more important than anything else.

If you value Wisdom and hold tightly to her, great honors will be yours.

It will be like wearing a glorious crown of beautiful flowers.

My child, if you listen and obey my teachings, you will live a long time.

I have shown you the way that makes sense; I have guided you along the right path.

Your road won't be blocked, and you won't stumble when you run.

Hold firmly to my teaching and never let go. It will mean life for you.

Don't follow the bad example of cruel and evil people.

Turn aside and keep going. Stay away from them.

They can't sleep or rest until they do wrong or harm some innocent victim.

Their food and drink are violence and cruelty.

The lifestyle of good people is like sunlight at dawn that keeps getting brighter until broad daylight.

The lifestyle of the wicked is like total darkness, and they will never know what makes them stumble.

My child, listen carefully to everything I say.

Don't forget a single word, but think about it all.

Knowing these teachings will mean true life and good health for you.

Carefully guard your thoughts because they are the source of true life.

Never tell lies or be deceitful in what you say.

Keep looking straight ahead, without turning aside.

Know where you are headed, and you will stay on solid ground.

Don't make a mistake by turning to the right or the left.

Proverbs 4:1-27

The object of this workbook is to provide you with an opportunity to change your life. In order to get into Heaven we must change our characters to meet the requirements of Heaven. Lucifer was kicked out of Heaven because he refused to mold his character after the express image of the Father. In order for us to get into Heaven we must mold our characters after the express image of the Father. "You therefore must be perfect, as your heavenly Father is perfect." Matthew 5:48.

By reading and obeying every word of this book, you will learn how to change your life to be like Jesus. He sent His Spirit and dictated and directed this book in order to show you the way through the Bible to eternal life. As you put your heart and soul into living in obedience to this book you will find your life changing. God will work with your desire and will to change your life. If all you are doing is working for a certificate, you will be very disappointed. Receiving a certificate, a pen-pal, being able to put up drawings and short stories, are all fine and good, but receiving eternal life is far better. Sitting in a world of sin is a prison far worse than sitting in a physical prison. But Jesus came to set you free. All who have taken the information in this book to heart, and are living in obedience to it, have found freedom. For many, even freedom from their physical prison.

**Lay aside your own beliefs, prejudices, church doctrines and understandings** and give God an opportunity to open up before you His truths that lead to eternal life. You only have one life on this planet as it is. What will you do with it? What have you done so far with it? Have you created and built anything of value? Who have you been a blessing to? Is there anything you have done you can look back upon with pride? Do not waste another minute of your life. Give it to Jesus and in years to come you will be able to look back upon this chapter of your life and see your wonderful accomplishments. People will be proud of you and praise God for your change of heart.

You will receive a certificate for the completion of "Change Your Life Biblically". Go slow and take your time with each volume. As you read each chapter, write me and share with me what you are learning from the chapter. When you have finished reading, studying and writing me, then you may request the Answer Sheets.

Changing your life is going to be hard. But as you pray and ask for the Spirit of God to help you, you will find the power to change old habits and set up a new life. "I can do all things through Christ who strengthens me." Philippians 4:13.

"Continue to work out your salvation with fear and trembling." Philippians 2:12.

Write me and share with me what you are learning from this book. God bless you as you give your heart to Jesus,

*Ron*

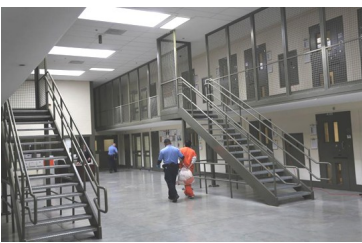


## HISTORY OF THE MINISTRY

The following is a simple telling of the grace of God in my life. I pray the experience God put me through will bring glory to Him and help you in your walk with Jesus.

In January 1991 I entered prison. It is in "Reception" where we are fingerprinted, photographed and given our numbers. We are then tested and evaluated in order to determine our place in the prison system. Inmates also go through the "doctor's line". When I came to the doctor, he had my charts and was looking at me very strangely. He asked me how old I was. I told him I was 40. He shook his head and said "You have the health of a 10 year old". I have been a vegetarian my whole life.

This was my first time to prison. While in jail waiting for prison I had to make a decision: continue believing in Jesus or give it all up. It was obvious the church I grew up in had failed me. I decided to give up the man-made church and find out for myself if God is sure and certain. I dedicated my life to Jesus and began a systematic reading of the Bible, starting in Genesis and reading all the way through to the end of Revelation. I have continued that process since 1991. At the time of this writing I have read through the Bible over 150 times.



The first cellblock I was housed in was where the very rough and hardened criminals were placed. It was the cellblock of murderers, gang members and drug dealers, etc. You were expected to die

fighting for your "race" on this block. The devil obviously knew something of God's plan for my life that I did not. He was determined to destroy God's plan. However, the Lord softened the heart of my cellie. After his interrogation of me, he was very forthright, I did not belong on that block. He called a guard and asked to meet with the sergeant. Shortly after I was transferred to a "soft" block.

I had been raised in a Sabbath keeping church and lived a vegetarian lifestyle my whole life. Even in the military I had separate rations as a vegetarian. By this time in my prison experience I was very hungry. I asked a couple of the inmates what the procedure was to work as a food server. Food servers eat well. They laughed at me. They told me that everyone wanted to work in the kitchen. The list for working in the kitchen was very long and I probably would not get in. I got on my knees

and asked my Friend Jesus to get me into the kitchen. I was hungry. Two hours later a C/O (Correctional Officer) came to my cell. She identified me and asked if I wanted to work in the kitchen.

Yes ma'am! I started working that afternoon and continued for the remainder of my time in Reception.

I learned that since this was my first time in prison I was eligible for half-time. If I kept my record clean, worked and didn't get into trouble, I could get out of prison after serving half my sentence. However, in order to start half-time, I had to get out of Reception. It turned out the prison system was so full and crowded the waiting time was six to eight months. That was discouraging. I again got on my knees and asked my Friend Jesus if He would move me quickly. Within about two weeks I was on a bus and headed for Corcoran State Prison, California. Thank you Jesus.

It was a long, cold, night bus ride to Corcoran that January. Corcoran was a newly built prison. I was one of the new "fish" to help break it in. I was housed on a level three yard. The prison system is divided into five major levels. The most dangerous felons are housed in the higher levels. If they do well, their points drop and they can move down to lower levels. Each level allows greater freedoms and privileges. After settling in, I looked around to see what jobs were available. "Good luck" I was told. There was a waiting list. It would be about a year before I could get my "work time" started. There were more inmates than jobs, education or vocational training available. Once again I got on my knees and prayed. Within two weeks of arriving at Corcoran I was working in the kitchen as a clerk.

Looking back upon my experience, I see the hand of God in all of this. 1st, just going to prison reminded me of Joseph. Joseph did nothing to deserve being taken away from his family but God had a plan and purpose. 2nd, Joseph did nothing to deserve being put in prison, but again, God had a plan and purpose. However, Joseph remained faithful to Jesus. He did his duty and God blessed him.

A few months after working as a clerk in the kitchen I was transferred to work as clerk in the Administration Building. There, I clerked for the Program Administrator and upper echelons of power on the yard. For the rest of my stay in the prison system I worked as a clerk. God had this all planned out. Through my experience as clerk in the many different prison departments I learned how the prison functioned. This would be very important for me in the work God had prepared for me to do in later years through this prison ministry.

Just learning how to "clerk" was an important skill to learn for God. Since I am all alone in this ministry and must do everything myself, the clerking experience taught me much in keeping the ministry well organized so I can operate it as a one-man-ministry. I have to read and answer all the inmate mail that comes in. I have to enter all the names and information into the computers. Inmate and donor Initial Newsletters have to be printed,

stapled, folded and prepared for mailing. Those who receive books must have their packages put together. The monthly newsletters have to be written, compiled, printed, mail-merged, collated, stapled, folded and prepared for mailing. Then there are the videos the ministry puts together. I have put up over 500 videos on YouTube, so far. Then I put our material up on-line each day on as many web sites as I can, reaching a potential audience of over three million.

And then there is the work of keeping the financial part of the ministry under control. Making sure our outgo doesn't exceed our income so our upkeep isn't our downfall. :-) The recession of 2008 proved to be very challenging. After the ministry work, there is the every day work just keeping the physical plant, the home, the office, the studio, lawns, trees and everything else kept up and going. So God had a reason for teaching me organization. :-)

My job in Administration was typing up the daily reports, keeping track of inmate movement, writing up disciplinary reports and anything else the administration wanted. It was a good job. When the inmates were on lock down I was always out to do my work. God was good to me.

God was good to me because I had made up my mind to serve Him. I didn't go to church or get involved with the Bible studies that had nothing to do with changing lives. My job was to change my life. God sent me to prison to move me away from my family, the church and society so I could learn to depend on Him and Him alone. I watched inmates going to church, singing loud and carrying their Bibles, but as soon as church was over, they were back to lying, stealing, fighting and playing the inmate prison games. The church taught them nothing to change their lives. All they were taught was "saved by grace", fun and games. I refused to get involved with their religion or prison politics.

It was this experience that led me to see that the behavior in prison was not much different from the churches outside of prison. Just a bunch of "saved by grace", fun and games, entertainment with no desire to change the life. It was all about "What God can do for me" instead of "What is my obligation to God for all He has done for me?"

It was at Corcoran where my faith and beliefs began to be tested and developed. I believed in the teachings of Jesus. Most so-called Christians did not. They believed in the teachings of Paul, as long as they could manipulate Paul to say what they wanted him to say. 2 Peter 3:16 reminds us that Paul says things in his letters "that are hard to understand, which the ignorant and unstable twist to their own destruction, as they do the other Scriptures."

Jesus is not the God of the prison church system. They do not want to obey Him. An inmate came up to me one day and wanted to know why I believed in Jesus as God. He was a Jehovah's Witness. I had spent a few years in Sabbath keeping colleges studying to be a minister. But Jesus told me He had a "higher" education for me. Now I

was getting that "higher" education. Nothing the college or any of my Sabbath "Christian" schooling from first grade up to college prepared me for real life living in Jesus. Now I had to stand up and be counted. I soon learned that if you can't defend your faith from the Bible, you have no faith at all. What was I to do?

I developed a habit of four times a day, morning, noon, evening and bedtime, coming before the Lord for worship. Therefore, when my friend asked me why I believed in Jesus as God, I turned to the Lord at my next worship and laid it before Him. Three days later while in worship, the Bible pages just seemed to turn and texts were highlighted. The Spirit of God took me through a whole Bible study on that topic.

Over the next several years the Spirit of God would come and continue to "open" the Bible to me and provide me with wonderful Bible studies. My faith grew deeper and deeper as my walk grew stronger and stronger with Jesus. The Bible became alive. Anytime I was not at work, out walking the yard talking to Jesus, eating or sleeping, I was at a table or on my bunk studying the Bible. Men would gather around to listen and learn as much as they desired. Most rejected the teachings of Jesus. The teachings of Jesus were not what their church, denomination or beliefs agreed with. Yet, because I stood tall for the teachings of Jesus, He protected me, blessed me and stood very close to me.

After about a year of working in the Administration building, the Lord allowed a "prison power play" to turn me out of my job. So I knelt down and asked the Lord what He wanted me to do since I was His missionary there in that dark world of sin. Where did He want me to go? Where did He need me to serve Him? I learned of an opening for a clerk in the education department. I headed over and found myself in the ESL (English as a Second Language) classroom.

Mr. Garza was the instructor. He had spent his life in the Navy. He retired and got bored sitting around the house. He wanted to do something good with his life that would have meaning. He read in the newspaper of an opening at the Corcoran State Prison for an ESL instructor. He applied and was accepted. These people, those who work for the prison but are not guards, we called "free-people". They can come and go as they please. :-)

Mr. Garza interviewed me and at the end asked me if I spoke Spanish. I told him that I did not. He stated that he wanted someone who could speak Spanish in order to converse with the students and help them in their learning of English. I told him I understood and left. When I was about halfway down the hall, I heard these fast approaching footsteps from my rear. I turn around and there was Mr. Garza. He said, "You know, I have four T/As (Teacher Assistance) who can speak Spanish. I need a good clerk. You're hired." I spent the next year with Mr. Garza. Since both of us were former military men, this part of my prison experience was the best.

One day we were on lock down because of the fog. Mr. Garza came and escorted me over to the classroom. As

we waited for the students to be escorted over by the security staff, I was busy reading my Bible. Mr. Garza's desk was next to mine so we could pass papers and materials back and forth.

Well, this day, he rolled his chair over towards my desk and said, "You are an inmate!" Really? I wondered what tipped him off? Was it the prison blues I was wearing? But then he continued, "I want what you have." I looked at him as if he had lost his mind. I am an inmate and have nothing. What could I have that he would want. He continued, "You are an inmate, but you have so much peace. I am a free-man and have none. I want what you have."

And that was when I shared with him my Christian beliefs. He could not believe that I had so much peace living with so much hate, pain and violence in prison. I shared with him that God is my protector and as long as I live in obedience to Him, He will glorify His name through me. Then I shared the book, "Great Controversy" with him. A month later he told me that he had read the book, gave his heart to Jesus and was keeping the Sabbath. Praise God. About a month later my points dropped and I was transferred to a level II prison.

"Selling" my "condo" at Corcoran and moving was not exactly up there on my most favorite things to do list. I had settled in and was comfortable. Two-man cells are nice. Things are quiet. Lots of order. Besides, state bus rides are not exactly Greyhound.

Upon reaching Chuckawalla State Prison, I found level II living was very different. No longer was I to be locked in a cell, no, now it was dorm living. I sold my "condo" for a "communal". No quiet, no order and everyone coming and going. This also left me open to attacks. Most men who come to prison do not get their best sleeping done in prison. They are always sleeping with one eye open. I, on the other hand, never slept so well in all my life.

God blessed me very much there. I was able to get a clerk's job for the Lieutenant on the yard. He was a very conscientious man and cared very much for the men. Again, the Lord always has a purpose in everything that is done when we serve Him. Because of my clerk jobs I was able to type 100 wpm. That skill would be a great asset in my future work for Jesus in this ministry.

While at Chuckawalla the Lord used me to touch many hearts. I was able to start a Bible study class on the ballfield bleachers. This experience was the beginning in teaching me how to "teach" the Bible. Most of what was passed off as "teaching" by most of those who claimed to be "Christians" was mostly arguing, debating and telling. The Spirit of God taught me how to take a person through the Bible, step by step, line upon line. This again was in the Lord's plan for my future.

Since I was so different from the "normal" inmate, I didn't settle in very well with most inmates. I was not a gang member. As a Christian I associated with all. I did not let gang affiliation, race, religion or sexual orientation keep me from doing my duty as a Christian. I even

enjoyed associating with the staff at all levels. After all, having spent three years in the military, prison wasn't much different. Because of this, most inmates avoided me since they were under the control of their various "handlers", or "shot-callers" as they were called.

How sad. Christianity frees us from sin and sinners. They had placed themselves under the yoke and control of others to their own destruction. I have seen that control since leaving prison. It is very strong in the churches. People have given the control of their lives to their pastors, churches and denominations. Jesus tells us that no one is to have any control over us except Him. That is why so few "Christians" have found the peace that Jesus offers. They are attempting to reach the world's standard instead of the high standard that Jesus offers us: freedom from sin and the control of the world.

Since this was a level II and more open and free, there were of course more fights, stabbings and the yard was locked down a lot. Again, as a clerk to the Lieutenant, I was mostly out of the dorm and working which had it's nice side effects. Chuckawalla is out in the desert where temperatures can reach 125\* in the shade, not that there was much shade on a barren yard. But working in the office allowed me the privilege of air conditioning.

It was here that I became even more aware of the admonition of Paul to stay clear of the world. The Bible is very plain that we are not to get ourselves tangled up in the affairs of the world. Prison politics is as ignorant as the selfish inmates who partake in them. Pride, ego, selfishness and sin abound in prison. But I find that there is no difference in the world and churches of today. God's truth is truly needed in our world and especially in the churches. But few care for His truth. People pick churches not for truth, but for acceptance of their sins. They find a church that accepts their sins and then pay the pastor well to keep telling them they are "saved by grace" and going to heaven in their sins. And society wonders why inmates keep going back to prison. No one is telling them that what they are doing is wrong. The churches have lost their way.

Within six months my points had dropped and I was on my way to level I. Tehachapi was truly wonderful. What a contrast from the other prisons I was in. Most of the newer prisons are built for efficiency, not for aesthetics. The prisons are grey concrete with no color or vegetation. Life can become very depressing in the prison environment.

However, when I got to Tehachapi, the first thing I did was hug a tree. Green, green, green all over the place. Well, there was a reason for all the green. The prison used to be a women's prison. They always get the best. But in 1952 an earthquake hit Tehachapi and the third floor of the women's dorm collapsed killing some women. They moved the women to another prison and Tehachapi became a men's prison. Therefore, it was extremely nice. We even had a laundromat for our personal use. Most of us even had our own room keys. The housing for inmates were not "cells" but more like college rooms. Well, college rooms of the 1930's.

Besides the green trees, bushes, grass and other vegetation making the place more like home, there were animals. Huge owls could be seen in the trees. So large in fact that I was concerned for some of the smaller inmates. I could just see one of them catching another case for trying to escape while being carried over the fence by an owl. :-)

Tehachapi level I was very relaxed. No one caused any trouble there. Not one inmate wanted to be moved anywhere else. Therefore, all inmates were very content and in more control of themselves. It was "heaven". It was so relaxed that the fence was falling down. I could not believe it. You could walk up to the fence and almost push it over. But then again, Tehachapi is up in the mountains far, far away from civilization. Where would an inmate go if he did escape? As a matter of fact, a couple of undocumented Hispanic inmates thought they would try. So, deep into the winter months, with snow all over the place, and during a snow storm to cover their tracks, they simply walked over the fence. Snow can get deep there. Three days later they were begging to be brought back. Inmates from Mexico have no idea how cold snow is. One day, while jogging the track, I was going by an open gate in the fence. I heard the officer in the tower speaking through the squawk box by the gate asking if I wouldn't mind shutting the gate.

I went looking for a job and found one as clerk to a teacher in education. It was a good job. This job actually allowed me to leave my yard to work in education on level II. It was nice having a bit more moving around room. After about a year in education I moved to the kitchen as clerk. Then a couple of months later I finished out my time in prison as clerk to the upholstery teacher. In this shop the inmates were taught the vocation of upholstery. The community paid to have their furniture upholstered and repaired by inmates. I truly enjoyed that job. Very kickback and more like "family".

It was at Tehachapi where the Lord really did His best work in training me for this ministry. You see, if you are a free person out in society and don't agree with someone, you just "unfollow", "unfriend", walk away, go home or change churches. You don't need to listen, learn or practice "testing of the spirits" as the Bible says. For most "Christians" it is simply, "I don't believe that" and the ears hear no more. Christians no longer do the searching and testing God requires. "If my church doesn't teach it, it must not be of God." How sad.

In prison you can't just "walk away". After all, where are you going to go? Therefore, I was in constant contact with many different opinions about Christianity. Everyone wanted to be a "teacher" and no one wanted to learn. Reminds me of many "Christians" in our churches today.

Because I taught the teachings of Jesus, very few wanted to listen. The opinion going around by some who claimed to be great teachers, was that the teachings of Jesus were done away with at the cross. Once Jesus died, everything He taught was now obsolete. I could not believe their satanic opinions. How could God, who does

not change, who came to teach us truth, teach that which He knew would be a waste and be done away with as soon as He died? Couldn't be!

One day while I was sitting on a nice grassy lawn, reading my Bible and having worship, a young man came and sat down to study with me. It wasn't but a few minutes before two other "Christian" men came and literally picked him up and told him that he was not allowed to communicate with me. Wow! How unchristlike. But again, we see that same attitude in many churches of the world. Mormons, Jehovah's Witnesses, Catholics and many others are not allowed to study any other material, or have Bible studies with any other religion, unless authorized by their handlers. So satanic.

God is a God of freedom and individual exploration, study and testing. Never are we to let a pastor, church or denomination take that duty from us personally. Never are we to give our salvation to anything, any one or any church or denomination: only Jesus. Salvation is a personal and individual experience. No church or denomination can save one person. Jesus and Jesus only. Our personal salvation is to be a personal, experimental religion.

One inmate who took matters into his own hands, asked me if he could have my meat. I explained to him why I was a vegetarian. He was impressed and decided to try a week without meat. At the end of the week he came back and told me he felt better and could workout better on the weight pile. He quit all meat.

I was amazed at the deception the "Christians" were willing to teach simply because they hated truth. For instance, I came upon a Bible study in which the "teacher" was telling the "student" that when Jesus rose from the grave He was a "spirit" and had no flesh and bone as we humans do. Therefore, we would be "spirits", when we were raised from the grave, like Jesus. And yet, this concept goes totally against what Jesus taught. Jesus said to Thomas, after His resurrection, "Behold My hands and My feet, that it is I Myself: handle Me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see Me have." Luke 24:39.

It was this constant hate for Jesus that confused me. How could they claim to "love" Jesus and hate what He taught. Jesus said "If you love Me, you will keep My commandments." John 14:15. I soon learned that this so-called "love" for Jesus was just a cover for their hatred of Jesus and anything that had to do with law and order. They were inmates and their lives had been filled with selfishness, getting what they wanted and hating any rules or laws that got in the way of their selfish desires. I found it was the same with church people of the world. They claim to "love" Jesus as long as that "love" does not require them to change their lives and live as Jesus commands them to live. Their religion is all about "what Jesus does for me" and nothing about what Jesus commands me to do for Him. Nothing about "my" obligation to "walk as Jesus walked" in obedience to His Father's commands. 1 John 2:6.

Over the years that I was in prison I was able to watch a very interesting phenomena. Inmates coming to prison, claiming to be saved, going to church, carrying and reading their Bibles, singing in the choir, then going home. After a few months they were right back in prison claiming that it was God's will for them to continue breaking God's laws and the laws of the land. No change! What were they "saved" from?

They kept telling me that Jesus came to abolish the Law and do away with it. I just could not understand their total hypocrisy and stupidity. Jesus plainly teaches, "Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill" Matthew 5:17. You can't have Jesus destroying that which He came not to destroy. But because they have been taught such lies and hate for Jesus they are not able to see the clear contradictions in their thinking and living. They claim that to "fulfill" is to abolish, thereby making a liar out of Jesus. They just couldn't wrap their minds around the concept that to "fulfill" does not mean to abolish but to magnify, make it honorable and to make it indestructible. In other words, to fulfill something is to obey it. If I fulfill the speed limit, I am obeying it and I don't abolish it for anyone else following behind me. My fulfilling of the speed limit honors the law, magnifies it and lets people know that I respect it and obey it.

The problem I found was that they hated Jesus so much for keeping the Law, and then requiring them to follow His example, that they were willing to put the teachings of Paul above Jesus. They would take Paul and twist his statements to claim that Jesus did away with the moral law, the Ten Commandments. But again, we have two very important problems here.

1. That would make a liar out of Paul who tells us the only thing that counts is the keeping of the commandments (1 Corinthians 7:19) and
2. It makes a liar out of Jesus.

And the Bible is very plain that no liars will be in Heaven. Therefore, if they were true, Jesus and Paul are not in Heaven. I realized that what Peter said was very true about those who used Paul's writings, "which the ignorant and unstable twist to their own destruction, as they do the other Scriptures." 2 Peter 3:16. In order to satisfy their wicked lives, they are willing to make Jesus and Paul liars. How sick. But that is what sin does.

But the most important concept I learned while at Tehachapi was the concept of "grace". One day an "elder" of the church, an inmate who thought he was somebody very special and great, told me, "We don't have to obey the Law since we are 'saved by grace'". As I thought about that, I came to realize that he was correct. If we are "saved" eternally by grace, we don't need to keep the Ten Commandments. Why? Because grace is "unmerited". That means that you can do nothing for it. I knew that we had to keep the Ten Commandments, but in order to refute such satanic teaching I had to know what "grace" was and how it "saved".

I went back to my room and knelt before the Lord and

just told Him plainly that the man was correct, but I knew that he was wrong. So I asked Jesus to teach me what "grace" was and how it saved. Three days later while in worship the Bible opened up and the pages began to turn and texts were highlighted. That was the greatest Bible study I ever had. I learned what "grace" was and what its function was. Finally, my mind was at rest. Greater peace came to my soul. You could say that the proverbial "light bulb" went off in my head. Or as the Bible says, the sun was rising in my knowledge of the truth.

This phase of my instruction was complete. I had now read the Bible through over 30 times. The Spirit of God had met with me often and instructed me. I had learned to trust Him and communicate with Him. But most importantly, I was learning how to listen to the Spirit of God. Listening which did not require any church, denomination or person: only Jesus.

When I paroled from prison, my folks took me in. Not knowing what to do, my mom paid for a correspondence course in Medical Billing. Well, I was never one for memorizing and to be a Medical Billing specialist I would need the skill of memorization. However, God used this correspondence course for another reason. I was looking at it from the perspective of how they put it together, physically. It looked like it was put together on a home computer, printed and then bound. Pretty simple. I could not see into the future, but Jesus did. I would remember that, and He would use it in His future plans for me and this ministry.

The other wonderful thing my folks did was get me a computer. Keep in mind, this is 1996. Computers were very new to the public. They were not exactly "user friendly". But they were getting better. I began exploring the computer and learning how to use it.

About 30 days after being out, Jesus used a "violation" excuse to put me back into prison. This is called "Return To Custody" (RTC). God had more training for me to do, but from a different perspective. Just as Joseph had one perspective when sold into slavery, then he had another perspective when he was put into prison. This time, I entered prison not as a "student" but as a "teacher".

I was sent to Chino Prison for Men while they decided where to place me in the prison system. I immediately began teaching what I had been taught by the Spirit of God. The reception I got from inmates was completely different from what it was before. Now the inmates listened. Bible studies were held and men began studying. One night while on my bunk reading the Bible, a young man came up to me. He had been listening to the Bible studies and had given his heart to Jesus. So when he came up to me, it was as a brother in Christ. He asked me if I had anything for pain. He said he had the flu and was feeling terrible. I told him that I had no medicine. However, I would give him what I did have. I laid my hands on him and prayed that Jesus would heal him. He left and within about 10 minutes he returned and let me know that the pain and sickness had left him. We



praised God.

From RTC I was sent to do a simple seven month violation at Avenal State Prison. Here Jesus had more for me to learn. I was placed in a computer class. In this class I learned about the inside of computers. This would be very helpful in the ministry for years to come. I could not even begin to tell you how many computers I built in order to save money, but also to have the specific internal parts needed for the work this ministry requires.

My work for Jesus was growing and growing. When I sat down at a table to study, 10 to 20 inmates would gather around to listen and learn. It was awesome. At one time I saw this young man listening, but then he left. Come to find out, he had to go to work. But later that night he came by my bunk while I was sleeping and woke me up asking for Bible studies. He had just gotten off work from the kitchen. We went out onto the floor, found a table and studied.

However, this made Lucifer very unhappy. He was losing his subjects. He instigated many inmates to try and kill me. One man came up and told me very plainly that if I continued to teach the Sabbath he would kill me. So I let him know that God would have to move him off the yard since I had to teach truth. A few days later an inmate came up to me and said, "Do you remember the man who threatened to kill you?" I nodded. He continued, "He has been moved off the yard." This was very interesting since his removal had nothing to do with me. God simply moved him and the whole yard understood the power of God.

Another time an inmate, who was from Cambodia and skilled in Martial Arts, came up to me while I was lying on the top bunk, my head resting on my left hand. He came up and was talking nonsense and how I had to get off the yard or he would have to hurt me. I told him that I wasn't going anywhere. Then, in a flash, his hand came up and he hit me in the nose with the heel of his hand.

The inmates were expecting me to be hurt very bad, if not dead, by the driving of the nose bone into my brain. They expected lots of blood and screaming, etc. So they were all prepared for the C/Os and a lock down. However, the only one hurt was the Cambodian. He walked away shaking and holding his hand showing great pain. The next day the inmates were expecting to see lots of black and blue marks on my face. I had no cuts, no black and blue marks, nothing. No pain. God is very good to those who obey Him. I learned in prison that I do not need to "defend" myself. God will defend us if we are living for Him. But if all we are doing is putting on a show and going to church, God can't help us much.

One evening while sitting at "my" table, the janitors were going to sweep and mop the floor. We had a choice, go outside or go to our bunks. I decided to go outside. It was winter and the nights came early. I entered the queue and waited for the gate to open. When the gate opened, we all pushed into the little hallway that led outdoors. We must wait in the hallway while the back gate shuts, then they open the front door. We all pushed

out and then it was that I realized I made a mistake. It was raining. But the door had closed behind me and it would not be opened again for another hour. I raised my eyes and hand to heaven and asked Jesus to stop the rain until the door opened. Just then the clouds cleared away and the stars came out. It stayed clear and beautiful until the door opened. Then the rain came down. God is so good.

The seven months went by fast and I paroled in 1997. The week before I was to be released I was instructed that the prison committee was going over my case to see if I could be released or needed to be kept longer. I got on my knees and made a vow to God. I would not eat until I was released. Seven days later I was paroled.

I didn't know what to do with my life. Serving the Lord was my top priority. How was another matter. While in prison the Lord and I became very close. He had revealed Himself to me on such a personal level that when I paroled I felt as if I had been orphaned. My folks had purchased a very small trailer up in a small trailer park at Big Bear Lake, California. Being in the mountains and far away from "the world" I found myself back in the presence of God. I began jogging and we resumed our personal relationship.

One day, about four weeks after paroling, the Holy Spirit came to me and told me that we were going to write a book. He told me that He was going to dictate and direct the book to me. "Windows 95" was the operating system of the computer I was using. Having spent the last almost 6 1/2 years behind bars I knew nothing about computers. As the Holy Spirit dictated to me, I would become frustrated by not knowing how to work the "Windows" software. That was when the Spirit would direct me how to maneuver through it to find what I needed to accomplish His mission.

One day while taking a break from the book, I was walking the RV park and meditating. I saw an older gentleman, by the name of Ben, who seemed to be distressed. We began talking and I shared with him what I was doing. Stopping, he looked at me with great anguish in his face and asked, "How can you believe in a God who would burn little children forever? I go to church and try to believe, but to burn a child forever because of a sin, that is torture."

"Ben", I said, "you have been taught wrong, God is not a torturer, He loves people." I then invited him to my trailer. We sat down on a bench and began a Bible study on what happens when a person dies. As we progressed through the Bible study, I could see the burden lift from His soul. I could see the pain of lies give way to the joy of truth.

Many months later his wife told me that his whole life changed after that. Not only did his life become happier, but the whole family benefited from his joy in the truth. I studied with them and within about three months they sent a letter of resignation to their church of 15 years. They became Sabbath keepers and strong supporters of this little ministry.

The Holy Spirit would wake me up at about 6 o'clock in the morning and we would work until about 1 a.m. It was usually about that time my eyelids could not stay open. I would ask the Spirit to let me sleep. One day while the Spirit was dictating to me, the computer froze up. "Windows 95" was notorious for freezing up. I did not know what to do. The Spirit of God was dictating and I was not able to keep up. The computer refused to respond. "Stop. Stop." I cried, "The computer won't work. What do I do?" Just then there was a knock at the door. I opened it and there was Ben. He came for another Bible study. After the Bible study, I turned back to the computer and there on the screen were the instructions on how to clear the computer and unfreeze it.

We finished volume I, of about 160 pages, in about a week. It was perfectly done. Every graphic, every clip art, all was just as the Holy Spirit had dictated and directed it. The Holy Spirit then gave me the title for the book, "Change Your Life Biblically". He then told me to send it to inmates. "Holy Spirit", I said, "That is not possible. I am on parole and I can't have contact with inmates." He told me not to worry about that. All I had to do was be obedient. Sure enough, when I explained what I was doing to my Parole Officer, he was in total cooperation.

But then there was the little matter called money. I was broke. Not a nickel to my name. I had nothing, I owned nothing and I was nothing. How was I to get the funds to buy the paper and equipment to make the "book" and the postage to send them to inmates? Not possible, I said. The Holy Spirit was so gentle and kind. He told me to just obey and He would take care of everything. I stepped out of the trailer and went for a "meditation" walk around the RV park.

As I was walking and thinking on this money "problem", I saw a man preparing his RV to leave the park. We began talking and in the course of our conversation he asked what I did for a living. I told him that I sent books to inmates to help them change their lives. He said, "Wow, I feel impressed to help." And with that he opened his wallet and pulled out a twenty dollar bill and gave it to me. From that moment on the Spirit of God impressed people, total strangers, to support His little book and this, His little ministry, in the work of changing lives. He has never let me down. Never too much, never too little. He has always provided what we needed in order to do the work He called me to do.

You must understand how hard the walk of "faith" was for me. I had spent 10 years as the owner of my own photography business. I was good. Customers came to me from all over the United States. I photographed the wealthy, millionaires, billionaires and Hollywood. I was booked a year in advance to photograph weddings. Money was not a problem for me. Now, not a penny to my name.

A few months later the Spirit told me that we needed to move to a bigger home. This I could not understand. We could hardly make it where we were. Besides, who would rent to a little ministry that had nothing? But

when the Spirit says to do something, I do it. My mom and I went looking for a place and found a mountain cabin in Arrow Bear, about 20 minutes from Big Bear Lake. It was nice having a larger place. It was here the Spirit of God returned, dictating and directing volume II, about 160 pages, of "Change Your Life Biblically". Again, it was accomplished in about one week.

The requests for the book began to arrive in ever larger numbers. I was amazed at how inmates learned about this little book. Requests were coming in from inmates from every state in the Union.

After being in our mountain home for about a year, the Spirit instructed me that it was time to move again. I was disappointed at this. I liked the mountain home. I was not looking forward to moving all the equipment. However, we did find a little home for rent in Yucaipa, California. This was nice in that it was close to my parents who were in their early 80's. They loved the work I was doing and helped out as much as possible. After moving in, the Holy Spirit was sent to me again and He dictated and directed volume III of about 160 pages. With that the book was completed with over 480 pages.

During this time of the ministry, I was printing, collating, folding and binding the books by hand. The work was beginning to take more time than I had all by myself. One day I received a letter from a young man in Youth Authority by the name of Jeff who had read volumes I & II. After several letters and getting to know each other, he asked if he could come to the ministry upon his release from Y/A. He explained to me that he had no family and no place to go. Jeff was given up by his mom into the California foster care system at the age of seven. He lived in group homes and Y/A most of his childhood life. I thought it over and decided that God must be providing the help that I needed. I invited him to come.

When he arrived at the age of 18, we began organizing the ministry into a "two-man" operation. We had a large table in the middle of the room with lines and lines of shelving around the room. The pages of the book were printed on the copier and then we would run around the table collating them. I bound the book myself. When I purchased a folder, that made the work a bit easier.

Living at the ministry was so different that Jeff could not control himself to stay. Over time he would run away and then come back when he had no place to go. Then he would run away again and get into trouble with the Law. On one occasion I went before the judge and Jeff was placed in my custody.

Another inmate, Juan, who had read the book, contacted me. Juan struggled with his old street and gang life. As long as he was involved with the ministry, God blessed him. But Juan, after many years being involved with the ministry, lost sight of the life Jesus had for him. He returned to the world and drugs. He also returned to prison. This broke my heart as I considered him a "son". Upon paroling, he decided to return to Jesus and support the ministry.

One morning I awakened with a heavy heart. After going

over the bills and the list of donors we had, I realized we were not going to make it. It was costing us more than we had in donations. Even though we had no incomes or salaries, there just wasn't enough funding to handle the ministry's operation. I was weeping. I called the people who owned the property and let them know that we would not be able to continue renting and would leave when our time was up.

A few mornings later while in the living room doing my morning workout routine, crying my eyes out, the phone rang. The voice on the other end identified himself as the director of a worldwide ministry. He had been going through the mail that morning and had come across a letter from this ministry. He stated that his ministry would support our little ministry for as long as we needed it: no conditions. About a year later his secretary told me that when he came to the letter from this ministry he heard the voice of God telling him to support us.

One Sabbath while Jeff and I were hiking in the mountains, we came to an open meadow. A person appeared and Jeff and I wondered where this person had come from. We had a perfect view of the whole meadow and did not see from where this person had come. The person approached us and we entered into a conversation. This person told Jeff to listen to me and to obey me. When the conversation was done, Jeff and I turned and climbed a pile of rocks near by. We reached the top and looked out over the meadow. Not a person was to be seen. It didn't take but a "minute" to climb the little rocks. There was no way this person could have vanished humanly. We always understood that God had sent an angel to impress upon Jeff his duty.

It had been about four years since the Holy Spirit dictated the book to me. The Holy Spirit now instructed me to go up into the mountains and buy a home for the ministry. This was not possible, I thought. I explained to the Holy Spirit that we were a non-profit with no savings, nothing of value, no income and no one would lend to us. All He said was, "Go". Jeff and I went up into the mountains to do as we were told. We went from one real estate office to another and all we got were laughs. Finally, at one real estate office, a sales lady asked if my folks would be willing to co-sign. I knew they would, but I didn't want to put them into that situation considering their age.

My folks agreed. Bringing all their financial documentation we sat down at the desk. I looked up at the real estate agent and said, "What we really need is a seller who will sell us the home and carry the paperwork." (To be honest, I have no idea where those words came from.) She told us that she did not have such a seller. However, from the back of the office a voice spoke up and said, "Did I hear you right? Are you looking for someone to hold the paperwork?" She told us that she had just the person. We all piled into the vehicles and went to the mountain home. The owner, her friend, didn't even have it on the market yet. He was fixing it up to sell. We contacted him and he agreed to sell the home to the ministry.

A few months later Jeff left for Texas to find his mother.

He ended up going to prison for two years. "Dad", he wrote, "you were right, I should have stayed and never left. I'm coming home when I get out." He didn't. He got out and stayed there and in a few months was right back in prison. "Dad", he wrote, "you were right, I should have come home. There is nothing for me out here." However, over the years Jeff turned his back on the ministry for the world. His life has been full of prison and crime. He was found dead, at the age of 41, in a Mexican desert. How sad.

The Holy Spirit then instructed me to remodel the mountain home. This I could not understand. We had no money. What little we had hardly paid for the paper, ink, postage and other supplies and equipment needed to keep the books going to inmates. But He was very insistent. Fortunately, the neighbors up there were all in construction of some kind or other. With neighborhood assistance I began remodeling the home. We finished in about six months. It was wonderful. More room and very comfortable. I said, "Thank you Lord". But then He said, "Sell it." That broke my heart. What? I was enjoying the mountains. It was wonderful. Why sell? Where would we go? And how much could we get for it? Would it be enough to buy another place? These were questions I had. However, because He commanded, I called the real estate lady who had sold us the house and ask her to sell it for us.

She came over and we filled out the paperwork. Then she asked how much we wanted to sell it for. We bought it for \$80K. I told her that God told me to sell it for \$120K. She laughed. It will never sell, she told me. Nothing up there was selling for that price. Not even close. I told her that was the price God told me to sell it for. We signed and she left. Three hours later she called and said she had a buyer. They bought it for \$120K.

Now I needed a place for the ministry. Mom and I got into the car and headed for the High Desert of Victorville, California. I told the Lord we would take the first exit off the freeway and go to the first real estate place and see what they had. We did. We gave them the parameters of what we needed and they gave us five properties to look at. As we headed up the dirt road to the first property we saw a "4 sale" sign, but it was a house and we were looking for a trailer. The next property with a "4 sale" sign had a trailer, but it had water and power. The property we were looking for did not. When we did get to "our" property, it was a burned out trailer and we would never be able to use it.

We went back to the property with the trailer, water and power and called to inquire about it. They wanted \$44K. We asked if they would take \$35K. They said they would take \$38K. With the proceeds from our mountain home we were able to pay off the four acre property in cash. With the balance, we contracted with Pacific Press Publishing Association to print our books. No more running around tables!

17 years after moving to our property in Lucerne Valley, building the ministry's infrastructure, sending out books and material to inmates, I was struck down and almost died. The devil hates God's people. He hates this ministry. I was called by God to manage this ministry for Him. The devil did not like that. Therefore, on the 17th of August, 2020, I had such great pain in my neck and shoulder area I was almost unable to move. I called 911 and when the EMT arrived they basically told me I was in perfect health and therefore they were not able to take me to emergency. Three months before, my doctor told me I had the health of a 40 year old. I was 69 years old at the time.

My sister called a friend of hers and she took me to Saint Mary's Medical Center. The reason they admitted me was not for the pain, but for kidneys that were failing because of the quantity of pain pills I had been taking for the pain. They didn't work. However, God used those pain pills to get me admitted. If I had not been admitted because of my kidneys, I would be dead.

They stabilized my kidneys and then went to work exploring why I was in such pain. I was begging them to take the pain away. I got to the point where I could not feed myself. They took CT scans of my neck area and saw nothing. A few days later they took them again. This time they found abscesses on my cervical. A few days later they sent me to get an MRI. That really concerned them. The abscesses were spreading.

They immediately contacted Loma Linda University Medical Center and arranged for me to be transported to them. Upon arrival they admitted me as a paraplegic. I was not able to move my extremities. The pain was from my neck all the way down to my toes. It was as if thousands of atomic bombs were being exploded in my body every second of every hour of every day. I wanted to die. I pleaded with them to shoot me. The pain was unbearable.

They took me in and had another MRI done on me. The "pus" was spreading rapidly down my backbone and up towards my brain stem. As it spread, it was compressing and eating away at my spinal column/cord and destroying my nervous system. They immediately took me into surgery. The back half of my cervical was removed. If the bacteria had moved up another few centimeters into my brain stem, I would have died.



This is what my back looked like when I was in intensive care.

I was not able to feed myself. I could not turn over without someone turning me. My life

basically came to an end. All I could think about was the ministry. What would become of it? There were inmates who were looking to me to give them inspiration and

hope, what would happen to them? Would the ministry die? Would 22 years of hard work come to an end? Would God allow that?

As it was getting close to the end of the month, and the ministry had financial commitments that needed to be taken care of, I called John, a member of the board. He lived in Missouri. I explained to him what would happen if we did not pay our bills. Also, the mail needed to be collected and processed. Inmates would be expecting their books.



John told his employer that he would be back as soon as possible. He hopped in his car and drove two thousand miles to California to take over the ministry. Of course he knew nothing about the work.

Therefore, when he arrived, the nurses would dial the phone for me and then prop it next to my ear. For days, from eight in the morning until 5 in the evening I would be giving John step by step instructions on how to answer the mail, how to put the names of the inmates into the computer. Then, how to print the newsletters and books. I still do not know how we did that. Only the Spirit of God could have shared the information through me to John, where the Spirit of God used John to understand what was being transmitted. However, John was able to answer the mail and print the material needed to go out. This kept the ministry up and running.

End of month was right at the door. We had to pay our debts and obligations. Again, with the phone propped against my ear, I walked John through the process of paying off every obligation. It was truly a miracle. Considering my state of mind, the amount of drugs I was being given, the amount of pain I was suffering, it was not possible for me to have given John the information he needed. Only by the power of the Spirit of God was it possible.

John was at the ministry about 10 days cleaning it up and getting it squared away. Juan came up and John explained to him some of the methods needed to keep the ministry going. Then John had to go back to work, if he still had a job. When he got back, he not only had a job, he had three checks waiting for him. God blessed him for his dedication to this ministry.



From ICU I was transferred to a Critical Care Unit. There, more miracles of the Lord continued. The devil wanted to destroy the ministry, but God was going to turn it around and show His great and mighty power. It was about this time I

learned what my medical condition was technically called: Upper Epidural Abscesses. Nice name, but what pain. It appears to be very rare. It appears that there are no physical indicators for it. As in my case, it was the pain. And even with that, they had no idea what was

causing the pain. The medical staff thought I was going to be a paraplegic for the rest of my life. But one morning when the neurological team came in to see how I was doing, I surprised them by kicking my left leg. They were amazed. I told them my left leg was ready to play soccer, however, my right leg wanted to sit in the bleachers and watch. Never did they think I would be able to make this progress. The surgeon wrote, "Miraculous recovery".

As the days progressed, the pain was intense. I pleaded with them to take away the pain. They told me they were giving me the highest doses of pain medication allowed and at the closest intervals allowed. However, they gave me other medication that was not classified as "pain medication" but did the same thing. So, I was receiving huge amounts of pain medication, and still the pain was unbearable.

Through it all, even though I wanted to die, I let the Lord know that I was His and I would do as He pleased. I wanted to serve Him, even there in the hospital. Many of the workers were so impressed by my smile, good attitude and joy I was bringing them. I explained to them that no matter what the situation, we must always keep a sense of humor and trust God.

Over the next few days feeling came back to my body. However, just because I could feel didn't mean I could move. The pain was so great, I still could not turn from side to side without assistance. I was bed-bound. They still had to feed me. I was not able to scratch my head, my ears or my nose. Do you know how awful that is? A catheter was inserted. This was not good.

As I improved over the next few days, they transferred me to Del Rosa Urgent Care facility. There I learned how to feed myself. Soon they began physical therapy. First there was learning how to sit up on the edge of the bed.



Next was learning to move from the bed to a wheelchair. This I learned rather easily and was soon able to scoot myself around the facility. From the wheelchair it was time to walk. The physical therapy team really didn't think I could walk. They refused to let me do much walking. They said my blood pressure was too low. I had to wait until it came up to normal before they would let me walk.

Other activities were given me to do, such as peddling the bicycle. Trying to put a ball into a hoop and of course, attempting to build my muscles by pulling up weights.

Eventually I found myself at a standstill. I wasn't getting the help I needed. Also, I had to get back to the ministry. Juan was doing a wonderful job of keeping the books and material going out to inmates. However, he had to drive over 200 miles every weekend to do the work. That was very tiring for him. He could not keep that up. I had to go home.

Alaska was in charge of discharging the patients. She told me to pick a date. I did, and she made sure that everything was arranged for me. Juan took the day off and on a Friday I came home. Just getting out into the fresh air lifted my spirits. The ride home was awesome.



When I arrived home I was greeted by my "kids". What love. They missed me so much. How much I missed them.

Sabbath was truly a day of miracles. While at the Urgent Care facility they did not think I would be able to walk, let alone walk up stairs. Every time I came to their steps, I would get very sick and want to vomit. How would I handle being home with eleven steps up to the bedroom?

Well, God works miracles. On Sabbath I walked up the stairs all by myself. At first I used a walker to traverse the house. But within a few days I was walking without it.

Since then I have been able to keep the ministry going forward. For a few more weeks Juan continued to come and help with the mail. But then I was able to do the work myself. Little by little my strength came back to me.

My right side is still much like a person with a stroke. My right foot drags a bit. My right hand needed help when brushing my teeth, shaving and combing my hair. But slowly, even it is learning how to move.

My biggest problem was the pain in my neck and shoulders. It was in that area where the surgeon had to remove the abscesses from the spine. The pain was intense.

About a week after returning home I took the car for a drive around the property. I wanted to see if I could drive. Yes I could. Sitting in the car driving was not the problem. It was after getting to where I was going: the walk. But God blessed and I was able to drive to the Post Office which was only 5 miles away. That was the start. Soon I was able to stretch out my drives. God is blessing.



This brings us up to now. I am still recovering. My hands and feet feel like they are in ice. I don't really know how I type except through the power of God. My feet and legs are unsteady. Every day is a trial in faith and endurance.

Through this experience I am learning to trust God even more than I had already trusted Him. I am learning that trust in God has no limits. We must learn to trust Him constantly. Our faith must continue to grow.

This ministry is dedicated to helping you develop greater trust, hope and belief in Jesus. As you study the material on our web site: [www.jcpm.com](http://www.jcpm.com), you will find your life



drawing closer and closer to Jesus.

The interesting thing is, 40 years before this I broke my back in an airplane crash. FAA stated that I should have died in the crash. They could not believe the plane

did not burn up.

However, God had a mission for me. Sometimes it takes a while for God to work out His mission for our lives. We must go through many trials and situations to come to where God wants us.

This ministry is now where God wants me. The devil keeps trying to destroy me, but God refuses to let him.

From 1997 through 2024 over 60,000 inmates have received from this ministry pamphlets, Bibles, books and the book "Change Your Life Biblically". I write every inmate who writes me. I figured I have written over 120,000 inmates during this time. The following are a few of the men I know who have accepted Jesus into their hearts.

Russell read CYLB while in prison and became a strong supporter of the ministry. He never thought that he would be able to get a good job, own a home or be able to have his son live with him. But because of his love and support for this ministry God provided a most wonderful job for him. He bought a home and his nine year old son came to live with him. Russell also became a board member. He has been out since about 2002.

Samuel also read CYLB while in prison. He was heavy into the gang life. However, through the book CYLB the Spirit of God changed his heart. After getting out of prison he stayed in contact with the ministry and found a job. He started supporting the ministry, got married and worked his way up to management position. He has been out since about 2007.

John traded a pack of cigarettes for the book, CYLB. He read it and was truly amazed that he had been taught wrong for so many years. He grew up Catholic and went to Catholic schools. But when he read the book, he reached out after the Truth and filled his life with it. He became a strong supporter of this ministry and God has blessed him with a wonderful job. He has been out since about 2008, after 15 years in prison. He is now a Board Member of the ministry.

Joe read the book, CYLB while in prison. He was very thankful for the truth. He and I kept up a long and wonderful friendship through mail over the four years he was in prison. He paroled in 2008 and has continued to support the ministry very strongly. Even though he is 84 years old (in 2014) and living on a very limited income, he makes sure that God is paid first. Because of it, God has blessed him so much that he never tires of telling me.

Kevin was in jail for murder. He was told that he would spend the rest of his life in prison. But after reading CYLB he gave his heart to Jesus and dedicated his life to serving God. Even while in jail he would support this

little ministry. Then one day the jail doors opened and he was free. All the charges were dropped. He became a very strong supporter of this ministry. He shares it with all he comes in contact with. He has been out since about 2006 and now owns his own trucking company.

---

*Hello, my name is Michael.*

*I've heard some really neat stories and rumors about this book you are giving away. Just a few weeks ago I was talking with a fellow brother in my living unit by the name of James. He showed me the book and gave me all the info on how to get it. I'm a fairly new believer, it has only been about 2 years for me. But even behind bars my life couldn't be more better. I have about a year left until I get released back to my family, and travel down the new path of a father. So for now, all I want to do is learn about Christ and the truths of the Bible. I am sending along with this 10 stamps for a speedy delivery. I totally appreciate what you are doing for everybody.*

*Mike*

*Dear Brother Ron,*

*I want to reach out to you with my gratitude for your work of getting the truth out. Your book is great. I spent all my adult life behind prison bars and I was proud of it. I strived, fought and climbed to become a member of the Aryan Brotherhood. What a joke. I never realized I wasn't a man at all, just a chess piece for a bunch of scared prisoners. That is what a prison gang is. And it is a no-no amongst those people to believe in God. So I never picked anything up "Christian". Then my cousin and I dropped out of the gang. And he kept trying to get me to pick up the Bible, but I didn't like all the so-called "Christians" around me, as they did all the old habits and so forth. So I went to the SHU and I started to look for the truth. Then I was given your book, "Change Your Life Biblically". To be honest, I read it at first because it had "Lucerne Valley" address and I had a lot of years there growing up. Then I couldn't believe how great your book is. The Feds sent me to a place called, "Teen Challenge" a "Christian" program which was everything but Christian. I won't tell all the stuff that was wrong there, as it doesn't matter. I left there and was on the run from parole. I got arrested and ran into Danny. I've known him in and out of prison for years. We started talking and he told me about God. At first I thought he was just trying to get out of his time. Then I moved in the cell with him and being locked down with him twenty three hours a day I see a changed man. Yes, he is the one and only true one I've seen in here. So I have been really trying. As soon as I get the stamps, I'll order my wife and myself a book each. I am blessed to be able to read Danny's for now. It's actually one of the most trying as it makes you dig for the answers. Brother Ron, I thank you for your time.*

*Jerry, CA*

*Brother Ron,*

*Hello, and may our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ bless you and your prison ministry as He is blessing me with*

your book, "Change Your Life Biblically". I received it on July 24th, three days before my birthday with the other two books you sent. Thank you. When I first started reading it, I wanted to throw it on the ground because it went against what I've been learning the past 16 months, (since I thought I accepted Christ). Right now I'm about halfway through Volume II. I'm kind of just reading through this first time and then I'm going to really study it. I really do need to say "Thank You". Because I already learned that I really wasn't saved. I was exploiting God's grace and the work of the cross. The teaching is hard but even without thorough study, I'm seeing a lot of truth. When I start to really study it, I know I'm really going to be blessed!

Todd, CA

Dear JCPM:

Excellent study. OK let me just say it once more, "Excellent study"! I have learned more from "Change Your Life Biblically" than I have from any previous Bible study course that I have taken. I will continue to use "Change Your Life Biblically" as a study reference. You guys at Jesus Christ Prison Ministry really outdid yourselves this time. I am rereading volumes I, II & III in anticipation of volume IV. The Lord God is truly anointing this ministry Ron. You are keeping it real. I enjoyed the section on church history and the history on the Roman Catholic Church. Since this study I have noted from several resources that the "Sabbath", the Lord's day, is in fact Saturday and not Sunday. End time prophecy was awesome. I know so much today because of "Change Your Life Biblically". I am also able to apply it to my life and share my new found treasures with others. This study was a blessing. I am living the 3 eternal truths that Jesus taught: Be perfect, Stop sinning, and Obeying the Ten Commandments, and also keeping the Sabbath day Saturday holy, not Sunday. The Lord has a plan for me today Ron, and He is using Jesus Christ Prison Ministry as a tool in my studies. God bless you Ron, and the Jesus Christ Prison Ministry. I am waiting on "Change Your Life Biblically" volume IV! God bless you guys,  
James, CA

Hello,

I have a drug problem. I'm 31 years old and have been to prison a handful of times. My bunkie and I were talking about the Bible and he told me about a book that he read called, "Change Your Life Biblically". He proceeded to tell me how the book breaks the Bible down to where a person could understand it. He started telling me all about it. So, for a day or two I started looking back on my life and it really made me think about where I went wrong in my life. Then it hit me like a ton of bricks, I did not have God in my life. I, like the author of this book, owned my own business and lost it. So, I started reading your book and bam!, my bunkie moved to another prison. In what little bit I read, it made me come to realize that I want what you guys have; that walk with Christ. I want to learn more and to put it in my life. I want to be the father and man I should be.

Steven, MO

Dear Brother Ronald,

I received your letter Monday. First, thanks. You always seem to have the words to encourage me in just the right way at just the right time. In all honesty, I have been just like most inmates, playing games to get what I want. But then, I realized there was no real joy in what I had or how I got it. And there was no joy. So, I thought to myself, why not try God? You've tried everything else. I am learning that we are really in a spiritual warfare and how important it is to stay in God's presence by reading continually and stay prayed up at all times on all situations. So now, I make the choice to read, apply that information to and in my life. I understand now it is really essential to do so. That it is part of working out my salvation unto obedience. Ahhh! My buddy Duke. Let him know I got the photo and love it. He is laid out and chillen. I am starting to see the simple things mean a lot. I want to be a missionary. I really liked what you said about troubles and annoyances being character builders. Thanks. This is what I have been missing. Thank you so much brother Ron. As for the book, I will take my time. I now read a little then meditate on that and read more later.

Darren, LA

Brother Ron,

The things I am learning in this book is amazing me. Like, I always had a feeling in the pit of my stomach that something isn't right. Things were really confusing about some of the things that were being taught by certain ministers. I know the feeling of being brainwashed and it is not a good feeling. Wrong teaching has led me to prison for the past 21 years. I've learned the importance of being a critical thinker. I've learned you must test everything by the Spirit of God. That is why I'm so glad God is giving me conformation through this book that the Holy Spirit put on your heart to write.

Bill, TN

---

Other books are available after receiving your certificate. Read every word. Take your time. Pray before reading. The Spirit of God will give you wisdom and understanding. God bless you as you begin your new life in Jesus.

*Ron*





# THEOLOGY

| <i>Chapter</i>                         | <i>(volume 1)</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|--|-------------------|-------------|
| Before and After                       |                   | 18          |
| Brainwashing                           |                   | 19          |
| <b>Step 1: Faith</b>                   |                   | <b>20</b>   |
| • Real Life Situation                  |                   | 21          |
| • Faith and God                        |                   | 21          |
| • Jesus as Son                         |                   | 24          |
| • Proof of the Bible                   |                   | 25          |
| <b>Step 2: Goodness</b>                |                   | <b>30</b>   |
| <b>Step 3: Knowledge</b>               |                   | <b>31</b>   |
| • Plan of Salvation                    |                   | 32          |
| • Old Covenant                         |                   | 34          |
| • Most Holy Place                      |                   | 35          |
| • Outer Court                          |                   | 36          |
| • Holy Place                           |                   | 38          |
| • New Covenant                         |                   | 40          |
| • First & Greatest Commandment         |                   | 44          |
| <b>Step 4: Self-Control</b>            |                   | <b>46</b>   |
| <b>Step 5: Perseverance</b>            |                   | <b>47</b>   |
| <b>Step 6: Godliness</b>               |                   | <b>50</b>   |
| <b>Step 7: Brotherly Kindness</b>      |                   | <b>51</b>   |
| <b>Step 8: Love</b>                    |                   | <b>53</b>   |
| <b>Increasing Measure Knowledge II</b> |                   | <b>54</b>   |
| Grace                                  |                   | 56          |
| • A Story of Grace                     |                   | 59          |
| Works                                  |                   | 61          |
| Jesus Our Savior                       |                   | 65          |
| Romans Seven                           |                   | 66          |
| Romans 3                               |                   | 68          |
| False Prophets                         |                   | 69          |
| Souls and Death                        |                   | 72          |
| Prayer                                 |                   | 74          |
| The Sabbath                            |                   | 77          |
| Wickedness                             |                   | 84          |
| Righteousness                          |                   | 86          |
| Ten Commandments                       |                   | 87          |
| Outline of a Righteous life            |                   | 88          |

# PROPHECY

| <i>Chapter</i>                                | <i>(volume 2)</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|---|-------------------|-------------|
| Judgment                                      |                   | 89          |
| God's Judgment                                |                   | 91          |
| Law   |                   | 93          |
| Daniel 7 (4 beasts)                           |                   | 96          |
| Daniel 7 (little horn)                        |                   | 101         |
| Revelation 12                                 |                   | 110         |
| Revelation                                    |                   |             |
| • Seven Churches                              |                   | 111         |
| • Seven Seals                                 |                   | 112         |
| • Seven Trumpets                              |                   | 113         |
| Revelation 13                                 |                   | 116         |
| Daniel 9                                      |                   | 119         |
| The Muslim Conquest                           |                   | 121         |
| France: Figuratively Called - Sodom and Egypt |                   | 123         |
| • The Reign of Terror                         |                   | 124         |
| The Closing Events                            |                   |             |
| • Revelation 12                               |                   | 126         |
| • Revelation 13                               |                   | 127         |
| • Revelation 14                               |                   | 128         |
| Daniel 11                                     |                   | 130         |
| - Greek Empire                                |                   | 131         |
| - Empire Divided                              |                   | 131         |
| - North & South                               |                   | 132         |
| - The Jews Rebel                              |                   | 133         |
| - Back to the Future                          |                   | 133         |
| - The Roman Invaders                          |                   | 134         |
| - Rise of the Anti-Christ                     |                   | 137         |
| - The Crusades                                |                   | 139         |
| - The Reformation                             |                   | 141         |
| - The Papal Supremacy                         |                   | 143         |
| October 22                                    |                   | 144         |
| Transfer of Sin                               |                   | 148         |
| Sanctuary Brought Low                         |                   | 151         |
| 3 Angels' Messages                            |                   | 153         |
| The Scapegoat                                 |                   | 156         |
| Time  |                   | 157         |
| When is Christ Coming?                        |                   | 160         |
| A Grave Misconception                         |                   | 161         |

# CHRISTIAN LIVING

| <i>Chapter</i>            | <i>(volume 3)</i> | <i>Page</i> |
|---------------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| Church                    |                   | 164         |
| Tithes & Offerings        |                   | 167         |
| Food, Drink & Clothes     |                   | 172         |
| Tattoos & Body Art        |                   | 175         |
| Conduct                   |                   | 176         |
| - Love is Patient         |                   | 177         |
| - Love is Kind            |                   | 177         |
| - Love does not Envy      |                   | 178         |
| - Love does not Boast     |                   | 179         |
| - Love is not Rude        |                   | 179         |
| - No Record of Wrongs     |                   | 180         |
| - Not Delight in Evil     |                   | 181         |
| - Love never Fails        |                   | 182         |
| Control                   |                   | 183         |
| The Bible                 |                   | 185         |
| Yahweh                    |                   | 189         |
| Michael as Jesus          |                   | 191         |
| Christ as High Priest     |                   | 192         |
| Temple Diagram of 8 Steps |                   | 195         |
| Marriage                  |                   | 196         |
| Seven Last Plagues        |                   | 199         |
| Revelation 16             |                   | 200         |
| Revelation 18 & 19        |                   | 202         |
| The Final Judgment        |                   | 203         |
| Pope's Letter             |                   | 205         |
| Historical Evidences      |                   | 209         |
| Validity of the Bible     |                   | 212         |
| Scientific Evidence       |                   | 215         |
| Handouts                  |                   | 221         |

## PUBLISHER

Jesus Christ Prison Ministry

P.O. Box 770

Lucerne Valley, CA 92356

E-mail: [ministry@jcpm.com](mailto:ministry@jcpm.com)

Web Page: [www.jcpm.com](http://www.jcpm.com)





## BEFORE & AFTER

**“For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God...”. Romans 3:23.**

**“Be perfect, therefore, as your heavenly Father is perfect.” Matthew 5:48.**

Between those two verses lies the plan of salvation, the true gospel. From sinner to saint, fallen to risen, the plan of salvation is a method of redemption, recovery and renewal. The Bible presents the eight steps the Christian must travel to attain the perfect life of Christ. It is this system, this plan, that keeps us perfect.

The life of Christ, the Alpha and Omega, the Beginning and the End, shows us the Way to that perfect, sinless life. From the beginning of sin to the end of sin, the Bible reveals just how we can reach the perfect, sinless character of Jesus.

This workbook is an attempt to guide a person through the biblical process of transforming the nature of man from sinner to saint. It is intended for use by those who are sick and tired of the old life they are living. If sin, and the life you are now living, is hurting you and bringing grief to you and those you love, this workbook is for you. If you are ready to change your life so you can receive all the blessings that God wants for you, now is the time. **“No good thing does He withhold from those whose walk is blameless.” Psalm 84:11.**

As with any other instructional manual, you will get the most from this workbook when you cooperate with it and work the different sections that require your input and effort. You will only get out of it what you put into it. The more you put into it, the more you receive out. **“Whatever you do, work at it with all your heart, as working for the Lord, not for men...” Colossians 3:23.**

The writer of this book understands the sinfulness of sin. He has experienced firsthand the pain and suffering that sin endows to its recipients. The writer owned his own business and had a family with four wonderful children.

Sin took it all away.

The writer has also experienced the truth of scripture that says we can be new creatures. A new creature who no longer lives the old, sinful life but the new life of Jesus. By believing the scripture, **“work out your salvation with fear and trembling,”** the writer learned to work out the life that God wanted him to live. All this through the power of Jesus and through faith in **“God who works in you to will and to act according to His good purpose.”** Philippians 2:12, 13.

If you feel helpless to change your life, chained by circumstances and habits to a life of slavery and sin, I invite you to follow the path Jesus walked and break the bondage that weighs you down. God is love! His plan does work. 2 Corinthians 5:17 says, **“So that if any one is in Christ, that one is a new creature; old things have passed away; behold, all things have become new.”**

Some of the suggested equipment you will find helpful in using this workbook are: 1) a pencil and eraser or pen, 2) a set of color pencils or pens if you like to underline, and 3) a New International Version of the Bible or any you have. If you are using a good Bible you will want to keep and use for your studies and for giving Bible studies from what you have learned, please be very careful in marking in it.

Bringing a mind that is awake, ready to think critically, will also be of great value. We will be mining for gold and precious information. Be prepared to dig deep. I suggest setting aside four hours a day, one hour in the morning, one hour at lunch, one hour at supper and one hour before bed to dig and mine in God’s Word. **“Come now, let us reason together,” says the Lord.”** Isaiah 1:18. God is waiting anxiously for your intellectual communication.

The eight steps we will use in this workbook are the eight steps found in the book of second Peter. Peter puts in order the step-by-step process of salvation. The other writers of scripture use portions of the eight steps as needed in their specific concepts. But Peter lays them down, step by step, in the order of sequence for the Christian growth.

As you travel through the workbook, gaining ever-increasing insight, think about what you are learning. Put your beliefs to the test of God’s Word and watch your spiritual life grow.

In Matthew 5:13 Jesus says, **“You are the salt of the**

earth. But if the salt loses its saltiness, how can it be made salty again?" Why salt? Because salt is a cleanser. It is used to both preserve and to cleanse. If you have a wound, you put salt on it to clean it and heal it. That is what this book does. It cleanses your wounds of sin and preserves your eternal life. But remember, salt stings when you rub it into a wound. So will this book. If you are not mature enough to accept the cleansing of Jesus in your life, don't begin this book.

"To whom can I speak and give warning? Who will listen to Me? Their ears are closed so they cannot hear. The Word of the Lord is offensive to them; they find no pleasure in it." Jeremiah 6:10. I pray that is not you, but that you will listen carefully to what you are about to read and study.

*Ron*

## Related Texts

|                       |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Kings 8:47-50       | Ezekiel 44:23      |
| 2 Chronicles 6:38, 39 | Matthew 18:3       |
| Job 17:9              | Ezekiel 24:13      |
| Job 22:23             | John 1:13          |
| Job 33:9, 25          | Romans 12:2        |
| Psalms 51:10          | 2 Corinthians 4:16 |
| Isaiah 1:16           | Ephesians 4:22-29  |
| Jeremiah 7:5-7        | Titus 3:5          |
| Lamentations 5:21     | 1 John 3:9         |
| Ezekiel 22:26         | 1 John 5:18        |

# Brainwashing

Now I want to share something with you. I want you to understand how easy it is for you to be brainwashed by all these churches and people who do not know their Bibles nor have the Spirit of God. Listen carefully.

It is so very important to do what the Bible says. God loves you, the devil hates you. As you will be learning, the whole world is under the control of Lucifer. God is doing His best, but the majority of people have accepted the plan of Lucifer and not the plan of God. Therefore, be suspicious of every one and every institution. You must

test everything.

The reason God tells us in Isaiah to, "Come now, let us reason together," is so we won't get brainwashed. Reason, but use God's standard, rules and wisdom for doing the reasoning. No matter what anyone says, if it doesn't stand up to the wisdom of God, get away from them.

So how easy is it to be brainwashed? Easier than you think. Take the following test and see if you can be brainwashed. Be honest. If you lie to yourself, you are lost. Open your eyes and be honest with yourself so you understand how easy it is to be fooled.



A man leaves home jogging. He jogs a little way and turns left. He jogs a little way and turns left. He jogs a little way and turns left. As he is jogging home, he sees two men with masks on. Who are they?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Did you think "robbers" or "burglars"? I want you to answer that question. Do it truthfully. I want you to understand how easy it is to be brainwashed.



If you thought they were robbers and burglars, you were wrong. Do you see how simple it is to be wrong about something? You thought for sure you were right. Just like you thought your church was right, or your minister, or your way of thinking.

My friends, if you get your first thought wrong,

# FAITH

everything is wrong after that. That is what is happening in our churches, our government, in our homes, in our educational systems and in all society. We have gotten our first thoughts wrong and everything we are doing and thinking is all screwed up. That is why Jesus has to return and put it all back together again.

Think!!! There are more ways to interpret a word, phrase or concept. It all has to do with perception. Get your perception wrong and everything you do after that will be wrong. That is how most of us got into trouble in the first place. Somehow we got our perceptions all messed up. Somehow we got hooked up with people who told us things that were not true, but sounded good. Just like our little example above. It sounds so plausible to be robbers at “home”. Why? Because of the words, “Mask” and “home”. But they aren’t.



Get out your magnifying glass and look deeply into what is being said. God has provided this Bible study to take you deeper than you may have ever gone before into the Word of God. Don’t be afraid to learn. Think, then think some

more. Your eternal salvation depends on your thinking and learning the truth. The only way we can get to heaven is by knowing truth. It is only the truth that will set us free.

Let’s now take a look at this simple example at how easy it is to be brainwashed in our thinking. I am going to give it to you again, but I’m only going to add two words.

## BATTER UP!

A man leaves home jogging. He jogs a little way and turns left. He jogs a little way and turns left. He jogs a little way and turns left. As he is jogging home, he sees two men with masks on. Who are they?

Of course, the catcher and the umpire. See how simple it is to get your first thought wrong and be brainwashed? That is happening all the time in our churches. Ministers,



pastors, preachers, priests, are all giving us a “spin” and a story. Very few, says Jesus, are telling you the truth. I pray that this Bible study will be able to “un-brainwash” you.

“According to your faith will it be done to you.” Matthew 9:29. Jesus teaches us to have faith. Jesus was a strong believer in faith. “And without faith it is impossible to please God, because anyone who comes to Him must believe that He exists and that He **rewards** those who **earnestly** seek Him.” Hebrews 11:6.

**FAITH:** The word faith is used frequently. All my life while growing up in a Christian home I heard the word. Not until I stepped into prison did I stop to think what it meant. Sitting in a lonely cell I began to evaluate what I had been taught and where the teaching had gone wrong. It was at this point that I began to study the Bible in earnest to learn what had been missing in my “Christian” upbringing.

Living in prison I began to see that prisoners experience the concept of faith to a greater degree than most people in a free society. In prison there are limits and lines of demarcation. A prisoner has faith that if he disobeys the rules he will suffer severe consequences. Therefore he rarely breaks the rules. A prisoner has faith that if he crosses the perimeter line or climbs the fence he will be shot. This produces obedience and he does not cross the line or climb the fence. A prisoner has faith in the system that if he behaves in a certain manner he will be rewarded and/or paroled earlier. His faith leads him to **obey** and perform certain acts.

In reading the Bible, I discovered that this is precisely the way faith in God is to be understood. I am to practice “**obedience that comes from faith.**” Romans 1:5. Romans 1:17 states, “The righteous will live by faith.”

Romans 1:17 is interesting. Paul is quoting from the Old Testament. I went back to the Old Testament to see what light could be shed on this word “faith”. Habakkuk said, “But the righteous will live by *his* faith.” Habakkuk 2:4. The word “his” is not referring to a deity, but to you and me. That is interesting. You and I will live (eternally) by “our” faith. The word faith also had an interesting concept. In the Strong’s Concordance, the definition for this word “faith” is:

**“faithfulness, truth, faithfully, faithful, faith, stability, steady, truly, verily.”**

It gives the concept of firmness, fidelity, steadfastness, and steadiness. Faithfulness is the primary meaning. When you put all the meanings together one begins to see that the modern churches have misunderstood the concept of faith. Faith is not a “belief” but an “act”; faithfully discharging one’s duty. Work! A person who is faithful is a person who can be counted on to be obedient, trustworthy, reliable and determined to do what is

right. You might say he is faithfully **working out** his faith. “Let us fix our eyes on Jesus, the author and perfecter of our faith...” Hebrews 12:2. If we claim to have faith, we must have evidence that our faith is well placed.

## Related Texts

LEVITICUS 6:2

NUMBERS 5:6

NUMBERS 12:7

HEBREWS 11

REVELATION 2:19

1 CHRONICLES 5:25

1 CHRONICLES 10:13, 14

ROMANS 1:5

JAMES 2:22

REVELATION 14:12

made a decision to throw out the knowledge that my pastor, church and denomination had taught me and to study the instructions for truth. I wanted to know what went wrong. Either the Bible was a lie or the people who were telling me their “truth” were liars. I opened my Bible to begin an odyssey that changed my life. “Then you will know the truth, and the **truth will set you free.**” John 8:32. I found the truth and it did set me free.

Faith is being “**sure** of what we hope for and **certain** of what we do not see.” Hebrews 11:1. The key words are “**sure**” and “**certain**”. How many times would you flip a light switch on and off, on and off, before you lost faith and quit if it did not turn on the light? Two times? Three times? How many times before you were **sure** and **certain** that it did not work? Then what would you do? Change the light bulb and put in a new one that worked? In the Christian walk, why do people cling to their belief that doesn’t work? Why not dump it and get one that works?

## Real Life Situation

You see a man get into his car. He puts the key into the ignition and for 30 minutes he turns, turns and turns the key. Nothing happens. You move closer to see if you can help. As he turns the key, you hear nothing - no sound. You move closer and ask if there is a problem that you can help with. He answers politely that there is no problem, all is just fine.

*What would you think of this man?*

You ask the man why he continues to turn the key when it is obvious nothing is working? He replies that there is no problem. He tells you that the instructions he got with the car told him to have faith and it would work just fine. He says that he is practicing his faith and all is well.

*Now what do you think of this man?*

Seeing the instructions lying on the dashboard, you gently reach in and take them to read. The instructions say, “Have faith, **in the following procedures**, and the car will work just fine:

**1) flip blue switch under dash to connect ignition switch with battery.**

**2) Insert key and turn.**

*Now what do you think of this man?*

Yet over and over again we see people going to church, reading the Bible and praying. Doing the many “acts” without results. The life is still bound by sin, miserable, full of pain and sickness. If this sounds familiar and you see it taking place in your life, isn’t it time to take a hard look at the instructions again? Maybe you missed something. Maybe faith isn’t just “believing”, but believing what the manual **says** and **obeying** it.

When I landed in prison I realized that something was wrong. I

## FAITH & GOD

To have faith in God, or the Bible, it must prove itself to be **sure** and **certain**. Can we prove God and the Bible to be **sure** and **certain**? YES! Let us start with God.

- **Who is the God of the Old Testament?**
- **Who is the God of the New Testament?**
- **Who or what is “GOD”?**

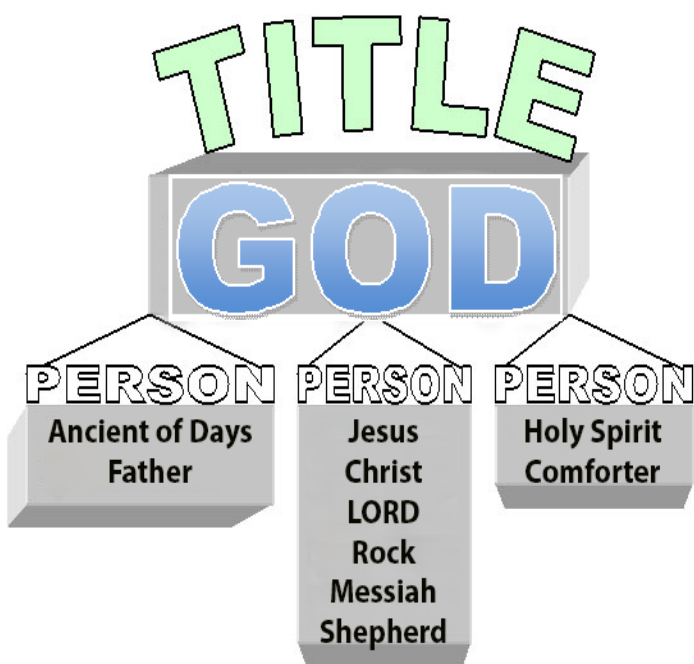
I needed to understand the concept of God. Understanding God was fundamental to my being set free. If I believed that the God of the Old Testament and the God of the New Testament were two different individuals it would be easy to change “truth” from Old to New. This, I learned, was part of the confusion in today’s worldly churches and organizations.

“GOD”, I learned, was not a person. The letters “G” “O” “D” are not the name of a person, entity or spirit. They are just letters. These letters represent a “title”. A friend of mine in the California Prison System is called an “inmate”. That is his “title”. “Inmate” is not a person; it is not his name. “Inmate” simply is a “title”, a label for easy identification of the over 200,000 inmates in the California prison system.

When the California Department of Corrections wants to inform all prisoners of rules or changes that will affect them, it does not notify all of them by name. It uses the label, title, “inmate”. That way, all inmates know that the rules apply to them, all 200,000 individuals. Even though the one title applies to all 200,000 inmates, all

200,000 inmates are not one. All are locked up and receive pretty much as each and every other “inmate” does. All have one “title” and yet each of them are individuals.

If the prison wants to contact my friend, it uses his name and personal designation number. The same is true for “God”. The Bible uses the title “God” when it speaks in general terms about those who have the “God” title. When it wants to get personal and identify which person with the “God” title it is talking about, then it names that specific individual. Three distinct individuals have the “God” title. This is what confused the Jews. Yet, if they had been true students of the Old Testament they would have understood that there were at least three individuals with the God-title.



Genesis 1:1 “In the beginning God...”. In the Hebrew language, the word we translate as **God** in this text is written in the plural form. It should be translated, “In the beginning (the) Gods...”. The Gods: the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit were all involved in planning and creating the world. They also became involved in a very personal way in making man. “Let **Us** make man in **Our** image, in **Our** likeness.” Gen. 1:26. “The man has now become like one of **Us**.” Genesis 3:22

“**Us**” and “**Our**” are key words. They are plural, as is “God”. They worked as a team in building our planet. The Father acted like the Architect. Jesus was the Builder and the Holy Spirit was the Inspector.

At this point in a study, a Rabbi would know there were more than just one individual with the God-title. How many more were there? The Jews might not know the answer to that question. How many was not important.

Only that there were more than one entity holding the God-title.

The problem that arises is when people misquote the Bible. How many times have you heard the phrase, “the Lord our God is one God”? The sad fact is, this is a misquote. The truth is found in Deuteronomy 6:4. “Hear, O Israel: the LORD our God, the LORD is one.” This does not say that there is one God, but that the **LORD** is one. You see, the individual with the God-title who is called “LORD” is only one person. He is not many. Only one Person of the three God-title holders can be called “Lord”. That Person is Jesus Christ.

In studying the book of Daniel, the Jews would have gained further understanding into this truth. In Daniel 7:13, 14, Daniel shows us the “Son of man” approaching the Ancient of Days. The Son of man (Jesus) was given authority, sovereign power, dominion and most importantly, worship.

The Ten Commandments strictly forbids the worship of any other person or thing. Therefore the Jews would have known that these two individuals had the God-title. They also knew from scripture that the Holy Spirit was a holder of the God-title. Put it all together and you have One, Two, Three individuals with the **one** God-title.

So what was the problem with the Jews? Why did they have such a problem with Jesus being their God? To understand their thinking you need to put yourself into their shoes. In 605 BC Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonian Empire, attacked Jerusalem. In three successive campaigns he wiped out Jerusalem and destroyed the temple of God. 2 Kings 21:1-18; 24:2-4; 25:1-21.

These calamities happened because the Jews were unfaithful to the God of heaven. They worshiped many “gods” including the god of Baal (the god of the sun: Sun-day worship), Asherah and Molech. When they returned from captivity to rebuild their nation, they learned their lesson: worship only the “one” God of heaven. But they made up their own “one-god” and again refused to listen to the truth of the Bible.

*Are you as guilty of believing what **you or your denomination** want you to believe instead of believing what the Bible says?*

The Jews worshiped the “one” god they made up. They became obsessed with the thought of “one”. From the Old Testament they knew the many names and designations of the God of the Old Testament. Some of these names were:

# Titles of God

- **YAHWEH** (translated *LORD* in NIV): Genesis 2:4, 5, 7-9, 15, 18, 19, 21, 22
- **ROCK**: Genesis 49:24; Psalm 18:2, 46; Isaiah 44:8
- **SHEPHERD**: Genesis 49:24; Psalm 23:1; Ezekiel 34:11, 12
- **I AM**: Exodus 3:14; Leviticus 18:2-6, 21, 30; 19:3, 4, 10, 12, 16, 18, 28, 31, 32, 37
- **THE WAY**: Deuteronomy 1:33; 4:7; 5:33; 8:6; 9:16; 10:12; 11:22, 28; 19:9; 26:17; 28:9
- **THE LIFE**: Proverbs 6:23; 8:35; Deuteronomy 30:20; 32:47
- **THE KING**: Psalm 5:2; 10:16; Isaiah 44:6

Now let's take a look at Jesus and why He was such a problem to the Jews. Their God, Yahweh, lived in heaven. Jesus (means "Yahweh saves") was walking among them. Jesus was allowing people to call Him **LORD** and worship Him as only a person with the "God-title" could be worshiped.

The **ROCK** (Jesus, not Peter) was the foundation of the Jewish nation and religion. This Person claimed to be that Rock. Matthew 16:18; 1 Corinthians 10:4; 1 Peter 2:5-8.

Their **SHEPHERD** was the One who led them into the land of Canaan. This Person claimed to be the true Shepherd. John 10:11, 14.

The "**I AM**" split the Red Sea for the Israelites to pass through. This Jesus claimed to be the "I AM". John 8:12, 14, 15, 16, 18, 21, 23, 24, 28, 38, 46, 49, 50, 58.

The **WAY AND THE LIFE** were references to the Ten Commandments and the Yahweh God who gave them. Jesus said, "I am the way and the truth and the life." John 14:6.

The "**son of man**" of Daniel was given worship. Jesus claimed to be the **son of man** - Matthew 8:20.

Yahweh was Israel's **King**. Jesus let the people call Him **King** - John 12:12-15. Then He took the title Himself - John 18:37.

The Jews were not ignorant of this. They knew that He was their Yahweh God of the Old Testament. Zechariah, one of their own priests, had been told by the angel that his son, John the Baptist, would prepare the way for their "Yahweh" God. Luke 1:17, 76. The Jews tried to kill Jesus because "He was even calling God His own Father, making Himself equal with God." John 5:18. Months later they changed from "being equal" to "You a mere man, claim to be God." John 10:33. In fact, Micah 5:2

of the Old Testament told the Jews that the Yahweh of the Old Testament would be born.

If the Jews, who were well acquainted with the Old Testament, recognized that Jesus claimed to be the God of the Old Testament, then I needed to recognize the claim of Jesus as the Yahweh God of the Old Testament.

This understanding of Jesus, as One with the God-title of the Old Testament, helped me to trust Jesus as God. When He spoke in the Old Testament as **LORD** I knew that He, as Lord in the New Testament, would not change. My Jesus was the same in both Old Testament and New Testament and today. My faith now had a Rock, a firm foundation I could put my faith (trust) in. I knew that the Lord Almighty of the Old Testament was the same Lord Almighty who died on the cross for me. Isaiah 44:6, 8; 45:5, 18, 22; Revelation 1:8, 17, 18.

Now that I knew who Jesus was, I could worship Him. Thomas did. He said, "My Lord and my God." John 20:28. All the disciples worshiped Him. Matthew 28:17. Jesus accepted their worship without breaking the Ten Commandments. Why? He was a holder of the **God-title**. Since He is a holder of the **God-title**, I knew He would not lie to me. Numbers 23:19; 1 Samuel 15:29; Malachi 3:6; Titus 1:2.

Not only was Jesus a Holder of the God-title, Paul tells us Jesus was the Creator Himself. "**For in Him all things were created**: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things have been created through Him and for Him." Colossians 1:16 Only God can Create. Now I was ready to listen to what He had to say. Are you?

## Related Texts

| OLD TESTAMENT LORD    | LABEL                   | NEW TESTAMENT LORD   |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>PSALM 27:1</i>     | <i>LIGHT</i>            | <i>JOHN 8:12</i>     |
| <b>ISAIAH 55:1</b>    | <b>WATER</b>            | <b>JOHN 7:37</b>     |
| <i>PSALM 23:1</i>     | <i>SHEPHERD</i>         | <i>JOHN 10:11,14</i> |
| <b>PSALM 18:2</b>     | <b>ROCK</b>             | <b>1 COR. 10:4</b>   |
| <i>PSALM 86:11</i>    | <i>WAY &amp; TRUTH</i>  | <i>JOHN 14:6</i>     |
| <b>PSALM 71:22</b>    | <b>HOLY ONE</b>         | <b>JOHN 6:69</b>     |
| <i>PSALM 98:6</i>     | <i>KING</i>             | <i>JOHN 1:49</i>     |
| <b>ISAIAH 44:6</b>    | <b>FIRST &amp; LAST</b> | <b>REV. 22:13</b>    |
| <i>EXODUS 3:14</i>    | <i>I AM</i>             | <i>JOHN 8:58</i>     |
| <b>EZ. 28:1,11,20</b> | <b>WORD</b>             | <b>JOHN 1:1, 14</b>  |
| <i>EZ. 37:5, 12</i>   | <i>RESURRECTION</i>     | <i>JOHN 11:25</i>    |
| <b>DANIEL 7:13</b>    | <b>SON OF MAN</b>       | <b>LUKE 18:31</b>    |
| <i>PSALM 100:3</i>    | <i>CREATOR</i>          | <i>JOHN 1:3</i>      |
| <b>ISAIAH 43:11</b>   | <b>SAVIOR</b>           | <b>MATT. 1:21</b>    |
| <i>DEUT. 30:20</i>    | <i>LIFE</i>             | <i>JOHN 1:4</i>      |

# Jesus as Son

One question that arises is what to do with the “Son” aspect of Jesus. How can Jesus be “God” when God sent His “Son”? The word “Son” seems to indicate a person who was born or came *into existence* at a specific point in time. John 3:16 was ambiguous for a few years.

But with the understanding of the concept of God as we have just learned, the text - John 3:16 - made perfect sense. We have already made the case explaining that “GOD” is not a person. It is a title, like president, and a quality, like love. Understanding this helps us to recognize that it wasn’t a person who sent His Son, but a quality, an essence, an attribute that sent Jesus Christ to die for us.

During desert Storm in 1991, Mr. Bush had to make a decision. As Mr. Bush he did not want to send men to fight a war with Iraq and die. He loathed war. But as a holder of the title, “President of the United States”, he had to do it. The quality, attribute of President, required him to uphold the office of President.

The attribute, quality, of the “God-title” is Love. When sin invaded the world, the attribute of the God title and the Holders of the God title were compelled to act out of that attribute. That attribute of love compelled Jesus to fight against the invader and give His life for His children. (Same with you when you become a Christian.)

A person may see a child being abused and may not act. But a person with the title and attribute of parent, especially the parent of that child, will act! The attribute compels him to.

What then do we do with the title “Son of God”? Was Jesus brought into existence and does He have a beginning? No! Many use the phrase, “I am the beginning and the end” to argue that Jesus was born into existence or created and is not God but a “Son of God”. But if that were the case then He must also have an end. But we know that He will never have an end just as He never had a beginning. He has always existed. The phrase “beginning and the end” is only an expression of limitlessness. So what do we do with “Son”?



Once we recognize that God is a title, “Son of God” becomes clearer. You see, Yahweh, Jehovah, Jesus, is the only entity with the God

title who **went through** the “birth” process. Unlike us, **who came into existence** at the time of birth, Jesus did not. (To make reading the Bible easier to understand, when reading the Old Testament, substitute “Jesus” for “LORD” and it will make more sense.)

He who is from everlasting to everlasting, simply **altered** His state of existence and went through the birth process. Now the Ancient of Days, the other person with the God title, could call Him “Son”. The “God title” now had a “God-title” Holder who went through the birth process.

Jesus, who is holder of the God title, is also holder of the birth title “Son”. No other persons of the “God-title” have this “birth” title. The Ancient of Days never went through the birth process. The Holy Spirit never went through the birth process. Only Jehovah did. He truly is the “Son” of God. “But you, Bethlehem Ephratha, though you are small among the clans of Judah, out of you will come for Me one who will be ruler over Israel, WHOSE ORIGINS ARE FROM OF OLD, FROM ANCIENT TIMES.” Micah 5:2.

Earlier it was shown that the Ancient of Days and Jesus both have physical bodies. Both have flesh and blood since we are created in their likeness and image. Yet many will point to John 4:24 and state that God is a “Spirit” and believe that they have no body or form. If this were the case, the Bible would be a lie and we would have no salvation. But there is a simple explanation for that text.

We must always read the whole verse, and Bible, to learn truth. Those who use only a portion of a text with no regard to the rest of it can make fools of themselves as 2 Peter 3:16 makes this very plain. The whole verse of John 4:24 reads, “God is spirit, and His worshipers must worship in spirit and in truth.”

If the word “spirit” is talking about a lack of physical form then we are in real trouble. Not one of us lacks a real, physical form. How are we going to worship God since you and I are “flesh and blood” and not a “spirit”? That would make no sense at all! But if we let the Bible explain itself, all is made perfectly clear.

John 6:63 states, “The words I have spoken to you are spirit and they are life.” This clearly shows that what Jesus is talking about is not a physical state of being, but a spiritual state of being. Who God wants are people who will worship Him “spiritually” in truth so that we might have life. There are two spiritualities fighting for control of our souls. We must fight the one spirit and allow the other to control us. We must become spiritually righteous through obedience to the teachings



of Jesus. These are the only “spirit” worshipers that God will accept.

Before ending this section I would like to clarify a couple of important points that seem to cause so much trouble to the simple minded. Names! There are those who will bring up the genealogy of Jesus in the New Testament books and show that they don’t agree with each other. There are different names and some with more names and some with less.

I would like to answer that as simply as I can. Let us use our own examples of names today. Remember, the New Testament genealogy of Jesus was written in Greek from Hebrew lists. Therefore, names can be changed in the translation. How many of you are from Spanish, German, Italian, Swiss, Asian or any “foreign” background in which your “family” name was changed when it was “Americanized”?

Also, think of yourself, an inmate in prison. How many different names do you have? You have your “given” name, “family” name, “street” name, “prison” name, “special names” your mom or aunt calls you by, “special names” your wife calls you by and who knows how many other “names”. Should we judge the Bible any different than we would judge our own selves today?

Let’s take an example: In Matthew 1:11 you have the name “Jeconiah”. But that is just a variation of the name, “Jehoiachin” as used in the Old Testament. Same person, different spelling. If you check out the list in Luke you will find no such name mentioned. Probably Luke is using a more abbreviated list. He may not have had access to the more complete list that Matthew had or was simply more interested in the major family heads. Anyone doing a genealogical search on their family understands those problems. Lots of “missing links”. I’m still finding “missing links” in my family’s genealogy.

Again, we see this problem with names in Proverbs chapter 31. Who is “King Lemuel”? Well, actually, there could be a simple explanation. Proverbs was written by King Solomon. Maybe he was called “King Lemuel” in chapter 31 because, if you read carefully, you will find that chapter 31 was taught him by his mother. “Lemuel” may be a term of endearment that she used for him when he was a little boy while teaching him these sayings. See how simple? How many of you have special names of endearment that have been given you by your mom, grandma and aunts, etc.?

### Related Texts

Psalms 84:1, 3  
Psalms 86:11 (Way, Truth)

Matthew 26:31  
Luke 1:76

Psalms 95:3, 6  
Psalms 98:6  
Psalms 100:3  
Psalms 144:1  
Psalms 145:1  
Isaiah 1:4  
Isaiah 2:3, 5  
Isaiah 5:24  
Isaiah 6:5  
Isaiah 9:2, 4, 6  
Isaiah 10:17, 20  
Isaiah 12:6  
Isaiah 17:7, 10  
Isaiah 26:4  
Isaiah 28:16

Luke 2:11  
John 1:1-5, 14, 49  
John 5:18, 40  
John 8:12, 58  
John 10:11, 14, 33  
John 20:28  
1 Corinthians 10:1-4  
Colossians 1:16  
1 Timothy 1:17  
Titus 2:13  
Hebrews 1:8  
Rev. 1:8, 17, 18  
Revelation 2:8  
Revelation 11:17  
Revelation 22:13

## Proof of the Bible

“The secret things belong to the LORD our God, but the things revealed belong to us and to our children forever...” Deuteronomy 29:29. The Lord God Almighty wants you to know that He is God and that there are no others. He wants you to be “**sure**” and “**certain**” about that. “Come now, let us reason together, says the LORD.” “I make known the end from the beginning, from ancient times, what is still to come... What I have said, that will I bring about; what I have planned, that will I do.” “Forget the former things; do not dwell on the past. See, I am doing a new thing!” “Therefore I told you these things long ago; before they happened I announced them to you... From now on I will tell you of new things, of hidden things unknown to you.” Isaiah 1:18; 46:10, 11; 43:18, 19; 48: 5, 6.

**Prophecy:** only God can predict the future with such accuracy that He named specific individuals hundreds of years before they were born and got the names spelled right. 1 Kings 13:2; 2 Kings 23:15-21; Isaiah 45:1-13; Ezra 1:1; 2 Chronicles 36:22. Yet one of the most accurate, continuous, long-term prophecies is found in Daniel chapter 2. Here Jesus lets it be known that He and He alone can call the future. The book of Daniel is chapter after chapter of prophecies. By studying these prophecies we can be sure and certain that Jesus is real and that the Bible has come from Jesus. Let us begin our study with chapter two of Daniel.

Daniel 2:26-45 “The king asked Daniel, ‘Can you tell me my dream and what it means?’ Daniel answered: ‘Your Majesty, not even the smartest person in all the world can do what you are demanding. But the God who rules from heaven can explain mysteries. And while you were sleeping, He showed you what will happen in the future. However, you must realize that these mysteries weren’t explained to me because I am smarter than everyone else. Instead, it was done so that you would understand what you have seen.’

“Your Majesty, what you saw standing in front of you was a huge and terrifying statue, shining brightly. Its head was made of gold, its chest and arms were silver,



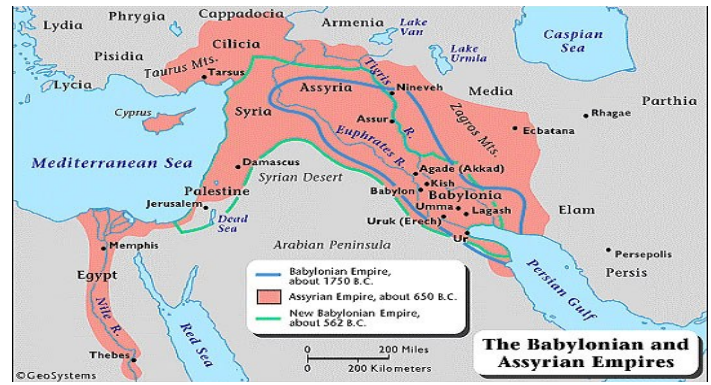
and from its waist down to its knees, it was bronze. From there to its ankles it was iron, and its feet were a mixture of iron and clay. As you watched, a stone was cut from a mountain--but not by human hands. The stone struck the feet, completely shattering the iron and clay. Then the iron, the clay, the bronze, the silver, and the gold were crushed and blown away without a trace, like husks of wheat at threshing time. But the stone became a tremendous mountain that covered the entire earth.'

"That was the dream, and now I'll tell you what it means. Your Majesty, you are the greatest of kings, and God has highly honored you with power over all humans, animals, and birds. You are the head of gold. After you are gone, another kingdom will rule, but it won't be as strong. Then it will be followed by a kingdom of bronze that will rule the whole world. Next, a kingdom of iron will come to power, crushing and shattering everything.'

"This fourth kingdom will be divided--it will be both strong and brittle, just as you saw that the feet and toes were a mixture of iron and clay. This kingdom will be the result of a marriage between kingdoms, but it will crumble, just as iron and clay don't stick together. During the time of those kings, the God who rules from heaven will set up an eternal kingdom that will never fall. It will be like the stone that was cut from the mountain, but not by human hands--the stone that crushed the iron, bronze, clay, silver, and gold. Your Majesty, in your dream the great God has told you what is going to happen, and you can trust this interpretation."

Now comes the fun part. How do we interpret the dream? As with all doctrines of the Bible, we let the Bible interpret itself. Who does the head of gold represent? Once we have the starting point the rest is easy. Nebuchadnezzar was head of the Babylonian Empire. He built it. As head of the Babylonian Empire he would be its representative. Babylon became a "world" empire in 605 BC. It was the first nation of that region to rule from Babylon all the way down to Egypt.

"Beginning about 2100 BC, Mesopotamia was subjected to a century-long period of enemy intrusions, by Amorites from the west and the people of Elam from the east. Around 2000, however, the state of Babylonia emerged in Mesopotamia. More extensive and better integrated than its predecessors, it produced in time the famous Code of Hammurabi (c.1800 BC), which defined the legal rights of all sections of the population, including the slave inhabitants. Four centuries (1600-1200) of Kassite rule was followed by the even longer ascendancy



of Assyria, an empire based in northern Mesopotamia that eventually included Syria and Egypt. Assyria finally fell (612 BC) before a coalition of the Indo-European Medes from the north, the Persians from the east, and a resurgent Babylonia, under the Chaldean dynasty, in the south."\*

"The ancient city of Babylon, under King Nebuchadnezzar II, must have been a wonder to the traveler's eyes. 'In addition to its size,' wrote Herodotus, a historian in 450 BC, 'Babylon surpasses in splendor any city in the known world.'"

"Herodotus claimed the outer walls were 56 miles in length, 80 feet thick and 320 feet high. Wide enough, he said, to allow a four-horse chariot to turn. The inner walls were 'not so thick as the first, but hardly less strong.' Inside the walls were fortresses and temples containing immense statues of solid gold. Rising above the city was the famous Tower of Babel, a temple to the god Marduk, that seemed to reach to the heavens.

"While archaeological examination has disputed some of Herodotus's claims (the outer walls seem to be only 10 miles long and not nearly as high) his narrative does give us a sense of how awesome the features of the city appeared to those that visited it. Interestingly enough, though, one of the city's most spectacular sites is not even mentioned by Herodotus: The Hanging Gardens of Babylon, one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World." (Unmuseum.org)

The interpretation went on to say that Babylon would not last. In fact, a kingdom that was inferior to Babylon would defeat it. Just as silver is inferior to gold.

The **second kingdom:** the arms and chest of silver. "Eastward from the Mesopotamian lowlands, the Zagros Mountains and the Iranian Plateau beyond became another area of cultural creativity with the rise of the kingdoms of Media and Persia."\*

"By the 6th century BC the two great river-valley powers, Egypt and Babylonia, as well as Syria-Palestine and Anatolia, fell to the power of the rising Persian Empire. Under CYRUS THE GREAT (r. 550-530 BC), this empire ruled all of the Middle East except for Egypt,

which fell to his son CAMBYSES II (r. 529-521 BC). Aramaic, the language of the politically impotent Aramaeans, became the language of government documents and of trade throughout the Persian Empire and gradually became the spoken vernacular of Mesopotamia, Syria, and Palestine.” “The numerals that the Mesopotamians invented are still used, although now called Arabic.”\*

“Persian domination over southwestern Asia was initiated by two famous rulers, CYRUS THE GREAT (r. 549-530) as conqueror and DARIUS I (r. 522-486) as administrative organizer of the vast empire. The empire extended from Persia proper, south of the Caspian Sea, to the Punjab highlands on the borders of India in the east and across Mesopotamia and Syria to Egypt and Anatolia in the west. An effective administration was established, including 21 administrative satrapies, each under officers who collected tax assessments and maintained police control. Courier horsemen maintained contacts between the several administrative segments.”\*

“A particularly noteworthy aspect of Persian rule was the emergence of the monotheistic religious faith of ZOROASTRIANISM. The founder, Zoroaster (c. 628-521 BC) developed the concept of the god Ahura Mazda, dedicated to developing an earthly kingdom of justice and truth along with the promise of immortal bliss. At the outset, the novel concept aroused understandable opposition from civil and religious authorities who had a stake in the older polytheistic order, but it later earned the support of King Darius. The monotheistic concept of the Persians related directly to the emergence of the other monotheistic faiths of Southwest Asia—Judaism, Christianity, and Islam.”\*

Continuing in Daniel 2:39, we find that a **third kingdom** of bronze would rule over the earth. “Alexander III, king of Macedonia, the first king to be called “the Great,” conquered the Persian Empire and annexed it to Macedonia. The son of PHILIP II and OLYMPIAS, he was born in 356 BC and brought up as crown prince. Taught for a time by Aristotle, he acquired a love for Homer and an infatuation with the heroic age. When Philip divorced Olympias to marry a younger princess, Alexander fled. Although allowed to return, he remained isolated and insecure until Philip’s mysterious assassination about June 336.\*



“ALEXANDER THE GREAT, Philip’s son and successor, continued his father’s plans. Aided by a battle-hardened Macedonian army that possessed the cavalry necessary for a campaign against the Persians, Alexander conquered the entire Persian Empire in ten years (334-325). He created an empire stretching from Macedonia

to the Indus River, a magnificent achievement that had even more important, far-reaching effects.”\*

“He defeated the small force defending Anatolia, proclaimed freedom for the Greek cities there while keeping them under tight control, and, after a campaign through the Anatolian highlands (to impress the tribesmen), met and defeated the Persian army under DARIUS III at Issus (near modern Iskenderun, Turkey). He occupied Syria and—after a long siege of Tyre—Phoenicia, then entered Egypt, where he was accepted as pharaoh. From there he visited the famous Libyan oracle of Amon (or Ammon, identified by the Greeks with Zeus). The oracle certainly hailed him as Amon’s son (two Greek oracles confirmed him as son of Zeus) and probably promised him that he would become a god. His faith in Amon kept increasing, and after his death he was portrayed with the god’s horns.”\*

“After organizing Egypt and founding Alexandria, Alexander crossed the Eastern Desert and the Euphrates and Tigris rivers, and in the autumn of 331 defeated Darius’ grand army at Gaugamela (near modern Irbil, Iraq). Darius fled to the mountain residence of Ecbatana, while Alexander occupied Babylon, the imperial capital Susa, and Persepolis. Henceforth, Alexander acted as legitimate king of Persia, and to win the support of the Iranian aristocracy he appointed mainly Iranians as provincial governors.”\*

**The fourth empire** was to be as strong as iron. Even today some history books and encyclopedias call Rome the “Iron Empire”. “Ancient Rome grew from a small prehistoric settlement on the Tiber River in Latium in central Italy into an empire that encompassed the entire Mediterranean world. The Romans developed a civilization that formed the basis for modern Western civilization. The history of Rome comprises three major epochs: the kingship from the legendary foundation of Rome to 509 BC; the republic from 509 BC to 31 BC; and the empire, which survived until Rome finally fell to the German chieftain Odoacer in AD 476.”\*

“The Macedonian king PERSEUS, the son of Philip V, also tried his luck against Rome (Third Macedonian War, 171-168). His army was slaughtered (168) at Pydna in Greece. After an uprising Macedonia was annexed (148) as a Roman province; in 146 the Achaean League was crushed and Corinth was destroyed. The entire Greek world was under Roman hegemony.”\*

“Caesar conducted a series of campaigns, winning victories at Zela (modern Zile) in Anatolia (47), at Thapsus in North Africa (46), and at Munda in Spain (45). Back in Rome, he was now firmly in control of the government. He set about reforming the laws and reorganizing the administration of the colonies. Under Caesar, Rome controlled all of Italy, Gaul, Spain, Numidia, Macedonia, Greece, Palestine, Egypt, and

virtually all of the Mediterranean islands. Greek art and philosophy had permeated Roman culture, and Rome perceived itself as the civilizer of the barbarians.”\*

“Octavian, assuming (27 BC) the title and name Emperor Caesar Augustus, carried forth many of the reforms of Julius Caesar. He established his government in 27 BC, rebuilt the city of Rome, and became a great patron of the arts. During his reign the Roman Empire was at its height; it had no rivals—thus began the 200 years of peace known as the Pax Romana. The system of ROMAN ROADS and a sophisticated postal system helped unify the empire. Commerce and trade boomed among the far-flung possessions. Augustus reformed the Senate, made the system of taxation more equitable, and revived the census. He died in AD 14 and was succeeded by his stepson Tiberius.”\*

“Hadrian’s Wall is an ancient fortified wall that crosses northern England at its narrowest point, between the River Tyne and the Solway Firth. Built by order of the Roman emperor HADRIAN, it reflects his conservative policy of consolidating Rome’s imperial acquisitions. The Roman attempt to subjugate Scotland was abandoned, and construction of the wall as a permanent northern boundary for Roman-held territory was begun about AD 121 or 122. The wall was not meant to serve as an actual line of defense, but rather as a barrier to large-scale, swift movement by hostile forces and as a screen behind which Roman troops could maneuver.”\*

“Some stretches of the wall were originally constructed of turf, but the entire 118 km (73.5-m) length was later rebuilt in stone. It formed a barrier 2 to 3.5 m (6.6 to 11.5 ft) thick and about 7 m (23 ft) high, protected on either face by a ditch. The route was chosen to take advantage of available high ground. Towers containing gates were built into the wall at intervals of 1 Roman mile (about 1,522 m\1,665 yd), and two smaller turrets were placed at equal distances between each pair of “mile castles.” Its garrisons were housed in large forts constructed across or adjacent to the wall. The wall was temporarily superseded by the ANTONINE WALL, in 142, but was reoccupied in 158 and again became the frontier after abandonment (c. 180) of the Antonine fortifications. It remained the frontier until withdrawal (c.400) of the Roman army from Britain. Substantial sections still stand.”\*

“Along with Greek democracy, one of the greatest political achievements of Mediterranean antiquity was the Roman Empire. It was the Romans who inherited the civilization of the Greeks and passed it on to medieval and modern Europe. The boundaries of their state, however, bore no relation to “Europe.” It was a multiracial agglomeration in the tradition of the Persian Empire. Rome conquered the CELTS of western Europe, and some of the more advanced GERMANIC PEOPLES of central Europe, along with the Greek and Hellenistic

communities of the eastern and southern Mediterranean and their subject peoples. This was a military and administrative triumph of colossal proportions. The extension of Roman citizenship to all the inhabitants of the empire in the 3d century AD was an equally breathtaking act of wisdom. But Rome’s most important institution was its army. The roads, amphitheatres, temples, and villas that attest to Rome’s greatness, and the establishment of a unified culture reaching from Britain to the eastern frontier of Syria, all depended on the strength of the Roman legions. In the days of the republic, a military career was the basis of a political one. Under the empire, most emperors attained power by military success or by seizing it forcibly. As for Europe, it was the army that conquered it, patrolled it, and civilized it, beginning with Spain and Gaul, north to what is now Scotland, east to the Elbe in Germany, and into central Europe as far north as the Danube, which the philosopher-emperor Marcus Aurelius died defending against the Germans in AD 180. The Alps, the Balkans, and the Carpathians were all incorporated into the empire—at least temporarily. Dacia (modern Romania) was conquered by Trajan in the early 2d century but abandoned by Aurelian at the end of the 3d. Under Rome’s aegis, trade routes were opened up between Vienna and the Baltic.”\*

“As time went on, however, the Roman Empire became more Asiatic than European. The imperial bureaucracy functioned under an autocratic monarch who in the East was worshiped as a god, as were the Hellenistic kings who preceded him. Egypt supplied both the grain that fed Rome and much of the government’s revenue. Oriental religions became increasingly popular. In the 4th century one of them, Christianity, became the state religion, and the capital was moved east to Byzantium (Constantinople) on the border between Europe and Asia. That city was to be Europe’s greatest urban center for the next thousand years. Simultaneous with this outward orientalization, however, a combination of Roman law, Christianity, and the tradition of Greek thought was giving rise to the unique European concept of the responsible individual, fearing God and understanding freedom as the willing acceptance of just laws that are the human reflection of divine law.”\*

“Rome brought together under its rule all the richer settled communities of the Mediterranean world. Its characteristic demographic unit was the coastal city, oriented toward sea borne commerce, with self-governing institutions. Many of the cities of the Roman Empire were of Greek or Carthaginian origin and had once been independent. Their wealth and beauty made them the envy of the less developed Celtic and Germanic peoples who lived beyond the Roman frontiers. The tension between a prosperous settled community and poor but resourceful nomads was a recurring theme in the history of the premodern world. In the early days of Rome the Celts of northern Italy were a frequent threat; later, when

GAUL had been subdued, it was the German tribes of central Europe that exerted pressure on the borders of the empire. As early as the end of the 2d century BC they broke through and penetrated as far as Milan before being turned back. Later, during the Pax Romana—the period of internal peace that marked the 1st and 2d centuries AD—the Roman armies were strong enough to keep the northern frontier secure.”\*

The interpretation of the vision goes on to say that this empire would not be defeated as much as break apart. This is exactly what happened. As the feet and toes of the image were part of clay and part of iron, so Rome divided into nations that were partly weak and partly strong.

## The Empire Falls Apart

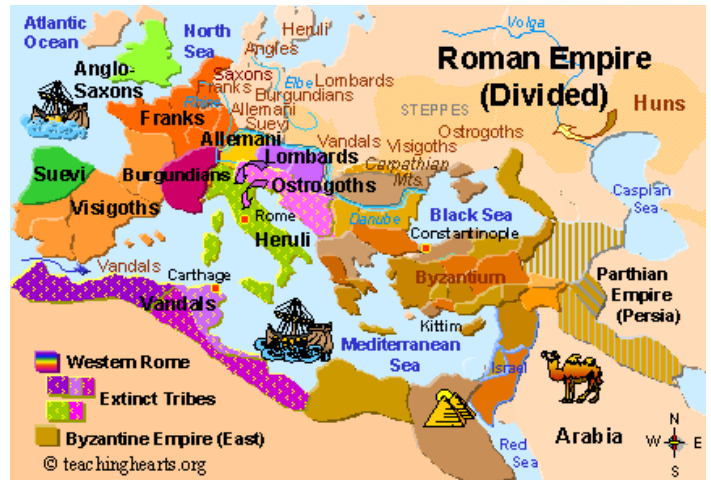
“In the 3d and 4th centuries, however, the empire experienced a series of crises. Civil wars, a declining population, economic malaise, excessive bureaucracy, and flagging civic spirit all combined to weaken Roman ability to resist outside incursions. The Germans began to migrate into Western Europe, sometimes forcing their way in, sometimes settling there as Roman allies and with the acquiescence of the Roman authorities. In the 5th century the empire was divided between east and west. The Eastern (Byzantine) Empire, with its long tradition of civilized and urban life, proved the more durable, surviving for another millennium. In the western half the Roman system gradually disintegrated and was replaced by a collection of kingdoms ruled by various Germanic peoples: the GOTHs occupied Italy and Spain; the FRANKS, under the MEROVINGIAN kings, established themselves in Gaul; and Britain was conquered by the ANGLO-SAXONS. The collapse of the Roman Empire in the west led to a synthesis of Latin and Germanic elements that was to be the basis of medieval European culture.”\*

“CONSTANTINE I (r. 306-37) may be regarded as the second founder of the empire. He successfully fought off his numerous opponents and, once firmly in power, reorganized the entire system of local government (into prefectures, dioceses, and provinces). He legalized Christianity (and was himself converted), thereby enlisting the church in service of the state. He moved the capital to BYZANTIUM, which he had rebuilt and renamed Constantinople (330). Constantine’s reforms were not enough, however, to halt the slide of the empire into impotence.”\*

“From 395 the empire was permanently divided into the Latin Western and the Greek Eastern or BYZANTINE EMPIRE, with its capital at Constantinople. The Eastern Empire lived on until 1453, when the Turks conquered Constantinople. The Western Empire was overrun and

gradually dismembered by various Germanic tribes. In 410 the Visigoths (see GOTHs) and in 455 the VANDALS plundered the city of Rome. Finally in 476 the German ODOACER deposed the last emperor of the west, the child Romulus Augustulus. And so the history of ancient Rome ended ingloriously. The idea of Rome and of the Roman Empire, however, survived its fall, and from the symbiosis of Roman and Germanic elements arose the new states and societies of medieval Europe.”\*

The basic nations that arose from the breakup of Rome were: England, Germany, France, Switzerland, Spain, Portugal, Italy (Lombards), Ostrogoths, Vandals (North Africa), and Heruli.



As the prophecy stated, the people would mix their seed but would not remain united. Sure enough, the medieval kings and queens of these nations intermarried trying to maintain peace among themselves. But that never happened. They continued to war. Yet with all the wars, they never united. Charlemagne, Napoleon, Hitler, Communism and others have tried to unite Europe.

Now we come to the Rock which was cut out without hands and filled the whole earth. Since there is no break in the time-line, or continuum of the dream, that Rock was Jesus coming as a baby to earth. That Rock, the spiritual Kingdom of God, grew into a mountain that could not be moved. Through Christ Himself, then through His disciples and on down to every true believer in Christ who is obedient to His Laws, that spiritual Kingdom of God is filling the whole earth today. As it filled the whole earth, it demolished the pagan systems and their governments that came from the Roman Empire. That Rock, Jesus Christ and the Christian movement of today, is still accomplishing that work.

The Jews of Christ’s day understood the interpretation of Daniel chapter 2. God gave the interpretation to Daniel that the Jews might know and understand when their Messiah would come. However, they were looking for a Messiah that would conquer the Romans. They had followed the prophecy through history and recognized the Roman Empire as the legs of iron.

Even by the time of the first coming of Christ, the ten kingdoms of Europe could be discerned. Therefore, the Jewish Christians, within a few years after the death of Christ, realized that He was the fulfillment of the “Rock” and that they were the fulfillment of that prophecy in taking the Spiritual Kingdom of God to the entire world. They understood that when it was finally to have been taken to the whole world, Christ would culminate His Kingdom by coming a second time to crush all the kingdoms of the world and set up His everlasting Kingdom.

This is a 2,600 year old prophecy, still in existence today. God’s word can be trusted. Every particular of this prophecy has come true. It began in 605 BC and continues, unbroken, down to our day, and will continue beyond until fulfilled. Nothing outside of the Bible can match this prophecy.

This prophecy has helped me to believe in Jesus. I believe His Word, the Old and New Testaments of the Bible. They have never fallen short or proven false.

There will come a day when Jesus, the Rock, will come a second time. He will come and put an end to all the governments of the world. He will come and raise His people to everlasting life and take them back to Heaven with Him. These prophecies will be explored in greater detail in upcoming chapters.

“But the day of the Lord will come like a thief. The heavens will disappear with a roar; the elements will be destroyed by fire, and the earth and everything in it will be laid bare.” “That day will bring about **the destruction of the heavens by fire, and the elements will melt in the heat.** But in keeping with His promise we are looking forward to a new heaven and a new earth, the home of righteousness.” 2 Peter 3:10, 12, 13.

---

# GOODNESS

Once we believe that God is and that His Word is sure and certain, we now have an obligation, “but it is **not to the sinful nature**, to live according to it. For if you live according to the sinful nature, **you will die**; but if by the Spirit you **put to death** the misdeeds of the body, you will live.” Romans 8:12,13. We learned that faith produces obedience. Romans 1:5. All true Christians will live in obedience to Jesus Christ, our LORD, God and Savior.

Many Christians believe in Jesus Christ only as their Savior. They think that all they must do is name the Name of Christ and they will be saved **in their sins**. To back their claim they will cite Acts 4:12; “Salvation is found in no one else, for there is no other Name under

heaven given to men by which we must be saved.” They will also cite Acts 2:21, “And everyone who calls on the Name of the Lord will be saved.”



Peter tells us that ignorant and unstable people distort the writings of Paul and the other scriptures to their own destruction - 2 Peter 3:16. How is this so? By taking selected texts and separating them from the balancing texts. The Bible is like a jigsaw puzzle; two or three pieces do not make the whole picture. If you want the complete

picture, **you must put all the pieces together.**

The same is true of the Bible. If a teacher, preacher, minister, church or denomination only give you selected verses to support their positions, but leave off the balancing texts which give the whole picture, have nothing to do with them. They are leading you to destruction.

The balancing texts to Acts 4:12 and Acts 2:21 are, “when God raised up His servant, He sent Him first to you to bless you **by turning each of you from your wicked ways.**” Acts 3:26. “Everyone who confesses the name of the Lord **must turn away from wickedness.**” 2 Timothy 2:19. This second step is just as vital for eternal life as the first. We must believe Jesus when He tells us that the wicked will be destroyed and the righteous will live. We must believe Jesus so much that we would rather pluck out our eyes or cut off our hands than to be cast into hell as a sinner.

Jesus asks us to “Follow Me”. Matthew 9:9. We are to follow His example of righteousness through His power. “I can do all things through Him who gives me strength.” Philippians 4:13. Do you believe you **can do all things through Jesus**? Or has your church taught you that you can only do **some** things?

Jesus tells us that we are to produce fruits, works, deeds, and actions that are in keeping with our belief in Him. Matthew 7:16-20. We, in this second step, are to do (work) all the goodness we know to do. We spent enough time living for the world and the things of the world. It is time to enter through the **narrow** gate that leads to life. “Men will praise God **for the obedience** that accompanies your confession of the gospel of Christ.” 2 Corinthians 9:13. “And we pray this in order that you may live a life worthy of the Lord and may please Him in every way; bearing fruit **in every good work**, growing in the knowledge of God.” Colossians 1:10.

“Our people must devote themselves to **doing what is good.**” Titus 3:14. Doing what is good? What a novel

idea. Yet how hard it is for us to do the good we know we should. Those little smiles to brighten the lives of those around us. Simple courtesies that help make life pleasant. The words of encouragement which strengthen the weary of heart. What a different world this would be if we “set an example for the believers in speech, in life, in love, in faith and in purity.” 1 Timothy 4:12. If each of us made a decision each day to practice our belief and live the example of Jesus, what happiness we could bring to ourselves and to those around us.

Unfortunately, the sad fact is, **we are** practicing our beliefs. Everything you do is done because you believe it to be right. If not, you wouldn't do it. Therefore, what you are doing is what you really believe. Check yourself. Look at your actions and ask yourself - Is this who I really want to be?

In our work, in our play, at home and in society, our one desire should be to be like Jesus. The life of Jesus should be our every thought. His divine nature our study. The love of Jesus must be revealed through our bodies so that this dark world of sin may see the Light of Life shining through us.

“Therefore as God’s chosen people, holy and dearly loved, clothe yourselves with compassion, kindness, humility, gentleness and patience. Bear with each other and forgive whatever grievances you may have against one another. Forgive as the Lord forgave you. And over all these virtues, put on love, which binds them all together in perfect unity.” Colossians 3:12-14.

When Jesus comes to take the righteous home with Him, He will tell them why they have **earned** the right to eternal life. In Matthew 25, we read where He says to the righteous, “Come, you who are blessed by My Father, take your inheritance, the kingdom prepared for you since the creation of the world. For I was hungry and you gave Me something to eat, I was thirsty and you gave Me something to drink, I was a stranger and you invited Me in, I needed clothes and you clothed Me, I was sick and you looked after Me, **I was in prison and you came to visit.**” Verses 34-36.

He says nothing about the big churches you built or how much money you spent on the carpet or organ. The question is, what have you done for Jesus in the person of the poor, needy and those in prison?

The wicked will be sent to eternal punishment because **they earned their reward.** How? By not doing for Jesus in the person of the poor and needy. “For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, that each one may **receive** what is due him **for the things done while in the body,** whether good or bad.” 2 Corinthians 5:10.

Do all the good you can. “Therefore, as we have opportunity, let us do good to all people, especially to those who belong to the family of believers.” Galatians 6:10.

From this moment on, if you are an inmate, never think of yourself as “a prisoner of the state”. No, now think of yourself as a “volunteer missionary” for Jesus in that dark world. I guarantee, for the rest of your time you will be the happiest person in prison. God will bless you as you obey Him as His “volunteer missionary”.

## Related Texts

|                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| Genesis 4:7        | Matthew 9:35-38 |
| Leviticus 19:11-18 | Romans 15:14    |
| Psalms 5:4, 5      | Galatians 5:22  |
| Psalms 15:1, 2     | Hebrews 6:5     |

---

# KNOWLEDGE

“The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge.” Proverbs 1:7. As we walk in the way of the LORD, we have an obligation to learn all we can about this new way of living. As I have worked with prisoners over the years, they tell me that there are certain rules and regulations they must learn and live by. The prison environment has boundaries that have to be learned and obeyed. If they break some of them they could lose their lives. Breaking others would bring about differing consequences of differing severity.

The same is true with the Christian walk. There are rules of conduct and rules of behavior that line out our obligations and commitments for living. And why do we have these rules? To protect us, our families and society. Sin kills and destroys. It causes pain and binds us in slavery and to passions that ruin our lives.

Knowledge is the key to success. If you know what the speed limit is on a certain section of the road, you won't get a ticket for exceeding the speed limit. If you don't know what the limit is, you might be endangering



yourself and others. If a sign warns you to slow down because the bridge is out ahead, and you ignore the sign, you could lose your life. Read! Learn! Study for truth!

David tells us, “You have laid down precepts **that are to be fully obeyed**. Oh, that my ways were steadfast in obeying Your decrees!” Psalm 119:4, 5. These precepts are for our good. They warn us of troubles ahead and the way to get around them. By ignoring them we bring upon ourselves most of the trouble we are in. Then we blame God. Not His fault, He has warned us.

“How can a young man keep his way pure? By living according to Your word... I have hidden Your word in my heart **that I might not sin against You**.” Psalm 119:9, 11.

Many claim to be Christians. Many people are turned off to Christianity because they see the actions of those who call themselves “Christians”. But Jesus says, “Not everyone who says to Me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven, but only **he who does** the will of My Father who is in heaven.” Matthew 7:21.

Just because you claim “the Name”, or go to church, or carry the Bible does not make you a Christian. To be a Christian you must walk as Jesus walked and live the **obedient life He lived**. Look at the people going to church. Are they living as Christ?

“Then you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free.” John 8:32. Knowledge is power. Truthful knowledge is more powerful. The scripture is truthful knowledge. We need to learn how to use scripture.

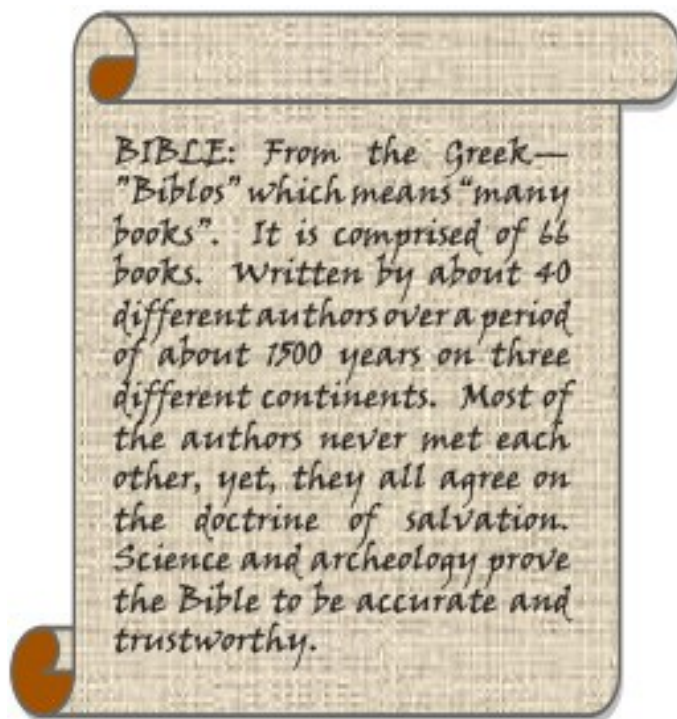
Since Jesus is a holder of the God-title, and is the LORD of the Old Testament and New Testament, I know that I can believe both Old and New Testaments. Prophecy teaches me to accept both Old and New Testaments as relevant in my life today. Peter tells us that scripture (Old Testament to Peter) is of God - 2 Peter 1:19-21. Since God is eternal, scripture is eternal - both Old and New Testaments. It is very important to understand that the Old Testament has never, nor ever will be, done away with. You can stand on it as a sure and certain rock of truth.

In his letter to Timothy Paul states that the Holy Scriptures “are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus.” 2 Timothy 3:15. Most of the Christian world teaches that the Old Testament is no longer needed. It teaches that all you need is the New Testament to learn your salvation. But Paul refutes that doctrine. 30 years after Christ died Paul was teaching and preaching Old Testament (“**scripture**” to Paul) as needed to show us salvation.

Paul went on to say, “All **scripture** is God-breathed and is useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness, so that the man of God may be thoroughly equipped for **every good work**.” 2 Timothy 3:16, 17. Paul again lets it be known that the Old Testament

scriptures (the **only scriptures** known to Paul) are what we need to be studying. This book stands on the truths of Paul, and more importantly, the truths and teachings of Jesus. “They have Moses and the prophets, let them listen to them.” “If they do not listen to Moses and the prophets, they will not be convinced even if someone rises from the dead.” Luke 16:29, 31.

The whole New Testament teaching, (there was no New Testament, as we have it today, until about 300 years after Christ), is to return us, point us, to the teachings of the Old Testament. The only way we can understand the New Testament is to know the Old Testament. The New Testament was written to “men who know the Law.” Romans 7:1. For you to know the truths of salvation, you must study the Old Testament scriptures. Then you will understand the New Testament. As a whole, they will change your life.



## Plan of Salvation

The plan of salvation is very simple. Even a child can understand it. “I tell you the truth, anyone who will not receive the kingdom of God like a little child will never enter.” Mark 10:15. A child must be able to understand the truths of salvation or salvation would be limited to those with mature minds and understanding. But God is no respecter of persons. His plan for salvation is so simple that any person: child, adult, man, woman, black, white - anyone can conform to the plan.



You **don't need to belong to a church** or know any special doctrine. You don't need it explained by any special person. Jesus has already explained the plan of salvation. "If you **hold to My teaching**, you are really My disciples. Then you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free." John 8:31, 32.

In the privacy of your own home, with your own family, with friends or by yourself, you can learn and do the plan of salvation. Just listen to Jesus. The point of this workbook is to reacquaint you with the teachings of Jesus. Jesus invites you to "Follow Me." (Not a Church.) Luke 5:27. Through His life and words we are going to let Jesus reveal His plan of salvation. "But the world must learn that I love the Father and do **exactly** what My Father has commanded Me." John 14:31.

The plan of salvation started in the Garden of Eden. The Lord provided Adam and Eve with the perfect home. No sin, no death, no pain, no heartache; only peace, joy, happiness and praise to the One who provided it all. But to keep this perfect world, and to maintain the eternal life they were living, they had to do one very small thing - **obey God**. God was their creator and the maintainer of their eternal life. All they had to do was stay connected to that source through obedience.

God invited them to enjoy all the fruit He had created. They were free to eat of all the thousands of fruits available to them. But they were to show their love to their Creator and Sustainer of life by not eating of the one tree - the tree of knowledge of good and evil. So simple: Be obedient and live; disobey and die. Genesis 3:1-4.

Adam and Eve believed the lie. The lie that they could disobey God and still live. Pain, suffering and death entered the world. The same condition applies to us. If we will obey Jesus and follow Him, we will live. If we disobey, we will die. "Do I take pleasure in the death of the wicked? Declares the Sovereign LORD. Rather, am I not pleased when they **turn from their ways** and live." "Rid yourselves of all the offenses you have committed, and get a new heart and a new spirit. Why will you die, O house of Israel? For I take no pleasure in the death of anyone, declares the Sovereign LORD. **Repent and live.**" Ezekiel 18:23, 31, 32.

After Adam and Eve were escorted from the Garden of Eden, lost by their disobedience, they began to populate the earth. They taught their sons and daughters the requirements of God. The promise of God, "I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and hers; He will crush your head and you will strike His heel," Genesis 3:15 - pointed to a time when a promised Messiah would come to destroy the work of the



devil who had separated man from God. That hope was also manifested through a pictorial symbol of the plan of salvation and the work of the promised Messiah.

If anyone had sinned against God's commands, he was to bring a perfect lamb and sacrifice it on an altar. By bringing a helpless, innocent lamb of any wrong doing, the sinner was reminded that his sin would one day cause the death of the innocent Messiah.

One day Cain and Abel came before the Lord to offer sacrifices. Both had sinned and needed to show by their **symbolic** sacrifices that they were sorry for their sins and had repented from them. However, Cain brought produce of his own making and labor (his own works of self-righteousness - church works) to present before the Lord. He substituted **his own work** for the lamb he was required to bring. Abel, on the other hand, brought to the Lord the required sacrifice: God's required work, a lamb. The Lord accepted Abel's offering of faith, while rejecting Cain's.

This demonstrates the fact that God wants us to do exactly what He tells us to do. You cannot offer **your works** as a substitute for God's simple required works for us. No human effort, outside of the plan of God, will in any way be looked upon with favor by God **for the atonement of past sins (Justification)**.

Cain was very angry and upset that God did not accept the offering of his own works. God was very frank with him. "If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? But if you do not do what is right, sin is crouching at your door; it desires to have you, but you must master it." Genesis 4:7.

In the Bible, the plan of salvation is called the "Everlasting Gospel". It is the same gospel from Genesis to Revelation. At no time has it changed. The writer of Hebrews tells us this. "For we also have had the gospel preached to us, **just as they did**; but the message they heard was of no value to them, because those who heard did not combine it with faith." Hebrews 4:2. (Cain heard it, but did not obey it: unfaithfulness.)

No difference between then and now. As in the Old Testament with Cain, so in the New Testament. The gospel will be of no value to us if we do not combine it with faith in the Messiah. Faith produces obedience to

what Jesus commands.

If we do not have faith in the Messiah to give us the power to stop sinning, then the gospel will do us no good and we will be lost. No matter how much church going you do, or singing in the choir, or reading of the Word of God. If you don't experience the life-changing power of Jesus Christ in your life, and stop sinning, you are wasting your time.

Even Jesus acknowledged that salvation "is from the Jews." John 4:22. You just can't get around it. It is not a new gospel of the "New Testament", but one that has been taught from the Garden of Eden. The Old Testament was written to be an example and "warnings for us." 1 Corinthians 10:11. Then he goes on to say, "be careful that you don't fall." Verse 12.

The plan of salvation was laid right from the beginning: do what is right, obey God, be accepted and be eternally saved. Do wrong: sin, and die. Your choice. You must master sin. You must live righteously. If you make a mistake, confess it, **turn away from it**, calling on the name of Jesus in faith to forgive. But if you **continue** in sin, trying to do your own works, you will die. "We shouldn't complain when we are being punished for our sins. Instead, we should think about the way we are living, and turn back to the LORD." Lamentations 3:39, 40. The three concepts of the "everlasting gospel", "Plan of Salvation", is what Jesus taught:

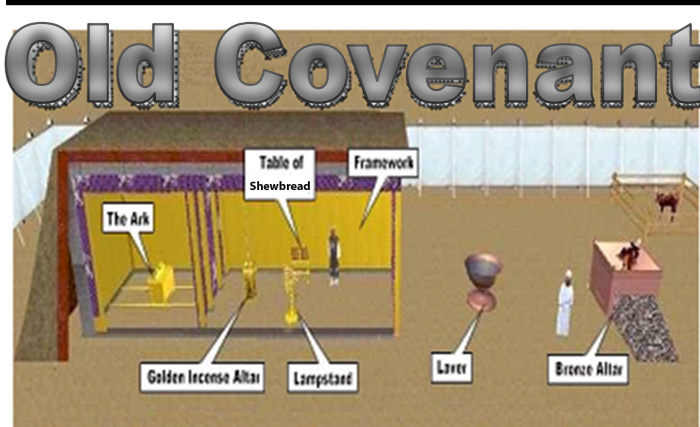
1. **Be perfect: Matthew 5:48**
2. **Stop sinning: John 5:14**
3. **Keep the Ten Commandments to get your eternal life: Matthew 19:17**

so the whole world could see what God was doing to bring salvation to each individual human being.

Almost 2,500 years after sin entered the world, God chose a people, the descendants of Abraham, to be His representatives to the world. They were to be His ambassadors to the nations, revealing His salvation to all the earth. In a most dramatic way He let the world know that He was setting aside the Israelites to be His nation and the depositories of His plan of salvation for the world. Ezekiel 5:5.

Once He removed His people from the things and influences of Egypt and the world, He got their attention and then put them to work for Him. He instituted a "Broadway" play to be enacted day after day. Each day the world could watch the plan of salvation played out. The play would not bring salvation, but simply reveal it - typify it - symbolizing what was going on in heaven. "Then have them make a sanctuary for Me, and I will dwell among them. Make this tabernacle and all its furnishings exactly like the pattern I will show you." Exodus 25:8, 9.

"Set up the tabernacle according to the plan shown you on the mountain." Exodus 26:30. This plan was a copy, shadow, of the temple in heaven. The priests of Israel were to "serve at a sanctuary that is a **copy and shadow** of what is in heaven. Hebrews 8:5. Let's take a closer look at this **symbolic** sanctuary and see what valuable, salvation producing information it gives.



There came a time when the world needed to see a more comprehensive plan of salvation. As the world's population grew in size, people began to forget the plan and lost sight of the simplicity of salvation. They began to substitute their own acts of worship (paganism) to replace the true. God needed to set up a complete picture



The temple was laid out so that the entrance faced east, toward the rising of the sun. (So their faces, when entering, would be away from the sun. No "sun-day" worship here.) Exodus 27:13. As the sun rose, the day

began at the temple. Priests and Levites prepared for the symbolic, “operatic play” that would unfold that day. There was the cleansing of the sanctuary, the tending of the lamps and the cleaning of the water and utensils. They also had to prepare the altars of incense and sacrifices for the day’s use. Exodus 40:17-33; Leviticus 24:4-8; Numbers 18:1-7; 28:1-8.

The furniture of the temple was sparse and simple. (How different from our churches of today.) In the outer court, as you came through the entrance, was the Altar of Sacrifice which represented our death to self. Next was the Basin of Water which was used by the priests to clean their hands and feet before entering the Holy Place. This symbolized our need to cleanse our lives and hearts before entering the presence of God.

As one entered the Holy Place, he would notice on his right the Table of Shewbread. On it were laid 12 pancake type pieces of bread, stacked in two columns of six each. Directly in front was the Altar of Incense which was used for burning incense. To the left was the seven stick candelabra which gave light to the temple.

Behind the curtain was the Most Holy Place in which the Ark of the Covenant resided. Above the Ark was the Mercy Seat (Seat of Grace) where the Divine Presence of God dwelt. Exodus 37:1-9; 40:34, 35.

---

## Most Holy Place

We will begin our symbolic study with the Most Holy place. The Ark of the Covenant, or Ark of the Testimony as it was also called, was the most important article of furniture in the sanctuary. It contained the Ten Commandments. The Ten Commandments are also known as the “Covenant” or the “Testimony”. Deuteronomy 4:13.

Many believe that the Ten Commandments were first given to the world at Mount Sinai. That is **not** correct. The Ten Commandments were given to Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden. Sin is the transgression of the law. 1 John 3:4. As Paul stated, “where there is no law there is no transgression.” Romans 4:15. Since all have sinned - Romans 3:23 - the law had to be in the Garden of Eden. God’s law is eternal - Psalm 119:18, 152, 160 - even Abraham kept the law of God. Genesis 26:5. Since Jesus Christ, who is God, is the same yesterday, today and forever, so is His law. God is not experimenting with laws to find out which ones we can keep.

From the Garden of Eden the law was **verbally** passed down from generation to generation. The sons of God

kept the law alive in the world. But the sons of men (those born to Cain) began to marry the sons (daughters) of God (those born of Seth). Soon wickedness dominated the world. Genesis 6:5-7.

God destroyed their world and started over with the righteous family of Noah. Noah passed on the righteous requirements of God’s law to his children and grandchildren. Again the world moved away from God’s law. Again God found a righteous man, Abram, and called him out of the wicked nations to keep the covenant of love alive in the world. Genesis 17:1, 2, 7-9; 26:5.

By the time God brought the descendants of Abraham, Israel, out of Egypt, the Israelites had become a great nation. Because they were a great nation, the Egyptians were afraid of them and put them in slavery. Exodus 1:8-11. During this period of slavery, they slowly forgot the verbal requirements of the Ten Commandments. God was about to change all that.

On Mount Sinai, Jesus came down and wrote the Ten Commandments with His own finger on two tablets of stone. “These are the commandments the Lord proclaimed in a loud voice to your whole assembly there on the mountain from out of the fire, the cloud and the deep darkness; and **He added nothing more**. Then He wrote them on two stone tablets and gave them to me.” Deuteronomy 5:22.

“And He added nothing more.” The Ten Commandments, and the Ten Commandments only, is our great guide for living. The reason they were written on **stone** was to show, symbolize, their **everlasting** quality. Jesus said of them, “**Do not think that I have come to abolish** the law or the prophets; I have **not come to abolish** them . . . I tell you the truth, until heaven and earth disappear, not the smallest letter, nor the least stroke of a pen, will by any means disappear from the law until everything is accomplished.” Matthew 5:17, 18. Since **all** has not been accomplished, and heaven and earth have not yet passed away, neither have the Ten Commandments. “Heaven and earth will pass away, but My words (Ten Commandments spoken by Jesus) will never pass away.” Matthew 24:35.

The books of Moses, the other laws that had to do with civil government, health and religious worship, were written on **parchment**. That was to symbolize their **temporal condition**. They would be **replaced**. **Why? Because they were only for the Israelites.**

The Ten Commandments resided in the Ark of the Covenant. Exodus 31:18; 32:15, 16; 40:20; Deuteronomy 10:4, 5. Their message, however, was to reside **in the heart**. “Oh, that their **hearts** would be inclined to fear Me and keep all My commands always, so that it might

# Outer Court

(JUSTIFICATION)

go well with them and their children forever.” Deuteronomy 5:29. “These commandments that I give you today are to be **upon your hearts.**” Deuteronomy 6:6. (Old Testament).

The Most Holy Place was home to the Divine Presence of God. Exodus 25:21, 22; Leviticus 16:2. The Most Holy Place represented, symbolized, the body of man as the temple of God. God wants to dwell in our body temples. “Don’t you know that you yourselves are God’s temple and that God’s Spirit lives in you?” “Do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, who is in you, whom you have received from God?” 1 Corinthians 3:16; 6:19.



Above the Ark of the Testament, where the Ten Commandments dwelt, was the Mercy Seat. As stated earlier, God is merciful and gracious. He sits on the Mercy Seat dispensing mercy and grace to a lost and sinful people. Sin is the breaking of the Ten Commandments. The wages of sin is death. The gift of God, who resides on the Mercy Seat, is life. Grace is to keep **us physically alive**, while the plan of salvation is to bring us back into atonement (at-one-ment) with God, so we can have eternal life.

The curtain that separated the Most Holy from the Holy Place symbolized the wall of sin that separates the sinner from his God. “But your iniquities have separated you from your God, **your** sins have hidden His face from you so that He will not hear.” Isaiah 59:2. When Adam and Eve sinned, they separated themselves from the presence of God and had to be escorted from the Garden of Eden. But in His great love, mercy and grace, God provided a way for us to return and commune with Him so He can hear and listen to us. “Dear friends, if our hearts do not condemn us, we have confidence before God and receive from Him anything we ask, **because we obey His commands and do what pleases Him.**” I John 3:21, 22. The symbolic play, or act, that represents the plan of atonement, went on in the courtyard and Holy Place of the temple.

“If a member of the community sins unintentionally and does what is forbidden in any of the Lord’s commands, he is guilty...” Leviticus 4:27-29. In bringing the helpless, sinless, perfect lamb to the temple, the sinner recognized that he was a sinner and that he needed the perfect Messiah to take his place and pay the penalty for his **past** sins. If the Messiah did not take the sinner’s place, the sinner himself must bear the penalty and die.

Symbolically the sinner’s eyes were directed toward the time in the future when the Messiah would come, dying on the cross, offering Himself as the perfect “Lamb of God”. By faith the sinner accepted the death of the Messiah as having already taken place for him.

As the sinner brought the little lamb to the temple, he had to walk it, or carry it, past hundreds of tents. The temple was located in the middle of the camp of the Israelites. A sinner had to leave the camp, go to the flock, purchase a lamb – about 50 dollars worth - and carry it back through the community. As he takes the lamb to the temple, it may be bleating all the way. You might not be able to keep it a secret. The whole community knew that you had sinned. “You may be sure that your sin will find you out.” Numbers 32:23. (How we inmates know all too well.)

Sin is terrible. God wanted them, and us, to know the terrible cost of sin. Not only in monetary terms, about 50 dollars for the lamb, but also the life of the lamb. The whole point was to make it costly to the sinner; encouraging the sinner to turn away from sin and stop sinning.

In our lives, sin is terrible. Look at the terrible cost it extracts from us and those we love. Money, time and emotions that should be going into our families and God, is spent on tobacco, alcohol, drugs, sinful sex, sinful pleasure, sinful ambition, TV and etc.

But greater than all these is the cost in wasted lives. Lives broken and destroyed because of sin. Lungs and livers destroyed. Cancer and AIDS are rampant. Lives and families devastated. But the greatest sacrifice was the sacrifice of the Life of God. “For God so loved the world that He gave His One and only Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish but have eternal life.” John 3:16.

When the sinner brought the lamb to the entrance of the temple, he placed his hands on the head of the lamb and

confessed his sins. This act was symbolic of the confession and repentance the sinner was to **have already made** to God who was seated on the Mercy Seat: the seat of Grace.

Looking into the temple the sinner could see the glory of God emanating from the Most Holy Place. He was reminded of the sacredness of the Ten Commandments and the cost of breaking them. He was to humble himself and submit to the authority of God in his life and turn away from his sinful ways.



The outer court, with its Altar of Sacrifice and the Basin of Water, represented **Justification** in the life of the sinner. Since the only wage we can pay for our **past sins is death** (Romans 6:23) the sinner had to have a substitute for his own wages. If the sinner paid the price for His own sin

he would never be able to repent: he would be dead. The Outer Court provided that way of escape from the wages of sin: death. By looking unto the “Lamb of God” the sinner **could repent from His past sins** and look to the Lamb of God (Jesus) as his substitute for the wages of past sins.

Just as the lamb **did not** save the sinner, or give the sinner eternal life, neither does justification save the sinner and give him eternal life. It only allows the sinner to put away his **past sins**. Justification only cleans out the house (Luke 11:24-26), you must now fill the house with **sanctification** in order to have eternal life. That is what the Holy Place is all about.

David understood the concept that the sacrifices were only symbolic **and did not cover or clear his sins**. He prayed, “Have mercy (grace) on me, O God, according to Your unfailing love; according to Your great compassion **blot out** my transgressions. Wash away all my iniquity and cleanse me from my sin... Create in me a pure heart, O God, and renew a steadfast spirit within me. Do not cast me from Your presence or take Your Holy Spirit from me... Then I will teach transgressors Your ways, and sinners will turn back to You... You do not delight in sacrifice, or I would bring it; You do not take pleasure in burnt offerings. **The sacrifices of God are a broken and contrite heart**, O God You will not despise.” Psalm 51: 1, 2, 10, 11, 13, 16, 17.

David recognized the offering of the lamb as useless,

only symbolic. He understood that the blood of the **lamb did not cleanse him**, or even cover his sin. He knew that God alone can cleanse and remove sin; and only from “a broken spirit, a broken and contrite heart.” It wasn’t the blood of a lamb that covered the sin, or took it away; it was God Himself. “Nathan replied, ‘the **Lord has taken away your sin**. You are not going to die.’” 2 Samuel 12:13. (Notice: The LORD, not a lamb.)

Isaiah was also aware of the mission of the Messiah. He understood the **symbolism of the lamb**. “Surely He (Jesus) took up our infirmities and carried our sorrows, yet we considered Him stricken by God, smitten by Him, and afflicted. But He was pierced for our transgressions, He was crushed for our iniquities; the punishment that brought us peace was upon Him, and by His wounds we are healed. We all, like sheep, have gone astray, each of us has turned to his own way; and the Lord has laid on Him the iniquity of us all. He was oppressed and afflicted, yet He did not open His mouth; He was led **like a lamb** to the slaughter, and as a sheep before His shearers is silent, so He did not open His mouth.” Isaiah 53:4-7.

After the sinner slit the throat of the lamb and killed it, the fat portions of the lamb were to be removed and burned on the altar as an aroma pleasing to the Lord. Leviticus 4:31. The fat portion symbolized sin in the sinner’s life. Through the fire of the Holy Spirit, the sinner was to burn up sin in his life. He was to fall into the arms of the Almighty God and receive the power of the Holy Spirit to live the righteous, Ten Commandment keeping life. “Surely the arm of the Lord is not too short to save, nor His ear to dull to hear.” Isaiah 59:1.

As we let the power of God into our lives to burn out sin, our lives become a living sacrifice; a life without sin, where the fat portions are burned up. “Therefore, I urge you brothers, in view of God’s mercy, to offer your bodies as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to God - this is your spiritual act of worship. **Do not conform any longer to the pattern of the world**, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind.” Romans 12:1, 2.

After sacrificing the lamb, the priest turned to enter the Holy Place. But before he could enter, he must first wash his hands and feet in the basin of water. This washing **symbolized** the washing away of sin. Once we have confessed our sins, and Jesus has paid the penalty for those **past sins**, we have an obligation to wash them away in the purifying life of Christ. We must not allow sin to remain in us. “Everyone who confesses the name of the Lord **must turn away from wickedness**.” 2 Timothy 2:19. “In the same way, count yourselves **dead to sin** but alive to God in Christ Jesus. Therefore **do not let sin reign in**

**your mortal body** so that you obey its evil desires. **Do not offer the parts of your body to sin**, as instruments of wickedness, but rather offer yourselves to God, as those who have been brought from death to life; and offer the parts of your body to Him as instruments of righteousness.” Romans 6:11-13.

Through the symbolism of washing and baptism, we enter a new life with God. “I have been crucified with Christ and I no longer live, but Christ lives in me. The life I live in the body, I live **by faith (not grace)** in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself for me.” Galatians 2:20. It is through the Divine Power of Christ that we can maintain our sinless Christian walk with Christ, our Messiah, our Sacrifice. “You were taught with regard to your former way of life, **to put off your old self** which is being corrupted by its deceitful desires; to be made new in the attitude of your minds; and to put on the new self created to be like God in true righteousness and holiness.” Ephesians 4:21-24.

# Holy Place

(SANCTIFICATION)

As the sin of the sinner was **symbolically** transferred to the lamb, the priest then took some of the blood to “sprinkle it before the Lord seven times in front of the curtain.” Leviticus 4:17, 18. This symbolic transference represented the reality of sin being transferred from the sinner, through faith, to the Sin-Bearer, Jesus Christ. “Look, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world.” John 1:29.

Our sins are then transferred, through Jesus, into the temple in heaven. As we pray and confess our sins, Jesus stands as the representative of man. Just as the priest stood as representative of Israel. Our sins are removed from us and placed in the temple, as the blood was sprinkled in the temple.

When the priest entered the Holy Place, on his right, on the North side, was a table with bread on it. This bread was called the Bread of the Presence. Symbolically cleansed from sin the priest and sinner now entered the presence of God. He had an obligation to study the words of God for truth to keep him from future sins. “I have stored up your word in my heart, that I might not sin against you.” Psalm 119:11. “His Divine Power has given us everything we need for life and godliness through **our knowledge of Him.**” 2 Peter 1:3. The table with the Bread of the Presence represented the knowledge of God. Jesus said, “I am the bread of life... I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If

anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever.” John 6:48, 51.

By constantly eating of and obeying the Bread of Life, the Word of God - we maintain a sinless, spiritual relationship with Christ. “I am the vine; you are the branches. If a man remains in Me and I in him, he will bear much fruit; apart from Me you can do nothing. If anyone does not remain in Me, he is like a branch that is thrown away and withers; such branches are picked up and burned.” John 15:5-7.

The Word of God, the Ten Commandments, came down and **walked among us in the flesh.** This was done through Jesus so we could see how the Ten Commandments were to be lived. He who gave them and commanded them to be upon the heart, took humanity, human flesh, and lived them as **an example for humanity to follow.** “The Word became flesh and made His dwelling among us. We have seen His glory.” John 1:14. “The words I have spoken to you **are spirit** and they are life.” John 6:63.

On the other side, across from the table of the bread, on the South side, stood the seven candlesticks. These candlesticks gave light to the temple. As we study, learn and be obedient to the ways we are to walk and live, our lives become more like Jesus. “To this you were called, because Christ suffered for you, **leaving you an example**, that you should follow in His steps. He committed **no sin**, and **no deceit** was found in His mouth.” 1 Peter 2:21, 22.

Drawing out the Christian walk might look something like this:



Studying to be like Jesus develops the divine nature within us. “So that through them you may participate in the divine nature and escape the corruption in the world caused by evil desires.” 2 Peter 1:4.

Now your character begins to shine with the glory of God. The words of God obeyed in you, like the candlesticks, by the Holy Spirit, give light to your body temples. Then it will shine out to all around you. “In the same way, let your light shine before men, that they may see your **good deeds** (works) and praise your Father in heaven.” Matthew 5:16.

“I am the light of the world.” John 8:12. His light wraps around us and enfolds us, exploding in us and radiating to the entire world. Just as the sun is exploding its light to the heavens and the earth to warm them and give us life, we are to “shine like stars in the universe as you hold out the word of life.” Philippians 2:15, 16.

The sinner has now come back into atonement (at-one-ment) with God. He is now sinless in the eyes of God. Past sins have been atoned for: Justification. He now lives without sin at the present time: Sanctification. By keeping his eyes on Jesus and His Ten Commandments, talking “about them when you sit at home and when you walk along the road, when you lie down and when you get up,” he lives the perfect life of Christ. Deuteronomy 6:7. This is what Sanctification is all about.

“Therefore, my dear friends, as you have always obeyed... **Continue to work out your salvation** with fear and trembling, for it is God who works in you to will and to act according to His good purpose. So that you may become blameless and pure, children of God without fault in a crooked and depraved generation.” “For if you continue to do these things, you will **never fall.**” Philippians 2:12, 13, 15; 2 Peter 1:10.

“Those who belong to Christ Jesus **have crucified the sinful nature** with its passions and desires. Since we live by the Spirit, let us keep in step with the Spirit.” Galatians 5:24, 25.

The last article of furniture in the temple’s Holy Place, in front of the Most Holy Place, was the altar of incense. The priest would fill the censor and burn it to God. While it burned, he would offer up prayers to God on behalf of the Israelites. The priest symbolized Jesus Christ who stands in the presence of the Ancient of Days and offers up prayers on our behalf.

As a human, on earth, He offered up prayers for us. He leaves us an example to follow. We need to learn to pray for each other. Pray often, pray fervently, pray specifically. Jesus’ life was a life of prayer. Miracles happen when we pray and live obediently.

At this point we need to bring back the point of what the writer of Hebrews says about the temple services and sacrifices. “This is an illustration for the present times, indicating that the gifts and sacrifices being offered were **not able** to clear the conscience of the worshiper. They are only a matter of food and drink and various ceremonial washings – external regulations applying **until the time of the new order.**” Hebrews 9:9, 10. That “new order” was the death of Jesus in the “New Testament”.

Jesus Christ has been our High Priest since Adam and Eve sinned. It has been Jesus who has forgiven our sins ever since the first prayer of confession and repentance was offered. “I have forgiven them.” “The Lord has taken away your sin.” “You shall acknowledge no God but Me, no Savior except Me.” Numbers 14:20; 2 Samuel 12:13; Hosea 13:4. In both the Old and New Testaments, Jesus Christ has been our only High Priest, our only Savior, our only Forgiver of sins. Look to Jesus and Jesus only.



| <b>OLD BIRTH</b>     | <b>NEW BIRTH</b>              |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>BORN INTO SIN</b> | <b>BORN TO RIGHTEOUSNESS</b>  |
| <b>BORN OF FLESH</b> | <b>BORN OF THE SPIRIT</b>     |
| <b>SON OF ADAM</b>   | <b>SON OF GOD</b>             |
| <b>OLD NATURE</b>    | <b>DIVINE NATURE</b>          |
| <b>SLAVE TO SIN</b>  | <b>SLAVE TO RIGHTEOUSNESS</b> |

Jesus called this new life a new birth. “I tell you the truth, no one can see the kingdom of God unless he is born again.” John 3:3. Paul says it this way, “Set your mind on things above, not on earthly things. ...**Put to death**, therefore, whatever belongs to your earthly nature.. and have **put on the new self**, which is being renewed in knowledge in the image of its Creator.” Colossians 3:2, 5, 10.

#### OTHER INTERESTING NOTES

The book of Exodus is about the giving of the Ten Commandments and the building of the tabernacle to house it.

The book of Leviticus is related to the “Outer Court” and the “Holy Place”. It is concerned with worship, ordinances, regulations, sacrifices and implementing them into a civil code.

The book of Deuteronomy is almost exclusively on the keeping of the Ten Commandments.

# New Covenant

“By calling this covenant ‘new’, he has made the first one obsolete; and what is obsolete and aging will soon disappear.” Hebrews 8:13. What is the writer of Hebrews talking about? If we serve a God who does not change, how can this be a “new” covenant? In fact, the writer of Hebrews tells us in Hebrews 13:8 that Jesus is the same yesterday and today and tomorrow.

The best way to look at this is to look at it historically. The writer of Hebrews 8:13 is referring us to a quote he used from Jeremiah 31:31-33. This quote has nothing to do with “New Testament” times. Jeremiah was writing in reference to the time when the Jews would be returning from the Babylonian exile in 538/37 BC. That was about 500 years before Christ.

Over and over again the Israelites broke the covenant that they had agreed to keep with God. It wasn't God who broke His covenant of love, it was the nation of Israel. “Because this nation has violated the covenant that I laid down...” Judges 2:20. “It is because this people abandoned the covenant of the Lord, the God of their fathers,” Deuteronomy 29:25. Each time they broke it, it had to be renewed. “All these now join their brothers and nobles, and bind themselves with a curse and an oath (to follow the Law of God given through Moses the servant of God and to obey carefully all the commands, regulations and decrees of the Lord our Lord.)” Nehemiah 10:29.

The same was true in the New Testament. The Jews had again broken the covenant of love and it had to be renewed. “You have let go of the commands of God and are holding on to the traditions of men... You have a fine way of setting aside the commands of God in order to observe your own traditions!” Mark 7:8, 9.

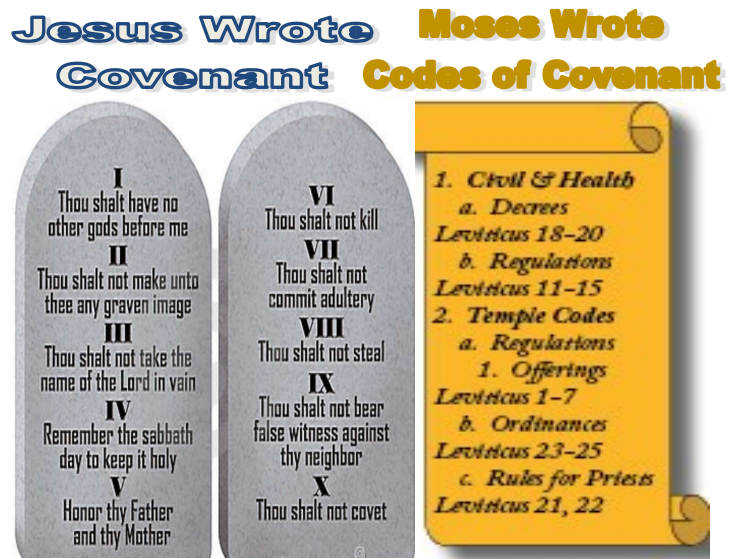
When the Jewish exiles returned to Jerusalem, they renewed the broken covenant. Jeremiah 31:23 explicitly states that the “new” covenant is for the returning exiles. The “new” covenant was simply a renewal of the old covenant, since they had broken it. All of this is confirmed in the book of Nehemiah. Nehemiah was in the service of King Artaxerxes and returned to Jerusalem to help renew the covenant. If you read chapter nine entirely, pay close attention to verses 13, 16, 17, 29, 32, 34, 38. In chapter 10 this is shown specifically in verse 29.

So why did the writer of Hebrews bring Jeremiah up for discussion if it was for the Jews coming back from exile in 538/37 BC? Because he wanted to remind the readers

of the fact – which they knew all too well - that Israel was always breaking the covenant. As such, God was always renewing it. His point being that it should come as no great surprise that the Jews had broken it again and it needed to be renewed again.

But unlike the other renewals, this time the “Civil Codes” and “Temple Rituals” of the covenant were no longer needed. The covenant of love, the Ten Commandments, remained the same. **Only the civil, national and temple codes of the covenant had been done away with.**

To understand this better, we go back to Exodus. Exodus 20:1 says that God spoke all these words. Then it goes on to give the Ten Commandments. God spoke them, and He wrote them with His own finger. But the “codes” of the covenant were written by Moses; by the fingers of Moses: Exodus 21:1; Deuteronomy 29:1. This can be better understood if we draw it out.



The Ten Commandments are the foundation of all the world's governments and laws. All laws on earth are based on the Ten Commandments. They are also the foundation of God's Government and His throne.

Let me take you back into history and help you to “see” the dynamics at work, and the words that are used to help us understand this concept better:

1. Adam and Eve were given the Covenant by God in the heart. The Covenant between God and mankind was:
  - A. Man would accept God as his God
  - B. God would give mankind eternal life and everything he needed to live a happy joyous life on earth.
  - C. Terms of this Covenant: Obedience to the Ten Commandments.
2. God renewed the Covenant with Noah.



A. Terms of this Covenant: Obedience to the Ten Commandments.

3. God renewed the covenant with Abraham and his descendants to give them the Land of Promise.

A. Terms of this Covenant: Obedience to the Ten Commandments.

As the Israelites came out of Egypt, they were fresh from the hand of slavery. God wanted to make a great nation out of slaves. Using the Ten Commandments as their foundation and guide, the Israelites developed righteous decrees that explained how to implement the Ten Commandments into a workable civil code. These civil codes are found in the texts used in the illustration at the end of the chapter.

The decrees and some regulations were for the Israelites as a nation. They were an orderly codification of the principles of the Ten Commandments. As long as Israel stayed faithful to God He allowed them to remain as His nation and the throne of David enforced the national decrees.

But the Israelites rebelled against God and broke His covenant. He refused to forgive them - 2 Kings 24:3, 4 - and sent them off to exile. "All this took place because the Israelites had sinned against the Lord their God." "The Israelites secretly did things against the Lord their God that were not right." "But they would not listen and were as stiff-necked as their fathers who did not trust in the Lord their God." "The Lord had ordered them, 'Do not do as they do', and they did the same things the Lord had forbidden them to do." "They forsook all the commands of the Lord their God." "And sold themselves to do evil in the eyes of the Lord, provoking Him to anger. So the Lord was very angry with Israel and removed them from His presence." 2 Kings 17:7, 9, 14-18.

Civil codes were fine for civil order and justice, but the people still needed to be brought back into oneness and order with Heaven and Heaven's government. The ordinances and the other regulations had to do with temple worship. This is where the second part of the codes of the covenant came into play. The temple services brought them back into a relationship with the Kingdom of God.

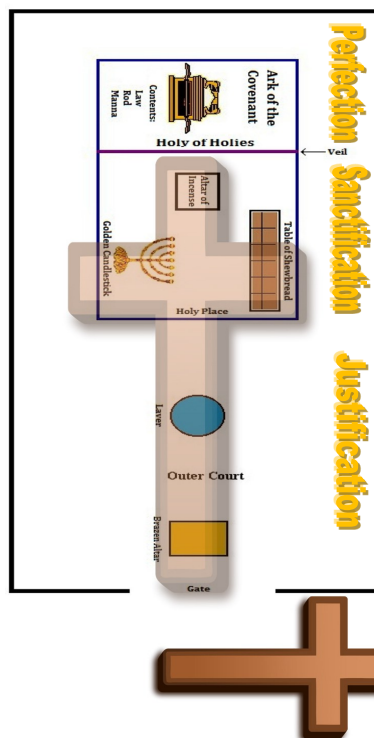
Through the temple service, praise and honor, faith and hope, ascended to God. Through communion with God, study and prayer, the people received the Holy Spirit of God to give them the power to obey God's Ten Commandments. They now were clean and obedient to God's law and the civil government.

The sacrificial, symbolic services helped the listeners to grasp by faith the reality of their prayers and acts of service and devotion. Through the symbolic services they could be sure and certain that the Messiah would come to blot out all the past sins that they had confessed and turned away from.

As the cross of Christ was lifted up, the Jewish nation no longer needed the symbols and shadows to point them to the Messiah. The substance had died. The lamb was no longer needed. The candlesticks were no longer needed. The bread was no longer needed. The altar of incense and basin of water were no longer needed. The feast days were no longer needed. Instead of looking forward in faith to the Messiah, we could now look back in faith to the Messiah. ***SAME faith, SAME gospel, SAME salvation in both Old and New Testament.*** Only the symbols changed.

"The former regulation (those referring to the temple) is set aside because it was weak and useless, (for the law [the written code of Moses] made nothing perfect), and a better hope is introduced, by which we draw near to God." Hebrews 7:18, 19. (Brackets added for clarification)

The Ten Commandments were never done away with. It has only been opened to us through a better and living way, Jesus Christ, not by symbols or shadows. "Therefore brothers, since we have confidence to enter the Most Holy place by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way opened for us through the curtain, that is His body." Hebrews 10:19, 20.



The pointers and arrows of the temple service were no longer needed. This you can see from the illustration. The articles that were symbols and shadows made an outline, a shadow, of the cross that pointed to the righteous Ten Commandments of the Most Holy Place.

Jesus Christ came and pointed the way more perfectly. He is our example to follow. "But if anyone **obeys His word**, God's love is truly made complete in

Him. This is how we know we are in Him: whoever claims to live in Him must walk as Jesus did.” 1 John 2:5, 6. We must walk as Jesus walked – perfect in His righteousness, His Ten Commandments.

The civil codes were slowly abolished as the nation deteriorated and lost its sovereign power. The Babylonians, the Medo-Persians, the Greeks, and finally the Romans; all stripped the Jews, in successive waves, of their power to implement their own civil rule.

The Jews rejected Jesus Christ as their king and acknowledged Caesar as their king – John 19:15. God then gave them their desire and turned them over to Titus. He marched against Jerusalem and in AD 70 destroyed their temple. Israel as a theocracy ceased to exist. All temple rites, services and feasts came to an end with the death of Jesus. No longer needed!

“Titus Flavius Vespasianus, b. Dec. 30, AD 39, d. Sept. 13, 81, spent most of his life in military service before succeeding (79) his father, VESPASIAN, as Roman emperor. In 70, Titus was entrusted with the command against the Jewish rebels. He captured Jerusalem and in 71 returned to Rome, where his father made him commander of the Praetorian Guard. Later historians regarded Titus as an ideal emperor, in part because he spent great sums on games and monuments, including the COLOSSEUM. To the victims of the famous eruption (79) of Vesuvius and the plague and fire (80) in Rome he dispensed generous aid. The ‘era of good feeling’ ended when he was succeeded by his brother Domitian.”\*

“While suppressing a major Jewish revolt, the Romans destroyed the Second Temple in AD 70. In 135, after the failure of the BAR KOCHBA revolt, Jews were banished from Jerusalem.”\*

They had forsaken their God: He had forsaken them. With the destruction of their nation, the written code of Moses as it defined the civil and religious codes, was nailed to the cross. Paul said, “Having canceled the written code, with its regulations, that was against us and that stood opposed to us; He took it away, nailing it to the cross.” “Therefore do not let anyone judge you by what you eat or drink, or with regard to a religious festival, a new moon celebration or a sabbath day (this is not the Ten Commandment’s Sabbath). These are a shadow of the things that were to come; the reality, however, is found in Christ.” Colossians 2:14, 16, 17

How could he write that? Who gave him that authority? Well, the answer to that is actually quite simple. He read the Old Testament and believed it. Listen very carefully and do not be deceived by those who are trying to get

your eyes off of Jesus and onto the very ceremonies and rites that God hates.

“Stop bringing meaningless offerings! Your incense is detestable to Me. New Moons, sabbaths and convocations -- I cannot bear your evil assemblies. Your New Moon festivals and your appointed feasts My soul hates. They have become a burden to Me; I am weary of bearing them.” Isaiah 1:13, 14. “**I will stop all her celebrations**; her yearly festivals, her New Moons, her sabbath days -- all her appointed feasts.” Hosea 2:11. “I hate, I despise your religious feasts; I cannot stand your assemblies... Away with the noise of your songs!...” Amos 5:21, 23.

The written code that required the death of a lamb, the feast days, the sabbath days that went with the feast days, the many rounds of ceremonies that symbolized the righteous life were now abolished. Jesus Christ is now our reality. It is clear now why Paul required Timothy to study the Old Testament (Scriptures to Paul), in 2 Timothy 3:15-17. It is by studying the Old Testament that we see the beauty of the plan of salvation and understand more clearly the work, life and death of Christ. We understand our part to play and the requirements of eternal life.

All those codes were left in the dust of the old destroyed temple. When the dust settled, the Ten Commandments radiated brighter and clearer to the whole world. “For it is not those who hear the law who are righteous in God’s sight, **but it is those who obey the law who will be declared righteous.**” “Do we then, nullify the law by this faith? Not at all! **Rather, we uphold the law.**” “Circumcision is nothing and uncircumcision is nothing. **Keeping God’s commands is what counts.**” Romans 2:13; 3:31; 1 Corinthians 7:19.

The civil codes that had to do with the stoning of a transgressor and all the other civil laws of the nation of Israel no longer existed. They were eliminated when the nation was eradicated and the people scattered across the face of the earth. Now the Christian would be required to keep the Ten Commandments, but would be under the civil codes of the nations they lived under to punish the transgressor. That is why Peter tells us “For the Lord’s sake submit yourselves to every human authority: whether to the king as supreme, or to governors who are sent by him to punish those who do wrong and to praise those who do right. For it is God’s will that by doing right you should silence the ignorant talk of foolish people. Live like free people, and do not use your freedom as an excuse for doing evil. Instead, be God’s servants. Honor everyone. Keep on loving the community of believers, fearing God, and honoring the king.” 1

Peter 2:13-17.

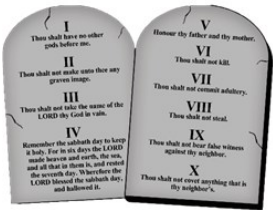
It is very plain to the astute Bible student that the thrust of Hebrews is not to do away with the Ten Commandments but only the symbols and shadows that pointed to Christ. This is easily seen in Hebrews, chapter nine. As the writer begins to show what was “new”, he takes out of discussion the Most Holy place where the Ten Commandments were located. This is found in Hebrews 9:3-5. The writer never discusses the Ten Commandments in the light of doing away with them. They are as eternal as Jesus Himself.

Only the temple, feast days, and services that went with the temple were eliminated at the death of Jesus. They were only temporary until the time of Christ. They were only shadows to point us to the One who would come and show the more perfect way. Those shadows, temple activities and feasts, had nothing to do with salvation. Salvation was and is only the keeping of the Ten Commandments.

offerings, and there you shall do all that I am commanding you.” Deuteronomy 12:11,13. That is why we cannot observe the Passover, Feast of Weeks and the Feast of Booths now that Jesus has been crucified. The Jews were rejected as a nation and Jerusalem was destroyed by the Romans. God did all of that to firmly let it be known that all those ceremonies, feast days and rituals that were in connection with the Jewish nation and Jerusalem only, were now to be treated as an abhorrence. We are to have nothing to do with them now. God has not chosen any other place to observe them.

Now, our only obligation is to live as Jesus lived, perfect, sinless and Commandment keeping. “If you love Me, keep My Commandments.” John 14:15. “Showing gracious love to the thousandth generation of those who love Me and keep My Commandments.” Deuteronomy. 5:10

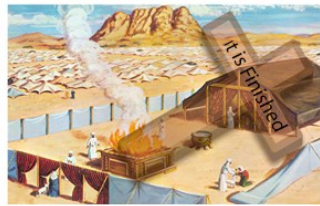
Moral Law  
Of Covenant  
NOT ABOLISHED



Mat 5:17 “Do not think that I have come to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I have not come to abolish them.

Rom 3:31 Do we, then, abolish the Law by this faith? Of course not! Instead, we uphold the Law.

Ordinance Law  
Of Covenant  
ABOLISHED

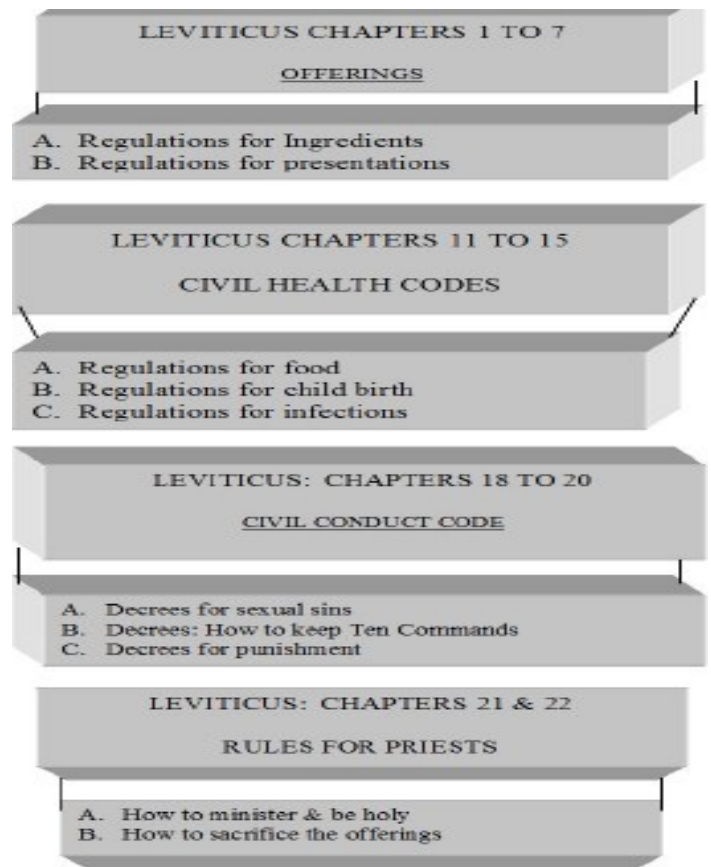


Heb 7:24 But because Jesus lives forever, he has a permanent priesthood.

Heb 9:9-10 This illustration for today indicates that the gifts and sacrifices being offered could not clear the conscience of a worshiper, since they deal only with food, drink, and various washings, which are required for the body until the time when things would be set right.

“The sorrows for the appointed feasts I will remove from you; they are a burden and a reproach to you.” Zephaniah 3:18. Folks, the same goes today. All of our church “worship” is detestable to Him unless we are living the perfect, righteous, holy, Ten Commandment life of Jesus. Let us worship Jesus in spirit and in truth, not in form, church or ceremonies.

Another reason we are not to celebrate those ceremonies is, under the Old Covenant, those feast days, services, temple rites, holy days that were “shadows of things to come” could only be held and observed in “the place that the LORD your God will choose”. They were not allowed to “offer your burnt offerings at any place that you see, but at the place that the LORD will choose in one of your tribes, there you shall offer your burnt



## Related Texts

Deuteronomy 7:9  
Deuteronomy 31:16  
Joshua 24:14, 15  
1 Kings 18:21  
2 Kings 17:22, 23  
2 Kings 18:11, 12  
Nehemiah 9:38  
Nehemiah 10:29

John 14:15, 21, 23, 24  
Romans 13:8-10  
1 John 2:3-6  
1 John 3:21, 22  
1 John 5:2, 3  
2 John 1:6  
Revelation 12:17  
Revelation 14:12

# First & Greatest Commandment

“One of them, an expert in the law, tested Him with this question: ‘Teacher, which is the greatest commandment in the law?’ Jesus replied: ‘Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind. This is the first and greatest commandment. And the second is like it: Love your neighbor as yourself.’” Matthew 22:35-39.

This text has confused the modern church for many years. To some, it indicates that Jesus is doing away with the Ten Commandments and implementing two new ones. A favorite expression is that the old law, the Ten Commandments, was written on stone and the two new commandments that Christ gave are to be written on the heart.

The problem with the Old/New theory is that it makes a liar out of Jesus Christ. He is the same yesterday (Old Testament) and today (New Testament times) and forever (our day). Hebrews 13:8. How is a God who does not change, going to change His Eternal law of righteousness and plan of salvation? Did God goof? Did the all-knowing God not know that it was a mistake to give us the Ten Commandments? No! My God doesn't make mistakes.

When we take a closer look at this text, we find that it in **no way substitutes** new for old or two for ten. In fact, it is simply a **summation** of the Ten Commandments; “**All the law** and the prophets hang on these two commandments.” Matthew 22:40. This does not say that the law and the prophets were hung, died and buried. It states that all the prophets and the law are an integral part of these two commandments.

In Deuteronomy 7:9 we learn that the covenant, **the Ten Commandments, is the Covenant of Love**. In both the Old and New Testaments the Ten Commandments are love. When Jesus spoke about love to God and love to man in Matthew 22:35-40, He was not introducing a new law, but quoting an Old Testament summation of the Ten Commandments. “Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength.” Deuteronomy 6:5. Here in the Old Testament we have the message of the New Testament.

So what was new? Nothing! Simply put, the Jews had forgotten to love. They made the sacrifices more

important than the Covenant of Love. They tried to work their way into heaven through **their own works**, rules and traditions. Remember Cain? Just as he tried to do his own thing: self-righteousness, so did the Jews. So it is with the “Christian” churches of the world today.

“He replied, ‘Isaiah was right when he prophesied about you hypocrites; as it is written; ‘These people honor Me with their lips, but their hearts are far from Me. They worship Me **in vain**; their teachings are but rules taught **by men**. *You have let go of the commands of God* and are holding on to the traditions of men.’ And He said to them: ‘You have a fine way of setting aside the commands of God **in order to observe your own traditions**.’” Mark 7:6-9.

This text plainly shows that the Jews were not keeping the Ten Commandments. They were setting up their own rules and traditions. Jesus was attempting to throw out the trash of human wisdom and tradition and reveal the beauty and love of God's eternal Ten Commandments.

The Jews thought He was attempting to throw out everything. Jesus exclaimed, “But the world must learn that I love the Father and that I do **exactly** what My Father has commanded Me.” “If you love Me, you will obey what I command.” “Whoever has My commands and obeys them, he is the one who loves Me.” “He who does not love Me will not obey My teaching.” John 14:31, 15, 21, 23, 24.

And where did this New Testament teaching of love come from? “Love the Lord your God and keep His requirements, His decrees, His laws and His commands always.” “So If you faithfully obey the commands I am giving you today -- to love the Lord your God and to serve Him with all your **heart** and with all your **soul**...” “If you carefully observe all these commands I am giving you to follow -- to love the Lord your God, to walk in all His ways and to hold fast to Him--....” (Deuteronomy 11:1, 13, 22). The Old Testament is where the New Testament gets its teachings.

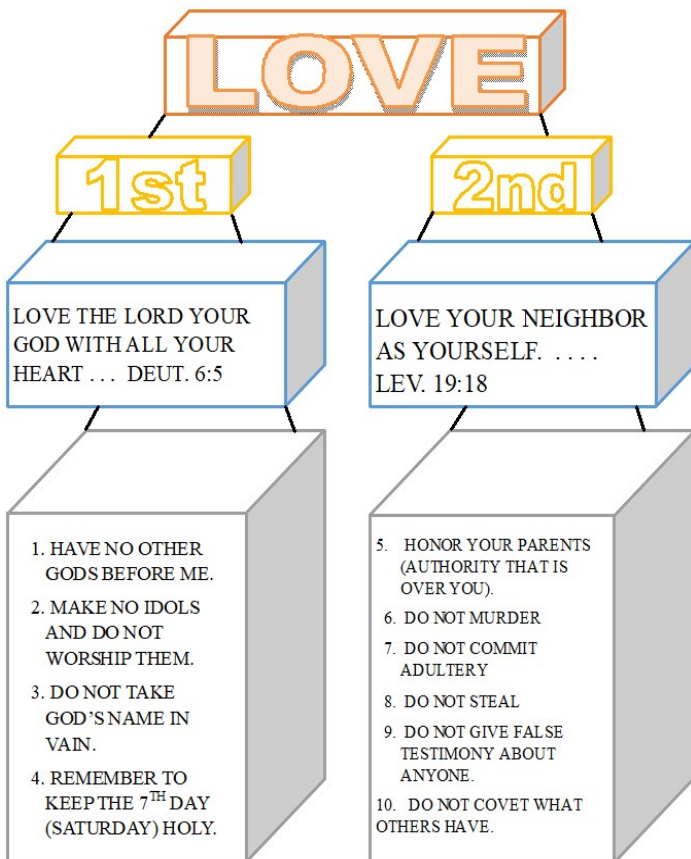
If a man tells his wife he loves her, and then refuses to do his responsibilities to her, where is the love? If a child says to her parents, “I love you”, then refuses to participate in the family order and routine, where is the love?

“The commandments, ‘Do not commit adultery’, ‘Do not murder,’ ‘Do not steal,’ ‘Do not covet,’ and whatever other commandment there may be, are summed up in this one rule: ‘Love your neighbor as yourself.’ Love does no harm to its neighbor. Therefore love is the fulfillment of the law.” Romans 13:9, 10. John makes it even clearer,

“**This is love to God:** to obey His commands. And His commands are **not** burdensome.” 1 John 5:3. All of the New Testament is a summation of the Old Testament command: “These commandments (Ten Commandments) that I give you today are to be **upon your hearts.**” Deuteronomy 6:6. (This is from the Old Testament.)

When Jesus stated that all the law and the prophets hung on these two commands, He was stating a reality. All the Old and New Testaments teach the Ten Commandments. They reveal the lives of real people, kingdoms and nations. Through these we see what happens to people, kingdoms and nations that obey or disobey the Covenant of Love. This covenant was given to Adam, passed down orally to Abraham and then written by God on stone and given to Moses so it could never be forgotten again. He has always required that it be written **in the heart** with love.

As you can see from the next illustration, love holds up everything. The only way we know what love is, is by looking into the law of God that gives freedom – James 1:25. When we put the law of God, His Ten Commandments, into our hearts – Psalm 119:11 – we understand what love is and we have the wisdom of God to live it. We show our love to God by keeping the first four of His Ten Commandments. That is why it is called the first and the greatest. By keeping the last six of the Ten Commandments, we learn how to love our neighbors as ourselves.



Without the Ten Commandments, the Covenant of Love, to teach us what love is, we would be bound by sin and death. Without the Ten Commandments, we would not know how to love. We were born into a sinful world. We are taught by the world the things of the world. We seek worldly standards. Without the Ten Commandments to lift our eyes from the ways of this world, we could never, on our own, learn love. True love comes from God. In love He gave the Ten Commandments to teach us how to love each other and Himself.

OK, OK, but isn't the Old Testament full of "eye for eye and tooth for tooth" stuff? Yes and no. You see, if you read the Old Testament in truth, you will find that the "eye for eye and tooth for tooth" was only an allegory that helped to explain to the people what justice was. It was not a literal eye for eye; but simply to illustrate compensation.

Don't you want justice? If a man rapes your daughter, or kills your wife, steals your TV and car, don't you want justice? Should there not be some kind of retribution so the evildoer will learn not to hurt innocent people? That is all the "eye for eye and tooth for tooth" says. Read it for yourself in Exodus 21:22-27. By doing this you will understand that justice is what God is all about. Even in the New Testament.

Many claim that God is harsher in the Old Testament, and more loving in the New Testament. No He isn't. He is the same yesterday, today and forever. Read Acts 5:1-11 – same God. The reason for so much bloodshed in the Old Testament is that there was no "police force" to control the sinfulness of man. So the nations that hated God kept attacking His people. What? You expect Him to just sit by while His children are molested, hurt and destroyed? Would you do that with your children if they were being attacked? I don't think so.

Let us never judge God any differently than we judge ourselves. You want justice, so does God. It is time to stop judging God and start believing in Him as a loving God to the righteous, and a vengeful, justice finding God to the wicked. You and I would have it no other way. We want justice! That is what love is all about. "Speak and act as those who are going to be judged by the law that gives freedom,..." James 2:12.

## Related Texts

- |                          |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| Deuteronomy 6:24, 25     | Deuteronomy 13:3, 4 |
| Deuteronomy 7:9-10       | Deuteronomy 19:9    |
| Deuteronomy 10:12, 13    | John 14:15          |
| Deuteronomy 11:1, 13, 22 | John 15:10          |

# Self-Control

As we study for truth, truth that sets us free **from** sin, we have an obligation to put that truth into action. Knowing truth and not being obedient to it will do us no good. “For it is not those who hear the law who are righteous in God’s sight, but it is **those who obey the law who will be declared righteous.**” Romans 2:13.

In our lives we must do what we know is taught by God, our Lord and Savior, Jesus Christ. To make a profession of faith in Christ, and then not be obedient to that faith brings shame and disrepute to the Name of our Lord who gave up everything for us. If you claim Jesus as your Lord, then you must obey Him as Lord.

“If we **deliberately keep on sinning** after we have received the knowledge of the truth, **no sacrifice for sins is left.**” Hebrews 10:26. The Bible is very plain; living in sin when we know what our duty is, will not be tolerated in the body of Christ. Christ, through His eternal power, separates the sin from the sinner. If we refuse to work with that Power, that Power leaves us and we are left in our sins, and those sins will destroy us.

If the devil has you bound by sin, you must turn to the power of Christ and break its hold. “Come to Me, all you who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest. Take My yoke upon you and learn from Me, for I am gentle and humble in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. For My yoke is easy and My burden is light.” Matthew 11:28-30.

It is rest that our souls need. We have been ravished by sin far too long. The body is tired, the mind confused, the heart heavy with pain. By giving up the old life we accept the new life of Christ, His Yoke, the Ten Commandments, that gives us freedom from sin. We learn to accept the Power of Christ. By looking into His wonderful face, looking at His beautiful life, we behold the way to break the chains of sin and death.

The life of Christ “teaches us to say ‘No’ to ungodliness and worldly passions, and to live self-controlled, upright and godly lives in this present age.” Titus 2:12. About two thousand years ago the Bible started the first, “Just Say No” campaign. Just say “No” to sin and “Yes” to the power of God. We have an obligation to put our will on the side of God. “Everyone who has this hope in Him purifies himself, **just as He is pure.**” 1 John 3:3.



Jesus provides the cleanser, but **we must pick it up and use it.** As we use the Word of God as our cleanser to purify our hearts, minds and souls, the Spirit of God comes in and provides the power to clean

us up. “Since we have these promises, dear friends, **let us purify ourselves** from everything that contaminates body and spirit, perfecting holiness out of reverence for God.” 2 Corinthians 7:1.

Self-control is the only remedy for success in our battle with sin. Our lives have developed a multitude of bad habits over the years. Through self-control God expects us to purify ourselves to righteousness, just as we polluted ourselves to wickedness. “Now that you have **purified yourselves by obeying the truth,**” keep that purity through self-control. 1 Peter 1:22.

Jesus was very concerned about people claiming to be His, yet were not His. He wanted to make it very plain that “not everyone who says to Me ‘Lord, Lord,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven, but only he who **does** the will of My Father who is in heaven.” Matthew 7:21.

Christians must test the spirits, (1 John 4:1), to see if the person doing the claiming is of God. The person may have a spirit, but is it the Spirit of God? Not every preacher is a preacher of righteousness. Not every church is a church of God. “Watch out for false prophets. They come to you **in sheep’s clothing**, but inwardly they are ferocious wolves.” Matthew 7:15.

People who live the self-controlled, commandment-keeping life, are of God. “We know that we have come to know Him if we obey His commands. The man who says, ‘I know Him’, but does not do what He commands is a liar, and the truth is not in him.” 1 John 2:3, 4.

In both the Old and New Testaments, the self-controlled life is revealed as the only life that will enter heaven. God tells us in Ezekiel, “But if a wicked man turns away from all the sins he has committed and keeps all My decrees and does what is just and right, he will surely live, he will not die.” “But if a righteous man turns from his righteousness and commits sin and does the same detestable things the wicked man does, will he live?... He will die.” Ezekiel 18:21, 24. This is not a “once saved always saved” but a continuous “stop sinning to be saved”.

It is very important that you understand this step in the Christian growth. All who are lost will lose their salvation because they refused to acknowledge their duty and responsibility of **taking their salvation into their own hands** and making decisions to stop sinning. Christ cannot save one rebellious sinner. The only way Christ can save a sinner is for that sinner to submit, humble himself to the **saving plan of God.** Jesus stands at the door of your heart and knocks, but you must let Him in. You have a part to play in your own salvation. He will not kick in the door or make you do what you do not want done. If you surrender that part to anyone else or to any church, you will lose your eternal salvation. Know what the requirements are and then step out in the power of Christ

to do them.

“But because of your stubbornness and your unrepentant heart, you are storing up wrath against yourself for the day of God’s wrath, when His righteous judgment will be revealed... But for those who are self-seeking and who reject the truth and follow evil, there will be wrath and anger. There will be trouble and distress for every human being who does evil...”. Romans 2:5, 8, 9.

“Serve wholeheartedly, as if you were serving the Lord, not men, because you know that **the Lord will reward everyone for whatever good he does.**” Ephesians 6:7, 8.

I have heard some people suggest that since they claim Jesus to be Lord, they must be saved. The text they use to back up this claim is found in 1 Corinthians 12:3. “Therefore I tell you that no one who is speaking by the Spirit of God says, ‘Jesus be cursed,’ and no one can say, ‘Jesus is Lord,’ except by the Holy Spirit.”

The problem with this concept is time. Taking a statement that had to do with a specific time period and trying to fit it into another time period. They try to do with this text as one might try to do with Exodus 25:8, 9 which had to do with Moses building the sanctuary, or Genesis 6:14, Noah building the Ark. No, we are not to build any more temples or Arks.

You can never remove a text from its historical reference. If you do, you will be guilty of adding and subtracting from the teaching and intent of scripture. The penalty for that is death. It may sound nice to say that you have the Holy Spirit simply because you say “Jesus is Lord”. But Jesus disagrees with you. “Not everyone who says to Me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven, but only he **who does the will** of My Father who is in heaven.” Matthew 7:21. If you read very carefully, you will find where even the demons claim that Jesus is Lord, but they are not saved. As Peter said about Paul and his letters, “Some things in them are hard to understand, which ignorant and unstable people distort, leading to their own destruction, as they do the rest of the Scriptures.” 2 Peter 3:16.

So what is the writer of Corinthians talking about? When you go back into history it becomes very plain. If you were killed for saying, “Jesus is Lord”, would you say it? Today there is no persecution for being a Christian in most countries. Any devil can say it to deceive the blind. Back then, only a true believer could say it. No one else dared to say it, or they could die.

The other concept to this is, only a true Christian can call Jesus “Lord”. Not in name, but in truth. A true Christian will obey Jesus **as his Lord**. One who is not a true Christian can name the name, but Jesus is not “Lord” of

his life if he is not obeying the teachings of Jesus to Stop sinning, Be perfect, and Keep the Ten Commandments to get eternal life. Let us truly make Jesus “Lord” of our lives by being obedient to His commands.

---

# PERSEVERANCE

“Therefore, since we are surrounded by such a great cloud of witnesses, let us throw off everything that hinders and the sin that so easily entangles, and let us run with perseverance the race marked out for us.” Hebrews 12:1. Throwing off sin and continuing, persevering, in self-control? How novel an idea.

Take drugs for an example (or any sinful habit or practice). As we study the Bible, we come to the realization that God created our bodies to be His dwelling place. Our bodies are to be temples for the Holy Spirit to live in. Since the temple is to be holy, we want to get rid of every thing and substance that would prevent the Holy Spirit from living in our temples. Light and darkness cannot dwell together. Sin must leave when we let the Holy Spirit in. ***The Spirit will not live with sin.***

To do this we give our sins, habits, desires and all to Jesus. We fall on our knees and confess that we have been serving the god of drugs (or money, power, ego, pride, etc.) and breaking the Ten Commandments of love. We repent and now decide to turn away from it. We let God know that we need His power. This is not to inform God, He already knows. It is for us to **acknowledge the fact** that we need God.

Now we put our will on the side of God. “Just as you **used to offer** the parts of your body in slavery to impurity and to ever-increasing wickedness, so **now offer** them in slavery to righteousness leading to holiness.” Romans 6:19. We say “No” to drugs or any sin. Every time the thought, urge or desire comes to us as a temptation, like Christ, we say “No”.

Our next obligation is “not be misled: **‘Bad company corrupts** good character.’ Come back to your senses as you ought, and stop sinning.” 1 Corinthians 15:33, 34. Stay away from people, places, events, TV, radio, porn, conversations and thoughts that bring on the desires to do drugs or any sin. “Do not be yoked together with unbelievers. For what do righteousness and wickedness have in common? Or what fellowship can light have with darkness?” “Therefore **come out** from them and be separate, says the Lord.” 2 Corinthians 6:14, 17. This includes churches. If they are not teaching us the teachings of Jesus to be perfect, stop sinning and keep the Ten Commandments for our eternal life, we must come out.

“God is love.” 1 John 4:16. But love also hates! God hates sin. He hates wickedness. It destroys His work and creation. There is a “hate” that is full of “love”. We must develop the same mind and attitude in us as Christ had. “In your struggle against sin, you have not yet resisted to the point of shedding your blood.” Hebrews 12:4. Jesus will provide the power, but you must provide the will. It is hard work. But look at the alternative, a life of slavery to drugs and sins that are destroying your life and the lives of those who love you and you claim to love.

“You love righteousness and hate wickedness.” “Let those who love the Lord **hate evil**.” Psalm 45:7; 97:10. “Because of all their wickedness in Gilgal, I hated them there. Because of their sinful deeds, I will drive them out of My house. I will no longer love them; all their leaders are rebellious.” Hosea 9:15.

At first it will be hard. No doubt about it, struggling with sin in your life is hard. But the end result will be victory. “Do you not know that in a race all the runners run, but only one gets the prize? Run in such a way as to get the prize. Everyone who competes in the games goes into **strict training**. They do it to get a crown that will not last; but we do it to get a crown that will last forever. Therefore I do not run like a man running aimlessly; I do not fight like a man beating the air. No, I beat my body and make it my slave so that after I have preached to others, I myself will not be disqualified for the prize.” 1 Corinthians 9:24-27.

The road to heaven is straight and narrow. It is filled with temptation and struggle up the narrow path. “Children, how hard it is to enter the kingdom of God! It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.” Mark 10:24, 25. The eye of the needle was a very small gate in the wall of the city. Under attack, the main gate was closed to keep out the enemy. The “eye of the needle” was opened only to let runners in and out to send and receive messages. A camel could go through it, but to do so it had to:

- **Get on its knees**
- **Remove all its burdens**
- **Crawl through the gate**



In the Christian life we must do the same. On our knees, giving our burdens to Jesus and coming to Him in meekness and humility, He will then lift us up in His image and likeness. By remaining steady and keeping our eyes on Jesus we can do all things through Him who gives us the strength. “Be self-controlled and alert. Your enemy the devil prowls around like a roaring lion looking for someone to devour. **Resist him**, standing firm in faith.” 1 Peter 5:8, 9.

I cannot stress the importance of knowing for sure that you are **doing exactly** what Jesus has commanded you to do for your salvation. It is not what you **feel**. It is not what you **think**. It is not what **others think** for you. It is not what your church says, or what your pastor tells you. Do not look at others. Do not look at other people’s sins and mistakes. Don’t worry about others. You must put yourself to the test of what Jesus says, and Jesus **ONLY**. “Therefore consider carefully how you LISTEN. Whoever has will be given more. Whoever does not have, even what he *thinks* he has will be taken from him.” Luke 8:18 Do you think you are saved? Watch out!

I know men in prison who have had to stand up for truth against all odds. Many placed their lives on the line for the truth. The other “Christians” wanted to kill them because their beliefs differed. Living in danger for Jesus they had feces put on their bed and hit in the face. All this for Jesus.

We in America have it too easy. The majority of Christians are not ready for heaven. They are not ready for the trouble that will soon come upon the whole earth. Unless we begin now to build the Christ-like character, we will never make it to heaven. We are in a battle. Put aside the foolish things of the world. The enemy has *you* blinded.

The Old Testament is for us to study as an example. Listen to Paul, “Now these things occurred as examples to keep us from setting our hearts on evil things as they did.” 1 Corinthians 10:6. Let’s take a look at some examples of perseverance.

“Even youths grow tired and weary, and young men stumble and fall; but those who hope in the Lord will renew their strength. They will soar on wings like eagles; they will run and not grow weary, they will walk and not be faint.” Isaiah 40:30, 31. When our hope is in the Lord, and with our eyes on Jesus and not on ourselves or others and we persevere in the Name of our Strength, we have the victory.

Paul and Silas are an example of perseverance. At Macedonia the authorities “inflicted many blows upon them, they threw them into prison, ordering the jailer to keep them safely. Having received this order, he put



them into the inner prison and fastened their feet in the stocks. About midnight Paul and Silas were praying and singing hymns to God, and the prisoners were listening to them . . .” Act 16:23-25. Could you persevere? Can you take a beating for Jesus? Would you be singing? And where did they learn how to persevere for Jesus? By reading about Job in the Old Testament.

Job is an example of perseverance. He lost everything. He had no idea why he was being treated like this. His wife said, “Are you still holding on to your integrity? Curse God and die!” Job 2:9. But Job was a man of perseverance and trusted in his God. Even though he did not understand, he said, “You are talking like a foolish woman. Shall we accept good from God, and not trouble?” Job 2:10.

Do we act like foolish people sometimes and blame God for our troubles? Most of the time it was our own sinful acts that brought on the painful consequences we are suffering. Should we blame God for our stupidity?

In Job’s case, he was a righteous man and was not a sinner. He was “blameless and upright, a man who fears God and shuns evil.” Job 1:8. In all that he went through, “Job did not sin by charging God with wrongdoing.” Job 1:22.

You see my friend, it was not God’s doing. God only permitted Lucifer to do what he wanted to do with Job. Lucifer could have blessed Job and showered him with wealth and love. But that is not what Lucifer wanted to do. But God was not responsible for the trouble of Job.

People blame God because they say that He can do anything. **Not really.** He must follow the rules. He created us to be free moral agents. We have the ability to choose. Any parent can understand that. Just because they bring children into the world doesn’t mean that the parents are responsible if their child drinks and drives then hits and kills a person. The parents knew when they brought that child into the world that bad things could happen. They didn’t plan for them. They just knew that the child would have choices to make. They would do their best to educate the child to choose the right.

Same with God. He brought us into the world to live our own lives. He gave us the Ten Commandments and taught us how to live in love toward each other. But if we choose to hurt others, that is not God’s fault. Let us not blame God for the choices of wicked people.

Now four friends came to sit and mourn with Job. But they were under the assumption that Job must be a sinner and had done something wrong to receive all this trouble. They tried their best to convince Job that if he would repent, God would then restore his fortune. But Job persevered in his integrity and refused to accept their

nonsense. He knew he was righteous and did not sin. He hated sin. How dare they come and try to tell him that all this was a result of his sin.

In the end, God came to Job’s rescue. Jesus said to Eliphaz, “I am angry with you and your two friends, because you have not spoken of Me what is right, as My servant Job has.” God was so emphatic about clearing His servant Job that He said it a second time. “You have not spoken of Me what is right, as My servant Job has.” Job 42:7, 8. (Could your preachers not be speaking right about God?)

If you are living the perfect, Ten-Commandment life, don’t let the devil, the family, the wife, the church or anyone try to discourage you or tell you that you can’t live the righteous, blameless, perfect life. You can. In the power of God, we can do everything. Persevere in all good things.

Jesus said, “Come to Me, all you who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest. Take My yoke upon you and learn of Me, for I am gentle and humble in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. For My yoke is easy and My burden is light.” Matthew 11:28-30. What “yoke” is Jesus talking about? First, do you know what a yoke is? I’m not talking about the yolk of an egg. In today’s world, very few people have grown up looking at yokes. So, this is a yoke.



“The oldest form of HARNESS, the yoke is a device for linking two or more draft animals to a cart or plow. Early yokes consisted of curved wooden bars that rested on the shoulders of the animals or were

fastened to the horns or necks by metal or rope collars. The yoke was attached to the vehicle by a pole.

“The yoke worked well enough when used on oxen, the earliest draft animals; however, the horse does not possess the breadth of shoulder needed to sustain the yoke, and the device pressed against the animal’s neck, choking it. Thus only when the yoke was replaced by the horse collar (in Europe, during the Middle Ages) could horses be efficiently used as draft animals. Yokes are still used in India, with humped oxen, and in Africa, with the African buffalo.”

So why would you want to be yoked? If you were a farmer and had 100 acres to plow, how would you want to plow it? With one oxen, or two? With a yoke the farmer can combine the strength of two oxen and plow more effectively.

The same goes in our Christian walk. If we are yoked with Jesus, it is His strength that carries us through. Life's burdens become better managed when Jesus and you handle them together. By taking the yoke of Christ, the Ten Commandments, and binding them on your heart and mind and soul, the Power of Jesus is available for all your needs. You rest in His love and trust Him to get you through all troubles.

Jesus commends those who practice perseverance. In fact, we can not get into heaven without it. Revelation tells us, "I know your deeds, **your hard work** and **your perseverance**. I know that you cannot tolerate wicked men, that you have **tested** those who claim to be apostles (churches, pastors, etc.) but are not, and have found them false. You have persevered and have endured hardships for My name, and have not grown weary." Revelation 2:2, 3.

Hold fast to that which you are now learning. It is the truth of Jesus. Persevere against all obstacles and influences to the contrary. Peer pressure is very influential. It is hard to walk alone when the crowd is having a good time. But our only guide is the Bible and the teachings of Jesus.

Jesus said, ". . . teaching them to **obey everything I have commanded** you. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age." Matthew 28:20. If you want Jesus on your side, then teach people to obey His teachings. If the crowd, the church, the pastor, or your closest friend is not walking in the teachings of Jesus; walk away, and Jesus will be walking with you. "You need to persevere so that when you have done the will of God, you will receive what He has promised." Hebrews 10:36.

---

# GODLINESS

The first five steps: Faith, Goodness, Knowledge, Self-control and Perseverance, have to do with cleaning up our personal life. Preparing our body temples for the indwelling of the Holy Spirit. Once we let the Holy Spirit take up residence in the body-temple, we are ready to let the Light of Jesus shine to those around us. The last three steps have to do with our obligations to our families, communities and neighbors.

"On one occasion an expert in the law stood up to test Jesus, 'Teacher', he asked, 'What must I **do** to inherit eternal life?' 'What is written in the law?' He replied, 'How do you read it?'" Luke 10:25, 26.

Here again, Jesus referred the expert back to the law – Old Testament – for his salvation. Jesus never came to

do away with the Old Testament, only to teach it in truth and to clear away the rubble the Jewish "experts" of the law had dumped on it. Also, understand - never did Jesus teach "grace" for eternal life; always the keeping of the law. In fact, you will never find the phrase, "Saved by Grace" anywhere in the Bible.

The expert wanted to sound like an "expert". To show how knowledgeable he was, he quoted two very small, obscure passages hoping to throw Jesus off. He chose Deuteronomy 6:5 and Leviticus 19:18. "'Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength and with all your mind;' and, 'Love your neighbor as yourself.'" But Jesus threw it right back at him, "You have answered correctly." "**Do this** and you will live."

This put the "expert" in a very awkward position. He had hoped to make Jesus look like a fool. But in return, he made himself look like a fool and a sinner. You see, the Jews taught that their neighbor was only another Jew. Samaritans and Gentiles were not considered worthy of God's notice, nor of the notice, respect and love of a Jew. (I have had church people tell me the same thing about inmates. They are not worthy of their notice. How sad. Jesus notices inmates and loves them.)

Not wanting to give up the fight, he thought he would justify himself by asking Jesus who his neighbor was. He knew the answer already, according to Jewish law, and felt very smug and proud with himself.

In answer to this, Jesus simply told a story. In Luke 10:30-36 we read where a Jew fell among thieves and was stripped, wounded and left for dead. A priest came and didn't even want to see his duty. He was too busy "working for the church". So he passed by on the other side. Next, a Levite came by. He at least had enough curiosity to look. But he was on "church business also" and did not want to keep church work waiting either, so he kept on going.

Finally a Samaritan came by on one of his business trips. He was in a hurry to get to a business meeting but noticed a man in need. He stopped and helped the man. Dressing his wounds and putting him on his donkey he took him to an inn. There he watched over him through the night, and in the morning paid the innkeeper to continue the care. Then he added, "and when I return, I will reimburse you for any extra expense you may have."

Jesus looked directly



at the “expert” and asked, “Which of these three **do you** think was a neighbor to the one who fell into the hands of robbers?” The expert in the law could not even bring upon his lips the word “Samaritan”. Therefore he answered, “The one who had mercy on him.” Jesus said, “Go and **do** likewise.”

Christianity is pure and simple, just helping all who are around us. Recognizing that all: black, white, brown, red or yellow; all denominations and religions or beliefs; all sizes or sexual orientations are our neighbors. We are under the command of Jesus to **do** good to all.

I know of men in prison who have never had a visit from a family member. Brothers or sisters would not even send a few dollars to help them in their time of need. They never had the time to visit to bring words of comfort or cheer.

Looking at the “Christian” church today, one wonders what Jesus would say if He were here, in person, as He was two thousand years ago. I suppose He would say much the same things. “Everything they do is done for men to see:... They love the place of honor at banquets and the most important seats in the synagogues (churches); they love to be greeted in the market places and to have men call them ‘Rabbi’ (priest, minister, pastor, teacher, pope, etc.)”. Matthew 23:5-7.

Look at the multitude of TV ministries. How they love the praise of men. Look at the money spent on lavish display. Look at the expensive churches such as the Crystal Cathedral. Does that represent the meek and lowly Jesus? The humble and poor Jesus who went around doing good but never had a home of His own or a donkey (car) to call His own. “In the same way, on the outside you appear to people as righteous but on the inside you are full of hypocrisy and wickedness.” Matthew 23:28.

“Shout it aloud, do not hold back. Raise your voice like a trumpet. Declare to My people their rebellion... For day after day they seek Me out; they **seem eager** to know My ways, as if they were a nation (church) that does what is right and has not forsaken the commands of its God. They ask Me for just decisions and **seem eager** for God to come near them... Yet on the day of your fasting (Church going), you do as you please and exploit all your workers. Is not this the kind of fasting I have chosen:... Is it not to share your food with the hungry and to provide the poor wanderer with shelter – when you see the naked, to clothe him, and not to turn away from your own flesh and blood?... If you do away with the ... pointing finger and malicious talk, and if you spend yourselves in behalf of the hungry and satisfy the needs of the oppressed, then your light will rise in the darkness, and your night will become like the noonday.” Isaiah 58:1-10.

That is godliness. **Doing** as God does. Reaching out to your neighbor and helping those who are in need. What have you done in the last seven days to help your neighbor or a stranger in need?

## Related Texts

|                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| Genesis 14:11-24      | 2 Kings 11:1-3   |
| Genesis 18:23-32      | Esther 2:5-7     |
| Exodus 35:20-29       | Esther 2:19-23   |
| Joshua 2:1-24         | Jeremiah 38:7-13 |
| Ruth 1:16-18; 2:11,12 | Matthew 2:10-12  |
| 1 Samuel 25:18-44     | Matthew 10:42    |
| 2 Samuel 17:27-29     | John 19:26, 27   |
| 1 Kings 17:7-24       | Acts 28:1-10     |
| 2 Kings 4:8-17        | 3 John 1:11      |

## Brotherly Kindness



The hardest aspect of Christianity is living it to those who are the closest to us. It is easy to drop off a check to an organization that helps the poor. Giving a couple of dollars to a stranger in need is not too hard either. Passing out clothes, feeding the hungry, visiting the sick and those in prison, not much of a problem. Maybe a bit inconvenient, but we can do it. But when it comes to your brother or sister in Christ, how hard it is.

We go to church and bring our gifts; more to be seen by men than to be loved by God. Jesus said, “Therefore, if you are offering your gift at the altar and there remember that your brother has something against you, leave your gift there in front of the altar. First go and be reconciled to your brother; then come and offer your gift.” Matthew 5:23, 24.

This is so hard to do. Pride, ego and selfishness always want to be “right”. Lucifer wanted to be right. He

wanted to be first. He wanted to lift himself up to be like God. “I will,” “I will,” “I will” were the words of his mouth. Each “I will” was a desire to be like the power of God.

The problem is not in the “I will”, but in the “I will” **what?** Jesus came and said, I will be lifted up. I will draw all men unto Me. I will come that they may have life. Same “I will”, but different ending. Lucifer wanted power, Jesus wanted service. Jesus wanted to redeem us. I will give, I will bless, I will love and I will die. We need to be like Jesus. We need to keep our eyes on the right “I will”. Not the “I” of selfishness, but the humble “I” of giving and service.

“Dear children, let us not love with words or tongue, but with action and in truth.” 1 John 3:18. The hardest place to practice this is in the family. Spouse to spouse, parents to children, friend to friend, sibling to sibling. Living in close proximity to others can try the faith. We see too easily the faults of those we live with. It is so easy to compare our Christian walk with those around us.

Yet it is to those closest to us that we need to demonstrate true Christianity. It is in the home that we must let the light of God’s love radiate forth. In this prison ministry, I talk with inmates who can relate to this problem. Bunked hundreds to a room with about 48 inches of space between bunks, it is easy to get irritated. When you are trying to sleep or rest, and others are bumping, wiggling and shaking your bunk, it is easy to lose the temper. Noise all hours of the day and night. Radios playing and people talking, the nerves can get frayed.

Yet with all this, and the pressure that comes from being locked up, they still must keep their self-control. If they want to parole they must walk a very narrow path and not react too adversely to difficulties. A maxim I have heard repeated goes like this. “Don’t sweat the small stuff.” “A fool shows his annoyance at once, but a prudent man overlooks an insult.” Proverbs 12:16.

Paul writes in 1 Corinthians, “Love is patient, love is kind. It does not envy, it does not boast, it is not proud. It is not rude, it is not self-seeking, it is not easily angered, it keeps no record of wrongs. Love does not delight in evil but rejoices with the truth. It always protects, always trusts, always hopes, always perseveres. **Love never fails.**” 1 Corinthians 13:4 – 8.

Does a wife stand by her husband when he is in trouble and needs her help and support? Or is it too embarrassing? Do the parents stand by the child who is experiencing the troubles of the world? Do brothers and sisters stand by each other to give support and comfort to each other? Or, do they all desert and run when the going gets tough? Do they feel “embarrassed” at the actions of a brother or sister and run? Or do they stand by no matter

what?

Jesus stood by the disciples even when they made fools of themselves. Jesus practiced brotherly kindness, as we must. Is it time to reach out a loving hand to one who needs it? Is it time to mend the holes the devil has made in our families and relationships? “Like water spilled on the ground which cannot be recovered, so we must die. But God does not take away life; instead He devises ways so that a banished person may not remain estranged from Him.” 2 Samuel 14:14.

If we are to follow the example of Christ, it will be our highest duty to repair the breaches that Satan has torn open. To bind up the wounds that evil slices open. To search out and bring back the ravished lambs of God. To be peacemakers for Christ is the highest calling we can attain to. “Therefore, as we have opportunity, let us do good to all people, especially to those who belong to the family of believers.” Galatians 6:10 “The King will reply, ‘I tell you the truth, whatever you did for one of the least of these brothers of Mine, you did for Me.’” Matthew 25:40.

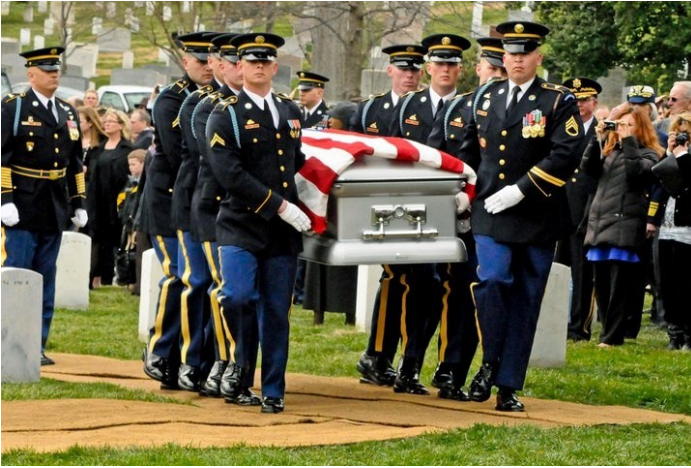
Forgiveness is part of this brotherly kindness step. It is very difficult being kind to the one we harbor hate, resentment and jealousy against. The Bible is very plain on forgiving. Jesus taught in His prayer, “Forgive us our debts, **as we** also have forgiven our debtors.” Matthew 6:12. “For if you forgive men when they sin against you, your heavenly Father will also forgive you. But if you do not forgive men their sins, your Father will not forgive your sins.” Matthew 6:14, 15.

How can we expect God to love us and lavish upon us His blessings when we refuse to do the same to those we feel have hurt us? How can God live with us, when we refuse to live in love with those who have hurt us? He can’t. The Bible is plain on that point. If we think we are really something and that God needs us; think again.

What God really needs are men and women who will stand up for Him by humbling themselves and being obedient to His Word. By doing and teaching exactly what He has taught. That is the greatest light and witness He can ask for. Just do what He asks of you.

Read Matthew chapter 18 verses 23 through 35. Jesus is emphatic in making sure you understand your responsibilities to your brothers and sisters. “This is how My heavenly Father will treat each of you unless you forgive your brother from your heart.” Matthew 18:35. Read it and find out what He is talking about.

# LOVE



“Greater love has no one than this, that he lay down his life for his friends.” John 15:13. “Very rarely will anyone die for a righteous man, though for a good man someone might possibly dare to die. But God demonstrates His own love for us in this: while we were still sinners, Christ died for us.” Romans 5:7, 8.

I was told of an incident that happened at a maximum-security level in one of California’s State Prisons. The gym was being used as overflow housing for approximately 200 men. During count, an officer was walking up and down the aisles counting the men. At one bunk, while involved in his count, an inmate cold-cocked the officer, hitting him in the face and head. The officer went down and lay unconscious on the concrete floor. The other inmates jumped down and began to kick and beat the officer.

Two inmates intervened and dragged the officer off to the safety of the officer’s station. They shut the door and hit the alarm. By doing this they put their own lives in danger. They were now marked as “cop lovers”. Their lives were worth nothing. They were as good as dead.

When help arrived the two good Samaritans were escorted to safety while the facts were investigated. After the report was made to the Governor’s office, the Governor pardoned them and freed them from prison.

This eighth step, love, is the life giving principle of the Agape love. This love teaches us to humble ourselves as Jesus humbled Himself in order to bring us all the glory of heaven. He “made Himself nothing, taking the very nature of a servant, being made in human likeness. And being found in appearance as a man, He **humbled** Himself and became **obedient** to death – even death on a cross.” Philippians 2:7, 8.

Those of you who are parents understand that your duty

is to set the example of living for your children. At times you have to kneel down and humble yourselves to tie a shoe or romp and play on the floor with the little ones. At times you have to speak at the level of their understanding so they will grasp what you are trying to tell them. At times you have to discipline them. In all of this you are being living examples of the love they are to exemplify when they become parents.

You may have to give up a job or career you love and want in order to give of yourself. Children need you in their lives when they are growing up. You need to be there for them. Isn’t their future more important than your selfish desires and ego? How many gang-bangers are out on the street instead of at home with family they claim to love? Live simply, as Jesus did when He left the mansions of heaven for this ghetto of a world. Are you willing to do the same for your children? It is not how much money or things you give them, it is how much of yourself you are willing to give them. That is all they want.

The same is true with Jesus. “You call Me ‘Teacher’ and ‘Lord’, and rightly so, for that is what I am. Now that I, your Lord and Teacher, have washed your feet, you also should wash one another’s feet. I have set you an example that you should do as I have done for you.” John 13:13 – 15.

All this can only happen when we die to self and put to death our ambitions and desires, submitting to Jesus Christ and His teachings and commands. I learned that men who are locked away in prison can relate to this principle. They begin to divest themselves from all the world has to offer. What good is it? Why dream about it? Why desire it? You can’t have it! They develop prisonitis. Their whole world revolves around the prison. Their thinking becomes changed. Some for the good, some for the bad. But for many, they lose touch with “reality”.

Yet too many Christians desire, lust after and spend their lives building a worldly empire that will be burned up. “If anyone would come after Me, he must deny himself and take up his cross and follow Me.” “What good will it be for a man if he gains the whole world yet forfeits his soul?” Matthew 16:24, 26. “You fool! This very night your life will be demanded from you. Then who will get what you prepared for yourself?” Luke 12:20.

“And now, O Israel, what does the Lord our God ask of you but to fear the Lord your God, to walk in all His ways, to love Him, to serve the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul, and to observe the Lord’s commands and decrees that I am giving you today for your own good?” Deuteronomy 10:12 – 13. “See that you do all I command you; do not add to it or take away from it.” Deuteronomy 12:32.

# Increasing Measure

You have climbed the Eight Steps to Christian Perfection. In the eyes of God you are perfect **while climbing this road**. To understand this concept better, I'll draw it out for you.

At the first position, faith, you are still controlled by the wicked habits you had before the cross. The only difference is Justification. The only change at this point is:

- a) the will,
- b) the perspective.



Your will has now been put on the side of righteousness. It is your desire to join the battle of the righteous, to fight against sin and wickedness.

In this first position, you are justified and Jesus no longer sees you in your wicked state. Jesus now sees you in His righteousness as it is **wrapped around you**. (The circle that surrounds the baby.) You need this wrap because you still have habits that are sinful.

Keep in mind, sins you do not know about are not counted against you. Only sins you continue to do **willingly**. So, at this point, you have stopped doing all the “known” sins, but have unknown sins and habits to change. That is why we need the wrap of Jesus’ perfection at this time.

The second position begins immediately and will continue in greater and greater measure as you walk the righteous life. The *surrounding* robe of Christ’s righteousness and perfection will not be needed as much as you develop His righteousness and perfection *within* you.

As you clean up your temple and sweep out the garbage of sin and sinful practices, you are developing

righteousness through righteous practices and habits. The righteousness of Christ now becomes yours. You are coming back into oneness with God. Back to the original state as desired for Adam and Eve in the beginning. You will have the same perfect character as Adam had before he sinned. The perfection we attain is living without “known” sin. That means:

1. When the Spirit of God reveals an unknown sin in our lives, we stop it

2. When sin is tempting, we resist it

The third position is the achievement of that Goal. “*I can do all things* through Christ who strengthens me.” Philippians 4:13. We must believe that perfection, sinlessness, is attainable now, in this life. We must believe the promises of God that all things are possible. To change from sinner to the position where there is nothing “in him to make him stumble.” 1 John 2:10. To believe in “Him who is able to keep you from falling and to present you before His glorious presence without fault and with great joy.” Jude 24. “Great peace have they who love Your law, and **nothing can make them stumble.**” Psalm 119:165.

You can live the victorious, sin free life, right now, in the Power of Christ. Increasing measure does this, “For if you possess these qualities in increasing measure, **they will keep you** from being ineffective and unproductive in your knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ. For if you do these things, **you will never fall.**” 2 Peter 1:8, 10.

You no longer need to be controlled by sin. You can be set free. The burdens that were so heavy for you and caused you so much trouble can be removed and destroyed in Christ. Your temple house can be swept cleaner and cleaner each day until you come to possess the perfection of Jesus Christ. But the only way it can happen is to continually “submit yourselves, then, to God. **Resist** the Devil, and he will flee from you. Come near to God and He will come near to you. Wash your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you double-minded.” James 4:7, 8.

Another text that brings trouble to some people is found in 1 John 1:8. “If we claim to be without sin, we deceive ourselves and the truth is not in us.” See, they say, You can’t live without sin. We are always going to be sinners. But that is not what the text says. It doesn’t say, “See, you will **always be sinners.**” It says “**If we claim** to be without sin.” Big difference.

I can never claim to have been without sin. I **have been** a sinner. “All have sinned.” But the concept is always past tense. At one time I was a sinner, but through the power of Christ I am **no longer** a sinner.

If it were impossible for us to live the Christ-like life, then Christ died in vain. If He has no power to conquer sin, He is not a God. If my sin and my “flesh” are stronger than God; that makes me God. But I am not God. My “flesh” is not stronger than God. God can conquer sin in my life **and He can give me the power to live the sinless, perfect life of Jesus.** I can do *all* things through Christ!

Now it is time to put these principles to work. The following information will provide a practical method of working with the promises of God in your life. You have finished the initial **Eight Steps to Christian Perfection.** The above information will get you started on a new life. A born again experience that will take you right up through eternity.

The following information is presented to continue your walk in truth. Remember, if we do not walk in the truth, we cannot be set free. To be completely free it is imperative to continue your learning of truth. Using what you have learned, write down some of your thoughts for later use. As you read the following information, put it to the test of Jesus’ teaching. He is the truth and not your church, pastor or teacher.

---

## Use A Blank Sheet of Paper to Answer the Following Questions

### SIN OR BEHAVIOR TO BE CHANGED

I suppose it would be well to define sin. You may have lived all your life thinking that everything was sin. It isn’t. The Bible tells us just what sin is. “Everyone who sins breaks the law; in fact, sin is lawlessness.” 1 John 3:4. That’s it. Sin is only breaking the Ten Commandments. The Bible says to keep them in front of us always so we will know what is right. Here they are.

1. Have no other gods before Me.
2. Make no idols and do not worship them. (Sex, money, power, alcohol, drugs, food, etc.)
3. Do not take God’s Name in vain.
4. Remember to keep the 7<sup>th</sup> day (Saturday) holy.  
Do no worldly work on that day. (No worldly TV, no worldly radio, magazines or talk, etc.)
5. Honor your parents (authority that is over you).
6. Do not murder
7. Do not commit adultery
8. Do not steal
9. Do not give false testimony about anyone.
10. Do not covet what others have. (Car, house, wife, radio, TV, etc.)

How many times a day does this sin use you? \_\_\_\_\_

What circumstances produce this behavior? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

How is it destructive to your life? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

How does it interfere with your life and career? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now that you know how destructive this habit is, list the reasons you do it. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Are you ready to kill this sinful, wicked habit? \_\_\_\_\_

Step 1: Do you have faith that God can give you the power to overcome? \_\_\_\_\_

What are the promises of God to help you in this battle against this wicked habit? Look them up. Read Psalms and Proverbs until you find them. Check the end of this first section for a list of many promises. (Under Ten Commandments)

Step 2: You must now place your will on the side of God. You must now put your mind on doing what is right. Reread the 8 steps. Stay away from all places, persons and objects that increase the likelihood of your doing this wicked habit.

Step 3: Knowledge! Study, read, and talk to those with similar experiences. Learn all you can. This includes learning from Jesus. Fall on your knees every time the urge comes to do that wicked thing and plead for help. Jesus will bring the power if you Ask, Knock, Seek in humility.

Step 4: Self-control. Just say “NO”. Practice saying it right now! Say “No”. There, it can be done. Put your hand up like a policeman directing traffic and just say “No”. Then turn and walk away from the temptation. The power of God will be with you.

Constantly develop right habits. Find a good habit to replace the sinful habit. Let the love and glory of Jesus into your life. Look into the eyes of Jesus as He hung on the cross for you. You can do it. Jesus, all heaven and the angels are standing by to come to your aid. Just call and act out the good habits.

Step 6: From here on it is easy. Get your mind off of your old sinful habit and find someone else you can help.

Throw out the TV and go visit the sick, the elderly or a youth in need of a Christian father figure. How many children are in your neighborhood you could mentor, play ball with and study the Bible with?

Step 7 & 8: Sacrifice your life for the good of others. You are now walking in the perfect character of Jesus.

Do this again with each habit and you will be walking as Jesus walked. Remember, I can do all things through Christ who strengthens me!

## Knowledge II

“The days are coming,’ declares the Sovereign Lord, ‘when I will send a famine through the land – not a famine of food or a thirst for water, but a famine of hearing **the words of the Lord.**” Amos 8:11.

The third step, Knowledge, of the Eight Steps, is the most important. Without knowledge - truth - it is impossible to be set free from sin and ideas that will lead us to sin. The following topics will come under the heading “Knowledge”. Study them and put them to the test. Think about them and apply them to your life. God will bless you as He has blessed in my life. You can live the righteous, perfect life of Christ right now. Don’t let anyone tell you otherwise.

## Teachings of Christ

One day a “Christian” elder of a church came up to me and stated, “We don’t have to believe what Jesus taught. What He taught was before the cross.”

This amazed me. I was stunned. How could a “Christian” be so bold as to claim that the teachings of Christ were no longer valid simply because of His death on the cross? But the more I thought about his statement the more I realized that most of the “Christian” world agrees with that man’s statement. Everyone claims to believe **in** Jesus, but very few believe **what** Jesus taught.

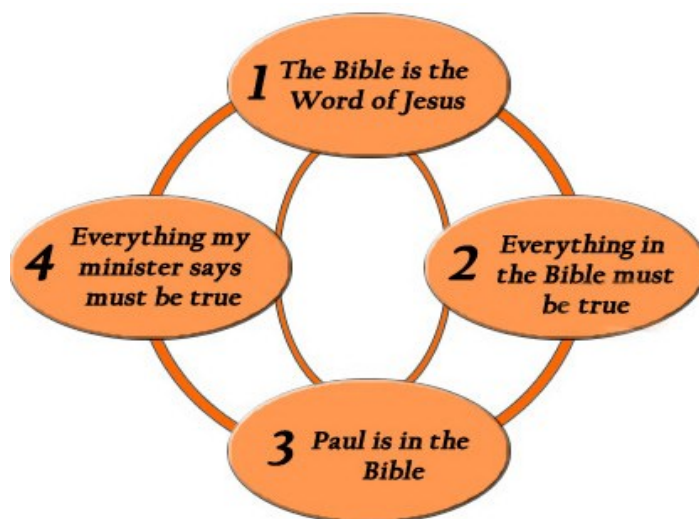
A belief in the historical Christ will not save us. The only salvation we have is a saving faith that leads us to believe in the words of Jesus and put to work that belief. This lesson will show us the importance of believing and teaching only what Christ taught. “Anyone who runs ahead and **does not continue in the teachings of Christ** does **not** have God; whoever continues in the teaching has both the Father and the Son.” 2 John 9. I cannot stress profoundly enough the importance of believing and agreeing with the teachings of Christ: ALONE!

Ask yourself, When was the last time that you actually

heard a teaching of Christ? I’m not talking about a scripture or a message from Paul or a good moral sermon. I’m talking about a teaching straight from the mouth of Jesus. You see, this is the problem. It is too easy to move from Jesus to Paul, to your local minister and church. In the process there are a great many fundamental teachings of Christ that are getting perverted and lost.

Listen to what Peter has to say about this. “He (Paul) writes the same way in all his letters, speaking in them of these matters. His letters contain some things that are hard to understand, **which ignorant and unstable people distort as they do the other scriptures, to their own destruction.**” 2 Peter 3:16.

It’s called circular reasoning:



1) Paul is an inspired writer of God,

2) Paul said such and such and

3) since he said such and such, **he must mean** such and such and

4) since I believe he meant such and such, it must be of God and this **belief of mine** must be the word of God.

See the circle? Now let’s look at it. Just because Paul says something in his writings doesn’t mean he means what you or I **think it means**. Therein lies the problem. So, if we really want to know what is and what is not, let’s go back to Jesus and His teaching. One of the reasons the “Christian” church gets so confused over Paul is that Paul is “speaking to men who know the law.” Romans 7:1.

Very few ministers, teachers, preachers and denominations know the law. They have rejected the Old Testament, from which Paul and Jesus taught for salvation, and know nothing of what Paul is talking about. They take him out of context.



# GRACE

Jesus is the Rock and Paul is only a building material on that Rock. If Paul said or did anything to disagree with the teachings of Jesus, we would have to **remove** Paul's teachings from the Bible. Yet millions of people believe that Paul has the right to change the teachings of Jesus. He doesn't! Nor has he ever changed them!

"As for the person who hears My words but **does not keep them**, I do not judge him. For I did not come to judge the world, but to save it. There is a judge for the one who rejects Me and does not accept **My words**; **that very word** which I spoke will condemn him at the last day. For I did not speak of My own accord, but the Father who sent Me commanded Me **what to say and how to say it**. I know that His command leads to eternal life. So what I say is **just** what the Father has told Me to say." John 12:47-50. That is what Jesus said. Paul must agree with Jesus.

Approximately 28 times in the book of John alone, Jesus states, "I tell you the truth." This is significant. I don't think I have ever read where Paul states that he is "the truth". But over and over again Jesus states that we must believe Him, and Him alone. "If you hold to My teaching, you are really My disciples. Then you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free." John 8:31, 32. I want you to understand that there is a big difference between "Bible Facts" and "Bible Truth".

It is very important to understand that the Bible is the Word of God. But not everything in the Bible is "The Word of God". Big difference. Everything in the Bible is there because God wants it there for a reason. We learn from the examples that are given. But not all examples are truth and righteousness. Some are evil, bad and lies. So be careful of what text is being quoted.

An example of this is found in the Book of Job. Job is in the Bible. But not everything that is written in the Book of Job is of God and true. If someone quoted to you Job 22:1-4, you might be inclined to agree, since it is in the Bible. But Eliphaz speaks this text. Listen to what Jesus says about that. "I am angry with you (Eliphaz) and your two friends, because you have not spoken of Me what is right, as My servant Job has." Job 42:7. A Bible fact: Eliphaz is in the Bible, but he did not speak a Bible truth. This is a very important concept that must be kept in mind when reading the Bible. Who is doing the speaking?

Just because it is in the Bible doesn't mean it is true. Yes, the incident is true. It is true that it was said. But that is not the same as saying what was said was truth. There are many false prophets and sinners in the Bible who said and did things we are not to say or do. In 2 Chronicles 18:5-11 we have recorded over 400 false prophets and their words. But they were false. So be careful. Remember 2 Peter 3:16.

In Matthew 28:20, Jesus tells us that we are to teach only what He has commanded us to teach. Teach only what He has taught us. We have no authority to add to or subtract from the teachings of Christ. **Not one** prophet or Bible writer has added or subtracted from the original plan of salvation. That includes Paul. Since we are to teach only what Jesus taught, we have a real problem with grace. You see my friend, **Jesus never taught grace for salvation**. In fact, nowhere in all the Bible will you find the phrase, "Saved by Grace".

OK - what's all the fuss about grace if Jesus doesn't think it was important for salvation? Just this, if we do not speak truth, we will be bound by sin. You can never be set free if you do not believe truth. **Truth sets us free**. We must learn the truth about grace so we can be set free from errors and false ideas and teachings.

"For the time will come when men will not put up with sound doctrine. Instead, to suit their own desires, they will gather around them a great number of teachers to say what their itching ears want to hear. They will turn their ears away from the truth and turn aside to myths." 2 Timothy 4:3, 4.

In the Christian world the teaching of the grace-myth goes something like this. "We are saved by grace." Sound familiar? The general perception is that grace:

- 1) **began at the cross,**
- 2) **saves us eternally**

There are two basic texts that are used to support this concept. John 1:17, "...grace and truth came through Jesus Christ." And Ephesians 2:8, "For it is by grace you have been saved..."

But as with any study we must study to show ourselves "approved, a workman who does not need to be ashamed and who **correctly** handles the word of truth." 2 Timothy 2:15. Let's begin to **correctly** handle the Word of God.

Grace and truth came through Jesus Christ, not at the cross, but from eternity. "This grace was given us in **Christ Jesus before the beginning of time**." 2 Timothy 1:9. As we have already pointed out, Jesus is from eternity. He is from everlasting to everlasting, the beginning and the end. All of this is the same for grace. Jesus is "The same yesterday and today and forever." Hebrews 13:8.

Therefore grace is **not** a new power bestowed at the cross, but an old power from the beginning of the world. Grace

was known in the Old Testament as well as the New Testament. “The Lord, the Lord, the compassionate and gracious (grace) God...” Exodus 34:6.

What about grace saving us eternally? Since Jesus never mentioned grace for salvation, we need to put it in its proper place. Never did Paul or any of the New Testament writers state that grace “saves us eternally”.

The first thing we recognize is that grace is **unmerited favor**. As it is **unmerited** it must be given to everyone equally. If not, it becomes merited and worked for. If it is given to everyone equally, it cannot save for eternal life. If it could save eternally, then **all** would be saved eternally. This we know is not the case. We know that the wicked will be destroyed.

Hebrews 11 is *not* about grace, but **faith**. Romans 1:17 tells us that righteousness is by **faith** from first to last; no mention of grace. Galatians 3:11 tells us that the righteous will live by **faith**. Hebrews 10:38 states that the righteous will live by **faith**. In Luke 7:50 Jesus told the lady that it was her **faith** that saved her. Over and over again in both the Old and New Testaments it is the element of **faith** that works for our salvation: not grace. The righteous will live by **faith** - Hebrews 11 - the whole chapter.

The question then is, What is the purpose of grace since it doesn't save us eternally? How does it fit into the plan of salvation for us? The answer is quite simple when we are willing to humble ourselves and accept the total Word of God and put aside the teachings of the pagan worldly churches.

God is a gracious God - Exodus 34:6. He is so gracious and abounding in love that He does not want anyone to perish. It is His will for “everyone to come to repentance”. 2 Peter 3:9. Even Jonah understood this. “I knew that you are a **gracious and compassionate God**, slow to anger and abounding in love, a God who relents from sending calamity.” Jonah 4:2. But that poses a problem. “The wages of sin is death.” Romans 6:23.

God told Adam that if he ate of the forbidden fruit, he would “surely die”. Genesis 2:17. They were to die, physically, the moment they disobeyed God. Sin is the separation from God, the Source of Life. Without life, man cannot live since man is mortal, not immortal. Genesis 6:3. “For dust you are and to dust you will return.” Genesis 3:19. Adam and Eve were to drop dead immediately after biting into the forbidden fruit.

Why didn't they? Because, if they did they could never have come to repentance and would have been eternally lost. In God's great love for them, and to us, He supplied an alternative power source to keep them alive: grace. Something like a Duracell battery to keep us alive



physically while separated from God's main power supply. God loved us so much that He didn't want us to die eternally. He wanted us to have time to return to Him through repentance. He wanted us to develop faith in Him, which would lead us back to obedience and eternal life.

“Though grace is shown to the wicked, they do not learn righteousness.” Isaiah 26:10. The sad fact is, the wicked refuse to learn the righteous requirements of eternal life. Even though grace is poured out upon them and sustains them, they refuse. “Because of the Lord's great love we are not consumed, for His compassions never fail.” Lamentations 3:22. God has given grace **to everyone** so we can learn His righteous requirements and have eternal life; yet the wicked refuse to learn. “We urge you not to receive God's grace in vain.” 2 Corinthians 6:1. It is through the wonderful gift of grace - **given to all men equally without merit** and undeserved – that we have the **opportunity** to have salvation. Titus 2:11.



The circle represents the unmerited favor of God given to each of us as grace. It encircles us from birth. You can do nothing to earn it. It is given. Grace can't save you eternally, but you can't live eternally without it. It gives you probation. Whether you are living in sin before the cross or after the cross, grace is the same. It just keeps you alive: physically.

Romans 1:5 brings out this truth even clearer. We receive grace so we can call people “to the **obedience** that comes from faith.” That is how grace and faith work hand in hand for our salvation. Grace saves us from **immediate death** so we can learn **obedience that comes from faith** to have eternal life. **Both save us**. However, **both save us in DIFFERENT ways**.

Romans 5:20 makes it even plainer. “Where sin increased, **grace increased** all the more.” Every time you sin you are to drop dead. Praise God for His Duracell battery of grace that keeps us physically alive. Because of it we can develop faith and learn how to live obedient lives to the teachings of Jesus and “get” eternal life.

But there also comes a time when we will forfeit our grace. Ananias and Sapphira are examples of this forfeiture. The Israelites are another example of this forfeiture. There comes a time when God can no longer

tolerate sin. “Those who cling to worthless idols **forfeit** the grace that could be theirs.” Jonah 2:8.

Let’s put all this in its proper place to agree with the rest of the Bible and Jesus. Remember, there were no punctuations when the original Greek was written. All we are going to do is revisit Ephesians 2:8-10 and punctuate it to make sense and be in harmony with the Bible.

“For by grace (keeping us alive physically), you have been saved through faith (obedience that comes by faith) - and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God - not by works (yourselves works) so that no one can boast. For we are **God’s workmanship**, created in Christ Jesus **to do good works** (obedience from faith), which God prepared in advance for us to do (Ten Commandments).”

So where did the modern concept of grace come from? It came from the Catholic Church. Tetzl, the great seller of indulgences for the Catholic Church explained the Catholic position as such:

“Four precious graces were promised to those who should aid in building the basilica of St. Peter. ‘The first grace that we announce to you,’ said the commissaries, in accordance with the letter of their instructions, ‘is the full pardon of every sin.’ Next followed three other graces: *first*, the right of choosing a confessor, who, whenever the hour of death appeared at hand, should give absolution from all sin, and even from the greatest crimes reserved for the apostolic see: *secondly*, a participation in all the blessings, works, and merits of the Catholic Church, prayers, fasts, alms, and pilgrimages; *thirdly*, redemption of the souls that are in purgatory.

“To obtain the first of these graces, it was requisite to have contrition of heart and confession of mouth, or at least an intention of confessing. But as for the three others, they might be obtained without contrition, without confession, **simply by paying**... Such was the doctrine taught by the Archbishop of Mentz and by the papal commissaries.” (*D-Aubigne’s History of the Reformation: Published 1846*)

As you can see, the Protestant churches kept the concept of grace which came from the Catholic Church, and simply did away with the idea of payment (unless you include all those requests for money). None of it is correct in a Biblical sense.

Many claim that the God of the Old Testament is a God of vengeance, hate and “law”, while the God of the New Testament is a God of grace, love and compassion. The truth could not be farther from that teaching. The greatest examples of God’s grace are found in the Old Testament. Over and over again the Israelites deserved

to be destroyed, but God’s grace kept them alive. “The Lord is gracious and righteous; our God is full of compassion.” Psalms 116:5.

## ILLUSTRATION

Let me give you an example of how the worldly churches respond to the “gift” of grace. You have had a heart attack. You go to a world-renowned doctor



and he tells you that since you are his friend, he will treat you for free (grace). He tells you that if you don’t want to die, but live long, you must change your life-style. You must exercise, eat healthier and get plenty of sleep. But you tell him, “Doc. You are my friend and a renowned doctor. You save thousands of lives each year. I know I can “believe” you because you are doing this as my friend and for free (grace). Therefore, I will just “believe” in you to save me while I go on living my old way.”

What do you think that doctor would think of you? That is what Jesus thinks of you. Please, follow the instructions given by our Doctor Jesus. Work out your salvation with great fear and trembling. (Philippians 2:12)

Some may say that salvation is a “free gift” and that God will not nor would He ever take it back. The answer to that is, “Those who cling to worthless idols **forfeit** the grace that could be theirs.” Jonah 2:8. See, the “gift” can be **forfeited!**

If I give you \$100 and tell you that I will never take it back, but it is yours to do with as you please, I am not responsible for what you do with it. If you are careless with it and someone steals it from you, you no longer have the \$100 I gave you, you have forfeited it. Remember, the devil is a thief. He is trying to steal your “free gift”. Or you may misplace your “free gift” and lose it. Either way, you no longer have your “free Gift”. I did not take it back, but you no longer have it. You have forfeited it. Same with God and eternal life.

---

# A Story of Grace

Jesus had just finished creating Adam. He sat back on the beach and looked at him with love, like a parent to a newborn baby. As a “newborn” he was in need of educating. He began by telling him of His love for him

and the requirements for eternal life. If Adam obeyed Him he would stay connected to Him, the source of all power and life. If he disobeyed Him, he would be cut off from that power and would die.

Sometime later Adam and Eve were out and about walking in the garden. They began to doubt the instructions that God had given them. They disobeyed. One could almost hear the collective astonishment throughout the universe as billions upon billions, trillions upon trillions of intelligent beings took a gasp. No planet had ever disobeyed God. Satan and his followers were the only ones and they were cast out of Heaven. But God had said these would die if they rebelled. What would happen? What did “die” mean? No one had ever seen death or experienced it.

Soon a communique was issued from the Throne of God. The Tribunal had met and issued the following memorandum. This was an amazing memo. The entire universe wanted to know more about this “Kingdom of Grace” and how it was to be implemented. What were the conditions of this “Grace”?

The “sons of God” gathered on a “New Moon” to discuss this wonderful, marvelous news with Michael.

Michael stood up and began to speak. “The inhabitants of Earth have cut themselves off from the Main Generating Source of Life. But in order to give them an opportunity to be reconnected, We have implanted a **temporary** generating life force. This is called ‘grace’. “It does not save them spiritually or keep them alive forever. It saves them physically from the wages of sin - immediate death. This will enable them to learn the requirements that each of us must follow for eternal life.

“Those who will accept the requirements will be inviting Me in as their Savior. As their Savior, I will be able to empower them to keep the perfect Law that governs Our Universe. As they learn and obey Our requirements, they will be able to live with us eternally. (John 3:16, 17).

“This acceptance of Me will require faith. (Romans 3:22). And this faith will produce obedience to Our Law. (Romans 1:5; Romans 2:13). I will teach them that to be Spiritual and enter eternal life, they must fully obey the Commandments. (Matthew 19:17).

“By letting Me live within them by faith, they will no longer be disobedient and sin. They will be living without continuing in sin because they will have been reborn as My children. (1 John 3:8, 9). They will count themselves dead to their sins and not offer the parts of their bodies to sin as instruments of wickedness, but will offer themselves to Me as instruments of Righteousness. (Romans 6:13). They will no longer go on sinning, not because of the grace we gave them, but because of the faith they will learn to have in Me.” Romans 6:1, 2.

## MEMORANDUM

**Date:** About 600 years after creating Earth  
**From:** Ancient of Days, Michael, Holy Spirit:  
Jerusalem, Heaven  
**To:** All inhabitants of the Universe  
**Subject:** Destiny of the planet Earth

We are heartbroken and grieved to confirm that the inhabitants of planet Earth have sinned. Each of us understands the Law: Ten Commandments. It is the foundation of our Government. “Everyone who sins breaks the law; in fact, sin is lawlessness.” (1 John 3:4) It is also true that “the wages of sin is death.” (Romans 6:23)

But the tribunal has determined that if We implement this decree now, the inhabitants of Earth will never be able to learn obedience and Righteousness. They would die without the hope of eternal life. Therefore, it is Our decision to institute the “Kingdom of Grace”. (2 Timothy 1:9)

This will allow the inhabitants of Earth a time of probation to learn Our Righteous requirements and to obey them. This is a costly plan. But it is the only one We have that will save their lives.

Sincerely,  
The LORD, the LORD, the Compassionate and gracious God, slow to anger, abounding in Love and Faithfulness. (Exodus 34:6)



The temple was hushed. In breathless awe the vast assembly of the “sons of God” listened to the Plan of Salvation (the everlasting gospel) and the part that grace

# WORKS



Work! What a dirty word! The modern “Christian” church is so quick to jump on this “saved by grace” bandwagon that they totally refuse to check out the fine print. As already stated, grace only keeps us alive physically so we can learn faith. **Grace does not save us eternally.** Faith will save you eternally, but not without works. “In the same way, faith by itself, if it is not accompanied by action (work), is dead.” James 2:17.

Works is in the Bible. Let’s just get it out and face it head on. Some of the terms that are used in place of the word “work”, but which mean the same are: deeds, action, doing, does, walk, obey, obedience, etc. Work is an integral part of the Christian life and salvation.

Let us start with the words and teaching of Christ. “Not everyone who says to Me, ‘Lord, Lord’, will enter the kingdom of heaven, but only he who **does** the will of My Father who is in heaven.” Matthew 7:21. There are only two types of people in the world: workers of righteousness and workers of evil. “Many will say to Me on that day, ‘Lord, Lord, did we not prophecy in Your Name, and in Your Name drive out demons and perform many miracles?’ Then I will tell them plainly, ‘I never knew you. Away from Me, you evil **doers!**’” Matthew 7:22, 23.

## Are You a Legalist?

*This issue is far from academic. It affects your own peace of mind, your poise, and how you share with others.*



The next obvious question is, “What about being a legalist with all these works? Won’t I be like the Pharisees?” No! The difference is “what” works are you doing. If

you are doing **your own works**, yes. If you are doing **God’s works**, no. The Pharisees were doing **their own works**. Jesus already told them, in Mark 7:6-9 that they were not doing His works but their own. Listen to Jesus. “Isaiah was right when he prophesied about you hypocrites; as it is written: ‘These people honor Me with their lips, but their hearts are far from Me. **They worship Me in vain**; their teachings are but rules taught by men.’ You have **let go of the commands of God** and are holding on to the traditions of men... You have a fine way of setting aside the commands of God in order to **observe your own traditions!**”

had to play. They now understood that grace would not let anyone into heaven who did not stop sinning. They understood that it would only keep them alive physically so they could learn to live faithfully in the power of their Savior to be obedient to the Ten Commandments. Heaven would be safe!

Then a hand slowly rose up. Jesus looked with love into the eyes of the one who was going to ask the most important question ever to be raised. The “son” stood and asked, “How will this be possible since the Law requires the death of the sinner?”

A glow of Divine light began to radiate from Jesus as He spoke. “I will go and give My Life as a ransom for many. (Matthew 20:28). I will be killed and will be raised on the third day. (Matthew 16:21). Then My Divine Power will give them everything they will ever need for life and godliness through their knowledge of Me. Through their knowledge of Me they will be able to participate in My Divine Nature and escape the corruption in the world caused by evil desires. (2 Peter 1:3, 4). If they obey all that I tell them, they will never fall.” (2 Peter 1:10).

Then all the “sons of God”, and all the inhabitants of heaven stood and threw their crowns at the feet of Michael, bowing and saying, “...because You were slain, and with Your blood You purchased men for God from every tribe and language and people and nation. You have made them to be a kingdom and priests to serve our God, and they will reign on the earth... Worthy is the Lamb, who was slain, to receive power and wealth and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and praise!... To Him who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be praise and honor and glory and power, for ever and ever!” (Revelation 5:9, 10, 12, 13). AMEN!



speaking and hearing how legalistic He was. “Man does not live on bread alone, but **on every word** that comes from the mouth of God.” Matthew 4:4. On “**every word**” that comes from God, not just some, “**every word**”. The dictionary defines legalism as “strict, literal or excessive conformity to the law or to a religious or moral code.”

Excessive was how the Pharisees obeyed their church. Strict and literal was how Jesus obeyed every word that came from God. “Woe to you teachers of the law and Pharisees, you hypocrites! You give a tenth of your spices – mint, dill and cummin. But you have neglected the more important matters of the law – justice, mercy and faithfulness. **You should have practiced the latter, without neglecting the former.**” Matthew 23:23. You should have practiced the latter... **without** neglecting the former. Talk about a legalist. Jesus was the epitome of legalists.

You see, without legalism you cannot enter the kingdom of heaven. Only those who by faith are obedient to the commands of God, **as Jesus was**, can enter His kingdom. Now you understand why only a few will be saved. (Luke 13:23). People want to be saved by their own (self) way – but there is only One way to heaven.

Jesus stated emphatically, “but the world must learn that I love the Father and that I do (work) **exactly** what My Father has commanded Me.” John 14:31. “For I did not speak of My own accord, but the Father who sent Me commanded Me **what to say** and **how to say it**.” John 12:49.

“What to say and how to say it”. Excessive, strict, literal? Jesus wants to make it very plain that any variation will not be tolerated. He says to you and me, “Come, follow Me.” We are to live the strict, legalistic life of Jesus. When someone calls me a legalist, I thank that person and then remind them that my example is Jesus. I want to be like Jesus. Don’t you?

A wealthy man came to Jesus one day and asked what he needed to do (work) to get to heaven. Jesus did not correct his concept of working to heaven. He simply told him what work was acceptable. Jesus stated, “If you want to enter life, obey (work) the commandments.” Matthew 19:17. Being a good Jew, he realized what Jesus was talking about but he wanted to sound like he was smart and intelligent. He asked Jesus, “Which ones?”

Jesus did not get into an argument with him. He didn’t tell him about the ceremonial laws, feast days, temple rituals, health laws or civil laws for they were never important for salvation. They would be abolished at the cross. Jesus just told him the truth by quoting some of the Ten Commandments. “Do not murder, do not commit adultery, do not steal, do not give false

testimony, honor your father and your mother, and love your neighbor as yourself.”

The man stuck his chest out and wanted to make sure that everyone was hearing before speaking. “All these I have kept” the young man said. “What do I still lack?” Jesus replied, “If you want **to be perfect**, go, sell your possessions and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come, follow Me.” For many people of the modern “Christian” church, they take this to show that Jesus recognized that the keeping of the Ten Commandments is not all that had to be done. They claim that after giving the Ten Commandments He then went on to show something else was needed to get into heaven. If this were the case, Jesus would be a liar. He stated that all we had to do was keep the commandments. Would He add more who taught us to add or subtract nothing more to the Commandments? “You shall not add to it or take from it.” Deuteronomy 12:32. NO! So let’s take a closer look at this.

The first thing we notice is that Jesus only gave five of the last six of the Ten Commandments. After giving the five, he stopped and let the young man respond foolishly. Then Jesus gave the sixth commandment in a parable of action (work), “go, sell your possessions.” You see, the Tenth Commandment is, “Do not covet...”. The young man thought he had been keeping the Ten Commandments. But in reality he had been breaking them. He had been coveting his wealth. Wealth that God had given him to share with the poor. Jesus showed the young man that he did not love God nor his neighbor as himself. He broke the Ten Commandments and as such, could not enter into heaven.

There are those who answer that it is impossible to keep the Ten Commandments. That would be saying that God is unjust for giving them to us if He knew we couldn’t keep them. But that is not true. Jesus said, “With man this is impossible, but with God all things are possible.” Matthew 19:26. Jesus is a just God. He can only do what is just. He would never ask us to do what would be impossible.

Yes, dear friend, **all things are possible with God**. Even keeping perfect the Ten Commandments. John tells us, “This is love for God: to obey His commands. And His commands are **not** burdensome.” 1 John 5:3. Isn’t it time for you to read the Ten Commandments and begin obeying them exactly as God has asked you to? He will give you the power if you will acknowledge that He is God and that you must obey Him.

The promise is there. “If you fully obey the Lord your God and carefully follow all His commands I give you today, the Lord your God will set you high above all the nations on earth. All these blessings will come upon you and accompany you if you obey the Lord your God.”

Deuteronomy 28:1, 2. If you want to be blessed: Obey.

“Everyone who has this hope in Him purifies himself, just as He is pure.” 1 John 3:3. I found this text most interesting. This says that **I must purify myself**. That sounds like a work I must do. I did a study to find out if this text was an anomaly, or if the rest of the Bible supported it. From 1<sup>st</sup> John, I went to 1<sup>st</sup> Peter. There I found the same concept. “Now that you have **purified yourselves** by obeying the truth...” 1:22. This text even showed me how I am to purify myself, by obeying (**working**) the truth. Without truth it is impossible to purify ourselves. Unless we are pure, we cannot have eternal life. (Revelation 19:8). James puts it like this. “Come near to God and He will come near to you. Wash your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you double-minded.” James 4:8.

The whole concept seems to be a taking an active role in our own salvation. That we must do the washing, purifying and coming near to God. It’s as if it is not God who left us, but we who left Him, *therefore it is our responsibility to come back to Him*. Much like the prodigal Son. The father did not leave the son, the son left the father. Therefore it was the son’s duty to return to the father. “Come, let us return to the LORD”. Hosea 6:1.

Paul told his buddy, Timothy, “...train yourself to be godly.” 1 Timothy 4:7. None of this teaching implies that we are to leave it up to God. None of this is a “Let go, let God” concept. None of this is a “saved by grace” teaching. All of it is a take-charge, hands-on salvation that we must accomplish in **our own lives**. In Paul’s second letter to Timothy he continued this teaching. “If a man **cleanses himself** from the latter, he will be an instrument for noble purposes, made holy, useful to the Master and prepared **to do any good work**.” 2 Timothy 2:21.

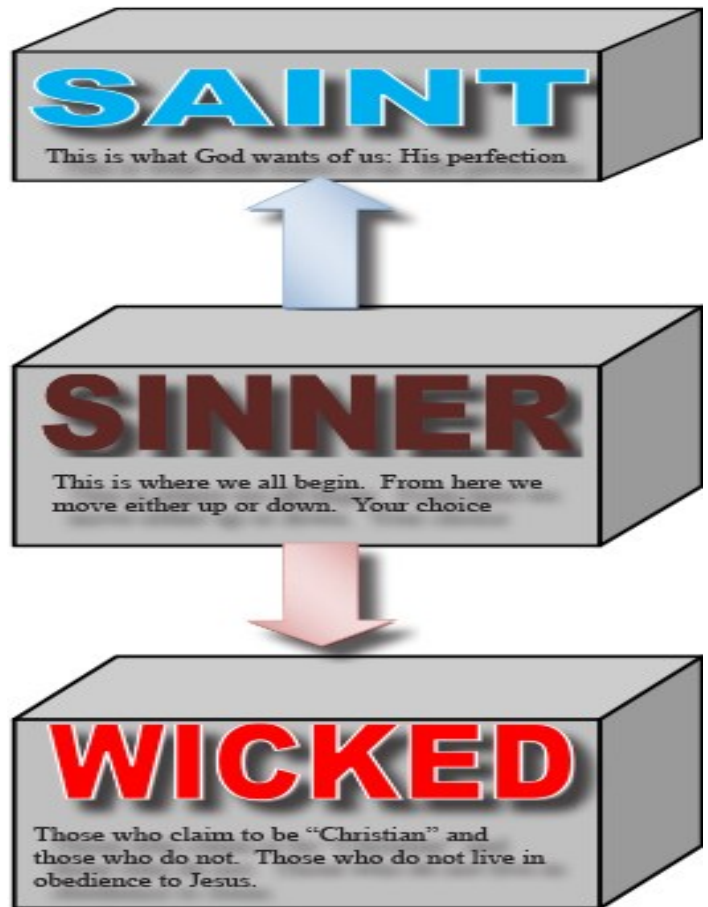
It appears that they knew something back then that we are not being taught today. While we mope around wondering if we are saved or if we sinned (not knowing what sin is); we could be working out our salvation and have the assurance that we are not sinning and are being saved. That concept, “being saved” runs throughout the Bible. Acts 2:47. (ESV)

The New Testament writers were not introducing anything new. All of this comes from the Old Testament. Turning to Leviticus 20:7, 8 we read, “Consecrate yourselves and be holy, because I am the Lord your God. Keep My decrees and follow them. I am the Lord, who makes you holy.” God’s great grace is actually revealed through His Ten Commandments. “...be gracious to me through your law.” Psalm 119:29.

This goes right along with Peter. Following the truth, the

decrees, the Ten Commandments make us holy. And of course, since the Ten Commandments are holy, by keeping them, we are made holy. That is how the Lord makes us holy. He has given us that which is holy to follow. By following it, we become holy. The example is Jesus. That is how He did it. “Although He was a son, He learned obedience from what He suffered and, once made perfect, He became the source of eternal salvation **for all who obey Him...**” Hebrews 5:8, 9.

And that is the key for salvation: “for all who **obey Him**”. He cannot be anyone’s eternal salvation **unless they work their way to heaven through obedience to His plan of salvation**. But some say, “All you need is faith.” Let’s see, didn’t you have faith that the cops wouldn’t catch you in your crime? Did that faith work? I don’t think so. Better to have faith with good works than faith without good works. Remember, it would be unjust for Jesus to command us to do something we couldn’t do.



Here are the full Ten Commandments Jesus asks us to obey for our own good.

- 1) **Do not worship any god except me.**
- 2) **Do not make idols that look like anything in the sky or on earth or in the ocean under the earth. Don't bow down and worship idols. I am the LORD your God, and I demand all your love. If you reject me, I will punish your families for three or four generations. But if you love me and obey my laws, I**

will be kind to your families for thousands of generations.

3) Do not misuse my name. I am the LORD your God, and I will punish anyone who misuses my name.

4) Remember that the Sabbath Day belongs to me. You have six days when you can do your work, but the seventh day of each week belongs to me, your God. No one is to work on that day--not you, your children, your slaves, your animals, or the foreigners who live in your towns. In six days I made the sky, the earth, the oceans, and everything in them, but on the seventh day I rested. That's why I made the Sabbath a special day that belongs to me.

5) Respect your father and your mother, and you will live a long time in the land I am giving you.

6) Do not murder.

7) Be faithful in marriage.

8) Do not steal.

9) Do not tell lies about others.

10) Do not want anything that belongs to someone else. Don't want anyone's house, wife or husband, slaves, oxen, donkeys or anything else.

I would like to take this moment of your time to share a beautiful passage from another author. This author spent a lifetime serving the Lord Jesus Christ and understood the principles involved in living and working out the Christian life. Too often our attention is diverted to worldly activities. We look at all the turmoil going on around us and wonder if Christ is coming now. When will Christ come? What will bring His coming? These questions will be answered biblically through prophecy in upcoming chapters. But I want you to understand that you can hasten the coming of Jesus. How? Read the parable Christ taught in Mark 4:26-29 and listen very carefully to what it is saying. Then see if this passage is not true. There is a work for you to do.

“Christ is waiting with longing desire for the manifestation of Himself in His church. **When the character of Christ shall be perfectly reproduced in His people**, then He will come to claim them as His own.

“It is the privilege of every Christian not only to look for but to hasten the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, (2 Peter 3:12). Were all who profess His name **bearing fruit to His glory**, how quickly the whole world would be sown with the seed of the gospel. Quickly the last great harvest would be ripened, and Christ would come to gather the precious grain.” *Christ's Object Lessons*.

That is the object of this book, to sow and teach the true gospel of Jesus so that each person may come to the perfection (bearing fruit) of the character of Jesus Christ. Let us **work** toward that end and hasten the coming of our Lord and Saviour, Jesus Christ.

So again we must ask ourselves, whose “gospel” are we teaching? The gospel as taught by the Catholic Church? The gospel as taught by the worldly churches? Or the gospel that Jesus taught? If you obey the gospel as Jesus taught it: Stop sinning, Be perfect and to keep the Ten Commandments to “get” your eternal life; then you will be saved. If not, “He will punish those who do not know God and do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus.” 2 Thessalonians 1:8.

## Related Texts

Genesis 2:17

Genesis 5:24

Genesis 17:1

Exodus 20:20

Leviticus 20:7, 8

Deuteronomy 27:9, 10

Joshua 22:29

2 Samuel 5:25

2 Samuel 22:26, 27

Psalms 1:1

Psalms 24:3, 4

Ecclesiastes 12:13, 14

Isaiah 55:6-9

Jeremiah 17:10

Jeremiah 26:13

Jeremiah 35:15

Jeremiah 44:4, 5, 10

Ezekiel 7:3, 8, 9

Ezekiel 18:30, 31

Ezekiel 33:8-20, 31, 32

Micah 6:8

Zechariah 1:3, 4

Matthew 5:16

Matthew 5:29, 30

Matthew 7:21-24

Matthew 12:33, 35

Mark 13:13

John 5:29

Acts 5:29, 32

Acts 24:25

Romans 2:13

Romans 12:1, 2, 9, 21

Romans 16:19, 26

1 Corinthians 9:24-27

1 Corinthians 15:33, 34

2 Corinthians 3:18

2 Corinthians 7:1

2 Corinthians 9:1

2 Corinthians 13:7

Galatians 6:7-9

Ephesians 4:22-24

Philippians 2:12-15

Colossians 1:10

Colossians 3:2, 5-10, 23

2 Timothy 2:21

Titus 3:8, 14

Genesis 4:7

Genesis 6:9

Genesis 39:9

Leviticus 11:44, 45

Deuteronomy 4:4

Joshua 14:14

1 Samuel 7:3

2 Samuel 8:15

Ezra 9:13

Psalms 15:1, 2

Psalms 34:13, 14

Isaiah 1:19

Jeremiah 6:16

Jeremiah 18:7-11

Jeremiah 32:19

Jeremiah 36:3, 7

Ezekiel 3:18-21

Ezekiel 14:6

Ezekiel 24:14

Micah 2:7

Habakkuk 2:4

Zechariah 3:7

Matthew 5:20

Matthew 7:13, 14, 16-20

Matthew 10:38

Matthew 19:17, 24

Luke 9:23

Acts 3:26

Acts 6:7

Acts 26:20

Romans 6:16-18

Romans 13:12-14

1 Corinthians 6:20

1 Corinthians 10:12

2 Corinthians 2:9

2 Corinthians 5:17

2 Corinthians 7:15

2 Corinthians 10:5, 6

Galatians 5:7, 13, 16

Ephesians 1:4

Ephesians 5:8-11

Philippians 4:8, 13

Colossians 2:20, 21

1 Thessalonians 4:3-5, 7

Titus 2:12

James 2:14-26



# Jesus Our Savior

“The Lord is my rock, my fortress and my deliverer; my God is my rock, in whom I take refuge. He is my shield and the horn of my salvation, my stronghold.” Psalm 18:2. “The Lord is my light and my salvation, whom shall I fear?” Psalm 27:1.

For years I held the belief that Jesus saved me by giving me eternal life - if He wanted to. It was like the state lottery. I kept throwing the dice and maybe God would give me eternal life.

Then I was led to believe that eternal life, salvation, was free (grace) to all and Jesus just gave it to everyone no matter what you did. Then I experienced the truth through trials and tribulations. The truth set me free so that I know what Jesus wants from me and how I can attain His desire for me.

What you’re about to read will shock you. If you love the Lord and love His truth, it will bring you great joy and freedom. If you are playing the “Christian” church game and pretending you have eternal life; you will not want to accept the truth. The majority of eyes are blind. The majority of ears are deaf. Very few people will be saved. This section will give you the truth so you will know why.

“This is good, and pleases God our Savior, **who wants all men to be saved** and to come to a knowledge of truth.” 1 Timothy 2:3, 4. Jesus wants you to be eternally saved, but He cannot save you eternally. Jesus wants you to come to the knowledge of truth, but He cannot make you come to it.



There are those who believe that Jesus will save them eternally and give them eternal life no matter what they do. Like a magician pulling a rabbit out of a hat. But Jesus can’t save you eternally with a magic wand. If He could save you, then **all** would be saved since He **wants** all to be saved. But He can’t

save one sinner who refuses to come to the knowledge of the truth and live it.

You see my friend, Jesus is **our savior from harm, danger, hurt, misfortune, evil, car accidents, etc.** But He **cannot** save us eternally. In the above text, Psalm 18:2, it talks about Jesus as our Savior. But we must read so as to find out what He saves us from. In verse three it tells us, “my enemies.” David understood that God saved

him from “evil men”. Psalm 27:2. He understood the fullness and the limits of God’s salvation. In order for you to get to heaven you also must understand.

“**Repay them** for their deeds and for their evil work; **repay them** for what their hands have done and bring back upon them what they deserve.” Psalm 28:4. Jesus says that when He comes He will come and bring His “reward with Me, and I will give to everyone **according to what he has done.**” Revelation 22:12.

As we are learning, we are saved eternally by our works. We earn our destiny. “The dead were judged **according to what they had done** as recorded in the books.” “Each person was judged **according to what he had done.**” Revelation 20:12, 13.

Jesus said, “This is how it will be at the end of the age. The angels will come and separate the wicked from the righteous.” Matthew 13:49. Either God is unjust and arbitrary by deciding who gets into heaven and who does not or He is just and decides on our deeds (works). If He is just He must reward each person according to his own works. If He does this, then eternal salvation and eternal life are no longer “free” but are earned rewards. It is freely offered (grace), but you must work (faith) for the free gift. The “free” part actually originally referred to money, not effort. You can not buy your eternal life. Centuries later it took on the concept of “there is nothing you can do for eternal life”. How sad. You have been lied to.

Through this prison ministry, I learned that inmates understand this principle very well. There are privileges that each inmate can earn. To earn the privilege, an inmate has to comply with certain rules and conditions. As long as he continues in these conditions, the privileges were given to him free of charge. But if an inmate broke these conditions the privileges were revoked.

The same applies in the real world. If you comply with the rules and conditions of the Department of Motor Vehicles, you are granted the privilege of a driver’s license. If you violate the condition, the privilege can be revoked.

The state legislature voted and opened the way for people to gain a driver’s license. They made it possible for people to own them. But it is up to the individual to comply with the rules and conditions to get one. It is not up to the state legislature to give **you** one.

God can save you and be your **Savior physically**, but not eternally. He can raise the dead, open the eyes of the blind, and let the deaf hear. He can walk on water and save you from drowning. He can keep you from harm in a car accident or illness and disease. But only you can save yourself eternally.

Jesus is the Way, the Truth and the Life. **He has opened the way for eternal life. He has made the provision for you to gain eternal life.** This is called “justification”. But you must **earn** it, “according to what he has done.” In order for you to get the life Jesus offers, you must go through His way by believing in His truth. If you refuse or violate His way, or truth, you cannot have His eternal life. Your choice! I do not care what your church teaches or what you believe. I only care that you believe what Jesus is teaching. You must obey Jesus and Jesus only!

“This day I call heaven and earth as witness against you that I have set before you life and death, blessings and curses. Now **choose** life, so that you and your children may live and that you may love the Lord your God. Listen to His voice, and hold fast to Him. For the Lord is your life.” Deuteronomy 30:19, 20. “The Lord your God commands you this day to follow these decrees and laws; carefully observe them with all your heart and with all your soul ... **walk** in all His ways.” Deuteronomy 26:16, 17.

Choose you this day! Choice. It is **your choice**. God opened the way. He provided the plan. He gave His life. He even provides the power to obey and walk in all His way and keep His truth. But only you can open the door of your heart. “Behold, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears My voice and opens the door, I will come in to him and eat with him, and he with Me.” Revelation 3:20. Please let that power dwell inside you to work with your will to obey all His Ten Commandments. Eternal life is there. All you have to do is go get it. Don’t wait for it to come to you, it is already waiting. Don’t wait until God is ready, He’s ready. Don’t put it off or make excuses for sin – there are no excuses. “I **can** do everything through Him who gives me strength!” Philippians 4:13.

Step out of darkness and into His marvelous Way. Accept His truth and have eternal life. “Not every one who says to Me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven, but only he who **does** (work) the will of My Father who is in heaven.” Matthew 7:21. Your choice. “O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, you who kill the prophets and stone those sent to you, how often I have longed to gather your children together, as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, but you were not willing.” Matthew 23:37. This book is as a prophet to you. Are you listening? Or will you “stone” this book?

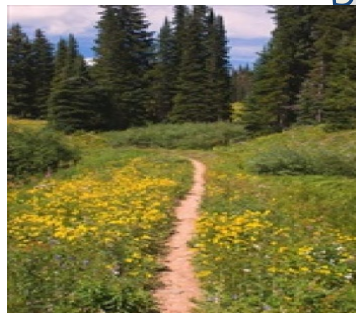
Not willing? How sad. Are you willing to earn the eternal life Jesus is offering you? Are you willing to **pick up your cross** and follow Jesus? Are you willing to be obedient to the truth so when Jesus comes He can give you what you have earned – your reward of eternal life? Or will He have to give you the other reward you have earned: eternal death? Your choice. Are you ready to

“**work** out your salvation?” Philippians 2:12. That is the only way you can get to heaven.

## The Broadway



## Narrow Way



The devil has opened a broad way for you to follow. You have to work to be on it. You must be a doer of evil to walk on the broad way. Matthew 7:23. If you want to know how to walk on the broad way, just watch TV, read the worldly reading material, listen to the music of the world and do what the crowd does.

Jesus has also opened up a Way for traveling. But it is a narrow way. Only those who do righteousness will be found on it. They must work to stay on that narrow Way. Matthew 7:21, 22. “Since we live

by the Spirit, let us **keep in step** with the Spirit.” Galatians 5:25 “Do not let my words do good to him whose ways are upright?” Micah 2:7.

If you want to get to heaven and walk the Spirit filled life, you must follow the example of Jesus Christ. “To this you were called, because Christ suffered for you, **leaving you an example**, that you should follow in His steps. He committed **no sin**, and **no deceit** was found in His mouth.” 1 Peter 2:21, 22.

“This is how we know we are in Him: Whoever claims to live in Him must walk (work) as Jesus did.” 1 John 2:5, 6. The choice is yours. You must work at one or the other. “**Believing** won’t get you into Heaven. **Your work will determine your reward.** “**Otherwise, you have believed in vain.**” 1 Corinthians 15:2.

# Romans Seven

The next hurdle is found in Romans, chapter seven. This chapter is probably quoted more often than any teaching of Christ. This text is used by sinners to show that they can sin and **still be saved**. They love to quote Paul. The more confusing Paul is, the better. If he is confusing, then they can claim to interpret it. Yet they never stop to think about what they are doing and whether or not they are interpreting it so it agrees with Jesus and His teaching.

“We know that the law is spiritual; but **I** am unspiritual, sold as a slave to sin. **I do not** understand what **I do**. For what **I want** to do **I do not do**, but what **I hate I do**. And if **I do** what **I do not** want to do, **I agree** that the law is good. As it is, it is no longer **I myself** who do it, but it is **sin living in me**. **I know nothing** good lives in me, that is, in my sinful nature. For **I have** a desire to do what is good, but **I cannot** carry it out. For what **I do is not** the good **I want** to do; no, the evil **I do not** want to do – this **I keep** on doing. Now if **I do** what **I do not** want to do, it is no longer **I** who do it, **but it is sin living in me that does it.**” Romans 7:14-20.

Wow! Look at all the “I’s”. They just jump out at you. “I hate”, “I do”, “I agree”, “I do not”, “I know”, “I know nothing”, “I want”. What a confused man! Is God the author of confusion? Does God bring sin? Is God powerless to do anything about this? Of course not! “God is not a God of confusion.” 1 Corinthians 14:33. But people use this to justify their sinful, confused life. “See, Paul was a saint, and was living the wicked life just like me.” **NOT SO!**

This statement is not about Paul the apostle. It is about **Saul the Pharisee Zealot**. As a Pharisee Zealot Saul knew the righteous requirements of the righteous Ten Commandments. As a zealot he was attempting to serve God his church way. He had been brainwashed by his church. He was a wretched man and cried out, “Who will rescue me from this body of death? The answer? Thanks be to God – **through Jesus Christ our Lord!**” Romans 7:24. And that’s the whole point. God is our Savior **from sin**, not *in* sin. He came to deliver us **from** the wretched, miserable, confused life of sin. Paul himself tells us that this experience he recounted for us was “**when we were controlled by the sinful nature.**” Romans 7:5.

“**When we were**”, past tense: **not now** as a Christian. The Christian life is related in Romans, chapter 6: “Therefore **do not let sin reign in your mortal bodies** so that you obey its evil desires. **Do not offer the parts of your body to sin**, as instruments of wickedness, but rather offer yourselves to God, as those who have been brought from death to life; and offer the parts of your body to Him as instruments of righteousness.” Romans 6:12, 13.

Jesus does not bring sin or confusion. Paul said that himself; “...it is **sin living in me.**” Romans 7:17. Jesus brings peace and rest to the souls of those He lives with. Jesus would never bring all that pain and suffering to one of His children. “Peace be with you” is the message of Jesus. John 20:21. Yes, if we live the peaceful, restful, Christian life, we will be “persecuted because of righteousness.” Matthew 5:10. But God does not bring the persecution, the Devil does. Peace on the inside, trials and tribulations on the outside coming from a world that hates righteousness.

“There is no peace . . . for the wicked.” Isaiah 57:21. The sinner will have no peace on the inside, but will be at peace with the world. Your choice. “And so **He condemned sin in sinful man** in order that the **righteous requirements of the law might be fully met in us**, who **do not live according to the sinful nature** but according to the spirit.” Romans 8:3, 4. Do you see?! The righteous requirements of the law can be fully met in us. We no longer live according to the sinful nature. What a wonderful God we have!

The whole point of Romans is **to separate us from the sinful desires of the body** that brings death. Paul wants to bring us into oneness with Jesus who brings peace. Again, the teachings of Jesus first and then build the truth on that. Don’t let anyone use scripture, like the devil does, to present a portion of it to get you to sin. Resist, say no. **Sinful scriptures refer to sinners. Righteous scriptures are for those who live righteously.** Paul would not lie. Jesus can not lie or change His righteous way. No sinner will go to heaven. Only sinners who have **stopped sinning** through the power of Jesus will go to heaven. Are you ready to be a saint?

An added note. This following quote is from the book, “Greece and Rome: Builders of Our World” by the Geographic Society; page 31.

“The Greeks had two souls in their breasts, one striving for clarity, temperance, moderation, the other impelling them toward orgy and rapture; love of order coupled with violence; the serenity of civilization and the cry of the cave. We find that opposition ... in drama, which **the Greeks invented**. Such conflicts gives it enduring power.”

Paul was born a Hebrew in the city of Tarsus, but he grew up very educated in the Greek thought. Romans 7 is about changing from the pagan thought to the Christian thought. Perfection through the power of Jesus to control our minds and bodies. Christ tells us to come out of the world and to lift our thoughts to Heaven and away from this world. It is your thoughts that have been causing you to sin. Stop!



# ROMANS 3

Romans chapter three is another one of those “oops” chapters. What do you do with it? Let’s take a look at the texts that seem to be such a problem in the “Christian” world today. As quoted by most of the churches, it goes something like this, “There is no one righteous, not even one; there is no one who understands, no one who seeks God. All have turned away, they have together become worthless; there is no one who does good, not even one.” Verses 10 through 12.

According to this quote no one can be perfect. No one can be sinless. All are destined to be no-good, rotten, worthless sinners. Wow, is that really what it is saying? Remember Peter in his letter to the believers? Let’s review what he said about Paul. “His (Paul) letters **contain some things that are hard to understand, which ignorant and unstable people distort**, as they do the other Scriptures, **to their own destruction.**” 2 Peter 3:16.

There are two basic concepts we must keep in mind when reading the Bible. Jesus and Jesus only is the Way and the Truth to the one eternal life. Jesus and Jesus only is the Rock that we are to build on. Remember what Paul said about that? “My brothers, some from Chloe’s household have informed me that there are quarrels among you. What I mean is this: One of you says, ‘I follow Paul’; another, ‘I follow Apollos’; another, ‘I follow Cephas’; still another, ‘I follow Christ.’ Is Christ divided? Was Paul crucified for you? Were you baptized into the name of Paul?” 1 Cor. 1:11-13. Since Paul did not die for me, I must first look to the teachings of Jesus. I can only read and agree with Paul if Paul agrees with Jesus. If he does not agree with Jesus **then I must remove Paul’s writings from the Bible**. Jesus can’t change His eternal truths.

Jesus tells us to “**be perfect**”, “**stop sinning**”, “**go and sin no more**”. Matthew 5:48; John 5:14 and John 8:11. Not even Paul can change that. So the next question is, What is Paul saying in Romans chapter three?

We start by looking at it with intelligence. Let’s look at this section that deals with what Paul is talking about. First, we **must** understand that Paul is **not the author** of this text. Wow, what a startling discovery. You see, Paul **is quoting**, not originating the thought. That is a big difference. Verse 10 states it quite clearly, “As it is written.” That should set off flashes of lightening in your mind. Written from where?

Paul is quoting verses 10 through 18 from the following areas of Scripture. Psalm 51:4; Psalms 14:1-3; 53:1-3; Ecclesiastes 7:20; Psalm 5:9; Psalm 140:3; Psalm 10:7;

Isaiah 59:7, 8; Psalm 36:1. Anytime there are quotes in the New Testament that are borrowed from the Old Testament we need to be very careful about how we treat them. Our first move should be to go back and check out the context of the text to find out what the original author was writing about. (Remember, there was no New Testament at the time of Paul. He only taught Old Testament. The New Testament as we have it today did not exist until 300 years after Jesus.)

When we do this with Paul, we make a very interesting discovery. Paul is not talking about “everyone”. He is talking about “everyone” of the wicked. Yes, we **were** all wicked at one time. Yes, we **were** all sinners at one time. But some of us have accepted the promises of Jesus and have stopped sinning through the Power of Christ that He offers us.

Let’s start with verse 14 and go through verse 18. “Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness. Their feet are swift to shed blood; ruin and misery mark their ways, and the way of peace they do not know. There is no fear of God before their eyes.”

Now let me ask you, is that **YOU**? Is there no fear of God before your eyes? If not, you are wicked and not a Christian. A Christian has great fear of God before his eyes. He worships God and reverences Him. If you don’t, I suggest you change real fast. God has warned us what will happen to those who do not change.

And that is what Romans is all about: Change! Chapter three and Chapter seven of Romans talk about our past. They talk about what we **used** to be like. The rest of Romans, and especially chapters six and eight, talk about what we **can be** with Christ.

If chapter three and chapter seven are **what we are as Christians**, I don’t want to be a Christian. Secondly, Paul would be a liar. Thirdly, he would be making a liar out of Christ. And remember, no liar will be in Heaven. No! Paul is not doing any of those things. Paul is simply contrasting the old way with the new way of living.

“What shall we say, then? Shall we go on sinning so that grace may increase? **By no means!** We died to sin; how can we live in it any longer?... For we know that our old self was crucified with Him so that the **body of sin** might be **done away with**, that we should no longer be slaves to sin – because anyone who has died has been freed from sin... But thanks be to God that, though you **used** to be slaves to sin, **you wholeheartedly obeyed** the form of teaching to which you were entrusted. **You have been set free from sin** and have become slaves to righteousness... But now that you have been **set free from sin** and have become slaves to God, the benefit you reap leads to holiness, and the **result** is eternal life.” Romans 6:1, 2, 6, 7, 17, 18, 22.

When God says “STOP”, we would do well to listen. Listen to Jeremiah 37:2. “Neither he nor his attendants nor the people of the land paid any attention to the words the Lord had spoken through Jeremiah the prophet.”



“Again and again I sent all My servants the prophets to you. They said, ‘Each of you must turn from your wicked ways and reform your actions; do not follow other gods to serve them. Then you will live in the land I have given to you and your fathers.’ “I spoke to them, but they did not listen; I called to them, but they did not answer.” Jeremiah 35:15, 17. **Are you listening to this study?** The Spirit of God dictated and directed this book. Listen very carefully.

Over and over again God calls out to us to stop sinning. Why? Is it for Him? Does it do Him any good if we live righteously or sinfully? No. It is for us. He wants to keep us from dying. The wages of sin is death. He loves you and me so much that He warns us not to die. But do we listen to Him?

“Listen to the terms of this covenant... Cursed is the man who does not obey the terms of this covenant... I said ‘Obey Me and do everything I command you, and you will be My people, and I will be your God... Listen to the terms of this covenant and follow them... Obey Me.’ But they did not listen or pay attention; instead, they followed the stubbornness of their evil hearts. Do not pray for this people nor offer any plea or petition for them, because I will not listen when they call to Me in the time of their distress.” Jeremiah 11:2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 14.

How sad. With the Bible before us to warn us and to show us the examples of what happens when we continue to sin, are we listening? Are we taking the warning and changing our lives? **Are we listening to God**, or are we listening to the churches? Are you listening to your pastor? Or are you listening to Jesus? Are you rebelling against the plain statements of God and living your own rebellious, sinful, hardhearted way? Your choice. Obey and live, disobey along with the worldly churches and die. God’s love can’t save you. He did His part in opening up the plan of Salvation. He did not have to die on the cross. That was “grace”. Now you must do your part. God has opened the way to eternal life but you must walk in it. There are only two roads: A broad way to death that all the churches are on, and a narrow way to life. Few are on the narrow way. Are you?

We are drowning in sin. Jesus has warned us not to go swimming in the lake of sin. Even after we disobeyed He still loved us enough to throw us a lifeline. But only we

can save ourselves. We must listen, grab on to the lifeline and let Jesus pull us out. He can’t force us out of the lake. He stands and invites us out. Yelling out His name and claiming His name won’t save you either. Even the devil does that. You must do **exactly** what He tells you to do. **Obey**; not speak, **to get eternal life**.



## FALSE PROPHETS

On December 16, 1944, Germany sent troops disguised as American M.P.s (Military Police), to infiltrate the American Army in what would be known as the “Battle of the Bulge”. The Germans almost won the battle because of their deception. The Germans did this because they knew that they had lost the war. Their time was short and they needed a deceptive plan to win. To do this, they trained an elite unit of Germans to speak and act like Americans. They were taught to impersonate Americans right down to the idioms they used and the gum they chewed. This unit was then implanted as M.P.s to direct traffic.



As advancing German troops made their way to the American Army, the Americans rallied to fight them. But as they moved forward they were being directed by the false M.P.s to other locations. The false M.P.s were doing a great job of confusing and disrupting the American war effort. Thousands of

Americans died because of the German deception.

It wasn’t until the Americans were able to unmask the impostors that they were able to mobilize their forces for a coordinated attack and win the battle and the war.

The devil knows that his time is short. He is losing the war. True, the majority of the warriors are on his side, but he knows that he can’t stand up to the power of God. His purpose is to destroy as many lives as possible before being destroyed himself.

To do that, he has sent “false prophets among the people.” “They will secretly introduce destructive heresies (saved by grace).” 2 Peter 2:1. Having a “form of godliness (going to church, singing and shouting His

name) but denying the power (living without sin). Have nothing to do with them.” 2 Timothy 3:5.

The devil has his wolves, dressed in sheep’s clothing, among the soldiers of Christ. Whole churches are devoted to a form of godliness but are denying the power of God to change their lives and live perfect and sinless by His power.

We must be wise and understanding in order to know who is who. Who really are the true ministers of Christ today? “Test everything.” 1 Thessalonians 5:21. “Test the spirits.” 1 John 4:1. “Examine **yourselves**.” 2 Corinthians 13:5. Over and over again Christ warned the disciples to beware of false prophets. They **are** in your church! They look like and act like ministers, priests, pastors, deacons and elders. Since there is only **one** truth, why are there so many different teachings and churches?

Again, let’s go back to our guide, our teacher for truth, the Old Testament. Were there false prophets and teachers back then? Yes. In Numbers 16 we read of Korah, Dathan and Abiram. They rebelled against Moses. “They came as a group to oppose Moses and Aaron and said to them, ‘You have gone too far! The **whole community is holy**, every one of them. Why then do you set yourselves above the Lord’s assembly?’” Verse 3. (That is just what wicked people say about this book.)

The first thing we notice is that **they came as a group**. Wickedness can never stand alone. The devil loves a crowd. The majority are always on the side of wickedness. People know what is right, but it is easier to do wrong when you have others doing it with you. You can point a finger and say, “See, he claims to be a Christian, and he is doing it too.” But that is not the criteria for Christianity. (This is why “Christian” churches and schools are so dangerous.)

Second point we notice is that **they all claimed to be holy**. Just because God worked a miracle for them, they claimed to be His special people. Have you ever seen that in your group? Someone has had a special miracle take place in his life and now he feels that he is Moses. No! God worked a miracle for a donkey, but the donkey won’t be saved. Well, we know what happened to Korah, Dathan and Abiram. If not, read it and check yourself.

They also only preach “peace and safety” and that everything will be OK. Not so! If all were “OK” God would not have to step in and keep warning us. He warns us because things are not “OK” in our lives.

The next major force of false prophets is found in 1 Kings 18:16 – 39. Elijah invited the four hundred and fifty prophets of Baal and the four hundred prophets of Asherah to the top of Mount Carmel for a show-down.

Again, we see the principle of **grouping**. The wicked always outnumber the righteous.

The false prophets came up to put on a dazzling display for the people. They danced around their altar and sang and shouted and put on quite an act. The people must have been impressed. **The false prophets are real showmen**. They know how to put on a show. Have you seen those showmen in your church? Wow, what entertainment! You would think they were “rock stars”.

Elijah, on the other hand, had little to say and no show for the people. It really was a boring prayer. No jumping around, no singing, no shouting or commotion. Nope, he just knelt down and asked God to do His thing. It was God who put on the show. And what a show it was. You know the rest of the story.

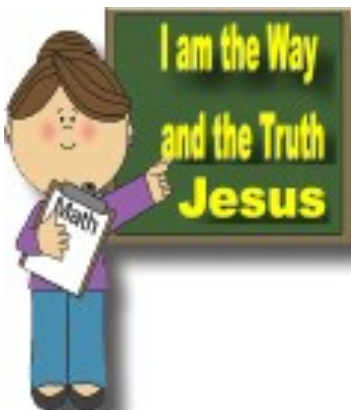
We could continue right on down through Jeremiah, Nehemiah and down to Jesus’ time. Those who thought they were somebody, weren’t. God always uses the meek, the humble, the inmates and nobodies (like this ministry). God doesn’t need showmanship. He needs obedience. God doesn’t need a somebody, He is the Somebody. All glory is to go to Jesus. We are not to bring attention to ourselves.

#### **Once we know who are the false teachers and prophets, we have a duty:**

1. “If anyone comes to you and does not bring this teaching, do not take him into your house or welcome him. Anyone who welcomes him shares in his wicked work.” 2 John 10,11.
2. “But there were also false prophets among the people, just as there will be false teachers among you. They will secretly introduce destructive heresies... Many will follow their shameful ways and will bring the way of truth into disrepute... With eyes full of adultery, **they never stop sinning**; they seduce the unstable; they are experts in greed – an accursed brood! They have left the straight way and wandered off to follow the way of Balaam son of Beor, who loved the wages of wickedness.” 2 Peter 2:1, 2, 14-15.
3. “They **promise them freedom**, while they themselves are slaves of depravity – for a man is a slave to whatever has mastered him.” 2 Peter 2:19.
4. “For there are many rebellious people, mere talkers and deceivers, especially those of the circumcision (what we would call “Christians” today) group. They must be silenced, because they are ruining whole households by teaching things they ought not to teach...” Titus 1:10,11.
5. “So that you may command certain men not to teach false doctrines any longer.” “Some have wandered away from these and turned to meaningless talk. They want to be teachers of the law, but they **do not**

know what they are talking about or what they so confidently affirm.” “The Spirit clearly says that in later times some will abandon the faith (teaching “saved by grace”) and **follow deceiving spirits and things taught by demons**. Such teachings come through hypocritical liars, whose consciences have been seared as with a hot iron.” 1 Timothy 1:3, 6, 7; 4:1, 2.

6. “In the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, we command you, brothers, to keep away from every brother who is idle and does not live according to the teaching you received from us.” “If anyone does not obey our instruction in this letter (book), take special note of him. Do not associate with him, in order that he may feel ashamed.” 2 Thessalonians 3:6, 14.
7. “See to it that no one takes you captive through hollow and deceptive philosophy, which depends on **human tradition** and basic principles of this world **rather than on Christ**.” Colossians 2:8.
8. “Watch out that you do not lose what you have worked for, but that you may be **rewarded** fully. Anyone who runs ahead and does not continue in the teaching of Christ **does not have God**; whoever continues in the teaching has both the Father and the Son.” “In the last times there will be scoffers who will follow their own ungodly desires. These are the men who divide you, who follow mere natural instincts and **do not have the Spirit**.” 2 John 8, 9; Jude 18, 19.



The teachings and teachings of **Jesus only**. Don't let anyone take you away from them. No matter how smooth the teaching, run from them if they do not teach the teachings of Christ. They may read from the Bible, but that doesn't mean they are teaching you truth. “His (Paul) letters contain some things that

are hard to understand, **which ignorant and unstable people distort**, as they do the other Scriptures, to their own destruction.” 2 Peter 3:16.

The reason the majority of the churches have so many people is not because of righteousness, but because of social contact. It is the “in” thing to do. It's good for business. It soothes their conscience. They love the show. It feels good.

If the churches were to start teaching what Jesus taught: stop sinning, be perfect and keep the Ten Commandments to get your eternal life; very few people would show up. In place of the truth, the ministers, churches and denominations teach acceptable teachings

that the people want to hear.

“For the time will come when men will not put up with sound doctrine. Instead, to suit their own desires, they will gather around them a great number of teachers to say what their itching ears want to hear. They will turn their ears away from the truth and turn aside to myths.” 2 Timothy 4:3, 4.

Let me give an illustration of this in our own lives. You decide to take a trip. You go to the airport and buy a ticket. You get on board the airplane and as the plane is taxiing into position to take off, you hear the following announcement. “Please bear with us today. The pilot will ‘try his best’ to be perfect. He will do his best not to ‘miss the mark’, but to leave the runway before hitting dirt at the end of the runway. He will ‘try his best’ to fly the plane on the designated flight plan so as not to hit any other planes. Then, he will again attempt to not ‘miss the mark’ and land on the runway. We know that you will be forgiving of the pilot if he should not be ‘perfect’ today and ‘miss the mark’. He is ‘only human’ and is ‘trying his best’. Have a nice flight.” Would you want to fly with that pilot? Why are you still in your church?

## Related Texts

- |                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Genesis 3:1-4                  | Exodus 7:8-13               |
| Deuteronomy 13:1-9             | Deuteronomy 18:22           |
| 1 Kings 18:16-40               | Kings 22:1-28               |
| 2 Kings 3:11-15                | Jeremiah 9:8                |
| Jeremiah 23:13-18, 32          | Jeremiah 28:15, 16          |
| Jeremiah 29:8, 9               | Ezekiel 13:8, 19, 22, 23    |
| Ezekiel 34:1-31                | Micah 3:5, 11               |
| Zephaniah 3:4                  | Malachi 2:8                 |
| Matthew 15:14                  | Matthew 16:6, 12            |
| Matthew 22:15                  | Matthew 23:15-39            |
| Matthew 24:11, 23, 24          | Mark 8:11, 15               |
| Mark 12:13, 38-40              | Mark 13:5, 6, 9, 21-23,     |
| Mark 13:33, 35, 37             | Luke 6:26                   |
| Luke 7:30                      | Luke 10:3                   |
| Luke 11:39-52                  | Luke 12:1                   |
| Luke 20:20, 46, 47             | Luke 21:8                   |
| Acts 8:9-11, 22, 23            | Acts 13:6-10                |
| Acts 16:16, 17                 | Acts 20:29-30               |
| Romans 2:21-24                 | Romans 16:17, 18            |
| 1 Corinthians 5:11             | 2 Corinthians 4:4           |
| 2 Corinthians 6:14-17          | 2 Corinthians 10:5          |
| 2 Corinthians 11:3,4,13-15     | Galatians 1:6-9             |
| Ephesians 4:14                 | Ephesians 5:6               |
| Philippians 3:2                | Col. 2:4, 8, 18, 19, 22, 23 |
| 2 Thess. 2:3, 4, 7, 9-12       | 2 Thess. 3:6, 14, 15        |
| 1 Timothy 1:3, 4, 6, 7, 19, 20 | 1 Timothy 4:1, 2, 7         |
| 1 Timothy 6:3-5, 20, 21        | 2 Timothy 2:16-18           |
| 2 Timothy 3:1-5, 7, 8, 13      | 2 Timothy 4:3, 4            |
| Titus 1:10, 11, 16             | Titus 3:9-11                |
| Hebrews 13:9                   | 2 Peter 2:1-3, 13-15, 19    |
| 2 Peter 3:3, 17                | 1 John 4:1, 5               |
| 2 John 1:7-11                  | Jude 1:4, 10, 16, 18, 19    |
| Revelation 2:14, 15, 20        | Revelation 3:9, 15, 16      |
| Revelation 18:4                |                             |

# SOULS & DEATH

The world of today is awash in spirit fever. TV shows, radio talk shows, magazines, books and the Internet are full of spirit stories. People the world over, religions of every sort, are experiencing spirit mania. But what does the Bible really say about the spirits, death, the soul and life after death?

In Genesis chapter three we read the story of the temptation of Eve. Eve, in conversation with the snake, explained that God had said that if they ate fruit from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil they **would die**. The snake replied that they would **not surely die**. (Lucifer was using the medium of the snake to communicate with Eve.)

Here we have the beginnings of the great lie that Lucifer has spread around the world. When you die, you **don't** really die. God said, "for when you eat of it you **will surely die**." Genesis 2:17. The devil said, "You will **not surely die**." Genesis 3:4. God versus Lucifer. Right versus wrong. Truth versus falsehood. Who will you believe?

If you want to know what the ingredients are to a specific food, you read the ingredients' label. If you want to know what parts are in an item, you look at the "part's list". If you want to know what man is composed of, you read the ingredients from the "part's list". What are we made of? Do we have a living spirit and a living soul that lives separately within our bodies?

God made man from the dust of the ground and said, "for dust you are and to dust you will return." Genesis 3:19. No spirit or soul there going anywhere. Nothing living to continue after death, just dust to dust. God made this even plainer. He sent them out from the Garden of Eden so they could **not** "take also from the tree of life and eat, and **live forever**." Genesis 3:22. Since sinful man has never eaten of the tree of life, there is **no eternal living sinner**; not even as a "soul" or a "spirit". God made it even plainer in Genesis 6:3. Man, "he is **mortal**," not immortal. So what is a "soul" and a "spirit"?

If we start with a concordance we will find that the primary meaning for the word "spirit" means "breath". That's it, just air. You know, the stuff you breath. And it is not alive. So when you die, you go back to the dust from which you were made, and the "spirit", the "breath" God gave you goes back to Him into the atmosphere.

When God created man, God "formed man from the dust of the ground." OK, here we have a body lying on the ground. Just a body, nothing alive. After forming a

body, He "breathed into his nostrils the **breath** of life..." He did "CPR" on Adam. God pumped air into the lungs of Adam and Adam started to breath. At this point "the man became a living being." Genesis 2:7.

A living being! This term "living being" is what the King James Version of the Bible calls "soul". That is what "soul" means: "Living Being". It doesn't say that God **put** a "soul" **into** Adam. It says that air (spirit) plus body (dust) **together** equal a "soul" (living being). Without breath (spirit) or body (dust) you have **no** soul. **Nothing** to live on after death. **Nothing!** **The soul dies!**



Our bodies are to be temples of the Holy Spirit. This term "Holy Spirit" or "Spirit" with a capital "S" denotes the other person with the God title. This entity is eternal and immortal. But that is not the same as "spirit" with a small "s". You see,

your body can be a temple for the Holy Spirit to dwell in, or a temple for the evil spirit to dwell in. Your choice. They don't live together in the same temple.

God gave you the breath and the body to produce a living temple (soul). But the temple is empty. You must decide which entity is to fill and inhabit your temple. It was the Catholic Church that borrowed the pagan concept of the soul from the great Greek pagan thinker Plato. "They defined the soul, with Plato, as an independent spirit inhabiting, and thwarted by, the body..." *The Age of Faith: Durant*.

"Plato, most influentially, separated the soul, or psyche, from the material body and argued that this reasoning part of our being was immortal." *U.S. News & World Report: October 23, 2006*.

If you choose to let the wicked spirit dwell in you and turn your temple, living being, into wickedness, then your soul will die eternally. "The **soul** who sins is the one who will die." "The **soul** who sins is the one who will die." Ezekiel 18:4, 20. God wants to make very sure that you understand the surety of death – total death – non-conscious death. The **soul** will die if you continue to sin.

"Anyone who is among the living has hope . . . For the living know that they will die, but the dead know nothing; they have no further reward, and even the memory of them is forgotten. Their love, their hate and their jealousy have long since vanished; never again will



they have a part in anything that happens under the sun.” Ecclesiastes 9:4-6. Yes, we “sleep the eternal sleep” until Jesus comes. Then the righteous will be raised to live eternally with Jesus and the wicked will be destroyed to “sleep the eternal sleep”. Nahum 3:18.

The dead are dead. The Bible calls death: “sleep”. This sleep is an unconscious, non-living type sleep. We sleep in the grave, “Hell”, until Jesus comes to wake us at the second coming. Nothing goes to heaven or to a fiery place **at death**. That comes later. “Hell”, by the way, is the Greek word that simply means “the grave”. That’s it! It was the Catholic Church that borrowed the pagan concept of a burning underworld to control people and steal their money. Are you that foolish?

Even Jesus told us that death was a “sleep”. When Jesus was told that His friend Lazarus had fallen sick, He did not leave immediately to go to him. Later He said to His disciples, “‘Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep; but I am going there to wake him up.’ His disciples replied, ‘Lord, if he sleeps, he will get better.’ Jesus had been **speaking of his death**, but His disciples thought He meant natural sleep. So then **He told them plainly, ‘Lazarus is dead.’**” John 11:11-14.

“You sweep men away in the **sleep of death**;...” Psalm 90:5. To God, death is nothing more than a little sleep since all the righteous will be raised, or awakened again, when Jesus comes. Since the reward of eternal life or eternal death is not given until Jesus comes back to separate the sheep from the goats, there are no “souls” burning in eternal fire right now. God is a God of love and justice. How could He throw a child into eternal fire now when the judgment isn’t until the end of time? That would be torture and God is not a God of torture. When Jesus spoke to the thief on the cross, He stated, “I tell you the truth today you will be with Me in paradise.” Luke 23:43. This sentence is written the way the Greek author, Luke, wrote it. Notice, they did not write with punctuation back then. Punctuation was added about 500 years after the New Testament was written.

Let’s punctuate this sentence to agree with the rest of the Bible. “I tell you the truth today, you will be with Me in paradise.” What Jesus is telling the man is, **Today**, I am telling you the truth. You will be with Me in paradise, but not today. Jesus didn’t even go to paradise that day. Jesus went into the grave, hell. We also know that the thief did not die that day. How could he go to paradise since he did not die that day. How do we know this? When the soldiers came to take the bodies down from the crosses for the Sabbath, they “broke the legs of the first man who had been crucified with Jesus, and then those of the other.” John 19:32. Why was this? Because they were still alive. They wanted to inflict as much pain as possible. If they wanted them dead they would have stuck them with spears. “But when they came to Jesus

**and found that He was already dead**, they did not break His legs.” John 19:33.

Some may bring up the parable Christ told about the Rich man and Lazarus found in Luke 16:19-31. Some will claim that Christ here is speaking about immediate rewards. But that cannot be. Christ does not lie, nor does He speak one thing, then contradict Himself. All through the Bible, from Genesis to Revelation He talks about death as a sleep and a bodily resurrection at the end of time.

To better understand this story, we need to recognize that it is in the midst of Parables. Starting in Luke 13 we have the parable of the mustard seed and yeast. Luke 14: the parable of the great banquet. Luke 15: the parable of the lost sheep, lost coin, lost son. Luke 16: the parable of the shrewd manager, rich man and Lazarus. Luke 18: the parable of the persistent widow and the parable of the Pharisee and the tax collector. Luke 19: gives us the parable of the ten minas.

The “Rich man and Lazarus” parable is not talking about what happens when a person dies. No more than the parable of the lost sheep is about how to be a shepherd. If you want to know what a parable is about, go to the end of the parable and Jesus will explain it. At the end of the “rich man and Lazarus” parable we find that Jesus is concerned with repentance. This parable was a condensed story of the plan of salvation. Yes we will die. Yes, we go to the grave (hell). Yes, at the end of the age the angels will come and take the righteous to heaven to be with Abraham when he is raised from his sleep. The wicked will be thrown into a lake of fire. But not right at death. It is a condensed version. But all of it was to illustrate repentance. If we don’t repent and live the righteous life, we will go to the lake of fire. If we repent, we will go to heaven. “‘They have Moses and the Prophets; let them listen to them.’ ‘No, father Abraham,’ he said, ‘but if someone from the dead goes to them, they will repent.’ He said to him, ‘If they do not listen to Moses and the Prophets, they will not be convinced even if someone rises from the dead.’”

The irony of this whole confusion is that Moses and the Prophets tell us that when you die you are dead and go to sleep until Jesus comes. Yet no one is listening. That is what the parable is all about. Listening to the Old Testament for truth. Jesus taught it, Paul taught it, and the whole New Testament taught it, yet how few want to believe what Jesus, Paul and the Old Testament teach.

One more historical note. Jesus in this parable is only using this “paradise & hell” concept because it was widely propagated by one of their own pagan-Roman writers who lived in the 1st century B.C. His name was Virgil. He “makes as vivid as he can the notion of a rewarding heaven, a cleansing purgatory, and a punishing

hell.”\* This concept is not from God, but from paganism. \**The story of Civilization III: Durant*

Moses and the Prophets tell us to keep the Ten Commandments to have eternal life. Jesus taught it. Yet no one is listening. 1 John 5:12 says, “He **who has the Son has life**; he who does not have the Son of God **does not have life**.” How simple. The only way we can receive **immortal LIFE** is to have Jesus in our lives. Those who go to “hell” have rejected Jesus, therefore they do not have **life and cannot live forever**. They are DEAD!

Keeping the Ten Commandments shows that you have Jesus living within you. That is the evidence that you have the Spirit of God living within you. By keeping the Ten Commandments; Jesus says He will give you eternal life. If you reject the Ten Commandments, you have rejected Jesus. Without Jesus you have no life. You are dead. The wages of sin is death; not life. Eternal death!

So when do the wicked get burned up? “At the time of Your appearing You will make them like a fiery furnace. In His wrath the Lord will swallow them up, and His fire will **consume** them.” Psalms 21:9.

So what are the “spirits” people claim to see or hear? They are the evil angels who were cast out of heaven with Lucifer. They impersonate Jesus and people in order to deceive. That is why the Bible condemns to death those who have any association with mediums or “speak” with the dead. They are not of God. When King Saul went to inquire of the medium, the person she “brought up” was not Samuel since God had rejected Saul. It was a demon. Therefore, King Saul died for his sin.

## Related Texts

|                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| Job 3:11, 13            | Job 7:7-10                |
| Job 14:7-12             | Job 19:25-27              |
| Job 34:14, 15           | Psalms 6:5                |
| Psalms 30:9             | Psalms 49:10-12, 14, 15   |
| Psalms 88:4, 5, 10-12   | Psalms 92:7               |
| Psalms 102:26           | Psalms 115:17, 18         |
| Psalms 146:4            | Ecclesiastes 3:18-20      |
| Ecclesiastes 9:10       | Isaiah 2:22               |
| Isaiah 26:19            | Isaiah 38:18, 19          |
| Isaiah 57:2             | Daniel 12:2, 13           |
| Malachi 4:1, 3          | Matthew 9:24              |
| Matthew 13:29, 30       | Matthew 13:40-42, 49, 50  |
| Matthew 16:27           | Matthew 25:31-33, 46      |
| Mark 5:39               | Luke 24:3, 39             |
| John 5:28, 29           | John 6:39, 40, 44, 54     |
| Acts 23:6               | Acts 24:15                |
| Romans 1:23             | 1 Cor. 15:6, 42-44, 50-53 |
| 1 Thessalonians 4:15-17 | 2 Thessalonians 1:7-9     |
| 2 Peter 2:6             | 2 Peter 3:7, 10, 12, 13   |
| Jude 1:7                | Rev. 20:4-7, 9, 10, 13-15 |
| Revelation 21:1, 4      | Revelation 22:12          |

# PRAYER

Prayer is simple. But how difficult some people and churches make it. “You have to speak in tongues”, “You must be slain in the Spirit”, are two of the expressions heard in some churches today. But what does the Bible say? “Then Jesus told His disciples a parable to show them that they should always pray and not give up.” Luke 18:1. In the parable Jesus told of a woman who had been wronged. She kept going and going and going to the judge with her plea to be granted justice. Finally the judge said, “Even though I don’t fear God or care about men, yet because this widow keeps bothering me, I will see that she gets justice, so that she won’t eventually wear me out with her coming.” Luke 18:4, 5.

There are two lessons to be learned here. The first is obvious - speak up. Pray often. Let God know what you need, and what you are thankful for. Pray and do not give up.

The other is the absence of “tongues”. Jesus didn’t teach His disciples how to speak in “tongues” to be heard or accepted by the Father. He just wants us to speak in whatever language we can most eloquently express ourselves. “And pray in the Spirit on all occasions with all kinds of prayers and requests. With this in mind, be alert and always keep on praying for all the saints.” Ephesians 6:18. Again, pray with all kinds of prayers and requests, not “tongues”. Be alert and “in the church I would rather speak five **intelligible words** to instruct others than ten thousand words in a tongue.” 1 Corinthians 14:19.

When the disciples came to Christ and asked Him to teach them how to pray, He showed them the principle of how to pray. “This, then, is how you should pray: ‘Our Father in heaven, hallowed be Your name, Your kingdom come, Your will be done on earth as it is in heaven. Give us today our daily bread. Forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from the evil one.’” Matthew 6:9-13. There are five main points in the “Lord’s Prayer”.

1. Recognize that God is our Father and hold His name in reverence.
2. In whatever we ask, we must remember that we submit to God’s will being done.
3. Today is all we need to be concerned about. Pray for what is needed now.
4. We must forgive as we expect to be forgiven.
5. Ask for the power to reject temptation and say “NO” to sin in our lives.

to pray in tongues. Did Jesus forget that part? I don't think so. It wasn't important. Not only was it not important, He doesn't want us to pray in the "tongues" of today. You see, the Pentecostal "tongues" of today are **not** the tongues of the book of Acts. In order for us to understand the difference, we must humble ourselves and remember that Jesus always speaks the truth. Even when He is silent on a subject, we must recognize that He is speaking truth. Never attempt to add or subtract anything from what has been taught.

The Bible gives us clear indication of how to pray and how not to pray. It clearly indicates prayer that is of God and prayer that is of the devil. Remember, for every true way to do something the devil has a counterfeit. You must study and humble yourself before the Word of God and test yourself by the Word and the Word only. If your actions do not measure up to the Word of God, stop doing what does not measure up and start doing what does.

Let's first take a look at prayer that is from the devil. The Bible gives us a glimpse of such a service in 1 Kings 18. Israel has rebelled against God and has turned to the worship of Baal and Asherah. God sent Elijah to hold a revival meeting. Elijah challenges the prophets of Baal and Asherah to a showdown. The prophets of Baal and Asherah accepted and came prepared. They built their altar and prayed to their gods to send fire down from heaven in answer to their prayers. In verses 26 through 29 we see an example of a pagan worship service.

1. They shouted
2. They danced around the altar
3. They slashed and cut themselves
4. They were frantic

1. Starting with the first one, we can see that they were **shouting**. Walk into many churches and you will see the minister or people shouting. As Elijah taunted them, so I do to these people. What is wrong with your god that you have to shout at him? Is he busy? Or traveling? Or maybe deep in thought? "Maybe he is sleeping and must be awakened." My Bible says, "**be still** (shut-up) and know that I am God." I don't have to shout at Him. He knows what I need before I speak. "The LORD knows the thoughts of man." Psalm 94:11. He reads my heart. In quietness is the soul found in God.



2. Dancing around the altar. Yes, in many services you will find lots of dancing around. But is it of God? Nope! Where is it shown in the Bible that Jesus danced in the synagogue? Jesus is

my example. Is He yours? The **ONLY** reference to dancing **before the Lord** is David. And that was **NOT** in church. It was bringing the Ark of the Covenant up to the City of David. You should also know that David disrobed during this dance. Are you going to disrobe and dance in the public street as David did? If you claim to follow David's example in one you must follow it in the other. However, considering how much David feared the Lord and revered Him, I doubt seriously that his dance was like anything that you see going on in the churches of today. Since the Bible does not describe the dance that David did, how dare we attempt to "dance" since we do not know what kind of a dance it was. This was not a "dancing lesson", it does not teach us how to dance before the Lord. It probably was a holy dance of some kind. Where there is silence, let us not assume.

3. Frantic! Some services, and those who speak in tongues, can get pretty frantic. Falling down and writhing around on the floor, babbling and screaming, none of it is from the Lord. There is a spirit that is in control, but not a spirit from Jesus. This falling down and writhing about is also demonstrated in the Bible. But it is not of God. Mark 9:17 - 27 tells of a father who brought his son to Jesus. A spirit possessed the boy. When the boy was possessed, the spirit would throw the boy down to the ground causing him to foam at his mouth, gnash his teeth and become rigid. Sounds like a lot of worship services to me. Must be the wrong spirit. I don't want to worship that spirit. I don't want that spirit inside me! Do you?

When the father brought the boy to Jesus, the spirit "immediately threw the boy into a convulsion. He fell to the ground and rolled around, foaming at the mouth." Jesus allowed the spirit to demonstrate his power. He wanted to make sure that we understood the difference between the work of God and the work of the devil. You need to do the same. Look around your worship services and see what spirit is there. Use the Bible as your guide. If it is as depicted above, run!

Now it is Jesus' turn. He takes the boy and casts the spirit out. Then He takes "him by the hand and **lifted him to his feet, and he stood up.**" See the difference?! When Jesus and the Spirit of God come into a person, **that person stands up.** He is made whole. He has complete control of himself. God made us in His image and likeness. He will not have us acting like animals and freaks. The Spirit of God makes dignified men and women out of us.

Another example of this is found in Luke 8:26-35. Jesus and His disciples landed in the Gerasenes country. As they stepped ashore a demon-possessed man ran towards them. He cried out, fell at His feet and shouted at the top of his voice. See the same parallels? "Whenever the evil spirits saw Him, they fell down before Him." Mark 3:11.

Jesus then cast out the evil spirits and filled the man with the good Spirit. When the town folk came to see, they found the man “sitting at Jesus’ feet, dressed **and in his right mind**.” That is the power of the gospel. Jesus raises up and returns us to our “right mind”. The devil casts you down and takes your “right mind”. Paul says the same thing. “I would rather speak five intelligible words to instruct others than ten thousand words in a tongue.” 1 Corinthians 14:19. “For God is **not a God of disorder** but of peace.” 1 Corinthians 14:33. “But everything should be done in a fitting and **orderly way**.” 1 Corinthians 14:40.

However, the most important point is, “The spirits of prophets are subject to the control of prophets.” 1 Corinthians 14:32. He doesn’t take control of our bodies. That would be against everything God stands for: freedom of will. Our will and the Spirit of God are to work together.

Looking at other texts we come to the same conclusion. “He said to me, ‘Son of man, **stand up** on your feet.’” “The Spirit came into me and **raised me to my feet**.” “Then the Spirit **lifted me up**.” “The hand of the Lord was upon me there, and He said to me, ‘**Get up** and go’”. “Then the Spirit came into me and **raised me to my feet**.” “Then the Spirit **lifted me up**.” “The Lord said to Joshua, ‘**Stand up!**’” “Jesus said to the man with the shriveled hand, ‘**Stand up** in front of everyone.’” Ezekiel 2:1, 2; 3:12, 22, 24; 11:1; Joshua 7:10; Mark 3:3.

My dear friend, don’t be fooled. Jesus came to give us a new Spirit. The old one has bound us **down** to sin far too long. God wants to free us **up** from the spirit of animalistic behavior. He wants to give us a Spirit of freedom, dignity and self-control. Get up and get out of those churches that are binding you down to sin.

The tongues of Acts are just that, tongues that **spoke different languages of the world**. At the time of Pentecost, thousands of Jews from “every nation under heaven” were in Jerusalem. The disciples did not have time to learn all their languages. God provided them with the ability to speak their tongues: languages. That is all it is. It is not important for salvation in any aspect. If it was, Adam would have had to speak in tongues. Elijah would have spoken in a babbling tongue. John the Baptist and Jesus would be recorded as having spoken in babbling tongues. But the God who hears us before we speak doesn’t even need us to speak. How would a “deaf and dumb” person be saved otherwise?

Two more aspects about “tongues”. If those “tongues” are not teaching the teachings of Jesus: Stop sinning, be perfect and keep the Ten Commandments in order to earn your eternal life, they are not of God. This book is written in “tongues”, the tongues of those who speak English. It is of the Spirit of God because this “tongue”

teaches you the teachings of Jesus. “If I speak in the tongues of men and of angels, but have not love...” (1 Corinthians 13:1). Remember, Love is the **keeping** of **ALL** the Ten Commandments (Deuteronomy 11:1).

The second aspect is, “We are witnesses of these things, and so is the Holy Spirit, whom God has given to those who **obey Him**.” Acts 5:32. Those who claim they are of God and “have the Spirit” but are not obeying the Ten Commandments do not have the Spirit of God. It is just that simple. (2 John 1:8-11).

No, the teaching of Jesus is, “And when you pray, **do not keep on babbling like pagans**, for they think they will be heard because of their many words. Do not be like them, for your Father knows what you need **before** you ask Him.” “But when you pray, go into your room and shut the door and pray to your Father who is in secret. And your Father who sees in secret will reward you.” Matthew 6:7, 6.

Jesus and Jesus only. Don’t let a church, a minister, a pastor or a priest try to tell you “what it means”. Jesus has already done that. If those people don’t agree with Jesus have nothing to do with them. They are not of God. Prayer is a special time for Christians. It is a time when we can come into the presence of God and let it all out. He has a big shoulder to lean on. A large ear to hear.

Let me give you two personal experiences of prayer. I could give hundreds but these two might help you. A friend in prison who was studying with me and had accepted the truth became sick. He came and asked if I had anything to take the pain away. I told him I did not but that I would give him what I had. I placed my hands on his head and quietly asked Jesus to heal him. He came back about a half hour later and told me that he was no longer sick.

Another time I was studying at a table on the dorm floor. We were asked to go to our bunks or go outside so the floor could be cleaned. I decided to go outside. When I went outside it was raining. I turned around to go back in but the door had closed and locked. I did not want to get wet. I raised my hand to Jesus and asked Him to stop the rain until the door opened. The rain stopped over our yard, the clouds rolled away and the stars came out. When the door opened an hour later the rain poured down again. Thank you Jesus. James 5:16.

4. A most important aspect of prayer is quietness. We must listen with the heart. We must be silent before God. After we pour out our hearts we need to listen back. In my experience I have discovered that four times a day is a necessity for my Christian growth. Morning, noon, supper and bed time. By putting everything aside at those times I recognize that God is the most important

part of my life.

It is easy to get caught up in a project, family, work and entertainment, etc. and think, “Oh, God can wait, I’ll do it later”. But before too long we have gone days without God. If you are not that concerned about God, He won’t be that concerned about you. If you don’t make time for Him, He won’t make time for you. If you feel that God is far away, maybe it is because you have moved far away from Him. It is time to come home, like the prodigal son.

What I did was start in Genesis. I would pray and read four pages from the Bible. This sequence, prayer and reading four pages, was then maintained four times a day. I found that I could read through the Bible two to four times in a year. This kept me familiar with the Bible. But most importantly, it kept me in tune with God. The relationship was necessary to conquer sins in my life.

One aspect that goes along with prayer is fasting. In the world today you might see or hear of people who are trying to earn their way to God through fasting. It might even become tempting to join them. Fasting is such a “doing” thing that makes us feel like we are doing something. Much like going to church. Don’t. Again, I cannot stress enough the point that most of what the “Christian” world teaches comes from paganism. True fasting is not going without food over long periods of time. **Nowhere in the Bible does God command us to fast (going without food) for salvation.** Nowhere is that kind of a fast commanded for righteousness. The Bible does tell us to fast. But the fast of the Bible is not what the world teaches. Let me share with you just a glimpse of what Isaiah says about the true fast. “Is not this the kind of fasting I have chosen: to loose the chains of injustice and untie the cords of the yoke, to set the oppressed free and break every yoke? Is it not to share your food with the hungry and to provide the poor wanderer with shelter – when you see the naked, to clothe him, and not to turn away from your own flesh and blood?” Isaiah 58:1-10.

Do you see how different God’s requirements are from man’s? What a shame that we are no longer doing what God commands, but running around to see how long we can go without eating. It won’t do you a bit of good for eternal life.

## Related Texts

Genesis 3:8-10  
Numbers 22:28  
2 Samuel 7:18  
1 Kings 8:22, 54  
1 Chronicles 29:20  
2 Chronicles 7:3, 14  
2 Chronicles 24:20  
Ezra 9:5, 6  
Nehemiah 8:5, 6

Exodus 14:14  
1 Samuel 12:16  
2 Samuel 23:2  
2 Kings 20:5  
2 Chronicles 6:13, 39  
2 Chronicles 20:18  
2 Chronicles 29:28, 29  
Ezra 10:1  
Nehemiah 9:20, 30

Psalm 5:3, 7  
Psalm 55:6, 7, 17  
Psalm 119:48, 97, 99, 164  
Ezekiel 36:26, 27  
Micah 3:8  
Zephaniah 1:7  
Matthew 6:5-13  
Mark 3:11  
Mark 6:46  
Mark 12:40  
Luke 5:16  
Luke 8:27, 28, 35  
Luke 20:47

Psalm 37:7  
Psalm 88:13  
Isaiah 1:15  
Daniel 6:10  
Habakkuk 2:20  
Zechariah 1:2-4  
Mark 1:35  
Mark 5:2,5-7  
Mark 9:17, 18, 20, 26, 27  
Luke 4:33, 35  
Luke 6:12  
Luke 9:39-42  
Luke 22:44

---

# The SABBATH

“Then He said to them, ‘The Sabbath was made for man, not man for the Sabbath. So the Son of Man is Lord even of the Sabbath.’” Mark 2:27, 28.

Does this text mean that the Ten-Commandment Sabbath was done away with? No my friend, the Jesus of the Old Testament is the same Jesus in the New Testament. To understand this text, let’s go back to the Old Testament and lay the foundation for the Sabbath. When we lay the proper foundation, which is Jesus Christ and what He taught, then all the worldly philosophy and traditions will drop off. Jesus is the Way, the Truth and the Life. Always keep that first and foremost in your thinking. “Dear children, do not let anyone lead you astray.” 1 John 3:7.

To begin our study of the Sabbath, we must go right back to the beginning of time. Genesis 2:2, 3 – “By the **seventh day** God had finished the work He had been doing; so on **the seventh day** He rested from all His work. And God blessed **the seventh day** and made **it** holy, because on **it** He rested from all the work of creating that He had done.”

**The seventh day is the only day God blessed and made holy.** You will find no text anywhere else in all the Old or New Testaments where God blessed and made holy any other day. Yet, if you look at a calendar, you will find that the majority of the worldly churches do not keep holy His one and only blessed and sanctified seventh day.

On the other side of the coin, nowhere in the Bible does God remove that blessing and holy sacredness from **the seventh day**. Yet most of the worldly churches bend over backwards in attempting to change **the Sabbath** from **the seventh day** of the week to the first day of the week. But you will never find the change in the Bible.

Friday to sundown Saturday — the Sabbath commemorates the seventh day of creation, on which God rested. It is a divinely appointed day of rest (Exodus 20:8), to be devoted to prayer and study, and its observance is a mark of Jewish faith.” *Grolier Multimedia Encyclopedia*

“Christians have generally considered the Sabbath to be fulfilled by Christ’s Sabbath rest in the tomb and celebrate, instead, the Lord’s Day (Sunday) as a weekly day of worship. It is the first day of the new week, symbolic of the unending Day of the Lord, the day of Christ’s resurrection and of his expected return. Some Protestant groups traditionally call Sunday the Sabbath and apply to it the Old Testament Sabbath regulations (Sabbatarianism). In many places these have been given the **force of civil law** (BLUE LAWS).” *Grolier Multimedia Encyclopedia*

Notice, it calls the week “the Jewish week”. Well, let me ask you, is there any other week? Do you not observe the seven day week? As far as I have been able to see, every nation on earth keeps a seven-day week, not just the Jews. Why? Because God gave the seven day week to the world when He created the world.

Many claim that the Sabbath was given only to the Jews. That it is a Jewish institution. The rest of the world can make up their own day of worship. It is claimed by many churches that since it was part of the Ten Commandments given to the Israelites on Mount Sinai that we don’t need to keep it. Let us continue with that line of reasoning. Since “Thou shalt not steal” was also given on Mount Sinai, then it also is **not** for you and me. Therefore, I can make up my own rules for what I can and can not steal or take from you. If I like your car, I guess it is OK with God for me to take it from you. Right?

Or, how about the sixth commandment, “Thou shalt not murder.” Is it OK with God to murder since it was not given to the world, but to the Israelites? Evidently, God only wanted the Israelites to live without murdering, stealing, committing adultery and coveting. Only the Israelites were to honor their parents, keep the Sabbath and honor God by not worshiping other gods. None of that applies to you and me, according to the worldly churches. So it is OK for me to rob you, rape and kill your family. Not a problem with the churches. Right?

But that is not the case. There were no “Jews” at the time of Moses. They were called “Israel”. (Let’s put the record straight right now. The nation of Israel split into two kingdoms after King Solomon. The 10 Northern Kingdoms and the Southern Kingdom of Judah. But not until the time of the Babylonian captivity, starting about 605 BC, were those from “Judah” called “Jews”.) The same righteous laws that were given on Mount Sinai to the Israelites, were also given to the world. The

Israelites, as we learned earlier, were only the depositories for the Ten Commandments that were to be radiated through them to the world.

When you read Genesis, you will find that all the Ten Commandments are recorded there in some form. This means that they were known at the time of the Garden of Eden. That is the only way God can be just. What? Is this another “Oops” on God’s part? “Oh dear, I forgot to tell Adam and Eve about what is right and wrong. I am so forgetful in My old age. I guess it is time for Me to hand them down to Moses before I forget.” Is that the kind of God you serve? Not me. No my friend, my God is the same. His salvation has been the same from Adam to now. Let us look at some of the Ten Commandments that were known before the giving of them on stone to Moses.

- 1<sup>st</sup> Commandment – Worshiping God:** Genesis 26:5
- 2<sup>nd</sup> Commandment – No idols: Genesis 35:2
- 3<sup>rd</sup> Commandment – Honor the Name:** Genesis 12:8
- 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment – The Sabbath: Genesis 2:2, 3
- 5<sup>th</sup> Commandment – Honor parents:** Genesis 22:3-11
- 6<sup>th</sup> Commandment – No Murder: Genesis 4:10-12
- 7<sup>th</sup> Commandment – No adultery:** Genesis 39:9
- 8<sup>th</sup> Commandment – No stealing: Genesis 31:30
- 9<sup>th</sup> Commandment – Shall not lie:** Genesis 34:13
- 10<sup>th</sup> Commandment – No coveting: Genesis 3:6

It is easy to see that the Ten Commandments, all of them, were given to all the world. Not one of them can be taken out. Either they are from God, who is God to the whole earth, or they are not. But you can’t have it both ways: sometimes He is, sometimes He isn’t. The Bible tells us plainly that God is “the Lord of all the earth”. Joshua 3:11.

But that thinking is typical man. We want to change things for our benefit. We don’t want to do what is right. We want to do what is convenient. If the Sabbath isn’t convenient, then we will do our best to try to discredit it, or water it down to soothe our consciences. As you will learn later, it was the Catholic Church that changed the Sabbath from the seventh day of the week to the first. This was in order to accommodate the pagans who worshiped the sun on the first day of the week: sun-day.

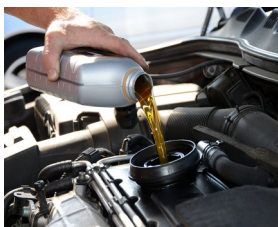
But there is no excuse for not keeping the Sabbath. No watering it down. Either it is part of the Ten Commandments or it isn’t. If it is, then we must keep all of them. If it isn’t, then none of the Ten Commandments need to be kept.

Going back to our original text, what does it mean then? Worldly churches take it to mean that the Sabbath was made for man to do with as he pleases. If he wants to

keep it, fine. If not, no problem. It was made for you.

But that isn't what Jesus is saying. He is stressing the point that it was made **FOR** man. Big difference. Air was made **for man**. Can you decide not to breathe any longer? Can you choose to replace air with CO2? I don't think so. Air was made **FOR** you. What about food? It also was made **for man**, Genesis 1:29, 30. But you can't live very long without it. You can't choose to eat metal instead of food. Food was made **FOR** you. You cannot live without air or food.

If you buy a car and read the manual, you will read where it tells you what fuel to put into it. Fuel was made **FOR** cars. But what if you decide fuel is too expensive and you want to use water as fuel? After all, fuel was made for cars, not cars for fuel. So you pour water into the tank. What will happen to the car? Oil was also made **FOR** cars. But you decide that it is too costly to use. You have reasoned that since oil is made for cars and not cars for oil, you will use soap for oil. What will happen to the car?



Oil was also made **FOR** cars. But you decide that it is too costly to use. You have reasoned that since oil is made for cars and not cars for oil, you will use soap for oil. What will happen to the car?

The Sabbath was made **FOR** you. You can't live without it. Just as you can't live without food and air you can't live without the Sabbath. Sin is the breaking of the Ten Commandments. If you break the Sabbath you sin. The wages of sin is death. You can't live without the Sabbath. So God gave it to us to keep us alive. Both eternally and presently. We need a day of rest in our busy lives. The body needs a day to calm down and put things in perspective. God gave **that** day **for us**.

However, He didn't say, "Choose your Sabbath." He didn't say, "Pick any day that is convenient for you." No, He gave us a specific day, **the seventh day**, to come apart from our weekly activities and to meet with God.

The Sabbath was blessed and made holy by God. It is His gift to us. It is like a birthday. You don't want people celebrating your birthday whenever they choose. You would like them to honor that day, on that day. That day is when you will be holding your party. So if they hold their party the same day, time and place you do, you all can enjoy each other's company and companionship together.

Same with God. He comes apart from His busy schedule to meet very specifically on that day with us. But if we have chosen another day as "holy", we will miss His special blessings and presence. What a shame. But this brings up an even greater concept.

Love. Who do you love? If you love God you will do what He asks of you. He only asks you to take one day off, **the seventh day**, and meet with Him. One out of

seven isn't so hard. Yet because of our selfishness and love for self, we refuse His invitation and miss His special blessings.

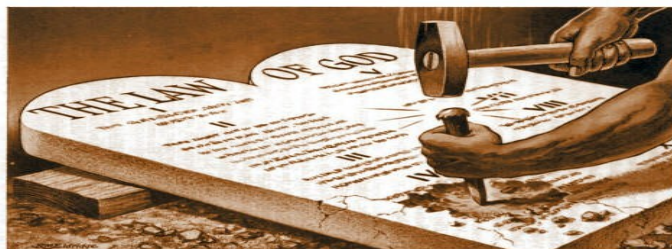
The 1st Commandment is, "Thou shalt have no other gods before Me." Yet we make our life, our work, our money, our church, our commitments and our entertainments **our gods**. We tell God to go take a hike, "We'll catch you later when it is convenient for us." Is that love to God?

If anyone: minister, priest, church or friend tells you that you can choose any day you want as your Sabbath, they are not your friends. They are your enemies. Only God is your friend along with those who agree with God and do what He commands.

Some worldly churches will tell you that you can keep every day holy. No you can't! Again, man tries his hardest to change God's plain statement. Let's read it again and see what the truth is. "**Remember the Sabbath day by keeping *IT* holy. *SIX DAYS* you shall *LABOR AND DO ALL YOUR WORK*, but the seventh day is a Sabbath to the Lord your God. **On it** you shall not do *ANY* work, neither you, nor your son or daughter, nor your manservant or maidservant, or your animals, nor the alien within your gates. For in six days the Lord made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them, but He rested on **the** seventh day. Therefore the Lord blessed **the** Sabbath day and **made it holy.**" Exodus 20:8-11.**

There it is, six days **are commanded** for us to work, not keep holy. Only the one day, **the seventh day**, is to be kept holy. What the worldly churches are confusing is a **personal** holiness and a **day** of holiness. You are to be holy to God seven days a week. You can be holy doing your work, play, sports and etc. You can do all of those things without sinning. You can do all of those perfectly, just as Jesus did, six days a week. **But on the seventh day**, you are to **make that one DAY holy**. It is the only Sabbath of the Bible, and in the world, **that was blessed, sanctified and made holy by God**. You must keep it as God directs you to keep it, just as you are to work the other six days as God directs you.

It is amazing the hoops the worldly churches attempt to jump through to get out from under their obligation to God. They act like little two-year-olds throwing a temper tantrum who don't want to do what their parents tell



them. Take the text in Matthew 12:8 for an example. “For the Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath.” Many use this to imply that since Jesus is Lord of the Sabbath we don’t need to keep it any longer.

What sickness! Jesus was also Lord of the Sabbath in the Old Testament when He gave it to Adam and the world. What has changed? Nothing. “Be careful that you do not forget the Lord your God, failing to observe His commands, His laws and His decrees that I am giving you this day.” Deuteronomy 8:11. (An interesting side note: s-ABBA-th “ABBA” means “father”. So, the 7th day Sabbath was the first “Father’s day”. Every 7th day, Saturday, is “Father’s Day”.)

Jesus never broke the Ten Commandments that He commanded us to keep. He couldn’t. If Jesus broke any one of them, or taught us to break them, He could **not** be our Lord or Savior. The only way He can be our Savior is by keeping all the commandments. And He did. “Can any of you prove Me guilty of sin?” John 8:46. Not one of them could.

Jesus is emphatic: “but the world must learn that I love the Father and that I do exactly what My Father has commanded Me.” John 14:31. Isn’t it time for you to love your Father and Jesus, your Lord, and do exactly what they have commanded you? Isn’t it time to stop trying to wiggle out of your responsibility and begin obeying God and keep His Sabbath?

If you have been keeping the pagan, worldly sabbath, the first day of the week, then what is so difficult about changing your allegiance from the pagan god to the God of the Bible? It is so simple. Just obey God.

But you may bring up the text in Revelation 1:10 where “On the Lord’s Day I (John) was in the Spirit.” You may ask, “Wasn’t that Sunday?” No, it wasn’t. The only “Lord’s Day” ever recorded in the Bible is God’s Seventh day Sabbath. He is Lord of the Sabbath. That’s His “Lord’s Day”. “Sunday” is never mentioned in the Bible as the Sabbath. There are only about eight references in the whole Bible to **the first day of the week**, and **none** of them command us to keep it holy. None of them show that God changed the blessings from the Sabbath to the first day of the week. Yet there are over 100 texts in the Bible that show the seventh day of the week as God’s Sabbath and how we are to keep it.

“Ignatius is claimed to be the first known Christian writer to argue in favor of Christianity’s replacement of the Sabbath ‘with Sunday.’” (*Wikipedia*) Ignatius lived between about 50 - 117 AD. He also invented the “church” system and the term “Catholic”. It was Ignatius who basically invented Catholicism. He fell away from God and was what John said of people like him. “Children, it is the last hour, and as you have heard that

antichrist is coming, so now many antichrists have come. Therefore we know that it is the last hour.” 1 John 2:18.

The next point is, how do we keep it? The worldly churches will tell you that Jesus worked on the Sabbath, so it is OK for us also to work on the Sabbath. No He didn’t. Jesus CANNOT break His commandments. If He did, you and I would have no salvation. The “work” of the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment is a worldly work to support your family and do **your own things**. The “works” of God do not fall into that category. You are allowed to do the “works” of God on God’s day. Works of God are to heal the sick, visit the prisoners, feed the hungry, clothe the naked, house the homeless, preach the gospel, etc. All of these are just fine to do on the Sabbath. Jesus gave us these examples in His life and ministry. That is what so upset the Pharisees. They hated Him because He was making a mockery of their religious practices. But Jesus never broke the Sabbath.



He never set up a market shop on Sabbath. Never sold merchandise. Never was involved in a worldly activity or pursuit on that day. Jesus kept the Ten Commandments exactly as He commanded us to keep them. He is our example in all things. Are you following His example of keeping **the seventh day holy**? If not, He must not be your **Lord** and definitely He is not your Savior.

“In those days I saw men in Judah treading winepresses on the Sabbath and bringing in grain and loading it on donkeys, together with wine, grapes, figs and all other kinds of loads. And they were bringing all this into Jerusalem on the Sabbath. Therefore I warned them against **selling food** on that day. Men from Tyre who lived in Jerusalem were bringing in fish and all kinds of **merchandise and selling them** in Jerusalem on the Sabbath to the people of Judah. I rebuked the nobles of Judah and said to them, ‘What is this wicked thing you are doing – desecrating the Sabbath day? **Didn’t your forefathers do the same things, so that our God brought all this calamity upon us and upon this city?**’



Now you are stirring up more wrath against Israel by desecrating the Sabbath.” Nehemiah 13:15-18.

When the Israelites came back from their Babylonian captivity they attempted to rebuild their nation. But as you can see, they were again breaking the Sabbath. That which caused their destruction, and their Babylonian captivity, they were doing again. How about you? Are you going to bring wrath upon yourself by refusing to obey God? He has been tolerant (grace) with you until you were able to learn the truth. But from this time on you will see a difference in your life. If you obey the Sabbath you will be blessed. If you disobey the Sabbath you will be cursed. That is what the Bible says. I believe the Bible.

“If you keep your feet from breaking **the Sabbath** and from doing as **you please** on My holy day, if you call the Sabbath a delight and the **Lord’s holy day** honorable, and **if you honor it by not going your own way and not doing as you please or speaking idle words**, then you will find your joy in the Lord, and I will cause you to ride on the heights of the land and to feast on the inheritance of your father Jacob.’ The mouth of the Lord has spoken.” Isaiah 58:13, 14.

| God’s Way                            | Man’s Way                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 7 <sup>th</sup> Day Saturday Sabbath | 1 <sup>st</sup> day Sunday Holy |
| Be Perfect                           | Can’t be perfect                |
| Stop Sinning                         | Can’t stop sinning              |
| Be born in righteousness             | Can’t: born of flesh            |
| Teachings of Jesus only              | Add teachings of church         |
| Live in strict obedience             | Live as you like                |
| Keep Ten Commandments                | Can’t: Saved by Grace           |

Please, repent of the hard heart and stiff-necked way you have been living. Confess your sins and turn to Jesus and say you are so sorry for breaking His Commands. Turn from your evil ways and walk in His way.

“The Lord your God **commands** you this day to follow these decrees and laws; carefully observe them with all your heart and with all your soul. You have declared this day that the Lord is your God and that you will walk in His ways, that you will keep His decrees, commands and laws, and that you will obey Him. And the Lord has declared this day that you are His people, His treasured possession as He promised, and that you are to keep all His commands.” Deuteronomy 26:16-18.

The next question that comes up is, “What day is the seventh day? Has the calendar been changed since the time of Christ?” No! The weekly cycle of our calendar has not been altered since the day of Christ, or the week of creation. God will not allow His week and His Sabbath to be lost or confused.

To help with this aspect, we again go to the Bible. It gives us a very clear picture of what day is the Sabbath. Turn to Luke 23:50-56. Joseph went to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus. Pilate gave it to him. He took it down and wrapped it and placed it in a tomb. “It was Preparation Day, and the **Sabbath** was about to begin.”

Notice he took it down on the Preparation Day and the Sabbath was about to begin. We know that Jesus died on Friday. The whole world knows this. That is why “Good Friday” is called “Good Friday” and celebrated as the day of Christ’s death. That was the Preparation Day, and the Sabbath was about to begin. The day that begins after Friday is Saturday.

Continuing on we read that the women also came and followed and saw where the body was laid. “But they rested on the **Sabbath in obedience to the commandment.**” **Even in death Jesus kept His Commandments.** The disciples and the women kept the Sabbath. Jesus never changed it. Jesus died on Friday and rested in the tomb over the Sabbath, just as He commands us to rest on the Sabbath.

Luke 24:1 then tells us that the women went back to the tomb **after the Sabbath** was over. It was the “first day of the week” when they went to see the body of Jesus. But Jesus wasn’t there. After resting over the Sabbath, He got up on the first day of the week and continued His work, just as commanded in the commandments. Jesus never broke the Sabbath, or any of the commandments.

Now, what day is the first day of the week? What day do you celebrate the resurrection of Christ? Don’t you celebrate the resurrection of Christ on the first day of the week, Sunday? Why is it so easy to know what days He died and rose on, yet have such a difficult time knowing what day the Sabbath is? The Sabbath comes between the Preparation day and the first day of the week. Between Friday and Sunday.



Not too difficult is it? But the stubborn heart refuses to accept truth. The rebellious always want to do it their way. They will always be searching, but never coming to the truth.

No problem with keeping Sunday. No problem with going to church on Sunday. No problem with accepting what the world says. But when it comes to doing what

Jesus says, wow, what a problem we have. We just hate to give up our sins and follow Jesus. That is why only a few will be saved.

If you are going to church that teaches Sunday worship, I suggest that you take them the truth. If they accept the truth, wonderful. The next week you, along with all of them, will be holding services on Sabbath. But if they don't accept the truth, you must, "Come out of her, My people, so that you will not share in her sins, so that you will not receive any of her plagues;..." Revelation 18:4.

If you believe in God, you will obey Him. If not, you will receive your reward for working evil. I choose to obey and receive my reward for working righteousness. Your choice. "And, behold, I come quickly; and My reward is with Me, to give every man according as his work shall be." Revelation 22:12. Choose you this day whom you will serve.

When did Jesus rise? He rose at three o'clock Sunday morning. How do we know this? "You will not allow your Holy One to experience corruption." Psalm 16:10. Corruption, decay, begins to set in 36 hours after death. Jesus died at three o'clock Friday afternoon at the time of the evening sacrifice. 36 hours later he arose. "On the first day of the week, early in the morning and while it was still dark, Mary Magdalene went to the tomb and noticed that the stone had been removed from the tomb." John 20:1. Prophecy explained it all. Jesus taught His disciples using prophecy.

This verse was used by the apostles in their defense of the resurrection of Jesus. On the day of Pentecost, Peter used this verse twice to convince the Jews that the prophecy had been fulfilled in Jesus. (Acts 2:27, 31). Then, Paul used this text in Antioch to defend the resurrection of Jesus to the Jews. (Acts 13:35, 37).

Many worldly churches teach that Colossians 2:16, 17 did away with the Sabbath. Remember, you can never use Scripture to do away with Scripture. That is from the devil. God doesn't contradict Himself. "Therefore do not let anyone judge you by what you eat or drink, or with regard to a religious festival, a New Moon celebration or a sabbath day. These are a shadow of the things that were to come; the reality, however, is found in Christ."

First, we are not talking about the Ten-Commandment Sabbath. The sabbath mentioned above has to do with eats, drinks, religious festivals and New Moon celebrations which are "shadows of things to come".

The seventh day Sabbath was never a shadow. Shadows were given **after sin** to point to the Messiah, as studied earlier. **The Sabbath was given before sin**, in the Garden of Eden and is not a shadow of anything. It is the reality of Jesus, who is the Ten Commandments in the flesh. (See the chapter: New Covenant.)

The seventh day Sabbath was kept before sin, during sin and will be kept after sin in the earth made new. "As the new heavens and the new earth that I make will endure before Me," declares the Lord, "so will your name and descendants endure. From one New Moon to another and from one Sabbath to another, all man-kind will come and bow down before Me," says the Lord." Isaiah 66:22, 23.

Only Commandment keeping people will be going to heaven. People who refuse to keep the seventh day Sabbath cannot go. They won't be happy there. Their lives have been spent in rebellion and they would not fit in. Heaven is where those who love God dwell. Heaven is where those who keep His Commandments will live. Heaven is for Sabbath keepers. It is for "those who obey God's commandments and hold to the testimony (teaching) of Jesus." "This calls for patient endurance on the part of the saints who obey God's commandments and remain faithful to Jesus." Revelation 12:17; 14:12.

So what "sabbaths" is the book of Colossians talking about? He is talking about the sabbaths of Leviticus 23. In Leviticus 23 we find a difference between **the seventh day, Ten Commandment Sabbath**, and the **feast-day sabbaths**.

Three times a year only Israelites were to come before the Lord at Jerusalem and **only at Jerusalem** to celebrate Passover, Feast of Weeks and Feast of Trumpets. Each feast had a specific amount of time and place the Israelites were to spend in celebrating. In order to prepare for the feasts the Israelites had to **stop their normal work** and do the work of getting ready for the feast days. So we read, "On the first day hold a sacred assembly and do **no regular work**." This "sacred" assembly was called a sabbath. Sabbath only means "rest day". They were to come apart from their **normal work** and do the work of getting ready for the feast days. These feast-day sabbaths could only be kept by an Israelite at the time of the feasts and only at Jerusalem. They could not be kept anywhere else in the world.

| Seventh-day Sabbath   | Feast-day Sabbaths   |
|-----------------------|--|
| <b>Leviticus 23:3</b> | <i>Leviticus 23:7, 8</i><br><i>Leviticus 23:21</i><br><i>Leviticus 23:24, 25, 27</i><br><i>Leviticus 23:35, 36</i> |

The seventh day Sabbath is also a day of "rest". But it has a higher calling. It was blessed and made holy by God. It was given to the whole world and was to be kept everywhere in the world by all people. The following will help you to understand this principle.

one at the beginning and one at the end of each feast, were called “ordinances”. The seventh day Sabbath was never called an ordinance. That is why we must be very careful when we study the Bible.

2. Also, these feasts were given **only** to Israel **as a nation**. They had to do with **temple** services and ceremonies. They were **not** given to Adam, and thus were done away with when Israel ceased to be a nation in AD 70.

3. Feast-day sabbaths fell on different days of the week each year.

4. The next point is that these feasts day sabbaths are not the Lord’s Sabbath, but, “Which **you** are to proclaim as sacred assemblies.” Verses 2, 4, 37. Get the point, they are not the Lord’s Sabbath, they are man’s sabbaths. In verse 3 we read that the 7th day Sabbath “is a Sabbath to the Lord”. Big difference. Who’s Sabbath are you keeping? The Lord’s 7th day Saturday Sabbath, or man’s sabbath?



We must put all the pieces of the puzzle together in their right places. Blue pieces go with blue; red pieces go with red; yellow pieces with yellow; green pieces with green. If you have ever put a jigsaw puzzle together you will recognize immediately what I am talking about. That is what you do with the pieces of the puzzle, you separate them by color before putting the puzzle together.

The worldly churches of today mix the pieces of the Bible all together and call blue, red; orange, green; yellow, gray and white, black. God forbids the calling of good, bad and bad, good. How dare the worldly churches take the plain statements of the Bible which Jesus taught and then twist them and turn them to **your** destruction.

Listen to Jesus and Jesus only. “Watch out that you do not lose what you have worked for, but that you may be rewarded fully. Anyone who runs ahead and does not continue in the **teaching** of Christ does not have God;

whoever continues in the teaching has both the Father and the Son.” 2 John 8, 9.



As an earthly government has a seal of authority, so God has His seal of authority. It is found in Exodus 20:8-11. The seal of an earthly government has the name (George Washington), the title (President), and the



territory he governs (USA).

God also has His seal with His authority. His name is **Jehovah or Lord**. His title is **Creator** or Maker of all things. The territory He rules is the **Universe, the earth and everything therein**. Those who have this seal will live forever in heaven. This seal is the 4th Commandment, the keeping of the Sabbath.

I have an obligation to teach you “to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age.” Matthew 28:20. I have attempted to fulfill my obligation. I have taught you how to obey the teachings of Jesus Christ. The rest is up to you. If you obey, we will meet in heaven and live eternally with our Lord and Savior. If you disobey, I will miss you. But you made your decision. You will reap what you sow. You will be rewarded fully for your work of wickedness.

May God bless you and keep you in His way. May you be obedient unto death. You will be persecuted if you obey and keep **THE seventh day, Saturday, Sabbath holy**. “Blessed are those who are persecuted because of righteousness, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.” Matthew 5:10. “In fact, everyone who wants to live a godly life in Christ Jesus will be persecuted.” 2 Timothy 3:12.

Ever wonder why there is so little persecution in the United States towards Christians? It is because we are not living the Christian life. If we were, we would be persecuted. That is the promise. Try it. Keep the Sabbath and all God’s Ten Commandments for six months. See if you won’t be persecuted. If you are, it is because you have been born again. If you are not being persecuted it is because you are not walking in the way of Jesus.

Keep your eyes on Jesus. Look to Him and His truth. Don’t trust anyone, especially a minister or church who does not keep ALL the Ten Commandments and the Sabbath. Let Jesus and Jesus only be your guide. Study for His truth. Then follow it.

You may be wondering about certain “godly” people who claim to love Jesus and yet keep Sunday, and preach Sunday as the Sabbath. You could point to people in “high” positions as Billy Graham, or to Jan and her husband Paul on TBN or Joel Olsteen. You could look at them and think that they were wonderful Christians. Well, let’s take a look at those three examples and see if we can learn something from them. Remember about persecution for living righteously. How much persecution has Billy Graham gone through? Let’s see, with a personal income, salary, of over \$200,000 a year, I don’t think he is going through much persecution. Do you?

How about Jan and her husband Paul on TBN? How much persecution are they going through for living the “righteous” life? Well, let’s see, with a personal income between them of over \$500,000 a year, I don’t think they are going through much persecution, do you? Joel is worth over \$40,000,000. And to think that they ask poor people to give to their greedy and selfish incomes, what wickedness!

I could go on and on naming names. There are preachers out there who are not following in the example of Jesus. They have jets, multi-million dollar mansions and servants to serve them. How very, very unlike Jesus. We are to follow the example of Jesus and Jesus only. Do you think they are going to give up that kind of salary, that kind of income, just for some silly old day that Jesus commands us to keep holy? I don’t think so. Do you?

## Related Texts

|                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Genesis 2:2, 3             | Exodus 16:23, 25, 26, 29, 30  |
| Exodus 20:8-11             | Exodus 23:12                  |
| Exodus 31:13-17            | Exodus 35:2, 3                |
| Leviticus 19:3, 30         | Leviticus 23:32               |
| Leviticus 26:2             | Numbers 15:32-36              |
| Deuteronomy 5:12-15        | Nehemiah 10:31                |
| Nehemiah 13:15-22          | Isaiah 56:2, 4-7              |
| Isaiah 58:13, 14           | Isaiah 66:23                  |
| Jeremiah 17:21-24, 27      | Ezekiel 20:11-13,16, 19-21,24 |
| Ezekiel 22:26              | Ezekiel 23:38                 |
| Ezekiel 44:24              | Amos 8:5                      |
| Matthew 12:1-12            | Matthew 24:20                 |
| Matthew 28:1               | Mark 1:21                     |
| Mark 2:27, 28              | Mark 3:2-4                    |
| Mark 6:2                   | Mark 15:42                    |
| Mark 16:1, 2               | Luke 4:16, 31                 |
| Luke 6:1, 2, 6-9           | Luke 13:10                    |
| Luke 14:1-5                | Luke 23:54-56                 |
| Luke 24:1                  | John 5:9, 10, 16, 18          |
| John 9:14, 16              | John 19:31                    |
| Acts 13:14, 15, 27, 42, 44 | Acts 15:21                    |
| Acts 16:13                 | Acts 17:2                     |
| Hebrews 4:4, 9             |                               |

# WICKEDNESS

In a survey conducted by one of the major magazines, something like 85% of all surveyed thought that they were going to heaven. Yet, those same people knew of at least one person who they thought was not going to heaven. The numbers don’t add up.

But that is the point. The devil has people deceived. If he can get you complacent into thinking that you are going to heaven, you’re lost. If the devil can get the churches to teach “peace and safety” when there is no

peace and safety, the people will be following blind guides, and all will fall into the ditch.

God is love. But that love is full of justice. Just as we have studied, everyone will receive the reward for what he has worked for. That is justice. God’s love cannot override His justice. He has made a way of escape, but if



you do not work at following the arrows to the fire escape, you will be burned up.

This section is to remind you of the seriousness of rebelling against God and His law. When we think of wickedness, what comes to mind are images of Hitler and Stalin, Nero, ISIS and the Oklahoma City Bomber and the 9/11 “Attack on America”. But that is only a very small part of wickedness.

If you work for a company and willingly take a pen or pencil from work and “steal” it, you are wicked. Any part of breaking the Ten Commandments, voluntarily, with intent, is wickedness. This is why so few will be saved. Revelation talks about a multitude saved, yes, but those are the righteous from Adam to our time. Compared to just the population of our planet today, it is a very small multitude.

After almost 1500 years and a population of several billion people, “the Lord saw how great man’s wickedness on the earth had become, and that every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil all the time. The Lord was grieved that He had made man on the earth, and His heart was filled with pain. So the Lord said, ‘I will wipe mankind, whom I have created, from the face of the earth.’” Genesis 6:5-7.

Yes a loving God. But also a God of justice. The population of the earth was so wicked that it was in love and justice that God wiped the earth clean. Out of a population of several billion people only eight (8) were saved. Eight! All thought they were saved. They all thought that God was too kind and loving to destroy His creation. But they all thought wrong. The worldly churches of today are thinking wrong. They are not listening to the Word of Jesus. He is coming back. He is going to destroy this planet and the rebellion that it is leading against His Ten Commandments.

“By the same word the present heavens and earth are reserved for fire, being kept for the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly men... But the day of the Lord will come like a thief. The heavens will disappear with a roar; the elements will be destroyed by fire, and the earth and everything in it will be laid bare... That day will bring about the destruction of the heavens by fire, and the elements will melt in the heat. But in keeping with His promise we are looking forward to a new heaven and a new earth, the home of the righteous.” 2 Peter 3:7, 10,

12, 13.

Only commandment-keeping people will have a home in the new earth. As we have studied earlier, only the commandment-keeping people are righteous. The wicked will be burned up like Sodom and Gomorrah. Did you know that they found those cities? Sodom lies southwest of the Dead Sea. The city is still there. The homes and streets are still there. The wall that surrounds the city is still there. But it has been burned to white ash. Within the ash are sulfur fireballs. No other place on the entire planet has such sulfur fireballs.

God “condemned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah by burning them to ashes, and made them an example of what is going to happen to the ungodly.” 2 Peter 2:6. Here again, out of a valley of several hundred thousand people, only three (3) survived.

I don't want to scare you. Salvation cannot be gained by scare tactics. Nobody will be scared into heaven. The only people who can go to heaven are those who love Jesus so much they are willing to die rather than to break one of His Ten Commandments. Those are the only people Jesus can safely take to heaven.

Look at it like this. Would you want your State to let a mass murderer loose to live next door to you? Would you want a rapist to live next door to your kids? Then how are you expecting to get into heaven? For God to be fair, He can only take people to heaven who **want to, willingly**, live by the rules. If you are breaking the rules and still think that you are good enough for heaven then God must take all the people who are breaking the rules. But He can't. You don't want Him taking some of those wicked people. In so judging, you judge yourself. The only people He can take to heaven are those who keep His Ten Commandment laws. All ten of them. Including the 7<sup>th</sup> day Sabbath of the fourth commandment.

If you think that God is too loving and too forgiving to destroy the wicked, think again. He did it by water the first time. He did it by fire to Sodom. He did it by plagues to Egypt. He did it by Babylon to Judah. He did it by the Romans to Jerusalem again in AD 70. He will do it again. Read the Old Testament and learn.

## Related Texts

Genesis 6:5, 6  
Genesis 18:20, 21  
Numbers 14:1, 2, 10, 27, 43  
Numbers 16:26, 30, 41  
Deuteronomy 7:10, 15, 16  
Deuteronomy 27:26  
Deuteronomy 29:19-21, 26-28  
Deuteronomy 32:5

Genesis 13:13  
Genesis 19:4, 5, 13, 24  
Numbers 15:30  
Deuteronomy 1:43  
Deuteronomy 9:4, 5  
Deuteronomy 28:20, 45, 55-57  
Deuteronomy 31:18  
Joshua 7:1, 11, 20, 21, 25

Joshua 23:12-13  
Judges 3:7, 12  
Judges 6:1  
Judges 13:1  
1 Samuel 3:12-14  
1 Samuel 12:25  
1 Samuel 15:11, 19, 23, 24  
1 Kings 9:6-9  
1 Kings 13:33, 34  
1 Kings 15:3, 28-30, 34  
1 Kings 18:18  
1 Kings 22:52, 53  
2 Kings 8:18, 27  
2 Kings 13:2, 6, 11  
2 Kings 16:2  
2 Kings 17:34, 40  
2 Kings 19:28  
2 Kings 22:13  
2 Kings 24:3, 4, 9, 19, 20  
2 Chronicles 12:1  
2 Chronicles 21:6  
2 Chronicles 24:20  
2 Chronicles 33:22  
2 Chronicles 36:5, 9, 12-16  
Psalm 11:5, 6  
Psalm 28:4, 5  
Psalm 52:3, 4  
Psalm 69:28  
Psalm 75:8  
Psalm 92:6, 7  
Psalm 105:28  
Psalm 140:8  
Proverbs 1:10, 22, 24, 26, 28-29  
Proverbs 3:33  
Proverbs 15:9, 29  
Isaiah 43:24  
Isaiah 58:1-3  
Isaiah 65:2-4, 12  
Jeremiah 3:4, 5  
Jeremiah 5:25, 26, 28  
Jeremiah 9:13, 14  
Jeremiah 13:10  
Jeremiah 32:32  
Jeremiah 44:4, 5, 10, 27, 28  
Ezekiel 5:5, 6  
Ezekiel 8:9, 16, 18  
Ezekiel 44:6, 7  
Hosea 1:2, 6  
Hosea 5:4-6  
Hosea 8:1-3, 5, 7, 13  
Hosea 10:9, 13  
Hosea 12:2, 11  
Hosea 14:1, 9  
Amos 3:2, 10  
Amos 9:4, 8, 10  
Micah 2:11  
Micah 6:12, 13  
Nahum 1:2, 3  
Habakkuk 1:13  
Zephaniah 2:10  
Haggai 2:17  
Zechariah 3:1  
Malachi 2:17  
Matthew 15:19

Judges 2:11, 12, 17, 19  
Judges 4:1  
Judges 10:6, 13, 14  
1 Samuel 2:23-25  
1 Samuel 8:7, 8  
1 Samuel 13:13, 14  
2 Samuel 3:39  
1 Kings 11:4, 6, 33  
1 Kings 14:9, 16  
1 Kings 16:7, 19 - 33  
1 Kings 21:20-26  
2 Kings 3:2  
2 Kings 10:31  
2 Kings 15:9, 18, 24, 28  
2 Kings 17:2-9, 14-23  
2 Kings 18:12  
2 Kings 21:2 - 9, 13-22  
2 Kings 23:32, 37  
1 Chronicles 10:13, 14  
2 Chronicles 19:2  
2 Chronicles 22:3, 4  
2 Chronicles 28:1, 19  
2 Chronicles 34:21, 25  
Psalm 1:4, 5  
Psalm 14:1-6  
Psalm 50:16-19  
Psalm 53:1-4  
Psalm 73:9, 27  
Psalm 78:36, 37, 57  
Psalm 104:35  
Psalm 106:25, 35, 43  
Psalm 145:20  
Proverbs 2:12-15  
Proverbs 5:22, 23  
Isaiah 5:20  
Isaiah 57:20, 21  
Isaiah 59:2, 4, 6-8  
Jeremiah 2:8, 17, 19  
Jeremiah 4:22  
Jeremiah 7:26-28  
Jeremiah 11:8, 15  
Jeremiah 18:12  
Jeremiah 33:5  
Jeremiah 52:2  
Ezekiel 6:11  
Ezekiel 18:20-32  
Daniel 9:5 -11, 13-15  
Hosea 4:5-11, 14  
Hosea 7:2, 3  
Hosea 9:9, 15-17  
Hosea 11:2, 7, 12  
Hosea 13:2, 12  
Amos 2:4  
Amos 5:2, 10, 12  
Jonah 1:2  
Micah 3:4, 9-11  
Micah 7:13  
Nahum 2:8  
Zephaniah 1:3  
Zephaniah 3:2, 7  
Zechariah 1:6  
Zechariah 7:11-13  
Matthew 12:30  
Matthew 18:7

Matthew 23:28, 38  
 Matthew 25:45  
 Mark 4:15-19  
 Luke 11:39  
 Luke 13:26-28  
 Luke 21:34  
 John 15:6  
 Romans 1:24-32  
 Romans 8:5, 8  
 1 Corinthians 16:22  
 Ephesians 4:18, 19, 20, 31  
 Colossians 3:5-8, 25  
 2 Thessalonians 1:8, 9  
 Titus 3:3  
 Hebrews 10:26, 27  
 1 Peter 2:8  
 2 Peter 2:4, 5, 10, 18, 19  
 Revelation 21:8

Matthew 24:10-12  
 Matthew 27:3-5, 25  
 Mark 7:21-23  
 Luke 12:47  
 Luke 19:27  
 John 8:34,43, 44  
 Acts 5:4-10  
 Romans 2:5-8  
 1 Corinthians 6:9, 10  
 Ephesians 2:2, 3  
 Ephesians 5:3-5  
 1 Thessalonians 2:16  
 Titus 1:16  
 Hebrews 6:8  
 James 4:1-4  
 1 Peter 4:3  
 1 John 2:16, 17

need to read Malachi. “A son honors his father, and a servant his master. If I am a father, where is the honor due Me? If I am a master, where is the respect due Me?” “But you have turned from the way and by **your teaching** have caused many to stumble; you have violated the covenant with Levi.” Malachi 1:6; 2:8. Do not be one who causes others to stumble. Teach only what Jesus taught.

## Related Texts

Genesis 4:7, 26  
 Genesis 6:9  
 Genesis 17:1  
 Exodus 20:20  
 Leviticus 11:44, 45  
 Leviticus 20:7, 8  
 Leviticus 21:6, 8, 23  
 Deuteronomy 7:6  
 Deuteronomy 26:18, 19  
 Joshua 24:14  
 1 Samuel 12:23, 24  
 1 Kings 3:6  
 1 Kings 14:8  
 1 Kings 19:18  
 2 Kings 15:3, 34  
 2 Kings 22:2  
 2 Chronicles 6:26, 37, 38  
 2 Chronicles 14:2  
 2 Chronicles 17:3  
 2 Chronicles 25:2  
 2 Chronicles 27:2, 6  
 2 Chronicles 31:20, 21  
 Job 1:1, 8, 22  
 Job 6:10  
 Job 17:9  
 Job 27:3-6  
 Job 33:8, 9  
 Psalm 1:1, 6  
 Psalm 15:1-3  
 Psalm 18:20-26  
 Psalm 26:1-5, 11  
 Psalm 34:13-15  
 Psalm 39:1  
 Psalm 51:10  
 Psalm 64:10  
 Psalm 97:10  
 Proverbs 8:20  
 Proverbs 20:7  
 Isaiah 1:19  
 Isaiah 26:3, 4  
 Isaiah 33:14, 15  
 Isaiah 55:6-9  
 Isaiah 58:8, 9  
 Jeremiah 6:16  
 Jeremiah 17:7, 10  
 Jeremiah 22:3  
 Jeremiah 24:7  
 Jeremiah 26:3  
 Jeremiah 35:15  
 Jeremiah 39:18  
 Jeremiah 51:45  
 Genesis 5:24  
 Genesis 7:1  
 Genesis 18:19  
 Leviticus 10:10  
 Leviticus 19:2  
 Leviticus 20:24, 26  
 Leviticus 22:9, 16, 32  
 Deuteronomy 18:13  
 Joshua 23:8, 11  
 1 Samuel 7:3  
 2 Samuel 22:21-27, 33  
 1 Kings 8:23, 35, 36  
 1 Kings 15:5, 11, 14  
 1 Kings 22:43  
 2 Kings 18:3  
 1 Chronicles 28:9-10, 20  
 2 Chronicles 7:14, 17  
 2 Chronicles 16:9  
 2 Chronicles 24:2  
 2 Chronicles 26:4  
 2 Chronicles 29:2  
 2 Chronicles 34:2, 27  
 Job 2:3  
 Job 12:4  
 Job 23:11, 12  
 Job 32:1  
 Job 42:7, 8  
 Psalm 7:8  
 Psalm 17:3  
 Psalm 23:3  
 Psalm 33:1, 5  
 Psalm 37:5, 6, 27, 34, 39  
 Psalm 45:7  
 Psalm 58:10, 11  
 Psalm 66:18  
 Psalm 119:121  
 Proverbs 11:20  
 Proverbs 28:18  
 Isaiah 3:10  
 Isaiah 30:15  
 Isaiah 48:17  
 Isaiah 57:15  
 Jeremiah 4:14  
 Jeremiah 15:19  
 Jeremiah 18:7-12  
 Jeremiah 23:28  
 Jeremiah 25:5  
 Jeremiah 32:19, 39  
 Jeremiah 36:3, 7  
 Jeremiah 48:10  
 Ezekiel 3:18-21

# RIGHTEOUSNESS

“If it is hard for the righteous to be saved, what will become of the ungodly and the sinner?” 1 Peter 4:18.

“Make every effort to enter through the narrow door, because many, I tell you, will try to enter and **will not be able to.**” Luke 13:24.



“Enter through the narrow gate. For wide is the gate and broad is the road that leads to destruction, and many enter through it. But **small** is the gate and **narrow** the road that leads to life, and only a **few** find it.” Matthew 7:13, 14.

“Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a **new creation**; the old has gone, the new has come!” 2 Corinthians 5:17.

“Everyone” runs around claiming to be a Christian (or person of God). But as the texts above indicate, very few are Christians. As we have learned from our previous studies, the reason so few know how to be righteous is that they have been taught lies about righteousness. Jesus taught three (3) main points that each Christian must possess to get to heaven: be perfect, stop sinning and keep the Ten Commandments to earn your eternal life.

We are now finished with the major points of the Bible for salvation. How you relate to them will determine your eternal destiny. The following texts will give you more food for thought on this topic. God bless you and keep you as you put into practice what you have learned. Your eternal life or death is in your hands. Please make the right choices. If you claim to be a “son of God”, you

# TEN COMMANDMENTS

For the final thought of this first volume, I want to express again the importance of keeping the Ten Commandments. All through this study we have learned that it was Jesus who gave them. It was Jesus who wrote them with His own finger. It was Jesus who came and lived them showing that we can keep them in His power. It was Jesus who stated that if we love Him we would **obey** His Ten Commandments.

We have studied that sin is the breaking of the Ten Commandments. No sinner will go to heaven. Only those sinners who have put off sin by the power of Christ and are living His righteous, Ten Commandment-keeping life will enter heaven.

We have learned that it is the devil's most important work to get you to sin. If he can get you to break just one of the Ten Commandments, you are lost. That is why he has worked so hard to get the worldly churches to accept his 1<sup>st</sup> day Sunday as Sabbath.

The following texts will take you through the Bible in an effort to show the importance of keeping God's Ten Commandments. God bless you in your continued study of God's word.

Remember Malachi 4:4 of the Old Testament? Notice, this is the last command in the last book of the Old Testament. It is a command to "Remember" the Ten Commandments as we go into the New Testament. "If anyone turns a deaf ear to the law, even his prayers are detestable." Proverbs 28:9.

## Related Texts

|                                       |                                    |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Genesis 4:7                           | Genesis 6:18                       |
| Genesis 17:2, 4, 7, 9                 | Genesis 26:5                       |
| Exodus 18:16, 20                      | Exodus 19:5                        |
| Exodus 20:1-17                        | Exodus 24:12                       |
| Exodus 25:16, 21, 22                  | Exodus 30:6, 36                    |
| Exodus 31:18                          | Exodus 32:15, 16                   |
| Exodus 34:10, 11, 28, 29              | Exodus 40:20                       |
| Leviticus 18:4, 5, 24, 29             | Leviticus 19:18, 19, 37            |
| Leviticus 20:8                        | Leviticus 22:31                    |
| Leviticus 26:9, 14, 15, 27            | Numbers 7:89                       |
| Numbers 15:15, 16, 22, 29, 31, 39, 40 | Deut. 4:2, 6, 8, 9, 13, 14, 23, 45 |
| Deuteronomy 5:1-22, 29-33             | Deut. 6:1-9, 17, 18, 24, 25        |
| Deuteronomy 7:9, 11, 12               | Deuteronomy 8:1, 3, 6, 11          |
| Deuteronomy 9:9-11, 15                | Deut. 10:1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 12, 13     |
| Deut. 11:1, 8, 13, 16, 18, 22-32      | Deuteronomy 12:1, 2, 28, 32        |
| Deuteronomy 13:3, 4, 18               | Deuteronomy 15:5                   |
| Deuteronomy 17:11                     | Deuteronomy 19:9                   |

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| Ezekiel 7:3, 8, 9                      | Ezekiel 14:6               |
| Ezekiel 18:20-32                       | Ezekiel 33:8-20            |
| Hosea 2:12, 13                         | Hosea 5:14, 15             |
| Hosea 6:1                              | Hosea 12:6                 |
| Jonah 3:8, 10                          | Micah 2:7                  |
| Micah 4:2                              | Micah 6:8                  |
| Habakkuk 2:4                           | Zephaniah 3:13             |
| Zechariah 1:3, 4                       | Zechariah 8:16, 17         |
| Malachi 2:6                            | Malachi 3:7, 16, 18        |
| Matthew 5:3-12, 16, 20, 29, 30, 48     | Matthew 6:22, 24, 33       |
| Matthew 7:13, 14, 16-20, 24            | Matthew 9:16-17            |
| Matthew 10:37, 38                      | Matthew 12:33, 35          |
| Matthew 13:8, 15, 23, 38, 43           | Matthew 16:24, 25          |
| Matthew 18:3, 4, 8, 9                  | Mark 2:21, 22              |
| Mark 4:8                               | Mark 6:12                  |
| Mark 8:34                              | Mark 9:43-48               |
| Mark 10:25, 29, 30                     | Luke 1:74, 75              |
| Luke 2:25                              | Luke 6:47                  |
| Luke 8:15                              | Luke 11:36                 |
| Luke 13:2-5                            | Luke 13:24                 |
| Luke 14:33                             | Luke 16:13                 |
| Luke 23:50                             | John 8:31, 32, 36          |
| John 12:46                             | Acts 3:22                  |
| Acts 8:22                              | Acts 13:22                 |
| Acts 17:11                             | Acts 19:18                 |
| Acts 20:21, 32                         | Acts 24:16, 25             |
| Acts 26:20                             | Romans 1:5, 17             |
| Romans 2:6, 7, 29                      | Romans 4:12                |
| Romans 6:1-23                          | Romans 8:12, 13, 29        |
| Romans 10:4                            | Romans 12:1, 2, 9, 21      |
| Romans 13:12-14                        | Romans 16:19, 26           |
| 1 Corinthians 1:2, 10, 30              | 1 Corinthians 5:5          |
| 1 Corinthians 6:11, 20                 | 1 Corinthians 9:24-27      |
| 1 Corinthians 15:2, 31, 33, 34, 58     | 2 Corinthians 1:12, 21     |
| 2 Corinthians 3:18                     | 2 Corinthians 4:2, 6, 7    |
| 2 Corinthians 5:17, 21                 | 2 Corinthians 6:14-17      |
| 2 Corinthians 7:1, 15                  | 2 Corinthians 9:8, 13      |
| 2 Corinthians 10:5, 6                  | 2 Corinthians 12:21        |
| 2 Corinthians 13:5, 7, 9, 11           | Galatians 1:4              |
| Galatians 2:20                         | Galatians 5:1 - 25         |
| Galatians 6:7-9, 15                    | Ephesians 1:4              |
| Ephesians 2:1-10                       | Eph.4:12, 13, 15, 22-24    |
| Ephesians 5:1, 8-11, 17, 27            | Ephesians 6:16             |
| Philippians 1:6, 10                    | Philippians 2:12-16        |
| Philippians 3:8, 9                     | Philippians 4:8, 13        |
| Colossians 1:10, 11, 13, 14, 21-23, 28 | Colossians 2:20, 21        |
| Colossians 3:1, 5-10, 12, 23           | 1 Thessalonians 2:10       |
| 1 Thessalonians 3:13                   | 1 Thess. 4:3, 4, 7         |
| 1 Thessalonians 5:5, 6, 21-23          | 1 Timothy 1:5, 18, 19      |
| 1 Timothy 5:20, 22, 25                 | 1 Timothy 6:11, 12         |
| 2 Timothy 1:9                          | 2 Timothy 2:19, 21, 22, 26 |
| Titus 1:7, 8                           | Titus 2:7, 12-14           |
| Titus 3:3, 8, 14                       | Hebrews 10:14              |
| Hebrews 12:1, 2, 4, 14                 | James 1:21                 |
| James 3:17, 18                         | James 4:7, 8               |
| 1 Peter 1:13, 14-16, 22, 23            | 1 Peter 2:1-3              |
| 1 Peter 2:21, 22, 24                   | 1 Peter 3:11, 12           |
| 1 Peter 4:1, 2, 18                     | 1 Peter 5:8                |
| 2 Peter 1:3-8, 10                      | 2 Peter 3:11, 14           |
| 1 John 1:6, 7                          | 1 John 2:15                |
| 1 John 3:6-9, 18                       | 1 John 5:18                |
| 2 John 1:8-11                          | 3 John 1:3, 4, 11          |
| Jude 1:24                              | Revelation 2:2, 5, 10, 19  |
| Revelation 3:3, 4                      | Revelation 14:5            |

Deuteronomy 26:16-19  
 Deuteronomy 28:1-68  
 Deut. 30:2, 6, 8, 10, 11-16, 20  
 Deuteronomy 32:46  
 Joshua 1:7, 8  
 Joshua 23:6  
 Judges 3:4  
 2 Samuel 6:2  
 1 Kings 2:2-4  
 1 Kings 6:12  
 1 Kings 9:4  
 2 Kings 17:13, 15, 37, 38  
 2 Kings 21:8  
 1 Chronicles 16:15, 17  
 1 Chronicles 28:7, 8  
 2 Chronicles 6:11, 16  
 2 Chronicles 13:11, 12  
 2 Chronicles 15:3  
 2 Chronicles 33:8  
 Ezra 7:10, 11  
 Nehemiah 8:3  
 Nehemiah 10:29  
 Psalm 12:6  
 Psalm 25:10, 14  
 Psalm 37:31  
 Psalm 97:2  
 Psalm 103:18  
 Psalm 111:5-10  
 Psalm 132:12  
 Proverbs 6:23  
 Proverbs 28:9  
 Ecclesiastes 12:13, 14  
 Isaiah 8:16, 20  
 Isaiah 26:8  
 Isaiah 42:21  
 Isaiah 55:11  
 Jeremiah 1:7-9, 12  
 Jeremiah 11:2-4, 6, 10  
 Jeremiah 26:13  
 Jeremiah 32:40  
 Ezekiel 18:9  
 Ezekiel 33:15  
 Ezekiel 37:24  
 Hosea 6:7  
 Joel 2:11  
 Zechariah 3:7  
 Malachi 4:4  
 Matthew 5:17, 18  
 Matthew 15:3-9  
 Matthew 22:29  
 Matthew 24:35  
 Mark 3:34, 35  
 Mark 10:17, 19  
 Luke 6:46  
 Luke 11:28  
 Luke 18:18-20  
 John 5:39, 45, 46  
 John 12:47-50  
 John 15:10, 12, 14, 20  
 Acts 3:25  
 Acts 22:12  
 Acts 25:8  
 Acts 28:23  
 Romans 2:13-15, 21-23, 26, 27

Deuteronomy 27:9, 10  
 Deuteronomy 29:12-15, 25  
 Deuteronomy 31:9, 12, 16  
 Deuteronomy 33:9, 10  
 Joshua 7:15  
 Judges 2:17, 21  
 1 Samuel 12:14  
 2 Samuel 22:31  
 1 Kings 3:14  
 1 Kings 8:58, 61  
 1 Kings 11:10, 11, 33, 38  
 2 Kings 18:6, 7  
 2 Kings 23:2, 3, 25  
 1 Chronicles 22:12  
 1 Chronicles 29:19  
 2 Chronicles 7:17  
 2 Chronicles 14:4  
 2 Chronicles 31:21  
 2 Chronicles 34:30, 31  
 Nehemiah 1:5  
 Nehemiah 9:13  
 Psalm 1:2  
 Psalm 19:7, 8  
 Psalm 33:4  
 Psalm 78:5, 10  
 Psalm 99:7  
 Psalm 105:8, 45  
 Psalm 119:1-176  
 Psalm 147:15, 19  
 Proverbs 7:1-3  
 Proverbs 29:18  
 Isaiah 1:10  
 Isaiah 24:5  
 Isaiah 40:8  
 Isaiah 51:4  
 Isaiah 61:8  
 Jeremiah 7:23  
 Jeremiah 22:9  
 Jeremiah 31:31-33  
 Ezekiel 16:60, 62  
 Ezekiel 20:11-13, 24  
 Ezekiel 36:27  
 Daniel 9:4  
 Hosea 8:12  
 Zephaniah 2:3  
 Malachi 2:5, 7, 10  
 Matthew 4:4  
 Matthew 7:21-23  
 Matthew 19:16, 17  
 Matthew 23:2-4  
 Matthew 28:20  
 Mark 7:6-13  
 Luke 1:6, 72  
 Luke 8:21  
 Luke 16:16, 17, 29-31  
 Luke 24:27  
 John 7:19  
 John 14:15, 21, 23, 24, 31  
 John 17:17  
 Acts 7:38, 53  
 Acts 24:14  
 Acts 26:27  
 Romans 1:32  
 Romans 3:31

Romans 7:1, 12, 16, 22  
 Romans 9:4, 6, 31, 32  
 Romans 13:8-10  
 Ephesians 6:1, 2  
 2 Timothy 3:15-17  
 James 1:22, 23  
 2 Peter 1:19, 20  
 1 John 3:4, 21, 22  
 2 John 1:6

Romans 8:4, 7  
 Romans 10:3, 4  
 1 Corinthians 7:19  
 1 Timothy 1:8-11  
 Titus 2:1  
 James 2:8-12  
 1 John 2:3-8  
 1 John 5:2, 3  
 Revelation 12:17

## Outline of a Righteous Life

Be Ye Perfect! Matthew 5:48  
 (How?)

Stop Sinning! John 8:11  
 (How?)

By Obeying the Ten Commandments! Matthew 19:17  
 (How?)

**“I can do everything through Him who gives me strength.”** Philippians 4:13

Please remember:  
**To be almost saved is to be totally lost!**

## Simple Bible Test of a Christian

1. 2 John 1:8 – Watch out that you are not deceived.
2. 2 John 1:9 – We must continue in the teachings of Jesus.
3. 2 John 1:10, 11 – Have nothing to do with those who claim to be “Christian”, but do not believe the teachings of Jesus.
4. Matthew 28:20 – Our only duty is to teach what Jesus taught: What Jesus taught in both Old and New Testament.
5. John 8:31, 32 – Anyone who does not hold to the teachings of Jesus is not a true disciple.

## The Teachings of Jesus

1. Matthew 5:48 – Be Perfect: As Perfect as your Heavenly Father.
2. John 5:14; 8:11 – Stop sinning; Go and sin no more.
3. Matthew 19:16, 17 – If you want to enter heaven, you must obey the Ten Commandments, including the 7<sup>th</sup> day, Saturday, Sabbath.

“He (Jesus) will punish those who do not know God and do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus.” 2 Thessalonians 1:8.



One of the problems with worldly churches is they are always looking forward to a future time when they will attain perfection.



Some day I'll reach my goal



But Biblically that is the wrong concept. Jesus taught we can attain perfection now, through His indwelling Power. Therefore, it would look like this:



In Jesus I am perfect, now I walk in His Perfection



# VOLUME II

---

# JUDGMENT

“For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, that each one may receive what is due him for the things done while in the body, whether good or bad.” 2 Corinthians 5:10.

For most Christians, the judgment is confusing and misunderstood. To begin this second volume of “Change Your Life Biblically” we will attempt to encapsulate every topic with the concept of judgment. Once we understand judgment we will have a better understanding of our salvation and our role in it.

When is the judgment? How many judgments are there? Must I fear the judgment? What is it all about?

First, we need to understand what a “judgment” is. Simply put, it is a statement of right or wrong. It is somebody’s decision that makes a determination on some topic or activity. If an officer pulls you over and gives you a ticket for speeding he has judged you as a law breaker. You then go to court and ask the judge to make a judgment (decision) in your favor. You want the judge to rule that you were not speeding and to take that ticket off your record.

If you are accused of a felony you go to court and attempt to prove your innocence. You want the judge or jury to **pronounce judgment** in your favor. You want them to pronounce you innocent.

Lucifer has leveled the charge against all of us as “Law Breakers” and deserving of death, just like him. We are to look forward to the “Judgment Day” when we can stand in the presence of Christ, not in our worth, but because we have accepted the worth and works of Christ as our own. This is done through obedience to His commands. He will then judge us innocent. Praise the Lord.

There are television programs that show court proceedings. The prosecution and the defendant stand before the judge and each gives their side of the story. Based on records, photographs and testimony, each side attempts to persuade the judge that what they are saying is the truth.

After hearing all the arguments that are presented, the judge must make a decision. The judge must weigh the evidence, and decide what is the right judgment to make.

You have now completed your first read of Volume I. A second and third time through will strengthen your wisdom and understanding. When you have learned how to live the information in Volume I, write and ask for the Thought Questions. You are now on firmly working toward your certificate.

JCPM

P.O. Box 770

Lucerne Valley, CA 92356

---

### NOTES

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

If the U.S. Supreme Court hands down that judgment, that decision is final. There is no higher court to make an appeal. Each side must live with the consequences of that decision.

But let's back up a bit and put this all in perspective. There are three phases to a judicial matter. By looking at each one we will begin to see the justice of God and His love in not wanting anyone to perish. Let us look at the system of justice here in America and see if we can make some comparisons between what we can see and what we cannot see.

The first thing that must happen for an investigation to begin is a pointing finger. Somebody must make an accusation against you.

# Investigation



After the accusation, the authorities must begin writing down and investigating everything about you that relates to the accusation. This is called the "Investigative Judgment". Someone has made a judgment against you, and now the authorities must investigate the matter.

This investigation can take days, weeks, months or even years. There are many drug investigations that have been, and are, on-going over a period of many years. Time is not important. Getting the evidence is. Evidence that will either prove the accusations true or false.



All the information that is investigated is then compiled and placed in a record and cataloged so it can be easily referred to for future use. At this point the investigation is basically finished.

# The Trial



By this time the accused may be sitting in a county jail awaiting trial. He must go before a jury of his peers to answer the charges and accusations against him.

The information can be presented to a jury in two ways. One is for the accused to be present at the time of the trial while the other is for the evidence to be presented before a Grand Jury.

At the trial the evidence is presented by the accuser, the prosecution, in the most heinous light. The prosecution wants everyone to know what a slime-ball the defendant is. The prosecution takes facts and presents them in such a way as to get the jury to believe in the guilt of the defendant. The prosecution wants the jury to find the defendant guilty.

The defense team takes the same facts and presents them to the jury in such a way that the jury will see that the actions were not so bad. The defense also tries to present facts to negate the evidence presented by the prosecution.

After all the evidence has been presented to the judge or jury, the judge or jury must then make a decision of guilt or innocence. They deliberate on the facts and return a verdict. If the verdict is "innocent" the defendant does not have to stand before the judge to be sentenced. He is free to go his way.

If, however, the jury or judge finds the defendant guilty, a time is set for sentencing. At the appropriate time the defendant stands before the judge and the judge passes sentence.

# Execution of Sentence



The judge now hands down his sentence. If it is a felony the accused will probably go to prison. If it warrants death, the judge will sentence the defendant to death.

The officer will then take the prisoner away and he will be handed over to the state for proper execution of the sentence which was handed down by the judge. Case Closed!

# GOD'S JUDGMENT

“For God will bring every **deed** into judgment, including every hidden thing, whether it is good or evil.” Ecclesiastes. 12:14.

To understand the judgment of God, we need to follow the historical aspects of God and the judgments that He has done in the past. You see, there are two basic judgments with God. The present, physical judgment, and the “End of Time” eternal, spiritual judgment. Both work on the same principle: justice.

In the Bible we have many historical accounts of God in the present, physical judgment. Based on these present, physical manifestations, we will be able to see the justice and the mercy of God in His end-time judgments. To begin, we start in Genesis.

In Genesis chapter two, verse 17, we have God laying down the truth to Adam and Eve, saying, “If you eat of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, you will **surely** die”. That is the truth. That was the command. Their eternal life depended on one thing: **obedience**.

When they sinned, God had to “judge” them and make a determination of their guilt or innocence and the just punishment. He did just what we find in a court of law today. He instituted the first phase by coming down and “walking in the garden in the cool of the day...” Genesis 3:8.

God came down, looked around and investigated the charge that, no doubt, Lucifer had brought against them. “Na, na, - They disobeyed You just like me. Now what are You going to do about it?”

God came down and called court: Adam, “Where are you?” He wanted to hear their side of the accusation brought by Lucifer. Immediately they began to do what all sinners do, accuse each other or something else. (Remember your day in court?)

After investigating and hearing both sides, God made His decision. He gave them probation (grace) instead of death. Then He executed that decision by removing them from the Garden of Eden.

The next investigation was a murder investigation. Abel was murdered and God came down to investigate. To Cain “the Lord said, What have you done? Listen! Your brother’s blood cries out to Me from the ground.” Genesis 4:10. After investigating and determining that Cain was guilty of murder God passed sentence and then executed that sentence. He gave him probation (grace) instead of death.



The next investigation had to do with flood control and took place about 120 years before the flood. God came down, again, and looked around and “saw how great man’s wickedness on the earth had become and that every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil all the time.” Genesis 6:5.

God investigated, found man guilty and then gave judgment: “I will wipe mankind, whom I have created, from the face of the earth...” Genesis 6:7. After giving judgment, He waited 120 years and then executed that judgment.

In every case of judgment, God always provides a way of escape. If we are righteous He will save us. “Noah was a righteous man, blameless among the people of his time, and he walked with God.” Genesis 6:9. “Go into the ark, you and your whole family, because **I have found you righteous** in this generation.” Genesis 7:1.

God, being the merciful and gracious God that He is, (in both Old and New Testaments) always gives man a way of escape. He gives probation (grace) to each man and woman. All are given time to repent, turn away from sins and come back into God’s favor. By doing this we become the righteousness of God. We let God’s perfection, righteousness and sinless life dwell in us. By keeping that divine nature within us we are declared righteous and the penalty that was determined against us will be commuted. We will then be pardoned: justified. But if we neglect so great a salvation and refuse to repent, turn away from and cease sinning, then the divine sentence will be carried out and we will pay the full penalty for our sins: death! Eternal death! (Hebrews 10:26, 27.)

The next investigation had to do with crowd control. This is recorded in the Bible as the tower of Babel incident. Again, the “Lord came down to see the city and



the tower that men were building.” Genesis 11:5. Men were attempting to build a “One World” government.

God always is just. Like a parent, He simply wants what is best for His children. He is not arbitrary and demanding to

our hurt. Everything He does is for our good. He loves us. He does not want us to sin since sin causes pain, misery, suffering and death.

After looking around, investigating the crime scene, He determined that the people were guilty and passed judgment: "From there the Lord scattered them over the face of the whole earth." Genesis 11:9.

Evidently, the work God did at the Tower of Babel was very good. Man did not need another investigation for quite some time. But again, man forgot who his Creator and God was and became wicked. God again had to come down and investigate.



In Genesis 18:20-21, we are told, "Then the Lord said, 'The outcry against Sodom and Gomorrah is so great and their sin so grievous that I will go down and see if what they have done is as bad as the outcry that has reached Me. If not, I will know.'"

The whole purpose of God's investigations are for us, not Him. Our sins have no effect on Him. It is us they hurt. By hurting us they then hurt Him. He came down to Sodom and Gomorrah because good people were being hurt by those wicked people. The cries of righteous people were being heard and recorded in heaven. Justice compelled God to act justly.

After investigating He found the cities guilty and passed judgment on them. Then He executed that judgment. He made a way of escape for all who wanted it. But only three accepted the way of escape.

The whole Bible is full of the "coming down" of God (Jesus) to investigate, finding for the right, then passing sentence and carrying out that sentence.

Using Israel as His tool of execution He brought sentence upon the inhabitants of the land of Canaan. "In the fourth generation your descendants will come back here, for the sin of the Amorites has not yet reached its full measure." Genesis 15:16. "After the Lord your God has driven them out before you, do not say to yourself, 'The Lord has brought me here to take possession of this land **because of my righteousness.**' No, it is on account of the wickedness of these nations that the Lord is going to drive them out before you." Deuteronomy 9:4.

However, the Israelites themselves needed to be disciplined over and over for their unfaithfulness. They refused to have faith in, and obey, the Ten

Commandments of Jesus. In the meantime, God used them to punish the wicked nations around them who refused to keep His Ten Commandments.

Nation after nation was subject to the investigation, sentencing and execution of God's judgment. By reading the Old Testament you will become better acquainted with God's requirements for staying out of His judgments. The book of Jonah is a good example of this.

This disciplining culminated in one of the most severe judgments of Jerusalem and the temple. In Ezekiel, we read where God came "out of the north" in a flying chariot. God came to Jerusalem to investigate, pass sentence and then to execute judgment against it. "This is what the Sovereign Lord says: This is Jerusalem, which I have set in the center of the nations, with countries all around her. Yet in her wickedness she has rebelled against My laws and decrees **more than the nations and countries around her.** She has rejected My laws and has not followed My decrees." Ezekiel 5:5, 6.

"Alas! Because of all the wicked and detestable practices of the house of Israel, for they will fall by the sword, famine and plague." "**I will judge you according to your conduct and repay you for all your detestable practices...** I will repay you in accordance with **your conduct** and the detestable practices among you." Ezekiel 6:11; 7: 8, 9.

Jesus came to investigate, pass judgment and execute sentence. "Then the Lord called to the man clothed in linen who had the writing kit at his side and said to him, 'Go throughout the city of Jerusalem and put a mark on the foreheads of **those who grieve and lament over all the detestable things** that are done in it.'" Ezekiel 9:3, 4.

"As I listened, He said to the others, 'Follow him through the city and kill, without showing pity or compassion. Slaughter old men, young men and maidens, women and children, but do not touch anyone who has the mark. Begin at My sanctuary.' So they **began with the elders** who were in front of the temple. Then He said to them, 'Defile the temple and fill the courts with the slain. 'Go!' So they went out and began killing throughout the city." Ezekiel 9:5-7. This symbolic killing in the **spiritual sense** represented the **physical** death that would come when Jesus sent Nebuchadnezzar to destroy Jerusalem and the temple.

After passing judgment, Jesus riding in His chariot throne, "rose from above the cherubim and moved to the threshold of the temple... Then the glory of the Lord departed from over the threshold of the temple... and stopped at **the entrance to the east gate** of the Lord's house, and the glory of the God of Israel was above them." "The glory of the Lord went up from within the city and stopped above the mountain east of it." Ezekiel



10:4, 18, 19; 11:23. (Yellow arrow points to the “East Gate” as seen from the Mount of Olives.)

The glory of God was being repelled from His own temple by the actions of the people. “And He said to me, ‘Son of man, do you see what they are doing – the utterly detestable things the house of Israel is doing here, things that **will drive Me far from My sanctuary?**’” Ezekiel 8:6.

There will always come a day when judgment will come to the wicked. Jesus came in Ezekiel’s time in an invisible chariot to judge the wickedness of Jerusalem. Then He departed and stood on the mountain east of Jerusalem, the Mount of Olives, and wept because of their wickedness.

Five hundred years later He came again, only this time in visible, human form. He came, and again stood on the same mountain east of Jerusalem, the Mount of Olives. There He wept again over Jerusalem, the city He loved so very much. But what could He do? They again drove Him out of Jerusalem with their wicked deeds. “O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, you who kill the prophets and stone those sent to you, how often I have longed to gather your children together, as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, but you were not willing! Look, your house is left to you desolate.” Luke 13:34, 35. (Remember - it was tithing, Sabbath keeping, church-going people looking for the Messiah who put Christ on the Cross.)

As Jesus passed judgment on Jerusalem so He will pass judgment on the whole world. Jesus predicted that Jerusalem would be destroyed and not one stone of the temple would be standing upon another stone.

Did that prophecy come true? “The Romans set up a local dynasty, the house of Herod to rule most of Palestine; Herod the Great (r.40-4 BC) rebuilt much of Jerusalem, including the Temple. The Roman governors, however, retained ultimate control. One of them, Pontius Pilate, authorized the execution of Jesus Christ. While suppressing a major Jewish revolt, the Romans destroyed the Second Temple in AD 70... After bitter fighting the Romans captured Jerusalem and burned the Temple in

70.” (Grolier)

Jesus told us that He would come again and judge the world. When Jesus comes “all who are in their graves will hear His voice and come out - those who have **done good** will rise to live, and those who have **done evil** will rise to be condemned.” John 5:28, 29.

Peter tells us, “By the same word the present heavens and earth are reserved for fire, being kept for the Day of Judgment and destruction of ungodly men.” 2 Peter 3:7.

But in order for Jesus to condemn and destroy the earth and all the wicked on it, He must first investigate the cases of all men and decide who is to have eternal life and who is to be condemned. How will He do this? When will He do this and what is the “law” that He will use to judge all mankind?

Knowing that God is a God of justice, a God of law and order, it is imperative that we know what our lives will be judged by. Do not hide your head in a church and think that you are saved. The odds are, you are not! Listen and study so you will know the truth.

---

# LAW

In any discussion about the “Law”, remember, Paul knew there were four main laws for the Jews: 1) The Ten Commandments, 2) The Civil Laws, 3) Health Laws and 4) Temple sacrificial, ceremonial and feast-day laws. When Paul talks about doing away with “Law”, he is talking about the last three laws. When talking about obeying the “Law” he is talking about the Ten Commandment law.

Also, when the Bible talks about “The Book of the Law”, it is not talking about the Pentateuch, the first five books of the Bible. It is referring only to the Book of Deuteronomy. That is the book which describes the discourse Moses gave to the Children of Israel just before they entered the Promised Land. He recited the Ten Commandments and then explained how they were to be kept.

“Now a man came up to Jesus and asked, ‘Teacher, what **good thing** must I do to get eternal life?’... Jesus replied, ‘If you want to enter life, **obey the commandments.**’” Matthew 19:16, 17.

There is only one law that governs the whole universe. That law is the foundation of God’s throne. “Righteousness and justice are the foundation of Your throne.” Psalms 89:14. “I have taken an oath and

confirmed it, that I will follow Your righteous laws.” Psalms 119:106.

The only way we become righteous is by obeying the Ten Commandments. “And if we are careful to **obey all this law** before the Lord our God, as He has commanded us, **that will be our righteousness.**” Deuteronomy 6:25.

That great Law gives us freedom from death and sin. It frees us from habits that destroy us. That great Law will judge us at the end of time. Jesus said, “That very word which I spoke will condemn him at the last day.” John 12:48. How true that is. Jesus spoke the Ten Commandments. He wrote them with His own finger. It is that Word, that Law, which will judge the world. “Speak and act as those who are going to be judged by the law that gives freedom.” James 2:12.

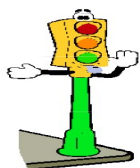
As Jesus stated above, in order to “get” eternal life, we must keep the commandments. Even today, they are still the foundation of God’s throne and justice. “Then God’s temple in heaven was opened, and **within His temple was seen the ark of His covenant.**” Revelation 11:19.

The Ten Commandments is the standard by which all will be judged. By it our **reward** is determined. If we break it, the “wages of sin is death.” Romans 6:23. If we keep it, “that will be our righteousness.” Deuteronomy 6:25. “Surely You will **reward each person according to what he has done.**” Psalms 62:12. “Behold, I am coming soon! My **reward** is with Me, and I will give to everyone **according to what he has done.**” Revelation 22:12.

The only way we can get into heaven is by keeping the Ten Commandments, perfectly. However, that brings up the next problem. How do we do that? Aren’t we born into sin and a slave of sin? Yes/No. **Born** into sin, yes. **Slave** of sin - only if you **choose** to be.

Let’s say that a woman is arrested and put in prison. While serving her time in prison she gives birth to a child. The child is born **into** prison. The child is born **in among** criminals and cons. However, that does not make the child a criminal or a con. It does not make that child a “prisoner”. That child is free to come and go.

So in our experience. We are born **into** a world of sin and sinners. But as Jesus was also born into this same world of sin and sinners, we too may live His perfect, righteous life by His power. He did it without sin; so I too can do it without sin. He is my example and my strength.



But you say, The Law can’t save us. You are correct. It can’t. Just like a red traffic light can’t make you stop. All it does is point out what is right and what is wrong. **You must make the effort** to do one or

the other. Same with the Law of God, it just points out right and wrong.

It is only through “His divine power” that we can have “everything we need for life and godliness”...and have the “divine nature and escape the corruption in the world caused by evil desires.” 2 Peter 1:3, 4. Only through Jesus are we able to say, “**I can do everything** through Him who gives me strength.” Philippians 4:13.

This is the **ONLY** way we know IF we are IN Jesus. Not by how often we go to church, or how much money we pay the church. It is not the amount of time we claim the “NAME.” No, “Not every one who says to Me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven, but only he **who does** the will of My Father who is in heaven.” Matthew 7:21. “Thus, by their fruit you will recognize them.” Matthew 7:20. (**Fruit = Work**)

If you want to know who is going to heaven, just look around you. Who is keeping all of the Ten Commandments? Not very many, but then, Jesus said that very few would be saved. Paul says to **examine yourself** to see if you really do belong to Jesus. 2 Corinthians 13:5.

So what does this have to do with the judgment? Everything. You see, in order to get to heaven, you have to have a very special passport. You must be sealed with the seal of the living God. Revelation 7:1-4. That seal is the Law of God. ‘Bind up the testimony **and seal up the law** among My disciples.’ Isaiah 8:16.



In order for you to get into heaven you must possess that special seal, passport, of the living God. That passport is obedience to the Ten Commandments. You must walk exactly as Jesus walked. “We know that we have come to know Him if we **obey** His commands. The man who says, ‘I know Him,’ but does not do what He commands is a liar, and the truth is not in him. But if anyone obeys His word, God’s love is truly made complete in him. This is how we know we are in Him: Whoever claims to live in Him **must walk** as Jesus did.” 1 John 2:3-6.

And how did Jesus walk? Jesus said, “But the world must learn that **I love** the Father and that **I do exactly** what My Father has commanded Me.” John 14:31.

How was that? Oh, He did “exactly” what His Father commanded Him. You may claim to be a “Christian”, but are you? Jesus has asked all who claim to be His to walk “exactly” as He did. To Love just as He loved. “If you love Me, you will **obey** what I command.” “Whoever has My commands and **obeys them**, he is the

one who loves Me.” “If anyone loves Me, he will obey My teaching.” “He who does not love Me will not obey My teaching.” John 14:15, 21, 23, 24.



Jesus taught us to keep the Ten Commandments in order to have eternal life. The only way we can get to heaven is by keeping His Covenant of Love, the Ten Commandments.

“For we will all stand before God’s Judgment seat.” Romans 14:10.

OK, we now know that we are going to be judged by the Ten Commandments. We know that we will receive our reward of either eternal life or eternal death by our doing or not doing the Ten Commandments. But I have been a sinner in the past. Does that make me always a sinner so I can’t get to heaven? No!

Sinners cannot go to heaven. That is correct. In prison I heard men boast of being sinners. Proud of being sinners. They thought that Jesus loved sinners and would take sinners to heaven. They have been lied to and misled. For “all sinners will be destroyed; the future of the wicked will be cut off.” Psalms 37:38. The whole process of redemption is to perfect **saints out of sinners**. Only saints can go to heaven. Yes, **all have sinned**. Yes, we **have been** sinners. But we must **stop being** sinners and become righteous through the power of Jesus Christ.

That is what the new birth is all about. “No one who is born of God will continue to sin, because God’s seed remains in him; he **cannot go on sinning**, because he has been born of God.” 1 John 3:9. The new birth is coming to God and doing the four following things:

1. Confess: We must recognize that we are sinners. That is what the Ten Commandments are all about. It is like a mirror that shows us our dirty face. It can not clean the face, but it lets us know it is dirty so we can do something about it. “If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just and will forgive us our sins and purify us from all unrighteousness.” 1 John 1:9. “As far as the east is from the west, so far has He **removed** our transgressions from us.” Psalms 103:12.
2. After confessing, we must repent. Only as we repent is God able to wash us and cleanse us. His blood **does not cover** our sins, it **blots them out**. We must get rid of them. “Repent, then, and turn to God, so that times of refreshing may come from the Lord.”

“Peter replied, ‘**Repent** and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins.’” “The Redeemer will come to Zion, to those in Jacob **who repent of their sins**, declares the Lord.” Acts 3:19; Acts 2:38; Isaiah 59:20.

3. This is the hardest one. Turning away from our sins. We love our sins. We want to be saved **in** them, not **from** them. We somehow want God to cover our sins so that He will not see them that we may continue in them. No! We must stop sinning. His blood will not cover one sin that is not turned away from. “Everyone who confesses the name of the Lord **must turn away from wickedness**.” “So turn from your evil ways, each one of you, and reform your ways and your actions.” 2 Timothy 2:19; Jeremiah 18:11.
4. The fourth step is to keep in step with the Spirit. You may, on your own power, clean up your house and knock off some of your sins, but it won’t last. Without the power of Jesus to fill you with His divine power, the wicked sins will come back with a vengeance and you will be worse off than before. “Since we live by the Spirit, let us keep in step with the Spirit.” Galatians 5:25. “But now that you have been **SET FREE FROM SIN** and have become slaves to God, the benefit you reap leads to holiness, and the result is eternal life.” Romans 6:22.



The above four steps are much like making bread. I like to make homemade bread. I take the dough, the yeast, the water and lay them all out in front of me. Separately, they don’t do much. They are not even very tasty by themselves. But when I combine them in the bread maker and mix them appropriately, letting them bake at the right temperature and for the right amount of time, out comes a wonderful, tasty loaf of bread.

That’s how you get into heaven and have eternal life. Those who have been mixed, baked and sealed by the keeping of the Ten Commandments are now ready to join the society of heaven where everyone keeps the Ten Commandments. Those who keep the Ten Commandments have their names written in the Lamb’s Book of Life. “If anyone’s name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.” Revelation 20:15.

As long as we are walking in and with the Spirit, (Ten Commandments), we have our names written in the book of life. When we sin, it is removed. “The Lord replied to Moses, ‘Whoever has sinned against me I will **blot out** of

My book.” Exodus 32:33. Sin is a dreadful cancer. God cannot let it into heaven. If a person has not washed his robe in the blood of Jesus, purifying himself through the truth of Jesus, he cannot join those in heaven who live the righteous, commandment-keeping life.

Now we understand the second part of the judgment a bit better. Satan has made the accusation. God is doing the investigation. Your deeds are determining your reward and eternal destiny. Everything you are doing is being written in your book. Each day you are making choices that will take you in or lead you out of eternal life. There will come a time when your book will be sealed. This will happen either at your death or when you sin against the Holy Spirit.

---

## 4 Beasts DANIEL 7

In Daniel, chapter seven, God gives to Daniel a long view of the future (mostly history to us) of the powers that would war against the church of God. God loves His people and gives them advance warning of what is to come. That way we can know that God is God and that He loves us and is taking care of us.

“In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon, visions passed through his mind as he was lying on his bed.” “According to Babylonian sources, Belshazzar, crown prince of the Chaldean dynasty, was officially elevated (550 BC) to coregent by his father, King Nabonidus.”\*

This dream took place about 550 BC. Daniel was a man of great faith. God honored his faith and revealed to him the future persecutions the church would go through. In verses two and three Daniel talks about seeing wind, sea and beasts. To understand these symbols we will turn to history, Biblical references and geography. It is my belief that the Bible should always interpret itself. To learn about the meaning of wind, I turned to Jeremiah 49:35-37. Here it talks about wind as a metaphor for war. That fits very well in Daniel. Daniel talks about the “great sea” in verse two. I believe this has two meanings which become one. In Revelation 17:15, we are told that “sea” represents peoples and nations, etc. That makes sense. Have you ever stood on a tall building or object, and looked down upon the masses of people below. They look like the sea flowing along. One good example of this is to view the crowd at a football game from the height of the blimp camera. A “sea” of people.

I also believe that Daniel wanted to limit the geographical area of this vision. These just weren’t nations coming out

of any people, anywhere in the world. They were specific nations coming up in a specific location. The use of the phrase, “great sea” was well known in his day. It meant the Mediterranean Sea. The beasts, explained as kingdoms in Daniel 7:17, were all located around the Mediterranean Sea.

Now that we know the symbolism, let’s put it all together. The peoples and nations of the Mediterranean area were going to be involved in wars and strife. As the peoples and nations fought each other, kingdoms would fall and kingdoms would rise.



A lion with the wings of an eagle symbolizes the first kingdom. In some encyclopedias you will find pictures of a lion with wings from the Babylonian ruins. Daniel was well aware of the symbolism. He knew that this lion symbolized Babylon.

“The ruins of Babylon (from Bab-ili, meaning “Gate of God”), the 2d-1st millennium BC capital of southern Mesopotamia (BABYLONIA), stand beside the Euphrates about 90 km (55 mi) south of modern Baghdad, Iraq. Occupied in prehistoric times but first mentioned in the late 3d millennium BC, the city became important when its AMORITE king HAMMURABI (r. 1792-50 BC) gained control of all southern Mesopotamia. Raided by the HITTITES about 1595 BC, Babylon then came under KASSITE rule about 1570 BC, only to be sacked again about 1158 BC by the Elamites, who removed many Babylonian monuments to SUSA, including the famous Law Code stela of Hammurabi (now in the Louvre, France). Dominated by Assyria from the 9th century until that country’s fall to the Medes in 612 BC, Babylon once more became a major political power under the 6th-century CHALDEAN kings, in particular NEBUCHADNEZZAR II (r. 605-562), builder of much of the existing city.”\*

“Nebuchadnezzar’s triple-walled city measured at least 18 km (11 mi) in circumference. In the old city, on the east bank of the Euphrates, stood Esagila, the temple of Marduk, the city god, and the associated seven-staged ziggurat Etemenanki, popularly associated with the Tower of BABEL. Northward from Esagila, the Processional Way, decorated with animals in glazed and relief brickwork, led through the Ishtar Gate (now in the Berlin Museum) to the New Year (Akitu) temple. Northwest of the Processional Way stood Nebuchadnezzar’s palace. Vaulted structures at its northwest corner may be remains of the legendary Hanging Gardens, numbered among the SEVEN WONDERS OF THE WORLD.”\*



“The Chaldeans under NEBUCHADNEZZAR II destroyed Jerusalem and burned the Temple (587 or 586 BC); the royalty, nobility, and skilled craftsmen were deported to Babylonia.”\*



The next kingdom was represented by a bear that was raised up on one side. It had three ribs in its mouth. Going back into history we look to see if another kingdom did arise and conquer Babylon.

“Chaldean rule ended when the Persians under CYRUS THE GREAT captured Babylon in 539 B.C.. Henceforth, Babylonia was merely a province in a succession of large empires: Persian, Seleucid, Parthian, and Sassanian (539 B.C.-AD 650). Its capital was moved from Babylon to nearby SELEUCIA by the Seleucids; later CTESIPHON, near Seleucia, was the administrative center of the Parthians and Sassanians.\*

“The name Persia (from the ancient province of Persis; modern Fars, Iran) was given by the Greeks to the entire land occupied by various Iranian tribes from which the ACHAEMENID dynasty arose. It is the land of present-day IRAN and AFGHANISTAN, geographically the Iranian plateau.\*

“By the end of the 2d millennium BC invaders from the north had begun to spread over the Iranian plateau. These were Indo-European speakers, one branch of which invaded the subcontinent of India while their close relatives the Iranians penetrated the plateau. Both the Indians and Iranians called themselves Aryans. They had war chariots pulled by horses, but the Iranians soon found that cavalry was more effective in mountain areas. By the 9th century they had entered the Zagros Mountains; the Medes, the most prominent of the Iranian peoples, are mentioned as being there by Assyrian sources in 836 BC. More than a century later the Parsa, or Persians, appeared in the south. Other Iranian tribes spread over the entire plateau.\*

“The first kingdom, which was a federation of tribes, created by the Iranians, about 700 BC, was that of the Medes in western Iran. The rise of MEDIA was hindered by invasions from north of the Caucasus Mountains, first by a Thracian people called CIMMERIANS, followed by Iranian nomads called SCYTHIANS. About 625 BC a new attempt was made by the Medes under CYAXARES to form a united kingdom, and after defeating the Scythians, the Medes turned against Assyria. An alliance was made between the Babylonians and the Medes, and the allies stormed and destroyed the Assyrian capital, Nineveh, in 612 BC, a date used today by the KURDS, who claim descent from the Medes, to begin their Kurdish era of time reckoning.\*

“The Medes also subdued the Persians and other Iranians on the plateau, but the Median empire lasted only until 549, when the last Median king, Astyages (r. 584-549), was defeated by his Persian vassal CYRUS THE GREAT, who became the heir of the Median king and ruled an even greater empire from 549 to 530 BC. The conquest of the great and ancient city of BABYLON in 539 BC made Cyrus the ruler of a vast domain from the Mediterranean Sea to the borders of India. Cyrus is famous in the Old Testament for freeing the Jewish captives in Babylonia and sending them back to their home. Cyrus then marched to central Asia, where he was killed in a battle with nomads.\*

“He was succeeded by his eldest son, CAMBYSES II. His son CAMBYSES II, who ruled from 530 to 522, invaded Egypt. Following an interregnum of a year, DARIUS I took power by killing the usurper Smerdis and established the Achaemenid empire on a firm basis. He consolidated and further extended Persian conquests (so that the empire stretched from Egypt and Thrace in the west to northwestern India in the east); established the system of satraps (local governors) under firm centralized control; encouraged the spread of ZOROASTRIANISM; and was a great patron of the arts. Darius’s son XERXES I (r. 486-465), after his defeat by the Greeks in the PERSIAN WARS, retired from active government and set a precedent for future kings who were kept in power by the efficient bureaucracy organized by Darius. Constant revolts were put down, but the weakness of the empire was apparent under ARTAXERXES I (r. 465-424), Xerxes II (r. 424-423), and Darius II (r. 423-404). Under ARTAXERXES II (r. 404-359), the revolt of his brother CYRUS THE YOUNGER almost cost him his throne. Artaxerxes III (r. 359-338), an able although cruel monarch, saved the empire from disintegration by reconquering the provinces of Phoenicia and Egypt, which had previously regained their independence. Unfortunately for the Achaemenid empire, Artaxerxes III was poisoned, and a puppet Arses ruled for two years. The last prince of the Achaemenid family, DARIUS III Codomannus, assumed the throne in 336.”\*

The bear being raised up on one side is significant. The Medes and the Persians united to destroy Babylon. But as history shows, the Medes eventually were absorbed by the Persians and lost significance. The three ribs in its mouth represent the territories it ate up and devoured.



A leopard with four wings on its back represents the third nation. A leopard is very fast. If it has four wings to help it along, it could be extremely fast. In history we find that the next nation to conquer and dominate the “world of Daniel” was very fast in its conquering.

“Aided by a battle-hardened Macedonian army that possessed the cavalry necessary for a campaign against the Persians, Alexander conquered the entire Persian Empire in ten years (334-25). He created an empire stretching from Macedonia to the Indus River, a magnificent achievement that had even more important, far-reaching effects. Alexander initiated the systematic Hellenization of the East. Greek and non-Greek culture fused together over the centuries, promoting new concepts of ethics and new religions, including Christianity.”\*

“The Mediterranean basin saw the dawn of modern military strategy and tactics. It was under such leaders as Philip II (382-336 BC) and Alexander the Great (356-323 BC) of Macedonia and Hannibal (247-183 BC) of Carthage that the first great strides were made in military science. Philip combined INFANTRY, CAVALRY, and primitive ARTILLERY into a trained, organized, and maneuverable fighting force backed up by engineers and a rudimentary signaling system. His son Alexander became an accomplished strategist and tactician with his concern for planning, keeping open lines of communication and supply, security, relentless pursuit of foes, and the use of surprise.”\*

The leopard also had four heads. These four heads represented the breakup of Alexander’s Empire. Upon his death, his four generals, Cassander, Lysimachus, Seleucus, and Ptolemy divided up the empire.

“Alexander’s huge empire broke apart at his death in 323 BC. His generals, known as the Diadochi (successors), claimed his legacy. By 275 three Macedonian dynasties had established themselves in the natural units of the empire. The successors of ANTIGONUS I (the Antigonids) ruled Macedonia; those of SELEUCUS I (the Seleucids), the Asian provinces; and those of PTOLEMY I (the Ptolemies), Egypt.”\*



The beast with iron teeth is the fourth kingdom to rule the Mediterranean.

“Rome became the decisive factor in Greek affairs after 200. It conquered PHILIP V of Macedonia in 200-196, charging that Philip had supported Rome’s Carthaginian enemy, Hannibal, and was mistreating Pergamum and RHODES, powers friendly with Rome. The liberty of the Greeks was proclaimed by the Roman general Titus Quinctius FLAMININUS at the Isthmian Games of 196, but it was not long before Rome intruded again in both Macedonia and Asia. Macedonia became a Roman province in 148, and the Achaean and Aetolian leagues were dissolved in 146. Meanwhile, the Seleucid ruler ANTIOCHUS III had

been defeated by the Romans in 189, and the diminution of his authority led many of his subjects to rebel. By 100 BC, the Jews had established a state in Palestine and the Parthians had acquired Mesopotamia. Pergamum was bequeathed to the Romans by Attalus III in 133.”\*

“By the end of the 1st century BC, POMPEY THE GREAT, Julius CAESAR, and AUGUSTUS had settled the eastern provinces of the Roman Empire into their final form. The old Greek city-states, though subject to Rome, enjoyed local autonomy. The propertied classes controlled the local governments, and Greek was retained as the official language. For a time there was much prosperity. Many cities were patronized by the Roman emperors. Athens, especially, flourished as a university town.”\*

“Ancient Rome grew from a small prehistoric settlement on the Tiber River in Latium in central Italy into an empire that encompassed all of the Mediterranean world. The Romans developed a civilization that formed the basis for modern Western civilization. The history of Rome comprises three major epochs: the kingship from the legendary foundation of Rome to 509 BC; the republic from 509 BC to 31 BC; and the empire, which survived until Rome finally fell to the German chieftain Odoacer in AD 476.”\*

“Octavian, assuming (27 BC) the title and name Emperor Caesar Augustus, carried forth many of the reforms of Julius Caesar. He established his government in 27 BC, rebuilt the city of Rome, and became a great patron of the arts. During his reign the Roman Empire was at its height; it had no rivals —thus began the 200 years of peace known as the Pax Romana. The system of ROMAN ROADS and a sophisticated postal system helped unify the empire. Commerce and trade boomed among the far-flung possessions. Augustus reformed the Senate, made the system of taxation more equitable, and revived the census. He died in AD 14 and was succeeded

been defeated by the Romans in 189, and the diminution of his authority led many of his subjects to rebel. By 100 BC, the Jews had established a state in Palestine and the Parthians had acquired Mesopotamia. Pergamum was bequeathed to the Romans by Attalus III in 133.”\*

“By the end of the 1st century BC, POMPEY THE GREAT, Julius CAESAR, and AUGUSTUS had settled the eastern provinces of the Roman Empire into their final form. The old Greek city-states, though subject to Rome, enjoyed local autonomy. The propertied classes controlled the local governments, and Greek was retained as the official language. For a time there was much prosperity. Many cities were patronized by the Roman emperors. Athens, especially, flourished as a university town.”\*

“Ancient Rome grew from a small prehistoric settlement on the Tiber River in Latium in central Italy into an empire that encompassed all of the Mediterranean world. The Romans developed a civilization that formed the basis for modern Western civilization. The history of Rome comprises three major epochs: the kingship from the legendary foundation of Rome to 509 BC; the republic from 509 BC to 31 BC; and the empire, which survived until Rome finally fell to the German chieftain Odoacer in AD 476.”\*

“Octavian, assuming (27 BC) the title and name Emperor Caesar Augustus, carried forth many of the reforms of Julius Caesar. He established his government in 27 BC, rebuilt the city of Rome, and became a great patron of the arts. During his reign the Roman Empire was at its height; it had no rivals —thus began the 200 years of peace known as the Pax Romana. The system of ROMAN ROADS and a sophisticated postal system helped unify the empire. Commerce and trade boomed among the far-flung possessions. Augustus reformed the Senate, made the system of taxation more equitable, and revived the census. He died in AD 14 and was succeeded



by his stepson Tiberius.”\*

“An intricate transportation network, the Roman road system gave citizens of the ancient empire access to the most distant provinces. The first all-weather roads connected the capital and those Italian towns which had been recently subdued or colonized by the Romans. The Via Appia (Appian Way; begun in 312 BC), for example, joined Rome with Capua, which had just been crushed in the Samnite War; the Via Flaminia connected Rome with the Latin colony of Ariminum in former Celtic territory. These paved roads and others—usually constructed of stones, rubble, and concrete—were of great strategic importance, facilitating the administration and control of conquered lands. By the end of the republic (1st century BC), roads had been constructed in some of the provinces—such as southern Gaul and Illyria—but the great period of construction outside of Italy came under the emperors. In Britain and North Africa, as in Italy, the progress of Roman expansion may be traced by charting the development of the Roman road network.”\*

“Initially, Roman authorities constructed roads to accommodate military movements and transport — communication between towns and camps being an essential precondition of control—but the roads were also used by merchants (who paid duties on goods at regular intervals), couriers, and ordinary citizens or subjects. Although traffic was carefully monitored by Roman officials, the road network facilitated the exchange of ideas, styles, and goods; it was a vital link between the central authority and the inhabitants of the provinces.”\*

“The Romans constructed a total of about 80,000 km (50,000 mi) of highways through more than 30 modern nations. The network remained in use during the Middle Ages, and remnants of it are still in existence.”\*

As Rome conquered the world, it had a habit of picking up the local religions. “The historical background out of which the myths of Rome emerge is similar in some aspects to that of the Greeks. There, too, the Indo-European elements were superimposed on the cultures of the indigenous peoples. In later periods cultural religious meanings from Greece, Syria, Iran, and Egypt played a role in Roman mythology.”\*

“A straightforward correspondence can be set up between the gods of the Greek pantheon and their Roman counterparts: Zeus and JUPITER; Hera and JUNO; Poseidon and NEPTUNE; Demeter and CERES; Apollo-Apollo; Artemis and DIANA; Athena and MINERVA; Hephaestus and VULCAN; Aphrodite and VENUS; Ares and MARS; Dionysus and Bacchus. This correspondence, however, barely scratches the surface of Roman mythology.”\*

They also took from the Egyptians what pleased them. “In the Old Kingdom mythology the sun Atum (or Aten) often appears as the first creator. He makes Shu and Tefnut (air and moisture) out of himself, and they in turn produce Geb and Nut (earth and sky). The children of the latter couple are OSIRIS, ISIS, Set, and Nephthys. Thus the first four deities establish the cosmos, and the later four are mediators between humans and the cosmos. Osiris is the symbol of the dead king, who is succeeded in the form of Horus, the living ruler. Isis is the consort of Osiris, and after his murder by Set, she reconstitutes his body and thus achieves for him eternal life; her ally in this role is Nephthys, the consort of Set. Horus, the son of Osiris and Isis, ultimately vanquishes Set, a symbol of antistructure or antiorder. Set is related to the desert of Upper Egypt. As a deity of clouds, he opposed Atum, the sun.”\*

From the Indo-Iranian culture, Rome picked up Mithraism. “Mithraism, the worship of the ancient Indo-Iranian god of light, Mithra, became early Christianity’s most serious rival as the mystery cult rapidly spread from Syria and Anatolia throughout the Roman Empire reaching into Gaul and Britain. Its cultic origins remain obscure. Although the focus of the cult was the Persian god Mithra—who is the chief ally of Ahura Mazda, the force of good in later Zoroastrianism—Western worship of Mithra had few connections with Zoroastrianism apart from its emphasis on the eternal struggle between good and evil. There were seven grades of initiation into the cult, completion of which conferred immortality. Most important was the slaying of the bull, a reenactment of Mithra’s killing of the cosmic bull of creation, symbolizing the conquest of evil and death. Astrology and Sun worship also played a role in Mithraism.”\*

“Roman soldiers who had fought against the Parthians, the cult remained particularly popular among the military—the god embodied such soldierly values as victory, courage, and loyalty—and merchant classes. Women were excluded from the cult. One of the most powerful religious movements in the Roman Empire by the 4th century, Mithraism, along with other non-Christian sects, suffered persecution after the conversion of Constantine and gradually died out. Significantly, Mithra’s birth was commemorated on December 25.”\*

In the development of its pagan ceremonies, Rome developed a highly sophisticated religious ritual. It had priests to minister in temples of magnificent beauty. The leading god of all the pagan worship was the sun-god. The sun-god was worshiped by all the pagan nations on the first day of the week, the Sun’s – day (Sunday).

Rome named the days of the week in honor of their gods, giving the sun-god the preeminence of the first day. “Caesar introduced (Jan. 1, 45) the Julian CALENDAR.”\*

“Independently, the Romans associated a cycle of seven days with the Sun, the Moon, and the five known planets. Their names became attached to the days of the week: Sunday (dies solis, “Sun’s day”), Monday (dies lunae, “Moon’s day”), and Saturday (dies Saturni, “Saturn’s day”) retain their names derived directly from the Roman culture, and Tuesday (“Tiw’s day”), Wednesday (“Woden’s day”), Thursday (“Thor’s day”), and Friday (“Frigg’s day”) are derived from the Germanic equivalents of Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, and Venus, respectively.”\*



“In ancient calendars, years were generally numbered according to the year of a ruler’s reign. About AD 525, a monk named Dionysius Exiguus suggested that years be counted from the birth of Christ, which

was designated AD 1 (anno Domini, “the year of the Lord”). This proposal came to be adopted throughout Christendom during the next 500 years. The year before AD 1 is designated 1 BC (before Christ). Dionysius had referred the year of Christ’s birth to other eras. Modern chronology, however, places the event at about 4 BC. The 1st century of the Christian Era began in AD 1, the 2d in AD 101; the 21st began in 2001.”\*

“During the French Revolution a reformed calendar rid of religious connections was in fact adopted having a 10-day week and 12 months of 30 days. The days left at year’s end were given over to vacations and celebrations. The calendar began on Sept. 22, 1792, the day the republic was proclaimed. The months were called Vendemiaire (vintage), Brumaire (mist), Frimaire (frost), Nivose (snow), Pluviose, Ventose (wind), Germinal (sprouting time), Floreal (blossom), Prairial (meadow), Messidor (harvest), Thermidor (heat), and Fructidor (fruit). France returned to the Gregorian calendar on Jan. 1, 1806, under Napoleon I.”\*



Since the people were not able to talk directly with god, Caesar proclaimed himself the “Vicarius Filii Dei.” This Latin term stated that Caesar was the vicar, or representative of god on earth. Therefore, if you had a question to ask the

pagan god, you went to your priest, who got the answer from Caesar, who got it from god.

Rome built hundreds of temples throughout its empire to fill the spiritual needs of the people. Little round white wafers were used to symbolize the sun-god they were worshiping. The little round white wafers symbolized the sun. Have you ever been to a Catholic Mass?

As stated earlier, the reason God gave Daniel this vision was to let His people know of the persecutions that would come upon them by the pagan governments. All four of the beasts were pagan. All four of these kingdoms persecuted the Jews.

“ALEXANDER THE GREAT conquered Palestine in 322. His successors, the Macedonian rulers of Egypt (the Ptolemies) and Syria (the SELEUCIDS) vied for control of this strategically important area; eventually the Syrians won. Hellenistic influences penetrated Jewish life deeply, but when the Seleucid king ANTIOCHUS IV tried to impose the worship of Greek gods upon the Jews, a rebellion ensued (168 BC).”\*

“New spiritual forces emerged during the Maccabean and Herodian periods. The leadership of hereditary priests was contested by laymen distinguished for their learning and piety, who won the respect and support of the people. The priestly conservatives came to be known as SADDUCEES, the more progressive lay party as the PHARISEES. The latter came to dominate the SANHEDRIN, which was the highest religious and legal authority of the nation.”\*

“In AD 66 the moderates could no longer control the desperate populace, and rebellion against Roman tyranny broke out. After bitter fighting the Romans captured Jerusalem and burned the Temple in 70; at MASADA the Zealots held out until 73, when most of the 1,000 surviving defenders killed themselves to defy capture by the Romans. As a result of the revolt thousands of Jews were sold into slavery and thus were scattered widely in the Roman world. The last vestiges of national autonomy were obliterated.”\*

Rome grew large and powerful. It ruled from England to India and all around the Mediterranean Sea. Paganism was the national religion. There was one religion, one economy, and one government. About the only exception to this were the Jews in Jerusalem. They were allowed a semi-autonomous government. They also were allowed to worship their own way. They worshiped One God, as opposed to the multi-god pagan worship. They also worshiped their God on His Sabbath, Saturday, and not on Rome’s pagan, 1st day, Sunday.

But Rome grew too large and was unable to sustain itself. “In the 3d century the Roman world plunged into a prolonged and nearly fatal crisis. The reasons were manifold. Sharp divisions between the opulent notables in the cities and the poor and hardly civilized peasants

created tensions. The wars that began under Marcus Aurelius continued, and increased taxation destroyed the prosperity of the empire. To meet rising military costs and to pay the bureaucracy, the emperors, including CARACALLA (r. 211-17), debased the coinage; the resulting inflation proved pernicious. The defenses of the empire on the Rhine and Danube collapsed under the attack of various Germanic and other tribes, and the eastern provinces were invaded by the Persians. Finally, the discipline of the army—in which half-Romanized provincials and totally non-Romanized barbarians were now serving—broke down. In the 50 years from 235 to 284 more than 2 dozen emperors ruled, all but one of whom suffered a violent death.”\*

“Out of the turmoil of the 3d century a new totalitarian Rome emerged. The emperor DIOCLETIAN (r. 284-305) adopted the title dominus (master) and transformed the principate into the dominate and citizens into subjects. He adopted an elaborate court ceremonial with many oriental elements. The requisitions and forced labor to which the emperors of the 3d century had resorted in order to save the state were transformed into a lasting system. Peasants were gradually deprived of their personal freedom and tied to the soil. The artisan corporations, and even the higher civil servants, were organized as hereditary castes, and a crushing burden of taxation was imposed on them. Two social groups were preeminent: the rich landowners, who in their fortified villas foreshadowed the medieval feudal lords, and the imperial bureaucracy.”\*



The Bible tells us in verse seven of chapter seven that Rome would divide into ten basic kingdoms. We learned in Daniel chapter two about this division. We will recap it here. “From 395 the empire was permanently divided into the Latin Western and the Greek Eastern or BYZANTINE EMPIRE, with its capital at Constantinople. The Eastern Empire lived on until 1453, when the Turks conquered Constantinople. The Western

Empire was overrun and gradually dismembered by various Germanic tribes. In 410 the Visigoths and in 455 the VANDALS plundered the city of Rome. Finally in 476 the German ODOACER deposed the last emperor of the west, the child Romulus Augustulus. And so the history of ancient Rome ended ingloriously. The idea of Rome and of the Roman Empire, however, survived its fall, and from the symbiosis of Roman and Germanic elements arose the new states and societies of medieval Europe.”\*

Daniel was troubled by what he saw. Nation after nation; kingdom after kingdom was rising and falling. Each one was persecuting God’s people. Would it ever end? Would the saints ever find rest?

To answer that unspoken question, God raised Daniel’s eyes from the turmoil of the earth and placed them in heaven. There in verses 9 through 14 Daniel sees God sitting on the throne and has everything under control. The “play” on earth must proceed, but in the end Jesus will take up His rulership and will reign with justice and righteousness.

With that understanding, Daniel is again directed to the earth and the turmoil that will take place from the dividing of Rome. Starting in verses 13 through 28, Daniel is given the interpretation of the vision. But what Daniel was most interested in was what emerged from the ten horns (kingdoms) of Western Europe.

He saw a little horn come up among the ten horns and do six very important things.

- 1) Came up among the ten horns
- 2) It uproots three of the ten horns
- 3) It spoke boastfully against the Most High
- 4) It wages war against the saints and oppresses them
- 5) It attempts to change set times and laws
- 6) It rules for a time, times and half a time

## DANIEL SEVEN

### Little Horn



This little horn disturbed Daniel and deeply troubled him. His face turned pale when he saw all the trouble that would come upon his people. Even though Daniel was troubled, God gave this vision so you and I would not be troubled. As we look around the world today, God wants us to know that everything is under control. He knows the forces of evil that are out there. Because He knows, all we need to do is stay close to Jesus and He will protect us and guide us through. So let's identify this little horn and all the evil it has done and will do to God's People.

The first point was that it came up among the kingdoms that were arising at the time Rome was breaking apart. We go back into history to see what was arising among all the nations of Europe during the time Rome was breaking up.

“After Jesus was crucified, his followers, strengthened by the conviction that He had risen from the dead and that they were filled with the power of the Holy Spirit, formed the first Christian community in Jerusalem. By the middle of the 1st century, missionaries were spreading the new religion among the peoples of Egypt, Syria, Anatolia, Greece, and Italy. Chief among these was Saint Paul, who laid the foundations of Christian theology and played a key role in the transformation of Christianity from a Jewish sect to a world religion.”\*

The first persecution of the new Christian faith was from the Jews. In AD 34 the Jewish nation could no longer tolerate the growth and teachings of Christians. Even though the only difference between the Jewish and Christian religions were the temple forms, ceremonies, traditions and rituals, they dragged Stephen before the council and then stoned him. The theology was the same. God does not change. However, the Jews did not want to change their “church”. Persecution broke out and the early Christians fled. Using those wonderful roads that Rome had built, they could travel (“fly on eagle's wings”) as far away as England to the north and India to the east. God had provided for their quick escape.

As long as Judaism and Christianity were a local, isolated sect, the pagan world did not care. But when the Jews persecuted the Christians, and the Christians fled, the Christians took up housekeeping all over the Roman empire. Now we begin to see a problem. The pagans kept the 1<sup>st</sup> day of the week holy in honor of the sun-god. The Jews and Christians kept God's day, Sabbath, the 7<sup>th</sup> day holy. Now these Christians were in every nation and neighborhood of the pagan empire.

“Because of their refusal to recognize the divinity of the Roman emperor or pay homage to any god except their own, the Christians were subjected to a number of persecutions by the Roman authorities. The most savage of these were the ones under Emperor Decius (249-51)

and that were instigated by Diocletian (303- 13). Many Christians welcomed martyrdom as an opportunity to share in the sufferings of Christ, and Christianity continued to grow despite all attempts to suppress it.”\*

You see the beginnings of this conflict recorded in Acts chapter 19 verses 23-41. It goes something like this. Demetrius was a silversmith who made a very good living making and selling images of the goddess Artemis. He was wealthy and owned a large house with indoor plumbing and a pool. He also owned a four-horse powered, four-door convertible chariot. It was snazzy, with iron wheels and leather interior.

One day the creditor came by to repossess his horses and chariot. Demetrius was upset. He called his accountant and wanted to know why the bills hadn't been paid. The accountant told him that business had not been very good and the income had fallen. Demetrius could not understand this. He started looking around to see why his images were not selling. Soon he discovered the reason. More and more of his neighbors were becoming Christian. As each became Christian they stopped buying his idols. This was intolerable. He was going to go broke if this Christian belief was not stopped.

He called together the men in related trades and told them what was happening. They agreed. They had seen their own incomes drop. How were they going to keep their expensive chariots and homes without their idols selling? They instigated an uproar and a riot ensued. All this because their income was being disrupted by some Christians.

But it didn't end there. Not only did the Christians refuse to buy the idols, they refused to go to the state sponsored temples of the pagans who met on Sunday, the day for worshiping the sun-god. Instead, they went to their meeting houses on the seventh-day, Sabbath. By not going to the pagan temples, Caesar was losing out on his share of the money that pagans brought to the temple. Fewer and fewer people were going to the pagan temples. How was Caesar going to support his wars, temples and opulent life style? He couldn't sit by and let this happen. Persecution broke out against the Christians.

As the Christians were persecuted in one place they fled to another. Soon, Christians were in all parts of the Roman Empire, from England to India to Egypt. There was no place in the Roman Empire you could not find a Christian. **Christianity was coming up among the nations.** But as Christianity grew, it lost its Christian nature. It became a bureaucracy that was sponsored by the state. How? Again, history provides the answer.

Rome was spending a lot of money defending its borders against the Germanic tribes of the north, the Asians of the east, and the Egyptians of the south. It could not do it all.

On top of all that, it was involved in an internal war with the Christians. It could not support all these war efforts. Something had to give.

“In the western half the Roman system gradually disintegrated and was replaced by a collection of kingdoms ruled by various Germanic peoples: the GOTHs occupied Italy and Spain; the FRANKS, under the MEROVINGIAN kings, established themselves in Gaul; and Britain was conquered by the ANGLO-SAXONS. The collapse of the Roman Empire in the west led to a synthesis of Latin and Germanic elements that was to be the basis of medieval European culture.”\*



“Constantine survived the civil war that disrupted the western half of the empire during the next 5 years and by 312 was in a position to challenge Maxentius, the self-appointed Caesar who controlled Italy and Africa. Constantine’s defeat (Oct. 28, 312) of Maxentius at the Milvian Bridge outside Rome not only removed a dangerous rival but secured his share in the new government formed by LICINIUS, whom Galerius had appointed Augustus of the West in 308. The arch commissioned by the Senate in Rome to mark his victory bears an inscription that attributes Constantine’s success to the ‘prompting of a deity.’ The Senate undoubtedly had in mind a pagan deity, but later Christian writers credited the victory to the intervention of the Christian God, who (they asserted) had declared his support of Constantine in a vision.”\*

“The nature of Constantine’s conversion to Christianity has long been a matter of dispute — primarily because the sources, all of them Christian, offer conflicting testimony. The outlines of his religious development, however, are clear enough. Before 312, Constantine seems to have been a tolerant pagan, willing to accumulate heavenly patrons but not committed to any one deity. Between 312 and 324, however, he gradually adopted the Christian God as his protector and on several occasions granted special privileges to individual churches and bishops. His alliance with Christianity was strengthened by the political quarrel with Licinius. The death of Galerius in 311—and that of his successor in the East, Maximinus Daia, in 313—left Constantine and Licinius in control of both halves of the empire. The two

rulers were soon at odds. In the ensuing civil war, politics and religion became so entangled that contemporaries described Constantine’s conflict with Licinius (a pagan) as a crusade against paganism. Soon after his victory over Licinius at Chrysopolis (Sept. 18, 324), Constantine openly embraced Christianity.”\*

“Scanty pieces of evidence dating back to the 1st century AD indicate that the church at Rome had already attained a certain preeminence in doctrinal matters even among those few churches which could lay claim to apostolic foundation. The apostolic credentials of Rome, moreover, would appear to have been uniquely impressive. It is certain that Saint Paul had preached at Rome, and he was probably put to death there about 67 during the reign of Nero. It seems likely, as well, that Saint Peter had visited Rome and had also been martyred there. About Peter’s actual position at Rome, however, and about the position of the early Roman bishops, the historical record is silent. What is unquestioned is that by the 3d century the Roman bishops were representing themselves as having succeeded to the primacy that Peter had enjoyed among the apostles and as wielding within the universal church a primacy of authority in doctrinal matters. During the 4th and 5th centuries, after the Roman emperor Constantine’s grant of toleration to Christianity (the Edict of Milan, 313) and its rise to the status of an official religion, a series of popes, most notably LEO I (r. 440-61), translated that claim into a primacy of jurisdiction over the church.”\*

“During the 5th century AD the city entered a decline and was sacked (410) by the Visigoths under ALARIC I and by the Vandals (455). Temporal political and social authority in the city of Rome gradually devolved upon the pope, or bishop of Rome, who began to claim primacy among western bishops.”\*

The Christian community in Rome grew to be a powerful force in the Roman Empire. It became head of all the Christian churches within the Empire. But there were some Christian communities that were not bowing to the claims and doctrines of the bishop of Rome.

“Arianism was a 4th-century Christian heresy named for Arius (c.250-c.336), a priest in Alexandria. Arius denied the full deity of the preexistent Son of God who became incarnate in Jesus Christ. He held that the Son, while divine and like God (“of like substance”), was created by God as the agent through whom he created the universe. Arius said of the Son, ‘there was a time when he was not.’ Arianism became so widespread in the Christian church and resulted in such disunity that the emperor Constantine convoked a church council at Nicaea in 325. Led by ATHANASIUS, bishop of Alexandria, the council condemned Arianism and stated that the Son was consubstantial (of one and the same substance or being) and coeternal with the Father, a belief formulated as

homoousios ('of one substance') against the Arian position of homoiousios ('of like substance'). Nonetheless, the conflict continued, aided by the conflicting politics of the empire after the death of Constantine (337). Three types of Arianism emerged: radical Arianism, which asserted that the Son was 'dissimilar' to the Father; homoeanism, which held that the Son was similar to the Father; and Semi-Arianism, which shaded off into orthodoxy and held that the Son was similar yet distinct from the Father. After an initial victory of the homoean party in 357, the semi-Arians joined the ranks of orthodoxy, which finally triumphed except in Teutonic Christianity, where Arianism survived until after the conversion (496) of the Franks. Although much of the dispute about Arianism seems a battle over words (Edward GIBBON scornfully observed that Christianity was split over a single iota, the difference between homoousios and homoiousios), a fundamental issue involving the integrity of the Gospel was at stake: whether God was really in Christ reconciling the world to Himself.”\*

The Bishop of Rome could not allow this Arianism to divide the church. War broke out between Rome and the Vandals of North Africa, the Heruli and the Ostrogoths who believed in Arianism.

“The two councils of Nicaea were ecumenical councils of the Christian church held in 325 and 787, respectively. The First Council of Nicaea, the first ecumenical council held by the church, is best known for its formulation of the Nicene Creed, the earliest dogmatic statement of Christian orthodoxy. The council was convened in 325 by the Roman emperor Constantine I in an attempt to settle the controversy raised by ARIANISM over the nature of the Trinity. Nearly all those who attended came from the eastern Mediterranean region. It was the decision of the council, formalized in the Nicene Creed, that God the Father and God the Son were consubstantial and coeternal and that the Arian belief in a Christ created by and thus inferior to the Father was heretical. Arius himself was excommunicated and banished. The council was also important for its disciplinary decisions concerning the status and jurisdiction of the clergy in the early church and for establishing the date on which Easter is celebrated.”\*

In order to destroy the Vandals, Ostrogoths and Heruli, the Bishop of Rome asked Justinian to send troops and wipe them out. That he complied to do.

“Justinian’s aim was the restoration of the earlier Roman Empire by reconquest of areas lost to the Germanic tribes. With the help of his general BELISARIUS, he regained North Africa from the VANDALS (533-34) and, after a lengthy war (535-54), Italy from the Ostrogoths. Justinian also acquired southeastern Spain. Repeated wars with the SASSANIAN Persians, however,

usually ended with the Byzantines buying peace; and the Slavs occupied much of the Balkan Peninsula.”\*

With the end of the threat to the bishop’s ideology, the bishop of Rome could now actively be in control of all the Christian churches. The date we set for this is 538 AD. That is the date the last of the three nations, the Ostrogoths, were driven from Rome. The “Catholic” (which means universal), was becoming very powerful. Unlike the humble Jesus, it was supposed to represent, it asserted itself in the world as a dominant force.

“As pope, Gregory strengthened his office by affirming his supremacy in the church and by asserting the right of the papacy to intervene in secular affairs. He appointed the governors of Italian cities, laying the foundation of medieval papal practices. As bishop, he sought practical solutions to the social misery of the day by using the revenues from the Roman ecclesiastical estates, which he organized and increased.”\*

The third point has to do with speaking against the Most High: boastfully. How does the Catholic Church do this? Since it claims to be a Christian organization, how can it speak against the Most High? It does this in several ways. It claims to have the power to forgive sins. It even sold indulgences. “In the Roman Catholic church, an indulgence is the remission of the punishment that remains due for SIN after sacramental absolution.”\*

The Bible plainly states that God alone can forgive sin. That is why the Pharisees were so angered by Jesus’ statement that He could forgive sin. He was God. But the pope is not. Yet he claims to have that power of God.

The pope also claims to be “God on earth”. Remember, the popes claim to receive their authority from the line of Peter. Here is what Pope Gregory II said in 729 AD: “The whole West has its eyes on us, unworthy though we are. It relies on us and on St. Peter, the Prince of the Apostles, whose image you wished to destroy, but whom all the kingdoms of the West honour as if he were God himself on earth.” Jesus is to be the **only** representative between God and man. No man can do that. The Pope is speaking great words against the Most High. Any person, church or thing to come between God and man is called, “Anti-Christ” in the Bible. “Anti” means “In place of”.

The pope claims to be infallible. “Roman Catholics believe that the pope can make infallible definitions on faith or morals when he speaks ex cathedra—as head of the church—and when he has the clear intention of binding the whole church to accept as dogma whatever he is defining. Papal infallibility was formally defined at the First VATICAN COUNCIL (1870). The doctrine was reaffirmed at the Second Vatican Council (1962-65),



which also stressed that the entire body of bishops in union with the pope teach infallibly when all concur in a single viewpoint on matters of faith and morals.”\*

By taking the eyes off Jesus Christ, who is our High Priest in heaven, it claims the power of God. The Catholic Church turns the eyes of men away from God to a worldly institution for its salvation. Instead of praying to Jesus for forgiveness, it requires you to pray to its own priests or saints for forgiveness. This is called, “Antichrist” in the Bible.

As the Caesars claimed to be the representatives of the sun-god, so the Catholic Church claims to be the representative of God. Instead of teaching people to seek God on their own, it teaches that you must go through the church. That concept came straight out of the pagan temple worship.

The Catholic Church also claims that if you do not belong to the “Church”, you cannot get to heaven. The Church calls this excommunication. They even did it to a German King.

“Henry IV, therefore, viewed the reformers’ program as an assault on his traditional prerogatives. Responding to a warning from Pope GREGORY VII, he and his bishops denounced (1076) Gregory as a usurper. Gregory thereupon excommunicated and deposed Henry.”\*

The Catholic Church claims all this authority on a couple of texts from the Bible.

“The papacy denotes the office of the pope, or bishop of Rome, and the system of central ecclesiastical government of the ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH over which he presides. Believed by Roman Catholics to be the successor of the apostle PETER, the pope grounds his claim to jurisdictional primacy in the church in the so-called Petrine theory. According to that theory, affirmed by the Council of Florence in 1439, defined as a matter of faith by the First VATICAN COUNCIL in 1870, and endorsed by the Second VATICAN COUNCIL in 1964, Jesus Christ conferred the position of primacy in the church upon Peter alone. In solemnly defining the Petrine primacy, the First Vatican Council cited the three classical New Testament texts long associated with it: John 1:42, John 21:15 ff., and, above all, Matthew 16:18 ff. The council understood these texts, along with Luke 22:32, to signify that Christ Himself constituted Saint Peter as prince of the apostles and visible head of the church, possessed of a primacy of jurisdiction that was to pass down in perpetuity to his papal successors, along with the authority to pronounce infallibly on matters of faith or morals.”\*

The problem with that statement is that it isn’t true. None of the texts above signify that any one entity is to

be above another. In fact, the whole teaching of Jesus is to be servants to each other, not masters. This is a good example of 2 Peter 3:16. Taking texts out of context.

In Matthew 16, Jesus is **not** pointing to or talking about Peter when He says, “and on this Rock I will build My church, and the gates of Hades will not overcome it.” He is talking about Himself. The gates of Hades did overcome Peter when he denied Jesus. But they did not overcome Jesus.

The situation in Matthew 16 is much the same as in John 2:19. “Jesus answered them, ‘Destroy this temple, and I will raise it again in three days.’” He is not referring to the temple made of stone, but to His body temple. But the people thought He was referring to the Jerusalem temple, just as He was not referring to Peter as the Rock, but to His own body as the Rock.

If the Catholic Church wants to use this verse as referring to Peter as the rock the church is founded on, then they must also use the verse found in Matthew 16:23. Here Jesus is specifically referring to Peter when He says, “Get behind Me, Satan! You are a stumbling block to Me; you do not have in mind the things of God, but the things of men.”

This text would be more in line with the Catholic Church since it claims to be built on Peter and Jesus called Peter Satan. So the Catholic Church is built on Satan. It is a stumbling block because it does not act as Christ nor teach the teachings of Christ and does not have in mind the things of God but the things of men.

Even Peter recognized that Jesus and Jesus only is the Rock. Peter says in 1 Peter 2:4, “As you come to Him, the living Stone.” Again he shows that Jesus is the Rock and Cornerstone, not Peter. “See, I lay a stone in Zion, a chosen and precious cornerstone....”. Verse 6. Never does Peter refer to himself as the foundation of the Christian Church.

If Christ had designated Peter to be the head, why were the disciples constantly arguing as to who would be the greatest in the kingdom? Why was James the head of the church after Jesus left this Earth? No my friend, the Catholic Church is not founded on Jesus but on man. It does not teach the teachings of Christ, but man.

The fourth point says that the little horn would wage war against the saints of God. As the Catholic Church grew and became the controlling power of the Holy Roman Empire, it became cruel and wicked. It wanted to destroy any who did not bow down to its authority. During the rule of the Catholic Church, it killed millions people.

“The Crusades were Christian military expeditions undertaken between the 11th and the 14th century to

recapture the Holy Land from the Muslims. The word crusade, which is derived from the Latin *crux* ('cross'), is a reference to the biblical injunction that Christians carry their cross (Matt. 10:38). Crusaders wore a red cloth cross sewn on their tunics to indicate that they had assumed the cross and were soldiers of Christ.”\*

All in the name of God, men went out to kill each other. What blasphemy. How can men who claim to follow the meek and lowly One go kill others for their own profit? Look what is happening now in the Middle East between the Israelis and the Palestinians. Look at ISIS and the killing they do in the name of god. Not the right god!



“The Inquisition was a medieval church court instituted to seek out and prosecute heretics. The term is applied to the institution itself, which was Episcopal or papal, regional or local; to the personnel of the tribunal; and to the judicial procedure followed by the court. Notoriously harsh in

its procedures, the Inquisition was defended during the Middle Ages by appeal to biblical practices and to the church father Saint Augustine, who had interpreted Luke 14:23 as endorsing the use of force against heretics.”\*

“During the 13th century, the typical procedure began with the arrival of the inquisitors in a specific locality. A period of grace was proclaimed for penitent heretics, after which time denunciations were accepted from anyone, even criminals and other heretics. Two informants whose identity was unknown to the victim were usually sufficient for a charge. The court then summoned the suspect, conducted an interrogation, and tried to obtain the confession that was necessary for conviction. In order to do this, assisting secular authorities frequently applied physical torture. This practice probably started in Italy under the impact of rediscovered **Roman civil law** and made use of such painful procedures as **stretching of limbs on the rack, burning with live coals, squeezing of fingers and toes, or the strappado, a vertical rack.**”\*

“At the beginning of the interrogation, which was recorded summarily in Latin by a clerk, suspects and witnesses had to swear under oath that they would reveal everything. Unwillingness to take the oath was interpreted as a sign of adherence to heresy. If a person confessed and was willing to submit, the judges prescribed minor penances like flogging, fasts, prayers, pilgrimages, or fines. In more severe cases the wearing of a yellow “cross of infamy”, with its resulting social ostracism, or imprisonment could be imposed. Denial of

the charges without counter-proof, obstinate refusal to confess, and persistence in the heresy resulted in the most severe punishments: life imprisonment or execution accompanied by total confiscation of property. Since the church was not permitted to shed blood, **the sentenced heretic was surrendered to the secular authorities for execution**, usually by burning at the stake. When the Inquisition had completed its investigations, the sentences were pronounced in a solemn ceremony, known as the *sermo generalis* (“general address”) or, in Spain, as the *auto-da-fe* (“act of faith”), attended by local dignitaries, clergy, and townspeople. Here the penitents abjured their errors and received their penalties; obstinate heretics were solemnly cursed and handed over to be burned immediately in public.”\*

“The Inquisition underwent special development in Portugal and Spain and their colonies. At the insistence of Ferdinand II of Aragon and Isabella I of Castile, Pope SIXTUS IV endorsed (1483) the creation of an independent Spanish Inquisition presided over by a high council and grand inquisitor. Legend has made the first grand inquisitor, Tomas de TORQUEMADA, a symbol of ultimate cruelty, bigotry, intolerance, and religious fanaticism. The truth is that the Spanish Inquisition was particularly severe, strict, and efficient because of its strong ties with the crown. Its major targets were the Marranos (converts from Judaism) and Moriscos (converts from Islam), many of whom were suspected of secretly adhering to their original faiths. During the 16th century, Protestants and Alumbrados (Spanish mystics) seemed to be the major danger. Often serving political ends, the inquisitors also exercised their dreaded functions among the converted Indian populations of the Spanish colonies in America. The Inquisition was finally suppressed in Spain in 1834 and in Portugal in 1821.”\*

“The Waldenses (Vaudois), an Italian Protestant communion of 22,000 members, traces its origins to the “poor men of Lyon”, founded in the late 12th century by Peter Waldo, or Valdes (d. c.1218). Waldo, a wealthy Lyon merchant, disbursed his goods to the poor and became a traveling preacher about 1173, advocating voluntary poverty for the sake of Christ. He attracted a large following in southern France and sought papal recognition for his fellowship. Instead he was excommunicated for heresy in 1184.

“Waldo’s followers subsequently developed as a religious society with its own ministers. They promoted religious discipline and moral rigor, were critical of unworthy clergy and the abuses of the church, and rejected the taking of human life under any circumstances. In 1208 a crusade was authorized against the Waldenses and other groups (notably the Albigenses) in southern France. After the burning of 80 of their number at Strasbourg in 1211, the majority of Waldenses withdrew into Alpine valleys in northern Italy.”\*

“John Huss (Jan Hus), b. c.1372, d. July 6, 1415, was a Czech religious reformer. After studying theology at the University of Prague, he was ordained a priest and appointed (1402) preacher at Bethlehem chapel. Influenced by the writings of English reformer John WYCLIFFE, Huss became the leader of the Czech reform movement. He criticized the church’s wealth and corruption and opposed the condemnation of Wycliffe’s doctrine. He became rector of the university in 1409.

“Huss gradually lost the support of the clergy and archbishop of Prague because of his continued attacks on abuses in the church. He was also involved in the politics of the Great SCHISM, being forced to choose between rival claimants to the papacy. He was forbidden to preach (1409), was excommunicated (1411), and was successively abandoned by archbishop, king, and university. After being driven from Prague in 1412, Huss produced his chief work, *De ecclesia* (1413). Assured safe conduct by Holy Roman Emperor SIGISMUND, he traveled (1414) to the council convened at Constance to heal the Great Schism and reform the church. He was arrested within a month and condemned for heresy; he was burned at the stake.”\*

“Several thousand Huguenots were killed in the SAINT BARTHOLOMEW’S DAY MASSACRE.”\*

As you can see, the Catholic Church had no reservations about forcing its will on people. It still believes it has the right to kill all who oppose it. It is only limited at this time by secular authority.



The fifth point says that it would try to change set times and laws. What would be “set” times and laws to God? Why would God be so concerned over someone attempting to change them? If these were man-made laws God would have no problem with them being changed. Man made laws are constantly being changed. But there is a set of laws that can never be changed. They are the Ten Commandments. These are

God’s laws and they never change. How did the Catholic Church attempt to change them? Again, we go back into history and we find that the Catholic Church wanted to make the pagans comfortable in their acceptance of Christianity. As paganism was falling apart, Christianity was growing.

The bishop of Rome looked around and saw all these poor pagans without a leader. Constantine had accepted

Christianity. The Catholic Church invited the pagans to bring their idols and have them “Christianized”. “Paganism survived ... in the form of ancient rites and customs condoned, or accepted and transformed, by an often indulgent Church. An intimate and trustful worship of saints replaced the cult of the pagan gods, and satisfied the congenial polytheism of simple or poetic minds. Statues of Isis and Horus were renamed Mary and Jesus; the Roman Lupercalia and the feast of the purification of Isis became the Feast of the Nativity; the Saturnalia were replaced by Christmas celebrations, the Floralia by Pentecost, an ancient festival of the dead by All Souls’ Day, the resurrection of Attis by the resurrection of Christ. Pagan altars were rededicated to Christian heroes; incense, lights, flowers, processions, vestments, hymns, which had pleased the people in older cults were domesticated and cleansed in the ritual of the Church; and the harsh slaughter of a living victim was sublimated in the spiritual sacrifice of the Mass.” *The Story of Civilization IV, The Age of Faith: Durant*

“The symbol and mythology of the mother goddess is found in many diverse cultures of the ancient world. She represents the creative power of all nature and the processes of fecundity, along with the periodic renewal of life. Representations of the mother goddess date from Paleolithic times; an early example is the VENUS OF WILLENDORF figure, found near Vienna. As a mythological and cult figure the mother goddess has appeared in many localized forms, such as ISIS, the “goddess of many names,” and the Phrygian Magna Mater. She represents different aspects of the feminine archetype as typified in KALI, LAKSHMI, and the other goddesses of Hindu mythology, or in Coatlicu in the Aztec world.”\*

“The Neolithic settlement of Catal Huyuk (c.7000 BC) in Anatolia provides archaeological evidence that the cult of the mother goddess experienced a long continuity. The chief deity was a goddess who simultaneously incorporated the roles of young woman, mother in childbirth, and old woman. Between the 5th and 3d millennia BC the cult became established in the Fertile Crescent, in the Indus Valley, and around the Aegean Sea. In the eastern Mediterranean the cult found its fullest expression in Minoan Crete, the site of the famous ‘snake goddess’ figurine.”\*

“The worship of a great goddess was particularly dominant in Middle Eastern religions, especially in the cults of CYBELE and ISHTAR. Both were fertility goddesses involved with a young male consort who dies and is continually reborn. This element of the dying male deity, representing vegetation, is a later development in the cult of the mother goddess and is regarded as a transition from her primal state of being an unmarried mother to having a son, a lover, or both. The Egyptian cult of Isis is concerned with a variant of this

relationship, focusing on the death and resurrection of her brother-husband, OSIRIS. In Greek mythology, APHRODITE is frequently portrayed with a young male lover of this kind, as in the myth of ADONIS. The most important cult activity in Greco-Roman culture—the initiation rites of the ELEUSINIAN MYSTERIES—was based on the power of DEMETER and her daughter PERSEPHONE to ensure the yearly renewal of all life forms.”\*

“Further cultural integration occurred with the adoption of the Egyptian Isis cult by the Greco-roman world. Isis became a universal goddess, incorporating local forms of Greek and Roman goddesses, and was identified with a fertility mystery cult. The cult of Isis persisted during the first four centuries of the Christian era, until persecution finally halted cult activities.”\*

“In Christianity the figure of the Virgin Mary as theotokos, or the “Mother of God”, has clear affinities with that of the ancient mother goddess. Her role, however, is diminished, and that of the divine child is central.”\*

“In Egyptian mythology, Isis was the mother goddess of fertility and nature. Her worship was combined with that of her brother and husband, OSIRIS, and her son HORUS. She is often depicted wearing on her head the horns of a cow, **encircled by either a lunar or solar disk**. Her worship originated in Egypt, and by Hellenistic times she had assimilated the attributes of the major Greek divinities DEMETER and APHRODITE. By the period of the Roman Empire, she had become the most prominent deity of the Mediterranean basin, as her temple at Pompeii attests.”\*

“Isis’s cult focused on the celebration of the mysteries associated with the **death and resurrection of Osiris**. In The GOLDEN ASS (AD c.155), Lucius APULEIUS, an African priest of Isis, left an excellent account of her appearance and mystery cult; in a dream or during initiation, Apuleius saw Queen Isis rise with the moon from the sea. In this text she has many titles, including **queen of heaven**, earth, and the underworld, and mother of wheat.”\*

“During the early centuries AD the cult of Isis was a formidable contender with the newly founded Christian religion. Despite purges of the followers of Isis, her worship continued well into the 6th century AD.”\*

Notice how the pagans had her depicted as wearing a lunar or solar disk around the head. Look at the Catholic Church and its depiction of the Mother Mary. Isis was also called the “**Queen of Heaven**”. The Catholic Church simply adopted the pagan form of worship and “Christianized” it. But there is nothing Christian about it. Paganism was not conquered by Christianity, Christianity

was conquered by paganism. Check out Jeremiah 44:15-18 and see why God destroyed Israel.

In the Ten Commandments, idol worship is strictly forbidden. Exodus 20:4, 5 states that we are not to make or worship idols. If you walk into almost any Catholic Church you will find idolatry and idol worship. Only God is to have our worship.



The next part of the Ten Commandments that the Catholic Church changed was the 4<sup>th</sup> commandment. It reads, “Remember the Sabbath day by keeping **it** holy. **Six days you shall labor and do all your work**, but **the seventh day** is a Sabbath to the Lord your God. **On it** you shall not do any work, neither you, nor your son or daughter, nor your manservant or maidservant, nor your animals, nor the alien within your gates. For in six days the Lord made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them, but he rested on **the** seventh day. Therefore the Lord blessed **the** Sabbath day and made **it** holy.” Exodus 20:8-11.

How did the Catholic Church change it? By “Christianizing” the pagan 1<sup>st</sup> day worship of the sun-god. They told the pagans that they could worship on Sunday as long as it was to the “Son of God”. How sly. Who gave them the authority to change the Lord’s Day from Saturday, the 7th day of the week to Sunday, the 1st?

“The Christian festival of Easter celebrates the RESURRECTION of JESUS CHRIST. The spring festival has its roots in the Jewish PASSOVER, which commemorates Israel’s deliverance from the bondage of Egypt, and in the Christian reinterpretation of its meaning after the crucifixion of Jesus during the Passover of AD c.30 and the proclamation of his resurrection three days later. Early Christians observed Easter on the same day as Passover (14-15 Nisan, a date governed by a lunar calendar). In the 2d century, the Christian celebration was transferred to the Sunday following the 14-15 Nisan, if that day fell on a weekday. Originally, the Christian Easter was a unitive celebration, but in the 4th century GOOD FRIDAY became a separate commemoration of the death of Christ, and Easter was thereafter devoted exclusively to the resurrection.”\*

“According to the Venerable Bede, the name Easter is derived from the pagan spring festival of the Anglo-Saxon goddess Eostre, and many folk customs associated with Easter (for example, Easter eggs) are of pagan origin. Easter Day is currently determined as the first Sunday after the full moon on or after March 21. The Eastern Orthodox churches, however, follow the Julian rather than the Gregorian calendar, so their celebration

usually falls several weeks later than the Western Easter. Easter is preceded by the period of preparation called LENT.”\*

By 400 AD the Sabbath was outlawed and Sunday was held in strictest obedience as the Sabbath. The change was made by civil and religious orders. But nowhere in the Bible will you find the change sanctioned by God. The Lord’s Day is still Saturday, the 7<sup>th</sup> day of the week. Jesus said He was Lord of the Sabbath. That hasn’t changed in six thousand years.

Many Protestants have for years condemned the Catholic Church for all of its anti-Christian teachings and practices. Yet Protestants fail to understand that they practice and teach many, if not most, of the teachings that the Catholic Church adopted from paganism. Most of the Protestant churches today keep the pagan 1<sup>st</sup> day, Sunday, as their Sabbath. Yet it is not scriptural nor sanctified by God.

The Catholic Church makes it very plain in its writings that it changed the Sabbath because it believes it has the authority, as God’s church, to do so. It will tell you that there is no scriptural basis for the change. It will also tell you that if you keep Sunday as your holy day, you are honoring the Catholic Church and its power to change the Sabbath. You are not honoring God.

The last point is the time the “Little Horn”, Catholic Church, would rule over the world. The Bible says it would rule for a “time, times and half a time.” What does that mean? A concordance will tell you that a time is one year. Times is two years and half a time is half a year. If you add that up you come to 3.5 years. Far too short a time to meet the historical accuracy of the rule of the Catholic Church.

However, three and a half years is only true if you take “time, times and a half a time” to be literal. But by reading Daniel chapter seven, it is obvious that we are not talking literal here. No literal beast, no literal lion with wings. No literal leopard with four wings. No literal horns. Since the prophecies in the book of Daniel are symbolic, so must the time element be symbolic. Since it is symbolic, we need Biblical explanation to interpret it.

Not a difficult task. The Bible is very plain. All we need to do is accept it. In Daniel chapter two, Daniel says to king Nebuchadnezzar, “but there is a God in heaven who reveals mysteries. He has shown King Nebuchadnezzar what will happen in days to come...”. In days to come? We know already from our study of Daniel 2, that the dream the king had was not for “days”, but for years. Here we have a concept of days representing years.

In Numbers 14:34 we are told, “For forty years – one year for each of the forty days you explored the land –

you will suffer for your sins and know what it is like to have Me against you.” Here it is very explicit that one day in prophecy equals one year in reality.

Ezekiel says the same thing. “I have assigned you the same number of days as the years of their sin. So for 390 days you will bear the sin of the house of Israel. After you have finished this, lie down again, this time on your right side, and bear the sin of the house of Judah. I have assigned you 40 days, a day for each year.” Ezekiel 4:5, 6.

So what does this have to do with a time, times and half a time? Everything. We have Biblical authority to change the symbolic time into real time. How? Like this:

*Time = 1 year  
Times = 2 years  
Half a Time = ½ year*

The calendars of Daniel’s time went on the lunar basis. “The earliest complete calendars were probably based on lunar observations. The Moon’s phases occur over an easily observed interval, the month; religious authorities declared a month to have begun when they first saw the new crescent Moon. During cloudy weather, when it was impossible to see the Moon, the beginning of the month was determined by calculation. The interval from new moon to new moon, called a synodic month, is about 29.53 days. Hence, calendar months contained either 29 or 30 days. Twelve lunar months, which total 354.36 days, form a lunar year, almost 11 days shorter than a tropical year.”\*

Based on the 30 days per month of the lunar calendars, one year would equal 360 days. The 365 calendar year did not come into existence until the Romans. “Romans, during the late republic, used various lunar-solar calendars. These calendars were supposedly based only on observation, but in fact they were influenced by political considerations. The Roman calendar was in error by several months during the reign of Julius Caesar, who recognized the need for a stable, predictable calendar and formed one with the help of an astronomer, Sosigenes. The year 46 BC was given 445 days, to compensate for past errors, and every common year thereafter was to have 365 days. Every fourth year, starting with 45 BC, was to be designated a leap year of 366 days, during which February, which commonly had 28 days, was extended by one day. The rule was not correctly applied, but the calendar was corrected by Augustus Caesar by AD 8.”\*

“The Julian leap-year rule created three leap years too many in every period of 385 years. As a result, the actual occurrence of the equinoxes and solstices drifted away from their assigned calendar dates. As the date of the spring equinox determines that of Easter, the church was

concerned, and Pope GREGORY XIII, with the help of an astronomer, Christopher Clavius (1537-1612), introduced what is now called the Gregorian calendar. Thursday, Oct. 4, 1582 (Julian), was followed by Friday, Oct. 15, 1582 (Gregorian); leap years occur in years exactly divisible by four, except that years ending in 00 must be divisible by 400 to be leap years. Thus, 1600, 1984, and 2000 are leap years, but 1800 and 1900 are not.”\*

Back to our lunar year that Daniel went by. It contained 360 days.

Let’s expand our equations:

*Time = 1 year = 360 days*  
*Times = 2 years = 720 days*  
*Half a time = half year = 180 days*

Now we add up the number of days and it comes to 1260 days. Sure you say, but that still is three and a half years. Symbolic time yes, but not real time. In real time we convert the 1260 days to 1260 years. Remember our Biblical authority that a day equals a year? Now let’s look at the Catholic Church and see if it matches the time the Bible said it would rule.

Remember what we read, the bishop of Rome could not take over complete control of the world churches until the Heruli, Vandals and Ostrogoths were taken out of the way. In 538 AD, the last of the three, the Ostrogoths were driven from Rome and the bishop had complete control over the entire Christian world and its doctrines.

Using the date 538 AD as our starting point, we travel down through 1260 years of papal rule. At the end of the 1260 years we come to 1798 AD. That is when the Catholic Church was no longer able to rule the world. So what happened in 1798? “In 1796 a French army occupied the Papal States, and in 1798, Rome was occupied and declared a republic. Pius was taken as a prisoner to Valence, France, where he died.”\*

Thus ended the long, persecuting reign of the Catholic Church. England, France, and Germany along with many other nations broke away from the controlling influence of the Catholic Church. It suffered a fatal blow.

Does it remain forever a destroyed, powerless institution? We know from history that it rose again to power. Not the same secular controlling power, but to great political and religious power. Does the Bible predict that? Yes. We will cover that in another chapter.

As you can see, the Bible has been perfect in all its prophecies. Everything has come true. I can trust my God. He knows the future. In later chapters we will discuss prophecies that bring us right up to our day and beyond.

## RELEVANCE OF THESE SIX POINTS IN OUR LIVES

| CATHOLIC CHURCH          | CHRISTIAN'S RESPONSIBILITY  |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Rises among nations      | Come out from all churches  |
| Uproots three            | Be planted firmly in Christ |
| Speaks boastfully        | Speak meekly and humbly     |
| Wages war against saints | Be peacemakers              |
| Changes times and laws   | Keep God's Law              |
| Rules over others        | Servant to all              |

## REVELATION 12

The woman of chapter 12 is the pure, true church of God. She is pregnant and about to give birth. A woman who is pregnant is expecting a child to be born. Using the same analogy, the church of God, from Adam to Zechariah, had been waiting in expectation for the coming (birth) of the Messiah. Here in Revelation, the expecting is about to be fulfilled: she is about to “give birth”.

In 1999 the world was filled with 2000 mania. 21<sup>st</sup> Century fervor was filling the media. But in reality, very few people really knew what to expect. They consulted mediums, spiritual advisors, palm readers and their astrological guide. A crystal ball of the future would have been great to have. “Back to the Future” in real life could change a lot of lives.

The Bible is the foremost revealer of secrets. It tells us what will happen in the future. There is no mystery, only getting people to believe is the problem. In our study of Daniel we have proven the Bible to be believable and accurate in its prophecies. We can trust the prophecies that yet lie in the future to come true.

Revelation is the book of the Bible for looking into **our** future. Many people feel intimidated when they read it. But they shouldn’t be. God gave it to us to reveal the future to us. God wanted us to be aware of wickedness and righteousness in order to make the right choices. He gave it so we wouldn’t feel intimidated. God gave John the revelation to “show His servants what must **soon** take place.” “What you have seen, **what is now** and what will take place **later**.” Revelation 1:1,19. That sums it up. From John’s day to ours, **it is to be a blessing to those who not**

**only read it, but also “hear it and take it to heart”.**  
Revelation 1:3.

To show you how easy Revelation is to understand, we are going to start with chapter 12. Revelation, like Daniel, is heavily steeped in symbolism. It is easy to understand when you let the Bible explain itself. Then like Daniel, just let history do its job. We start with a woman clothed with the sun, moon and stars. “Woman” in the Bible is used to represent a church. The church can be a pure, virgin woman as the bride of Christ, or a wicked adulterous church who has rebelled against God.

In verses three and four we see a red dragon standing in front of the woman ready to destroy the baby. The dragon is the devil. The color red symbolizes persecution, blood and destruction that the devil is responsible for. The devil, through the government of Rome, was waiting to kill Christ. Matthew 2:13-18.

The woman gave birth to the Male Child. This Male Child is the Christ, the Messiah, who will rule the whole earth. Very briefly John captures the life of Christ, “And her Child was snatched up to God and to His throne.” The reason John does not spend more time to elaborate on the life of Jesus is because he has already done that in his book called, “John” of the gospels. John’s main thrust here is the church of God. What happens to it now that its Leader is safe in heaven? Who takes care of the church?

In verse 14 we read that the woman was given the two wings of a “great eagle” to fly away to safety. What were the wings of the “great eagle”? I did some research and this is what I found. The symbol of Rome was the eagle. Rome was great. The woman fled using the wings of Rome. What were the “wings” that she could fly so fast on? The roads that Rome built! God had Rome build those roads for one major reason, so His Church (woman) could fly away to the farthest corners of the empire to safety when persecuted. (Remember your past lesson?)

As noted earlier, the pagan, idol-worshiping Romans persecuted the Christians, the church of God. “The woman fled into the desert to a place prepared for her by God, where she might be taken care of for 1260 days.” Revelation 12:6. It is God who always cares for and watches over the woman: His church. He has a place for her to hide in.

In verses seven through nine, John wants his readers to understand where the devil came from. It is twofold in its meaning. He goes back into history, as verses one through five are history, and explains that the devil came from heaven. He and Christ, (Michael is Christ’s heavenly name), fought for authority. Remember, Jesus (Michael) is God. Lucifer wanted to be “God”. The devil lost and was thrown to the earth. However, Lucifer

was still allowed back into Heaven as Earth’s representative. But when Jesus died on the cross, Jesus became Earth’s representative and Lucifer was no longer allowed back into Heaven. Verses 10 through 12 are a song of praise for the devil’s defeat in heaven and a warning to all on the earth to watch out!

John now continues in his discourse on the woman. Again he goes back to verse six and makes it clearer in verses 13 through 17. The devil will be trying to persecute, destroy and flood out the truth with over population, his deceptive lies, Bible half-truths, and government regulations. The time of this great persecution would last 1260 days (years). Revelation is picking up the same time concepts that are used by Daniel. 1260 days: time, times and half a time and 42 months are all the same time period. Both chapters, Revelation 12 and Daniel 7, are talking about the persecution of the church of God during this same time period.

John tells us in Revelation 12 how we know who the true church of God is. In verse 17 he tells us that the true church is the one that obeys, keeps, works the Ten Commandments of God and obeys the Testimony: teachings of Jesus. Those who refuse to keep the Ten Commandments and refuse to hold to the teachings of Christ are on the side of the dragon, those who war against the true church of God. 2 John 1:9.

---

# 7 Churches

Starting in Revelation chapter two we read about the seven churches. The seven churches are all located in present day Turkey. John was given this message for them. But beyond the local message is a broader message for the “church of God” in prophetic description. This is understood in chapter 1:1, 19. The churches represent the spiritual side of the prophecy and what would happen spiritually in the church.

Each church covers a specific time period of the Christian church in prophecy. God wanted His people to know what would happen in the future. He wanted them to read and to take courage in the fact that they were not forgotten.

## EPHESUS: AD 31 to AD 100

- Hard work and perseverance
- Can’t tolerate wicked people
- Tested false prophets and found them false
- Yet they began to forsake their first love
- Must overcome to get to heaven

During this time Christianity spread over the whole world. It was the pure and true church of the Apostles

#### SMYRNA: AD 100 to AD 313

- Afflictions and poverty
- Slander of those who claim to be Jews (Christians), and are not, but of Satan
- Suffer persecution for ten days (years). “Diocletian sponsored a series of reforms to rehabilitate imperial institutions. A less constructive measure was the great persecution of the Christians that he ordered in 303.”\* This persecution lasted for ten years, 303 – 313.
- Be faithful unto death
- Must overcome to get to heaven

Christians suffered a lot of persecution during these years. First from the Jews, then from the Romans.

#### PERGAMUM: AD 313 to AD 538

- Faithful witness
- Yet, people who hold to teachings of Balaam
- Eating food sacrificed to idols
- Committing sexual immorality
- Must overcome to get to heaven

During this period of time, the church was accepted by civil authority and made legal by Constantine. No longer under pressure of persecution, the church started to fall. It began to accept the teachings and practices of paganism. Food sacrificed to idols and sexual sins are all allegories of unfaithfulness to the truth and the acceptance of false ideas and practices, including the keeping of the 1<sup>st</sup> day pagan sabbath.

#### THYATIRA: AD 538 to AD 1517

- Love, faith, service and perseverance
- Tolerates the woman Jezebel
- Calls herself a prophetess (Christian) but is not
- Misleads God’s people by her teachings.
- People who listen to her (commit adultery with her) will suffer.
- Do not hold to her teachings and do not learn Satan’s so-called deep secrets

During this time the Catholic Church was ruling and was teaching false doctrines of paganism. The true church was persecuted by the Catholics. The true Christians refused to accept the teachings and the false sabbath of the Catholic Church.

- Must overcome to get to heaven

#### SARDIS: AD 1517 to AD 1755

- You have a reputation of being alive, but are dead
- Wake up! Strengthen what remains
- Deeds not complete in God’s sight
- Remember the truth and obey it and repent
- There are a few people who have not soiled their clothes
- Must overcome to get to heaven

During this period of time the people were beginning to wake up. The great Protestant reformation was beginning

to bring people out of the false teachings of the Catholic Church. However, it had not come out all the way. It claims to be “alive” but isn’t yet.

#### PHILADELPHIA: AD 1755 to AD 1950’s

- What He opens no one can shut
- What He shuts no one can open
- You have kept My word
- You have not denied My name
- Keep you from the hour of trial to come
- Hold on to what you have
- Must overcome to get to heaven

During this period, the Christian church was awakening and becoming active in teaching the Bible. The Bible had been literally chained by the Catholic Church for over 1000 years. If you were caught reading it, you could be killed. The door was opened to the scriptures and no one could close it. But God was about to do a special work. In 1844 Jesus opened the door to the Most Holy Place in Heaven and began His special work of “Investigative Judgment”.

#### LAODICEA: AD 1950’s to the end of time

- Your deeds are neither cold nor hot
- I wish you were one or the other
- You say you are rich, wealthy, in need of nothing
- You are poor, wretched, blind, naked
- Buy gold from me to be rich
- Put on white clothes to cover your nakedness
- Be earnest, repent
- I stand at the door. If you hear Me knock, open it. (Notice, Jesus has no part in the churches of this time. He is standing outside knocking to get in.)
- You must overcome to get to heaven

We are now living in this time period. The churches are wealthy. Look at the crystal cathedral and the other churches. Carpeting, organs, pews and many other luxuries. People look at these material things and think they are spiritually blessed and wealthy. But they are blind, naked, wretched and pitiful in their spirituality. Gold is the truth of God. Not one organized “church” is teaching the Gold of God’s Word. White clothes are the character of Christ. Very few people are wearing the perfect, righteous and sinless character of Christ. The churches refuse to teach the teachings of Jesus.

---

# 7 Seals

The seals have to do with government. More of a social outlook of what would happen to the Christian church. The churches had to do more with Bible truth, the seals more with social conditions. Between the two, we get a more complete picture of what would be happening to the church of God.



### FIRST SEAL: AD 31 to AD 100

- White horse
- Given crown, bow and rode out to conquer

The white horse represents the purity of the early Christian church. Under the direction and leadership of Christ, through the apostles, the church remained pure. It went out and conquered the world.

### SECOND SEAL: AD 100 to AD 313

- Fiery red horse
- Power to take peace from the earth
- Make men slay each other

During this time there was persecution and great turmoil among the nations. Rome was in constant strife, and great persecution was directed at the church from the government.

### THIRD SEAL: AD 313 to AD 538

- Black horse
- Rider holding pair of scales
- Selling wheat and barley, oil and wine

It was during this time that the church was beginning to fall away from the truth. The black horse represented the state of the church. The church was selling the truth of God and mixing it with paganism. Introducing pagan idolatry and sun-god worship through Sunday worship.

### FOURTH SEAL: AD 538 to AD 1517

- Pale horse
- Rider named death
- Power to kill by sword, famine and plague and wild beasts

The “Christian” church was dead. It no longer taught the teachings of Christ. It had accepted paganism. It was killing the people of God by a famine of the Word. The Bible was outlawed and only through the church could you get the “message” of God.

### FIFTH SEAL: AD 1517 to 1755

- Souls under the altar slain because of the Word of God
- How long before judgment?
- Wait a little longer

The altar of the temple represented the prayers of the saints. Men and women who had died as martyrs for the faith are represented as souls under the altar of prayer. Their blood, like Abel’s (Genesis 4:10) calls out for justice. The judgment is about to begin.

### SIXTH SEAL: AD 1755 to present and beyond

- A great earthquake: November 1, 1755 was the greatest earthquake ever recorded or known to man. “In 1755 much of Lisbon was destroyed in one of the most disastrous earthquakes known in Europe.”\* This earthquake **shook a third of the earth**. It was felt as far away as England and into Africa and Eastern Europe.

- The sun turned black and the moon turned blood red: May 19, 1780 is what is known in the encyclopedias as the Great Dark Day. Along the Eastern Seaboard in New England, by 11 a.m. it was so dark you could not see candlelight in front of your nose. At about 11 p.m. that night, it cleared up and the moon was blood red.

- Stars fell to Earth: November 13, 1833 was the greatest meteoric shower ever to be seen from Earth. For hours the stars by the billions fell to the Earth. You can read about these in the encyclopedias and newspaper accounts.

We live between verses 13 and 14. In verse 14 the “sky receded like a scroll, rolling up, and every mountain and island was removed from its place.” This is the Second Coming of Jesus. That is how close we are to His coming back to take the righteous home with Him. Are you ready?

**SEVENTH SEAL:** This describes the plagues that will fall after the close of probation. When the world, as you will learn in Revelation 13, makes an international Sunday law forcing all to keep Sunday holy, probation closes and the seven last plagues will fall. They will last 7 months, from Passover until Feast of trumpets. Then Jesus will come.

---

# 7 Trumpets

Trumpets in the Bible refer most often to calling to war. They were used for signaling and alerting the troops. The trumpets of Revelation have the same purpose. They are alerting God’s people to the major wars that will take place in the world leading up to His coming back. As such, the trumpets deal with war and conquest.

The first four trumpets deal with the military defeat of Western Rome. Since Rome was “the” nation at the time John wrote Revelation, it is only logical that God would be giving us a look at what would happen to that great nation that persecuted His people and put Jesus on the cross. It also would be destroyed.

### FIRST TRUMPET: AD 395 to AD 419

- The Alaric and Goths fight against Western Rome. “Alaric, c.370-410, was a Visigothic king whose capture of Rome in 410 signaled the final decline of the Roman Empire in the West. The leader of Visigothic mercenaries in the Roman army, he rebelled (395) and was proclaimed king by his troops. He led his army toward Constantinople and then into Greece, where he took increasing advantage

of the divisions between the eastern and western halves of the empire. In 397 the emperor in the East, Arcadius, gave Alaric military command of Illyria, from which he staged (401) an invasion of Italy. Twice forced to withdraw (402, 403) by the general Flavius STILICHO, he returned after the execution of Stilicho in 408. His first two sieges of Rome (408, 409) were ended by negotiation, but in 410 he stormed and devastated the city. He died while preparing to invade Africa.”\*

The descriptive language helps to explain the devastation caused by the invaders. Read your history.

#### SECOND TRUMPET: AD 419 to AD 456

- “Gaiseric, also known as Genseric, d. 477, was the founder of the VANDAL kingdom of North Africa. Gaiseric succeeded his brother Gunderic as king of the Vandals and Alans in 428. In 429 he led his people from Spain into North Africa, which he gradually conquered from the Romans, taking its chief city, Carthage, in 439. In 442 the Western Roman emperor Valentinian III recognized him as ruler of a kingdom that included most of what is now Tunisia and part of northern Algeria. In later years Gaiseric dominated the western *Mediterranean with a powerful fleet*, adding Sicily, Corsica, Sardinia, and the Balearic Islands to his conquests. He plundered Rome itself in 455 and in 468 defeated an expedition sent against him by the Eastern Roman emperor Leo I. The dynasty founded by Gaiseric lasted until 534.”\*

As you can see by the descriptive language of the Bible, this force was a sea power. Notice in the historical account given above that the Vandals were in control of the Mediterranean sea.

#### THIRD TRUMPET: AD 434 to AD 476

- “When the Huns came into contact with the various peoples living in South Russia, they either conquered them or sent them fleeing into the Roman Empire. This caused substantial dislocation and helped them gain a fearsome reputation in the West. The great Hun leader ATTLA took control of the horde in AD 434. He obtained vast monetary tribute from the Romans and devastated large parts of the empire for almost two decades before his death (453). Shortly thereafter the horde disintegrated, and those of Hun origin disappeared rapidly, probably as a result of cultural assimilation.”\*

Attila the Hun was a wild madman. The Biblical description as “Wormwood” would not be too far off. “Many people died from the waters that had become bitter.” He made the waters (nations) bitter by his

conduct.

#### FOURTH TRUMPET: AD 476 to the end of Western Rome

- “A Germanic warrior and king of Italy, Odoacer, also known as Odovacar, b. c.433, dethroned the young emperor Romulus Augustulus on Aug. 28, 476, bringing the moribund Western Roman Empire to a formal end. A member of either the Sciri or the Rugian tribe, Odoacer made few administrative changes in Rome. He recovered Sicily and Dalmatia, threatening the Byzantine emperor ZENO. In 488, Zeno sponsored the Ostrogothic king THEODORIC against Odoacer. Theodoric overran Italy and assassinated Odoacer at a banquet on Mar. 15, 493, a week after Odoacer had surrendered.”\*
- “A third of the day was without light, and also a third of the night.” This is a fit description of the termination of the Western Roman Empire. When Odoacer conquered Rome, the empire that considered itself to be the representative of the sun-god went black. But, it was only a third of the empire. Eastern Rome and the North African states were still intact.”\*

But the Bible goes on to say, “Woe! Woe! Woe to the inhabitants of the earth, because of the trumpet blasts about to be sounded by the other three angels.” If a person were to think that these minor wars and skirmishes with Rome were significant, be warned, what is to come will even surpass what has come.



#### FIFTH TRUMPET: Rise of Islam

- “In addition, between 572 and 628 the Middle East was the scene of warfare between the Byzantines and the Persian empire of the SASSANIANS, occasionally halted by “eternal” treaties of peace that were soon violated. In 614, Jerusalem fell to the Persians, and, by 619, Egypt as well. Under the Byzantine emperor HERACLIUS (r. 610-41) the imperial armies succeeded in counterattacking and defeating the Persians decisively by 628. Both empires were left drained and weakened by this 50-year period of intermittent warfare. They were thus

ill-prepared to meet a new threat, which appeared from Arabia, an area that had never before been of importance in Middle Eastern history.”\*

“Mecca was the birthplace c.570 of the man who was to become known as the Prophet MUHAMMAD. In the year 610, Muhammad had the first of many experiences that he came to understand as divine revelations, calling upon him to preach to his people a monotheistic religion based on the worship of the one God, the belief in a day of judgment, and the giving of alms for the support of the poor. Persecuted in Mecca, Muhammad and his early converts migrated northward in 622 to the agricultural oasis of Yathrib (later MEDINA), which was inhabited by three Jewish tribes as well as several pagan Arab tribes. There Muhammad was no longer an outcast but was recognized by many as a prophet of God and the leader of a community that regarded him as a lawgiver, judge, and military leader. At his death in 632 this community, which called its religion ISLAM and the believers Muslims, possessed the record of Muhammad’s revelations collected in the KORAN. The migration (HEGIRA) to Medina in 622 was regarded as the beginning of the Muslim era.”\*

“At Medina Muhammad won acceptance as a religious and military leader. Within a few years he had established control of the surrounding region, and in 630 he finally conquered Mecca. There, the KAABA, **a shrine that had for some time housed the idols of the pagan Meccans, was rededicated to the worship of Allah**, and it became the object of pilgrimage for all Muslims. By the time of his death in 632, Muhammad had won the allegiance of most of the Arab tribespeople to Islam. He had laid the foundation for a community (umma) ruled by the laws of God.”\*

As you can see from the historical account, the Islamic religion did what the “Christian” religion did. It took a pagan idol (a rock) and other objects and dedicated them to the worship of the “one god”. But it is all paganism. No where in the Bible are we allowed to worship a stone at Mecca or an image in a Catholic Church or the teachings of man. You can see from the picture the worship that is given to the rock. See the people going around the black object. That black object covers the rock that they are worshiping. Even Jesus, who they claim was a prophet of God, condemned such “worship”.

“Muawiya inaugurated an almost 90-year rule by the Umayyads (661 -750), who made Damascus their capital. A second wave of expansion followed. After they conquered (670) Tunisia, Muslim troops reached the northwestern point of North Africa in 710. In 711 they crossed the Strait of Gibraltar, rapidly overran Spain, and penetrated well into France until

they were turned back near Poitiers in 732. On the northern frontier Constantinople was besieged more than once (though without success), and in the east the Indus River was reached; the Islamic empire now bordered China and India, with some settlements in the Punjab.”\*

Islam had now arisen and became another false teaching by another false prophet to become another false religion. The devil is always attempting to draw man’s eyes away from the truth with man-made opinions, religions and beliefs.

### SIXTH TRUMPET: Rise of the Ottoman Empire

Out of the Islamic faith came a very powerful empire. **The Ottoman Empire** ruled over much of what once was the Eastern Roman Empire.

“The Ottoman Empire was a Muslim Turkish state that encompassed Anatolia, southeastern Europe, and the Arab Middle East and North Africa from the 14th to the early 20th century. It succeeded both the BYZANTINE EMPIRE, whose capital, Constantinople (modern ISTANBUL), it made its own in 1453, and the Arab CALIPHATE, whose mantle of descent from Muhammad it claimed after conquest of Egypt in 1517. The Ottoman Empire was finally broken up at the end of World War I, when its heartland of Anatolia became the Republic of TURKEY.”\*

When you read the history and see the breastplates and the armor the military used in their battles, you will see a correlation between them and what is written in Revelation 9:7-19. As gunpowder began to be used for war, you can see a correlation for “out of their mouths came fire, smoke and sulfur.” Verse 17. Tremendous devastation took place during these wars. But more important than just “civil” wars between nations, these wars had to do with religion and religious ideology. That is why they are recorded in the Bible. God is only concerned about one thing, the maintaining of His truth.

By the way, you may ask, isn’t the Koran from God? No, it isn’t. How do I know? Because I have read it. Let me give you the four reasons why it is not from God.

1. It cannot be **proved** to be from God. It has no prophecies that are provable. The only way God can prove that He is God is through prophecies. Only God can tell us what will happen in the future since He knows the end from the beginning. You have already seen the prophecies of Daniel chapter 2. You have also read some prophecies from Revelation. In this section you will read more prophecies which were written before the events by hundreds and thousands of years. Only God can do that.

# Revelation 13

2. The Koran has no Savior. Since you cannot save yourself, you need a Savior. The wages of sin is death. Either someone else must pay the penalty for your sins, or you must. There is no other alternative. The Koran simply lets man work his way into “paradise”, adding up the good points from the bad. Much like doing “Community Service” for breaking the law. Sorry, that won’t work. You must stop sinning and become righteous, holy and sinless. It has no one who died for your past, confessed, turned-away-from sins.

3. It contradicts itself. The Bible does not contradict itself on any point in the plan of salvation. From Genesis to Revelation it tells us to stop sinning, be perfect and to keep the Ten Commandments in order to earn “get” our eternal life.

4. It has to be “interpreted” by the Mullahs in order for their people to follow it. The Bible doesn’t need any interpretation. In fact, the Bible condemns private interpretations. We are not to add to or subtract from it. It is to be obeyed just as God has given it. The trouble in the Islamic world and in the “Christian” world is the result of private interpretations.

“At various times in the last twenty-three years of his life Mahammed dictated some fragment of this revelation;... No collection of these fragments was made in the Prophet’s lifetime; but several Moslems knew them all by heart, and served as living texts. In the year 633, when many of these *qurra* had died and were not being replaced, the Caliph Abu Bekr ordered Mahammed’s chief Amanuensis, Zaid ibn Thabit, to ‘search out the Koran and bring it together.’ He gathered the fragments, says tradition, ‘from date leaves and tablets of white stone, and the breasts of men.’” (*The Story of Civilization, the age of faith*, Durant.)

As you can see, the Koran is totally man-made.

## SEVENTH TRUMPET: The Seven Last Plagues

- These plagues will fall when probation closes. Probation will close on Passover when the International Sunday Law goes into effect. Christ will come 7 months later at “Feast of Trumpets”. Since there is no longer any opportunity for a sinner to confess or be saved, the plagues can now be poured out **without mercy**. All the world will have made its decision to follow the worldly churches and the pagan Sunday, the 1<sup>st</sup> day sabbath. This will include the Muslims.

- Only the remnant few will have decided to follow Christ and keep His Ten Commandments and His 7th day Sabbath. They will be saved. The choice is yours. Christ stands at the door and knocks. Will you let Him in today?

Chapter 13 continues with the conflict that will take place between the dragon and the church of God. But in chapter 13 he changes the symbolism from dragon to beast. In chapter 12 it was a pagan institution, the Roman Empire, that fought against God’s church, as represented by the devil. In chapter 13 the devil disguises himself in the form of a “Christian” institution to persecute the church of God. He is good at disguises.

The beast comes out of the sea. As we learned, the sea represents peoples and nations. As in Daniel chapter seven, where the little horn came up among the nations, so the beast, the same entity as the little horn, comes up among the nations. It “resembled a Leopard, but had feet like those of a bear and a mouth like that of a lion.” If you noticed, these symbols are in exact reverse order of Daniel 7:4-6. The reason is, Daniel is looking forward and John is looking backwards. The Leopard symbolized swiftness as Greece swiftly conquered the world. So too, the Catholic Church was swift in gaining power and ruling the world.

The bear symbolized the Medo-Persian government. They had a system based on a law that once proclaimed, could not be changed. “Now, O king, issue the decree and put it in writing so that it cannot be altered – in accordance with the laws of the Medes and Persians, which cannot be repealed.” Daniel 6:8. The Catholic Church also has a doctrine of “infallibility” and is never wrong and all its decrees are binding forever.

The mouth of the lion is symbolic of the pride and boastful words of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon. In the Apocrypha it is written that Nebuchadnezzar claimed to be a god and required all conquered nations to worship him as a god. The Catholic Church also claims that the pope is god on earth. Look at how the world bows down to him when he comes calling. No one and no church is to take our worship but God alone. And yet, look how we worship and bow down to our churches.

Verse two, “The dragon gave the beast his power and his throne and great authority.” When Constantine could no longer hold Rome against the invading Germanic tribes of the north, he handed the government of the city of Rome over to the bishop of Rome. He presented the bishop of Rome with the key to the city and his throne, then left for Istanbul, Turkey. As we read earlier, the bishop now had control of the church and the civil governments of Western Rome. It is my understanding that a mural of this historical event hangs in the Vatican.

Verse 3, “One of the heads of the beast seemed to have had a fatal wound, but the fatal wound had been healed.” As stated in our discussion of Daniel 7, the Catholic

Church ruled the world from 538 AD to 1798 AD, 1260 years. In 1798 the pope was taken captive and died in captivity. But the prophecy said that the fatal wound would be healed. "The Lateran Treaty, signed on Feb. 11, 1929, by Benito MUSSOLINI for the Italian government and Cardinal Pietro GASPARRI for the papacy, settled the vexatious question of the relationship between the Holy See and Italy. The papacy accepted the loss of the Papal States, while Italy recognized the Vatican City as an independent state."\*

"The whole world was astonished and followed the beast. Men worshiped the dragon (Satan) because he had given authority to the beast (Catholic Church), and they worshiped the beast and asked, 'Who is like the beast? Who can make war against him?'" Verses 3 & 4.

Napoleon tried to make war against the church. His government is no more, but the Catholic Church is still here. Hitler tried to make war against the church. His government is no more. Communism tried to make war against the Catholic Church, it lost. The devil will not let his chosen institution for the destruction of men to be destroyed.

Does that mean all the people who are members of the Catholic Church are evil and of the devil? No! It means that the institution is evil and of the devil. The members are brainwashed and need to be enlightened and loved. Also, any church or denomination that acts in concert with the Catholic Church is evil. That is why the Bible warns us of this evil institution so we will "Come out of her, My people, so that you will not share in her sins...". Revelation 18:4. God's true people will hear His call and come out of her and all the other churches to join His true people in keeping His Ten Commandments and His 7<sup>th</sup> day Sabbath holy.

Verses five through eight are a replay of Daniel and the little horn of Daniel chapter seven. But where Daniel chapter seven ended in 1798, Revelation picks up and keeps going. Verses 11 through 18 bring us down to our day and beyond. "Then I saw another beast, coming out of the earth."

This second beast does not come up out of waters or seas, like the first beast. When this nation came up, it came up out of a wilderness area where there were few people, compared with Europe. This second beast comes up as the first beast is going through its deadly wound and recovery. What nation was arising in the 1790's? The United States of America. As the Catholic Church was persecuting the people



of Europe, they needed a place to run and hide. "But the earth helped the woman by opening its mouth and swallowing the river that the dragon had spewed out of his mouth." Revelation 12:16.

Those who were persecuted came to a land of freedom. A land where each individual could worship in his own way. A land where there was separation of church and state. This separation is symbolized by the two horns of the lamb. At the time the United States of America was arising, it was the only nation in the world to have separation of Church and State. All other nations had state sponsored religions.

This power would arise peacefully. But eventually it would speak like a dragon. We are now in the "speak like a dragon" time. Look how the Democratic mayors of cities during the COVID-19 were speaking "like a dragon" in requiring churches to be closed. Totally against the Constitution of the United States of America. Also, No power on earth can equal the might of the U.S.A. When America speaks, the world listens. Soon we will be moving into verse 12. We are also losing our freedoms. Soon America will become a police state. You can see that coming with what is happening in the world.

From the sixteenth century to the 20th there has been hostility and war between the Catholic Church and the Protestants. The Catholic Church persecuted and destroyed Protestants. Protestants wanted nothing to do with Catholics and their wicked institution. But the Bible told us that would change.

Sure enough. In the early 1990's, a coming together began to take place between the Catholic Church and the Protestants. The Protestants have forgotten how destructive the Catholic Church is when it has power. Soon the Protestant government of the U.S.A. will exercise "all the authority of the first beast on its behalf," and will make "the earth and its inhabitants worship the first beast, whose fatal wound had been healed." Vs 12.

A great persecution will break out. The U.S.A. will join hands with Catholicism and will force the world to worship the doctrines of the Catholic Church. The whole world will unite under one government and one religion to enforce Sunday worship.

Under the leadership of the United Nations, the world will unite. This will happen in order to combat the destructive forces that are breaking out on the earth: global warming, famine, flooding, drought, fires, tornadoes, earthquakes, civil disorder, terrorism, threats from the sky and pandemics. The world will believe that if it "comes back to God" then God will bring back order and blessings. The Catholic Church will be the head of all religions. Verse 14 tells us that this world

government, backed by the United States, will deceive the inhabitants of the earth and order them to set up an image in honor of the Catholic Church.

What would that image be? Well, the only symbol of the Catholic Church's god-like powers is its power to change the Sabbath from the 7<sup>th</sup> day of the week to the 1<sup>st</sup> day of the week. According to the Bible, the whole world will be forced to worship on Sunday. That includes the Muslims, either voluntarily or forced. In verse 15 we are told that if you do not worship and keep holy the 1<sup>st</sup> day of the week, Sunday, you will be killed. Verse 16 & 17 say, "He also forced everyone, small and great, rich and poor, free and slave, to receive a mark on his right hand or on his forehead, so that **no one could buy or sell** unless he had the mark..."

This mark is not a physical mark, as is thought by most in the world today. It is not a computer chip or a branding. The Bible tells us what a mark on the forehead and hand mean. "This observance will be for you **like** a sign on your hand and a reminder on your forehead that the law of the Lord is to be on your lips." Exodus 13:9. "Fix these words of Mine in your hearts and minds; **tie them as symbols** on your hands and bind them on your foreheads." Deuteronomy 11:18.

If you think and agree with the teachings of the Catholic Church, you have the mark on your forehead. If you act upon them and obey the teachings of the Catholic Church, you have the mark on your hand.

Those who love Jesus and take His Name on their minds, in their hearts and on their hands to obey Him will receive His seal. Those who love the false doctrines of the Catholic Church and take its doctrines into their minds and on their hearts and hands to obey will receive its mark.

You ask, "How is the U.S.A., a democracy, going to force the world, let alone its own people, to keep Sunday holy?" There are too many Jews and Muslims and other religions that keep other days holy. Look around at what is happening in the world today. The world wants order. Look at all the crime, family upheaval, world disasters, wars, and conflicts taking place. Look at what terrorism is doing. The churches and governments of the world will unite to bring "peace and safety" to the world. They will think that they are doing it in the name of Jesus. They will think that they must force the world to accept Jesus. Have you ever heard of the "Religious Right"?

Those that do not go along with this plan will be eliminated. If you are starving because of famine, war and crime and you are told that it is because of those people over there who will not surrender to the worldwide religious-state power, what are you going to do?

Other than seeing the beast in history fulfilled by all the things that were prophesied about it, is there another confirming evidence? Yes. "Which is the name of the beast or the number of his name. This calls for wisdom. If anyone has insight, let him calculate the number of the beast, for it is man's number. His number is 666." Verses 17, 18. "Vicarius Filii Dei" is the official title of the pope. This Latin term means "Vicar of the Son God". Since it is Latin, it also is Roman numerals.

| NUMBER | of NAME | of MAN | in charge of BEAST                |
|--------|---------|--------|-----------------------------------|
| 5      | =       | V      | POPE                              |
| 1      | =       | I      | CATHOLIC CHURCH                   |
| 100    | =       | C      |                                   |
| 0      | =       | A      |                                   |
| 0      | =       | R      |                                   |
| 1      | =       | I      |                                   |
| 5      | =       | U      | U & V the same in Roman numerals. |
| 0      | =       | S      |                                   |
| 0      | =       | F      |                                   |
| 1      | =       | I      |                                   |
| 50     | =       | L      |                                   |
| 1      | =       | I      |                                   |
| 1      | =       | I      |                                   |
| 500    | =       | D      |                                   |
| 0      | =       | E      |                                   |
| 1      | =       | I      |                                   |
| <hr/>  |         |        |                                   |
| 666    |         |        |                                   |

The Bible has never failed. Look at the Ecumenical movement of the world today. "Ecumenical movement is the term used to describe the search for fuller unity that has been a notable feature of the life and work of Christian churches in the 20th century. It is a movement that embraces many organizations and individuals and cannot properly be identified with any single body. The Greek word 'oikumene', from which ecumenical is derived, originally meant 'the inhabited world'. There were ecumenical councils in the early centuries of the church; they were called ecumenical because they represented the whole church. In modern usage the term is applied to the collective effort of all Christians to manifest the unity of the church in faith and common service for the world."\*

"The movement toward greater unity among Protestant churches received its primary impulse from the modern missionary movement. A world conference on Christian MISSIONS held in Edinburgh in 1910 gave the impetus to ecumenical concern and resulted in the creation of ecumenical organizations that later combined to form the WORLD COUNCIL OF CHURCHES. The Roman Catholic Church remained aloof from these developments until the pontificate of JOHN XXIII. He

created the Secretariat for Promoting Christian Unity and convened the Second VATICAN COUNCIL (1962-65).”\*

“A more recent manifestation of ecumenism may be seen in the CHARISMATIC MOVEMENT, through which Christians of all denominations are finding, in an experience of spiritual renewal, a new and vivid sense of unity with other believers.”\*

“The ecumenical movement has many expressions: the NATIONAL COUNCIL OF CHURCHES in the United States; the World Council of Churches and the Vatican Secretariat for Christian Unity; and the continuing activity of non-ecclesiastical bodies like the YMCA and BIBLE SOCIETIES. Among the achievements of the ecumenical movement in the United States have been the formation of the UNITED CHURCH OF CHRIST (1957), the United Methodist Church (1968), and the Evangelical Lutheran Church in America (1987).”\* In October 2000, 1000 religious leaders from around the world gathered at the UN and signed a peace pact to respect all religions of the world. To bring peace to the world of religion. In October 2000 they signed. September 2001 Muslim terrorists hit the World Trade Center.

The Bible warns us plainly, “While people are saying, ‘Peace and safety,’ destruction will come on them suddenly, as labor pains on a pregnant woman, and they will not escape.” 1 Thessalonians 5:3. “Destruction will come on them suddenly”. Do not be fooled by all this talk of a thousand-year reign of peace on earth by Jesus Christ. It won’t happen. That is a deception of the devil. The devil will come and impersonate Christ and claim to be Christ coming to unite the entire world in peace.

When Jesus comes, He **never touches this earth**, but **will take up His children into heaven** and we will spend that thousand years in heaven, while this earth will be destroyed at the coming of Christ. Only after the thousand years will the wicked be raised and the New Jerusalem will come down to the earth. The wicked will be destroyed and the world will be destroyed with them. Then Christ will recreate a new heaven and a new earth. Revelation 20:7-15; 21:1, 4.

Remember what you have learned. If they do not speak the teachings of Jesus: be perfect, stop sinning, and keep the Ten Commandments to “get” eternal life, then come out from them. They do not belong to Jesus. Have nothing to do with them. Your only “peace and safety” will be in obedience to Jesus and His teachings.

# DANIEL 9

We have already studied the prophecies of Daniel two, Daniel seven, Revelation 12 and 13. But we must go on and finish the major prophecies of the Bible. There are so many opinions and false teachings that are leading people astray. Truth sets us free. We must always study for truth.

We will begin this section with Daniel nine. The first section is quite simple. It explains itself. Daniel is praying to the covenant-keeping God. God had foretold through Jeremiah that at the end of 70 years in captivity, God would release the Jews back to Jerusalem. As that time is coming to a close, Daniel is praying to God to keep His covenant, even though the people were not worthy.

As he was praying, the angel Gabriel came to help Daniel to understand an **earlier vision**. This **earlier vision** was given to Daniel in the third year (about 547 BC) of King Belshazzar’s reign. It stated that “It will take 2,300 evenings and mornings; then the sanctuary will be reconsecrated” or “cleansed”. Daniel 8:14. (This prophecy will be covered later.)

Now, in 539 BC, Gabriel is going to explain a portion of those 2,300 days (years in prophecy). In Daniel nine, starting with verse 24, we read where 70 weeks are “decreed for your people and your holy city...”.

## Events at end of 70 Weeks

- \* Finish Transgression
- \* Put an End to Sin
- \* Atonement for Wickedness
- \* Bring in Everlasting Righteousness
- \* Seal Up Vision and Prophecy
- \* Anoint the Most Holy



The word translated in the NIV as “decreed” would be better translated: “cut off”. The 70 weeks are “cut off”, or “decreed” for the Jewish people only. If I have a chocolate cake and I “cut off” a portion of it for me, that portion is “decreed” for me. It is mine. The rest is yours.

The question is, what are the 70 weeks cut off from?  
119 Logically speaking, Gabriel expected Daniel to know.

Therefore, it would have been in a prior message. The only logical prior time period given is in chapter eight, verse 14, the 2,300 days (years). Out of those 2,300 days (years), 70 weeks (490 years) are specifically cut out for the Jews and Jerusalem. The rest of the 2,300 days are for us, the Gentiles.

But before we can do all these things, we need to know when this 2,300 day prophecy and the 70-week portion of it began.

“Know and understand this: From the issuing of the decree to restore and rebuild Jerusalem....” Verse 25. There it is. That is the key of when to start our time period. But when did that decree get issued?

In the history books we find a decree issued by Artaxerxes in 457 BC that matches all requirements. Using this date as the beginning of the 2,300 days, the 70 weeks produces some very interesting results.

The message continues to say that from the decree to rebuild Jerusalem “until the Anointed One, the Ruler, comes, there will be seven weeks and sixty-two weeks.” Taking 457 BC and coming down 49 years (7x7 “days”) we come to the end of the building of Jerusalem in the year 408 BC. The message said that Jerusalem would be built “with streets and a trench, but in times of trouble.” If you want to read about this rebuilding, the trouble and the decree to rebuild, you can do it by reading the books of Ezra and Nehemiah.

That leaves us with 62 weeks to bring us down to the anointing of the Messiah. Continuing on from 408 BC we come down 62 weeks (434 years: 62x7) to AD 27. Now if you’re doing the math, you will say, “Wait a minute, I get AD 26”. That is correct. But you must remember, when the calendar was put together it went from 1 BC to AD 1 without a zero in between. That is why we get AD 27. Is this date correct for the anointing of the Messiah? Right on the money.

Turning to Luke, chapter three, we find that Jesus was baptized in “the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar – when Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, Herod tetrarch of Galilee, his brother Philip tetrarch of Iturea and Traconitis, and Lysanias tetrarch of Abilene.” We can go back into history and see that the date AD 27 was when all these things took place. “Tiberius Julius Caesar Augustus, b. Nov. 16, 42 BC, d. Mar. 16, AD 37, was the second emperor (r. AD 14-37) of Rome.” “Pontius Pilate, the fifth Roman procurator (governor) of Judea (AD 26-36), condemned Jesus Christ to death.”\* “About AD 525, a monk named Dionysius Exiguus suggested that years be counted from the birth of Christ, which was designated AD (anno Domini, “the year of the Lord”) 1. This proposal came to be adopted throughout Christendom during the next 500 years. The year before AD 1 is

designated 1 BC (before Christ). Dionysius had referred the year of Christ’s birth to other eras.”\*

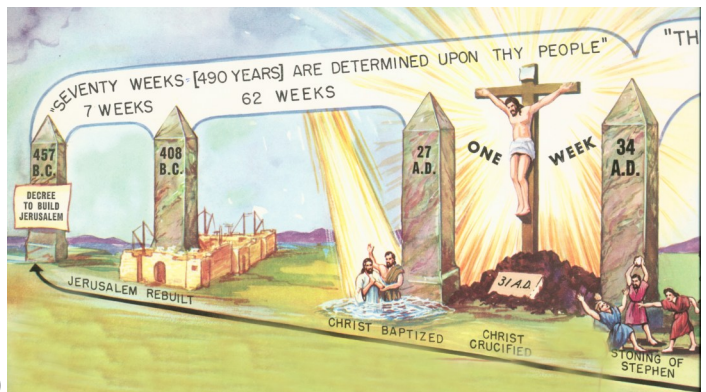
If we use AD 1 for the birth of Christ, Christ’s baptism comes in AD 29 making the anointing of Christ in the 15th year of Tiberius’ reign. However, we know that Tiberius reigned as co-regent with Augustus before he became emperor. Luke knew what we do not know, two thousand years later, that his actual reign started two years before, while Augustus was incapacitated and unable to actively reign. That would put the anointing of Christ in AD 27.

The message goes on in verse 26 to say that the Anointed One (Christ) would be cut off after AD 27. Was that so? In verse 27 it tells us exactly when. “He will confirm a covenant with many for one ‘seven’ (seven years). In the **middle** of the ‘seven’ (seven years) he will put an end to sacrifice and offering.”

Did Jesus confirm the covenant for one week (seven years)? Yes. Did He put an end to the sacrifice and offering in the middle of that week? Yes. Going from AD 27 three and a half years, we come to AD 30 and a half. It was in AD 30/31 that Jesus died on the cross and put an end to the sacrifices and offerings of the Temple. They were no longer needed as symbols or shadows. The true Lamb of God had died. “At that moment the curtain of the temple was torn in two from top to bottom.” Matthew 27:51.

The word used in verse 26 that is translated “cut off” actually means “to be killed”. You will find it prophesied in Isaiah 53:8. The verse also says that He would have nothing. The actual translation is that He would have no “descendants”. That is correct. Jesus not only had nothing when He died; He also had no blood children. We are His children when we are obedient to His Ten Commandments as He was.

For the next three and a half years the disciples continued to confirm the covenant of love with the Jewish nation. But in AD 34 (AD 30 1/2 + 3 1/2 years) the Jews stoned Stephen to death. The covenant was broken by the Jews for the last time. They rejected the covenant of Love and God rejected them as a nation.





Now you can see the importance of the points in verse 24. The Jews were to finish transgression. They were to put an end to sin. They were to atone for their wickedness and bring in everlasting righteousness by accepting the Messiah. But no matter what they did, the vision would be fulfilled and the Most Holy would be anointed. As a nation they failed to finish transgression and put an end to sin. They failed to bring everlasting righteousness into their lives. They rejected the Messiah and proclaimed Caesar as their king.

The Bible says, “The people of the ruler who will come will destroy the city and the sanctuary.” That was so correct. It wasn’t the Romans that destroyed Jerusalem. Yes, they did physically. But it was the stubbornness of the Jews that destroyed Jerusalem. Titus pleaded with the Jews to surrender. He gave his word that Jerusalem and the temple would not be damaged if they would just give up their revolt. “Through your own fault you will lose the inheritance I gave you.” Jeremiah 17:4.

“The Romans set up a local dynasty, the house of Herod, to rule most of Palestine; Herod the Great (r.40-4 BC) rebuilt much of Jerusalem, including the Temple. The Roman governors, however, retained ultimate control; one of them, Pontius Pilate, authorized the execution of Jesus Christ. While suppressing a major Jewish revolt, the Romans destroyed the Second Temple in AD 70.”\*

The same is true of us today. Jesus is pleading with us to give up our rebellion and sins. He is pleading with us to give in to His Way of living, to His Ten Commandments of righteousness. But if we refuse and continue our rebellion, we will destroy ourselves.

We can even bring that down more accurately in verses 7 -15 of Revelation nine. The Bible is so accurate that we many times fail to see the accuracy because we fail to study accurately. We listen to and read the surface events of history but fail to dig deep into the fullness of it. Too many times we have condemned the Bible based on what we know on the surface of history, only to find out later that a deeper search has proven the Bible accurate in all details.

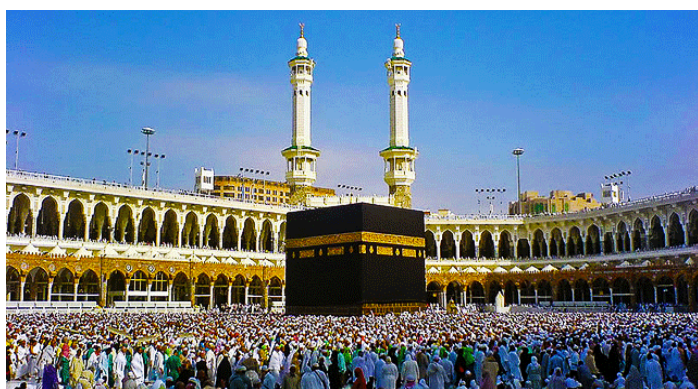
Men of powerful thought and intellect, moved by the Holy Spirit, have put much time into the study of God’s word. They have searched out the historical aspects and brought together wonderful parallels between history and the Biblical accounts. I am simply bringing together much of what has already been revealed.

In Revelation 9:10 we read, “They had tails and stings like scorpions, and in their tails they had power to torment people for five months.” Five months? What does five months mean?

Remember what we learned about prophetic time? A day equals a year. Since a month equaled 30 days at the time of the writers of the Bible, five months would equal 150 days, or 150 years. As we studied earlier under the “Trumpets”, Revelation 9:10 was dealing with the Muslim power that began to emerge. Now we shall look deeper into this part of the prophecy.

“They had power to torment people for five months.” Have you ever been in school, or prison, where a bully tormented you or others? He wasn’t in charge, the teacher was, but he did his best to torment whenever he had the opportunity. This analogy fits fairly well the situation of the Ottoman Empire between July 27, 1299 and 1449.

## The Muslim Conquest



So far, we have explored the first part of Revelation. This included the Churches, the Seals and the seven Trumpets. I attempted to show the parallel between them and the historical accounts that verify them as accurately predicting the course of history of the Christian experience down to our day.



“Osman I, 1258-c.1326, leader of the Ottoman TURKS, founded the dynasty that established the OTTOMAN EMPIRE. An Oghuz Turk, he ruled the small Osmanli (Ottoman) principality in northwestern Anatolia and in c.1290 declared his independence from the SELJUK Sultanate of Iconium. Osman waged constant war with the adjacent BYZANTINE EMPIRE. In 1326 his son Orkhan, who ruled until 1360, captured the Byzantine city of Bursa.” *Grolier*

“Among these Turkic groups that migrated into the Islamic Middle East were the Ottoman Turks. After establishing a Muslim principality in northern Anatolia, the Ottomans continued moving westward and crossed into Thrace in Europe by 1345 at the invitation of the Byzantine emperor who needed their assistance. For the next 100 years Ottoman history deals mostly with efforts to unify under their control Anatolian territories held by vassals, as well as efforts to expand Turkish control in the Balkans.” *Grolier*

“The Ottoman Turkish dynasty, founded by OSMAN I (c.1300), became a major world power in the 15th century, and continued to play a very significant role throughout the 16th and 17th centuries. The BYZANTINE EMPIRE, with which Muslim armies had been at war since the early days of Islam, came to an end in 1453 when Ottoman sultan MEHMED II conquered Constantinople. That city then became the capital of the OTTOMAN EMPIRE.” *Grolier*

“The Turkish conquest of Anatolia had caused a substantial displacement of the native Christian population there, where most moved to the cities. Little ethnic change resulted in southeastern Europe, however, except for areas of Serbia, Albania, and Greece, where the Turkish tribes settled, and in Bosnia, where the indigenous Slavic BOGOMILS converted to Islam because of previous Christian persecution. Muslims and Christians alike were allowed to retain their religious and national traditions within autonomous settlements. These ultimately became the centers for national movements and independent states that rose on the ruins of the Ottoman Empire in the 19th and 20th centuries.” *Grolier*

OK, let’s see if we can pull all this history together and come up with an understanding. As mentioned earlier, the Romans ruled the world until about AD 457. Then they began to break up into East and West Rome. The Eastern Roman Empire became known as the Byzantine Empire. It outlasted the Western Roman Empire which became the Holy Roman Empire ruled by the Catholic Church.

In the East, Constantinople was the seat of power for the Eastern Roman Empire which eventually became the Eastern Orthodox Religion. The Eastern Orthodox Religion was a branch of the Roman Catholic Church. However, in about AD 1000 they had a disagreement with the Catholic Church and split, forming their own church, which today is called the Greek Orthodox Church.

That is very important because the Bible is concerned only with religious matters; the war between good and evil. In this case, the false prophet religion of Islam and the Greek “Christians”. The Bible stated that for five months (150 years), the Muslim Turks of the Ottoman

Empire would “torment” the Greek Christians. And that is what they did. They could not overcome them, but they could torment them with war here and there. This happened from July 27, 1299 until 1449.

All this changed in Revelation 9 verses 14 and 15. Now the bully became the leader and was in charge. The bully killed the teacher. As you can see from the map, the Ottoman Empire grew from a local kingdom of Turks, to a huge empire. “It said to the sixth angel who had the trumpet, ‘Release the four angels who are bound at the great river Euphrates.’ And the four angels who had been kept ready for this very hour and day and month and year were released to kill a third of mankind.”

Up to this time the angels had kept the Muslim religion “bound at the great river Euphrates.” But on July 22, 1449, the lawful successor to the Greek, Byzantine Empire, refused to ascend the throne **without permission from the Turkish, or Ottoman sultan**. Thus it was that on that date, the Byzantine Empire surrendered its power. “This was not a violent assault made on the Greeks, by which their empire was overthrown and their independence taken away, but simply a voluntary surrender of that independence into the hands of the Turks, by saying, ‘I cannot reign unless you permit.’” *D&R*

“The empire reached its peak in the 16th century. Sultan SELIM I (r. 1512-20) conquered Egypt and Syria, gained control of the Arabian Peninsula, and beat back the Safavid rulers of Iran at the Battle of Caldiran (1514). He was succeeded by SULEIMAN I (the Magnificent, r. 1520-66), who took Iraq, Hungary, and Albania and established Ottoman naval supremacy in the Mediterranean. Suleiman codified and institutionalized the classic structure of the Ottoman state and society, making his dominions into one of the great powers of Europe.” *Grolier*

The proverbial “Euphrates” river would no longer be a barrier to the Muslim armies. They now entered into Europe and became a mighty power in the world. From July 22, 1449, it would reign until the Bible said it would cease to have power. That happened 391 years, 15 days later as stated in Revelation 9:15, “for this very hour and day and month and year.” A year, based on the calendar of 30 days per month would be 360 days (years). A month would be 30 days (years). A day would be a day (year), and an hour would be 15 days. Add it all up in prophetic time and you have 391 years and 15 days.

“Abdul-Medjid (r. 1839-1861). Mahmud’s eldest son and successor, Abdul-medjid, was only 16 years old. Without an army or navy he was helpless before the superior forces of Mehemet Ali. He was saved by the joint diplomacy and forces of Russia, England, Austria, and Prussia. France at first favored the Egyptians but the

# FRANCE: Figuratively Called Sodom & Egypt

concerted action of the European powers solved the impasse by allowing Mehemet Ali to have hereditary title to the governorship of Egypt under the nominal suzerainty of the Ottoman sultan, an arrangement contained in the Treaty of London of 1840 and confirmed by Abdul-medjid in 1841. In that latter year the London Convention of the powers agreed to the principle that no warship should enter the Dardanelles or the Bosphorus while the sultan was at peace, and each power would rise to aid the sultan to defend his sovereignty over the Straits.” *Collier’s*

The Ottoman Empire came to an end, politically, on August 11, 1840. “Financial mismanagement and incompetence, along with national revolts in the Balkans and eastern Anatolia, the French occupation of Algeria and Tunisia, and the takeover by the British in Egypt and the Italians in Libya, threatened to end the very existence of the empire, let alone its reforms. By this time the Ottoman sultanate was known as the ‘Sick Man of Europe,’ and European diplomacy focused on the so-called EASTERN QUESTION—how to dispose of the Sick Man’s territories without upsetting the European balance of power. Abd al-Hamid II, however, rescued the empire, at least temporarily, by reforming the Ottoman financial system, manipulating the rivalries of the European powers, and developing the pan-Islamic and pan-Turkic movements to undermine the empires of his enemies.” *Grolier*

The Ottoman Empire was “Sick”. It got into a war with Egypt and was left without any real power to solve the problem. It was falling apart. It needed help to solve this war with Egypt. England, Russia, Austria and Prussia came to the rescue. They became the protectorates of the Ottoman Empire on August 11, 1840 when Egypt accepted their ultimatum on that day.

Here we have prophecy again being exactly fulfilled as prophesied. 391 years, 15 days: from July 22, 1449 to August 11, 1840. God is the ruler of the heavens and the earth. He knows what will happen in advance. All we have to do is just sit back and live His righteous, perfect, sinless life, and leave the driving to Him.

However, let me help you better understand what is going on in the world today between Muslims and the West and why there is so much hatred for the West by Islam. The Muslims used to be a great empire until the western nations divided it up.

They also see the conflict between themselves and the West as a battle between “gods”. They believe that their “god”, “Allah”, is the true god and will destroy the West. This conflict will be part of the end-of-the-world which brings the world under a one-world government just before the coming of Jesus.

“I was given a reed like a measuring rod and was told, ‘Go and measure the temple of God and the altar, and count the worshipers there. But exclude the outer court; do not measure it, because it has been given to the Gentiles. They will trample on the holy city for 42 months. And I will give power to My two witnesses, and they will prophesy for 1,260 days, clothed in sackcloth.’” Revelation 11:1-3.

We have a judgment taking place here. Some people are judged “worshipers” and some are judged “Gentiles”. Since the temple at Jerusalem was destroyed in AD 70, under Titus of the Romans, this temple has to be symbolic.

We are the temple of the Holy Spirit. We are the true temple. Any physical structure is not a temple or church of God unless it is filled with people who are true temples of God in their bodies. That can only happen when we are filled with the Holy Spirit.

What we find here is that the worshipers are very few. How do we know that? Because John was told to count them. You can’t count the stars; there are too many of them. You can’t count the sand on the seashore; there are too many of them. You can’t count the water droplets in the ocean; there are too many of them. We can’t even count all the people in the world today using our sophisticated, scientific equipment. We can’t even count all the people in Los Angeles. We can come to a close approximation, but we can’t be sure we have counted every single one. Therefore, when John was told to count, it was because he was able to.

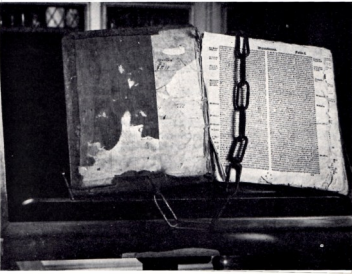
“Enter through the narrow gate. For wide is the gate and broad is the road that leads to destruction, and many enter through it. But small is the gate and narrow the road that leads to life, and **only a few find it.**” Matthew 7:13, 14.

The Gentiles are symbolic of those who do not worship the true God. They have set up their own institutions of worship. They have built big cathedrals and churches; however, God is not among them since they do not obey His Ten Commandments and the 7th day Saturday Sabbath.

When was this period of time to take place? For 42 months. That is the same as 1260 days (years) in Bible prophecy. This is the time that the Catholic Church ruled the world and “trampled on the holy city”. The Catholic Church trampled on truth and drove it to the ground. It destroyed the holy city of God in the person of God’s

worshippers.

During this time the two witnesses (Old and New Testaments) of God would prophesy in sackcloth. They prophesied and cried out at the events that were then taking place. These two witnesses were crying out in



accusation against the church system that was destroying the truth. The church literally had the two witnesses chained to monasteries and churches. If you read from the Bible or were caught with portions of the Scripture, you could be killed, tortured and your property taken away. Truly, they prophesied in sackcloth during this time. (Soon to happen again.)

The Old and New Testaments are the “two olive trees and the two lampstands that stand before the Lord of the earth”. Revelation 11:4. Olive oil in terms of the sanctuary has always been symbolic of the Holy Spirit. The lampstands in the sanctuary have always been symbolic of the “Light of Life”. The Holy Spirit spoke through the prophets who wrote down the messages that gave Light to the world. Those messages are contained in the Old and New Testaments.

“Now when they have finished their testimony, the beast that comes up from the Abyss will attack them, and overpower and kill them. Their bodies will lie in the street of the great city, which is figuratively called Sodom and Egypt, where also their Lord was crucified. For three and a half days men from every people, tribe, language and nation will gaze upon their bodies and refuse them burial. The inhabitants of the earth will gloat over them and will celebrate by sending each other gifts, because these two prophets had tormented those who live on the earth.” Revelation 11:7-10.

This prophecy is historically fulfilled in the history of France. France was the son of the papacy. Whatever dirty work the papacy wanted done, it knew it could depend on France to carry it out. For almost eight hundred years France fought the wars and executed the martyrs for the Roman Catholic Church.

“The Saint Bartholomew’s Day Massacre, the mass killing of French Protestants by Catholics, began on Aug. 24, 1572, and is remembered as a crime against humanity. It was preceded (August 22) by the attempted assassination of Admiral Gaspard de Coligny, a prominent Huguenot in Paris. Many other Protestant nobles had come to the capital to attend the wedding of Henry of Navarre (later Henry IV) and Margaret of Valois. CATHERINE DE MEDICIS, who feared Coligny’s plans for war with Spain, was probably

implicated in the murder plot, and when an investigation threatened to expose her role in the scheme she persuaded her son, Charles IX, to order the death of the Huguenot leaders in anticipation of a supposed Protestant plot. The killing began in Paris and was extended to the provinces, continuing until October. It is estimated that tens of thousands were slaughtered.”\*

During the 1260 years that the Catholic Church ruled, France became a despotic government. The citizens were taxed heavily by the civil government and heavily by the Roman Catholic Church. Because of this oppressive environment the nation rose up to throw off the two oppressive institutions. This culminated in the Reign of Terror.

---

## Reign of Terror

“When the city of Toulon voluntarily surrendered to the British, a demonstration in Paris compelled the National Convention to establish (September 5) the repressive regime known as the Terror. A fearful time ensued: the Committee of Public Safety strove to organize the economy and the war effort; the Revolutionary Tribunal sent state prisoners, including the Girondists, to the guillotine; and agents of the Convention known as Representatives of the People enforced bloody repression throughout France. *A campaign of dechristianization*, marked by a new Revolutionary Calendar computed from Sept. 22, 1792 (1 Vendemiaire, Year I), *led to the closing of all churches* on 3 Frimaire, Year II (Nov. 23, 1793). *Grolier*

“During the Revolution, in 1793, ‘the world for the first time heard an assembly of men, born and educated in civilization, and assuming the right to govern one of the finest of the European nations, uplift their united voice to deny the most solemn truth which man’s soul receives, and renounce unanimously the belief and worship of a Deity.’—Sir Walter Scott, *Life of Napoleon*, vol. 1, ch. 17. ‘France is the only nation in the world concerning which the authentic record survives, that as a nation she lifted her hand in open rebellion against the Author of the universe. Plenty of blasphemers, plenty of infidels, there have been, and still continue to be, in England, Germany, Spain, and elsewhere; but France stands apart in the world’s history as the single state which, by the decree of her Legislative Assembly, pronounced that there was no God, and of which the entire population of the capital, and a vast majority elsewhere, women as well as men, danced and sang with joy in accepting the announcement.’—*Blackwood’s Magazine*, November, 1870.” *GC*

“After France had renounced the worship of the living

God, 'the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity,' it was only a little time till she descended to degrading idolatry, by the worship of the Goddess of Reason, in the person of a profligate woman. And this in the representative assembly of the nation, and by its highest civil and legislative authorities! Says the historian: 'One of the ceremonies of this insane time stands unrivaled for absurdity combined with impiety. The doors of the convention were thrown open to a band of musicians, preceded by whom the members of the municipal body entered in solemn procession, singing a hymn in praise of liberty, and escorting, as the object of their future worship, a veiled female whom they termed the Goddess of Reason. Being brought within the bar, she was unveiled with great form, and placed on the right hand of the president, when she was generally recognized as a dancing girl of the opera. . . . To this person, as the fittest representative of that reason whom they worshiped, the national convention of France rendered public homage. This impious and ridiculous mummery had a certain fashion; and the installation of the Goddess of Reason was renewed and imitated throughout the nation in such places where the inhabitants desired to show themselves equal to all the heights of the Revolution.'" GC

As you can see from history, the nation that outlawed the Bible reaped the rewards of that decree. The nation went mad with wickedness and every kind of brutality known to man was instituted. Another nation to follow in the footsteps of France was Communist Russia. The USSR outlawed the Bible and became as vile and cruel as France. History simply repeating itself. Will the world ever learn? It is happening again today throughout the world in every nation on earth.

"Then came those days when the most barbarous of all codes was administered by the most barbarous of all tribunals; when no man could greet his neighbors or say his prayers . . . without danger of committing a capital crime; when spies lurked in every corner; when the guillotine was long and hard at work every morning; when the jails were filled as close as the holds of a slave ship; when the gutters ran foaming with blood into the Seine. . . . While the daily wagonloads of victims were carried to their doom through the streets of Paris, the proconsuls, whom the sovereign committee had sent forth to the departments, reveled in an extravagance of cruelty unknown even in the capital. The knife of the deadly machine rose and fell too slow for their work of slaughter. Long rows of captives were mowed down with grapeshot. Holes were made in the bottom of crowded barges. Lyons was turned into a desert. At Arras even the cruel mercy of a speedy death was denied to the prisoners. All down the Loire, from Saumur to the sea, great flocks of crows and kites feasted on naked corpses, twined together in hideous embraces. No mercy was shown to sex or age. The number of young lads and of girls of seventeen who were murdered by that execrable

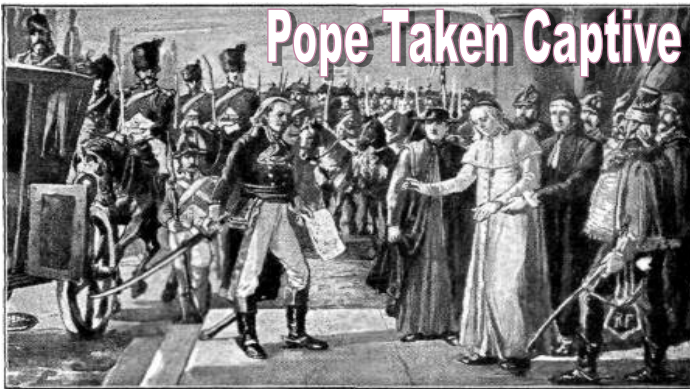


government, is to be reckoned by hundreds. Babies torn from the breast were tossed from pike to pike (long spears) along the Jacobin ranks.' In the short space of ten years, multitudes of human beings perished." GC

"God's faithful witnesses, slain by the blasphemous power that 'ascendeth out of the bottomless pit,' were not long to remain silent. 'After three days and a half the Spirit of life from God entered into them, and they stood upon their feet; and great fear fell upon them which saw them.' Revelation 11:11. It was in 1793 that the decrees which abolished the Christian religion and set aside the Bible passed the French Assembly. Three years and a half later a resolution rescinding these decrees, thus granting toleration to the Scriptures, was adopted by the same body. The world stood aghast at the enormity of guilt which had resulted from a rejection of the Sacred Oracles, and men recognized the necessity of faith in God and His word as the foundation of virtue and morality. Saith the Lord: 'Whom hast thou reproached and blasphemed? And against whom hast thou exalted thy voice, and lifted up thine eyes on high? Even against the Holy One of Israel,' Isaiah 37:23. 'Therefore, behold, I will cause them to know, this once will I cause them to know My hand and My might; and they shall know that My name is Jehovah.' Jeremiah 16:21, A.R.V." GC

"The church and the Bible had been slain in France from November, 1793, till June, 1797. The three years and a half were expended, and the Bible, so long and so sternly repressed before, was placed in honor, and was openly the book of free Protestantism!" George Croly, *The Apocalypse of St. John*, page 183.

With the French Revolution over, the pope was taken captive on February 20, 1798. "At the outbreak of the French Revolution, all church property in France was confiscated and when the revolutionary regime demanded an oath of fidelity from the clergy, Pius denounced (1791) the revolution as unholy. He supported the antirevolutionary coalition of European powers, and, in 1797, after the invasion of Italy by Napoleon, Pius was forced to surrender papal territories to the newly created



Cisalpine Republic (q. v.). In 1798 French armies under Gen. Louis Alexandre Berthier marched on Rome, which had been declared a republic by Roman revolutionaries in league with the French, and demanded that Pius renounce his temporal sovereignty. At his refusal the pope was taken prisoner and held first at Siena and ultimately at Valence, France, where he died.” *Infopedia*

But as the Bible says, “after the three and a half days (years) a breath of life from God entered them, and they stood on their feet, and terror struck those who saw them.” Revelation 11:11. The assembly voted back the Bible. The Bible rose to its feet and circled the globe as never before.

Now the world was ready for the Two Witnesses to stand on their feet. The “American Bible Society, an interdenominational and nonprofit organization founded in 1816 in New York City for the purpose of making the Bible, or portions thereof, without note or comment, available to people anywhere in the world. The Society is supported principally by gifts from churches and individuals. Its headquarters are in New York City.

“Through the labors of individual scholars and the coordination of their efforts, the complete Bible has been translated and published in more than 275 languages, the complete New Testament in an additional 340, and at least one book in 1,700 languages and dialects. The result of this publishing program is that the entire Bible, or portions of it, have been made available in the languages of more than 97 percent of the world’s population. The Society also makes the Bible available on tapes, records, cassettes, and in braille.” *Grolier*

The American Bible Society is just one of hundreds of organizations dedicated to the principle of making the Bible available to every single person on the planet. How accurate the Bible has shown itself. All prophecies, that are not conditional, have come true.

What does this have to do with time and the close of probation? Everything! As you can see, Revelation is fast coming to a close. We are at the end of this world’s history. You have the privilege of seeing the fulfillment of the ages come to pass in your lifetime.

We will soon be finished with all prophecies that bring us down to our time. Remember, the word history is “His-story”. It is a record of the workings of God and His dealings with the human race. His attempt to save us from sin and wickedness so we don’t destroy ourselves.

Daniel and Revelation simply explain that there is a war going on. A war between the forces of truth, righteousness and justice and those of lies, hate and injustice. When lies, hate, injustice and wickedness become more prevalent than truth, justice and righteousness, then God will come and put an end to it. Not by a “rapture”. Not by setting up a kingdom among the nations of this world. No. But by destroying these nations that have fought against His truth. Then He will recreate a totally new heaven and new earth. Revelation 21:1.

## CLOSING EVENTS Revelation 12

As noted earlier, Revelation chapter 12 starts us at the birth of Christ. Then it follows the woman, God’s church, through her time of trouble and persecution. This period lasted 1260 years, from AD 538 to 1798 when the Pope was taken captive.

Because of the persecution that the true church was receiving from the Catholic “Christianized paganism” church, it had to flee into the wilderness. At this time the true Christians fled to the farthest reaches of Europe. Using the Roman roads for her swift flight on “eagle’s wings” she fled to Ireland, Scotland, Africa and Asia. There she was able to continue her practice of the true, Bible-Sabbath keeping faith.

But verse 15 tells us that the serpent was not pleased with this. He wants to control everyone. He hates the voluntary worship that the true Christians give Jesus. He wants to force everyone to worship him. Therefore he “spewed water like a river, to overtake the woman and sweep her away with the torrent.”

Since Europe was not very populated at this time, the bride of Christ was able to live in relative peace. So in order to flood her out, the devil, through the Catholic Church, encouraged people to have more children. What this did was introduce a population big bang. “The

# Closing Events: Revelation 13

Church discouraged childlessness more than adultery, for so she could disarm dissent with multiplication.” *The age of Napoleon: Durant.*

When we study the Old Testament we find that wickedness became its greatest when “men began to increase in number on the earth...”. Genesis 6:1. The more people, the more sin. Then God had to destroy the world and wash it clean in a symbolic baptism. That is what the devil was attempting to do. He wanted to increase the world’s population in order to get man to become desperately wicked. He also wanted to overrun the church of God. And that is what happened.

There came a time when there was no place left for the woman to flee to. All Europe became flooded with people. Wickedness became so great that God had to again allow disasters to wipe out large portions of the populations. We have wars, famines and plagues taking place during this time. They helped to suppress the population explosion brought about by the moral decline of the Catholic Church.

When the woman had no place to flee, the Bible tells us in verse 16 that “the earth helped the woman by opening its mouth and swallowing the river that the dragon had spewed out of his mouth.”

In the 1600’s the Lord opened up the earth, North America, and swallowed the river. America and the New World acted like a pressure release valve. As the woman was persecuted in Europe, and had no place else to go, she learned of a new land. Fleeing the persecution that was now destroying the church of God, she came to America. In America she could worship God with freedom and in peace.



This now brings us to Revelation 13, again. I want to touch on the important points of this study.

The Catholic Church, the beast that comes out of the sea, was given the authority of the dragon. Why? Because Satan saw that his paganism was not catching on with the world. He had to change his form from a dragon and become a beast. Jesus is known as a lamb, and a lion which is a beast of the field. Satan wanted his own “beast” power.

What Satan did was wrap his (dragon) power under the cloak of a lamb, churches, which would speak like beasts, lions. So the dragon “gave the beast (Catholic Church) his power and his throne and great authority.” Vs 2. That is exactly what happened. The dragon, the pagan empire of Rome, gave its power to the Pope of Rome. Now the devil could work his pagan power under the “Christian” cloak of the church. “Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing but inwardly are ravenous wolves.” Matthew 7:15.

It goes on to show the terrible things it would do during the 1260 years it would rule Europe. After its deadly wound was healed in 1929, it would continue to grow. The Bible says that all “inhabitants of the earth will worship the beast – all whose names have **not** been written in the book of life...”. Verse 8. That word “worship” is an interesting word. The definition goes like this.

- {Proskuneo} (pros-koo-neh’-o) is the word used for “worship”.
- From “pros” and a probable derivative of koo’-ohn (meaning to kiss, like a dog licking his master’s hand)
- To kiss the hand, in token of reverence
- Among the Orientals, esp. the Persians, to fall upon



# Closing Events: Revelation 14

the knees and touch the ground with the forehead as an expression of profound reverence

- In the New Testament by kneeling or prostration to do homage (to one) or make obeisance, whether in order to express respect or to make supplication.

Now let me ask you a question, is that kind of worship to be given to any man? Not even God requires us to act like a dog and lick his feet. Yet that is just what the Pope requires. Watch the multitudes and what they do when he comes to town. Watch what they do when they get up to him. That is devil worship.

Since the church is not allowed to use force or violence on its own, it always uses the state to be its enforcer. France and the nations of Europe were used to enforce the church's rules during the Middle Ages. It will use the state to enforce its laws in the not too distant future.

Verse 11 tells us that just such a state would emerge. The United States (the beast with two horns like a lamb, but speaking like a dragon) would come to the rescue of the Catholic Church. Working in unison, they would "cause all who refused to worship the image to be killed". Verse 15.

The image is the international Sunday Law. The Sunday laws are already on the books in most states known as "Blue Laws". Most countries of the world have and enforce Sunday laws. Here in the United States they are not being enforced at this time. But they will be. There is a movement going on now to mandate the shutdown of all businesses on Sunday for the "good" of the people.

The devil wants to force "everyone, small and great, rich and poor, free and slave, to receive a mark on his right hand or on his forehead, so that no one could buy or sell unless he had the mark...". Verses 16, 17.

How is this going to happen? What will be the catalyst that will activate such wickedness? Let's read on and the Bible gives us the answers. God always wants His children to be aware of what's going on. He has given us His prophecies so we won't be asleep like the five foolish virgins. Let us stay awake and learn what is going to happen next in our lifetime.

John's eyes have been riveted on the scenes before him. He sees the beast power hurting, killing and destroying the church of God. I can imagine that he was not feeling very good at this time. It must have hurt him to watch all this madness. But then his eyes are directed up to heaven. There he sees the end result of all this. He sees the reward of those who are the children of God.

Chapter 14 lets us know what the criteria is for being one of the children of God. "These are those who did not defile themselves with women, for they kept themselves pure." Verse 4.

The saints are those who have not participated in the pagan festivals of Christmas, Easter, Halloween and Sunday worship. They did not participate in putting their money into big churches and costly church seats and programs. They did not take part in the doctrines of the false church which are against the teachings of Jesus. Those teachings that teach us to be perfect, stop sinning and to keep the Ten Commandments to have (get) eternal life. That is why they are pure. They have not believed the lie that we are "saved by grace".

"No lie was found in their mouths; they are blameless." Verse 5. No lie? That is correct. No lie was found in their mouths. Why? Because they refused to believe the lie that they were saved eternally by grace. They refused to believe the lie that they could not be perfect. They refused to believe the lie that they could not stop sinning. They refused to believe all the lies that are being taught by all the churches of the world today. That is why only 144,000 will be translated off the face of the earth without experiencing death at the end of time. They are the only ones who will be alive after the close of probation who will be going to heaven. All other "Christians" will be destroyed. "This calls for patient endurance on the part of the saints who obey God's commandments and remain faithful to Jesus." Verse 12.

That is why they are saints. They refused to believe the lies of Satan, and instead, they obeyed the commandments of God. Because of that, "their deeds will follow them." They have been judged righteous and worthy of eternal life because they have followed in the footsteps of Jesus, even unto death. Verse 13.

The international Sunday law will go into effect right around Passover. Seven months later Jesus will come at the "Feast of Trumpets" on the "day of Atonement". That is when we truly become "at-one-ment" with Christ when He lifts us up off this planet to be with Him for eternity.

Verse 14 jumps from the three angels' messages to the coming of Christ and the end of this world. John is giving us a quick overview of the outline to explain *why* Jesus is coming. The *why* of the three angels' messages was so important. And *why* the saints kept the commandments of God.



The reason? To prepare us for earth's final gathering of the saints. "I looked, and there before me was a white cloud, and seated on the cloud was one 'like a son of man' with a crown of gold on His head and a sharp sickle in His hand." Verse 14. Jesus is about to reap the saints off this world. But He can't just yet. He is ready, but He is waiting for something.

In Matthew 24:36 we read, "No one knows about that day or hour, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father." Jesus is waiting for the command from His Father before He puts in the sickle. All heaven is one obedient family. Only those who have learned to be obedient to His commands will get to heaven.

In verses 15 and 16 of Revelation 14 we read, "Then another angel came out of the temple and called in a loud voice to Him who was sitting on the cloud, 'Take Your sickle and reap, because the time to reap has come, for the harvest of the earth is ripe. So He who was seated on the cloud swung His sickle over the earth, and the earth was harvested.'" Here we see that Jesus is obedient. He waits until He received word from His Father, who is still in Heaven. The Father does not come to this earth during this time. He stays in Heaven. Only Christ, Michael, the Archangel, the Leader of the angels, and His angels come.

Here we see the fulfillment of Christ's prophecies. Let's review them so we get a fuller understanding of this most important event. The reason there is so much confusion about this event is that very few people are willing to learn the truth.

Matthew 25:31, 32: "When the Son of Man comes in His glory, and all the angels with Him, He will sit on His throne in heavenly glory. All the nations will be gathered before Him, and He will separate the people one from another as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats."

Matthew 13:30, 40-42: "Let both grow together until the harvest. At that time I will tell the harvesters: First collect the weeds and tie them in bundles to be burned, then gather the wheat and bring it into my barn." "As the weeds are pulled up and burned in the fire, so it will be at the end of the age. The Son of Man will send out His angels, and **they will weed out of His kingdom everything that causes sin and all who do evil.** They will throw them into the fiery furnace, where there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth."

Matthew 16:27: "For the Son of Man is going to come in His Father's glory with His angels, and **then** He will reward each person according to what he has done."

Matthew 24:27, 30, 31: "For as lightning that comes from the east is visible even in the west, so will be the coming

of the Son of Man." "They will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of the sky, with power and great glory. And He will send His angels with a loud trumpet call, and they will gather His elect from the four winds, from one end of the heavens to the other."

This event will not be a quiet event as taught by the churches of today in the "rapture". This event will be worldwide and will be seen by everyone. The texts above suggests it will be "visible" to all in the world. Not only that, but when Jesus comes He doesn't just come to redeem the righteous, He comes to destroy the wicked; they do not keep on living after Jesus has come. They are destroyed at His coming by the brightness of His glory. "For our 'God is a **consuming** fire.'" Hebrews 12:29. As the prophecies above indicate, Jesus destroys the wicked when He comes.

Now back to Revelation, starting with the 17th verse. "Another angel came out of the temple in heaven, and he too had a sharp sickle. Still another angel, who had charge of the fire, came from the altar and called in a loud voice to him who had the sharp sickle, 'Take your sharp sickle and gather the clusters of grapes from the earth's vine, because its grapes are ripe.' The angel swung his sickle on the earth, gathered its grapes and threw them into the great winepress of God's wrath."

As you can see, the prophecies, and the actual account as seen by John, both agree with each other. When Jesus comes He will personally reap the righteous. The wicked will be reaped by the angels to be trampled on and destroyed.

The earth will be left desolate for 1000 years. The only inhabitants who will be alive on it will be the devil and his angels. They will be bound and chained to this planet. Revelation 20:1, 2. They will have to look at the effects of their rebellion against God. They will have to experience the waste and destruction that their sin and rebellion have brought upon themselves and the world.

John has seen the outline. But now he will be shown the substance. From the outline of the end of time, Jesus shows him the meat, the fullness of it. He shows John the details of what will happen between the three angels' message and His second coming. However, we are going to bring the Bible up to date by going back to Daniel and continue with chapter 11. It will bring us to where we are in Revelation.

# DANIEL 11

## Medo-Persian Empire

“And in the first year of Darius the Mede, I took my stand to support and protect him. Now then, I tell you the truth: Three more kings will appear in Persia, and then a fourth, who will be far richer than all the others. When he has gained power by his wealth, he will stir up everyone against the kingdom of Greece.” Verses 1 & 2

(Historical note: It appears that Darius the Mede only ruled Babylon while Cyrus was the King of all the Medes and the Persians. While Cyrus was fighting the nation’s battles, Darius was keeping things under control at Babylon.)

Historically we can see the fulfillment of this prophecy. As with most of Daniel, Daniel is given a prophetic outline of future events. We have a starting point, “the first year of Darius the Mede.” That would put this vision about 538 BC. The vision goes on to say that three more kings would appear and then a fourth who would be far wealthier.

“The Medes also subdued the Persians and other Iranians on the plateau, but the Median empire lasted only until 549, when the last Median king, Astyages (r. 584-549), was defeated by his Persian vassal CYRUS THE GREAT, who became the heir of the Median king and ruled an even greater empire from 549 to 530 BC. His son CAMBYSES II, who ruled from 530 to 522, invaded Egypt. Following an interregnum of a year, DARIUS I took power by killing the usurper Smerdis and established the Achaemenid empire on a firm basis. He consolidated and further extended Persian conquests (so that the empire stretched from Egypt and Thrace in the west to northwestern India in the east); established the system of satraps (local governors) under firm centralized control; encouraged the spread of ZOROASTRIANISM; and was a great patron of the arts. Darius’s son XERXES I (r. 486-465), after his defeat by the Greeks in the PERSIAN WARS, retired from active government and set a precedent for future kings who were kept in power by the efficient bureaucracy organized by Darius.” *Collier*

“In 539 b.c. Cyrus occupied Babylonia; by the end of his reign, he had extended his conquests from the Mediterranean to the eastern fringes of the Iranian plateau, with his capital at Pasargadae in southwest Iran.” *Collier*

“Cyrus’ son Cambyses, who had conquered and occupied Egypt, proclaiming himself pharaoh, died in 522 b.c.—

some say by his own hand—and the Persian throne was seized by a Median magician. But a revolt headed by Darius, prince of a younger branch of the Achaemenid line, deposed the usurper after a few months. Darius (r. 521-485 b.c.) was the greatest of the Persian rulers—a builder and administrator as well as a conqueror. He brought under Persian sway northwest India as far as the Indus River and Armenia as far as the Caucasus. He also campaigned in Thrace (modern European Turkey and Bulgaria) but was turned back from the Danube River by the Scythians.” *Collier*

“Persian ruler of the Achaemenid empire from 486 to 465 BC, Xerxes was the son of DARIUS I and Atossa, daughter of Cyrus the Great.” *Collier*

“Although he was not Darius’s eldest son, he was designated crown prince about 498. Xerxes, meaning ‘ruler over heroes,’ was his throne name. At the beginning of his reign he put down a revolt in Egypt and also in Babylon, where he razed the walls and plundered the city.” *Collier*

To sum up the above historical accounts, it goes something like this. After Cyrus the Great, three more kings would rule:

1. **Camabyses II: 530-522**
2. **Smerdis, an usurper killed by Darius I: 522-521**
3. **Darius I, known as Darius I the Hystaspes: 521-486**

Then we are told that a fourth king would rule who was “far richer than all the others.” To get some idea of his wealth, read Esther 1:1-8. This king would “stir up everyone against the kingdom of Greece.”

“In 480 b.c. the Persians under King Xerxes again attacked Greece, this time by both land and sea. The Hellespont was bridged with boats and a canal was cut through the isthmus of Mount Athos, to avoid a repetition of the disaster of 492 b.c.” “His most important action, however, was the invasion of Greece that ended in defeat at the Battle of Salamis in 480.” *Collier*.

“The Greek historian Herodotus gives as the combined strength of Xerxes’ land and naval forces the incredible total of 2,641,610 warriors. Xerxes is said to have crossed the Hellespont by a bridge of boats more than a kilometer in length and to have cut a canal through the isthmus of Mount Athos. During the spring of 480 bc he marched with his forces through Thrace, Thessaly, and Locris. At Thermopylae 300 Spartans, under their king, Leonidas I, made a courageous but futile stand, delaying the Persians for ten days. Xerxes then advanced into Attica and burned Athens, which had been abandoned by the Greeks. At the Battle of Salamis later in 480 bc, however, his fleet was defeated by a much smaller

contingent of Greek warships commanded by the Athenian Themistocles. Xerxes thereupon retired to Asia Minor, leaving his army in Greece under the command of his brother-in-law, Mardonius (fl. 500-479 bc), who was slain at Plataea the following year. Xerxes was murdered at Persepolis by Artabanus (d. 464 bc), captain of the palace guard; he was succeeded by his son Artaxerxes I (r. 465-425 bc)." *Infopedia*

We see here the fulfillment of the prophecy. Xerxes began to meddle in the affairs of Greece. Greece did not like that. He stirred up a hornets nest that Persia would come to regret. Verse 3 tells us that "a mighty king will appear, who will rule with great power and do as he pleases. "After Xerxes died, Alexander fulfilled the prophecy of verse 3.

---

## Greek Empire

"When Alexander burst into Asia, however, no opposition could stop him." *Collier*.

"In 331 b.c., refusing an offer from Darius to cede all lands west of the Euphrates, he crossed the Euphrates and Tigris from northern Syria. With an army reinforced to over 40,000 men, he met the full force of Darius' empire in the plains at Gaugamela, sixty miles west of Arbela (modern Erbil), even though the name **Arbela** is sometimes given to the battle. Enormously outnumbered, but with consummate skill, he advanced obliquely towards Darius' left wing, holding off outflanking cavalry attacks with flank guards of his Greek and Thracian troops, while Thracian javelin men in advance brought down the horses of a Persian scythed-chariot charge.

"A gap opened between the Persian center and left as the Persian formation tried to conform to his flankward movement, and into it Alexander charged with his 2,000 'companions' or horse guards, supported on their left by the main force of his infantry pikemen, the Macedonian phalanx. Darius' best infantry were cut to pieces in a short, fierce struggle, and he, as at Issus, fled. The date was probably October 7, not October 11 as has often been claimed." *Collier*.

Verse 4 states that "his empire will be broken up and parceled out toward the four winds of heaven. It will not go to his descendants, nor will it have the power he exercised, because his empire will be uprooted and given to others."

How true that prophecy was. When Alexander died, "he had still made no arrangements for the government of the empire, even of Macedonia itself, in the event of his

death or disablement (surely a heavy count against him); and fighting between his generals, in which the empire was dismembered and his posthumous son and only child perished along with Roxane, began within two years." *Collier*

---

## Empire Divided

"Upon the death of Alexander, his empire, the largest the world had known, was divided among his generals." *Collier*

1. "LYSIMACHUS, c.360-281 BC, a senior Macedonian officer under ALEXANDER THE GREAT, was assigned rule over Thrace after Alexander's death in 323." *Collier*

2. "CASSANDER, c.358-297 BC, king of Macedonia, was son of the regent ANTIPATER and one of the diadochi, or successors, of ALEXANDER THE GREAT." *Collier*

3. "SELEUCID DYNASTY, the Macedonian family that established itself in 312 b.c. as heir to a large part of the Asiatic empire of Alexander the Great. The Seleucid realm was centered on Syria but at times extended throughout much of the Near East, from Asia Minor to northern India. Under the Seleucids, Greek culture continued to be diffused throughout Asia. The dynasty's rulers were almost continuously at war with rebellious provincial rulers, the other Hellenistic states that followed in the wake of Alexander, invading Gauls, and, later, the Romans. Seleucid Syria was finally annexed as a Roman province in 65 b.c." *Collier*

"Seleucus I Nicator (r. 312-281 b.c.). The dynasty derives its name from its founder, Seleucus I, one of Alexander's generals. In 312 b.c. Seleucus took over Babylon during the civil wars after Alexander's death. Like the other successors of Alexander, Seleucus desired all of Alexander's empire." *Collier*

"Seleucus I Nicator ("the Conqueror"), b. c.358 BC, was the greatest of the Diadochi, or successors, of Alexander the Great. He fought under Alexander and after the king's death (323) received the province of Babylonia." "He took the royal title in 305." *Collier*

4. "PTOLEMAIC DYNASTY , the ruling family of Egypt from 323 b.c. to 30 b.c. The dynasty was founded by Ptolemy, son of Lagos, one of Alexander's generals. Ptolemy took possession of Egypt shortly after Alexander died and held the country against all his rivals. In 305 b.c., he assumed the title of king and reigned until his

death in 285 b.c. Ptolemy and his descendants built up an empire which included Egypt, Cyprus, southern Syria, and Cyrene.” *Collier*

“Ptolemy I, c.367-283 BC, created the political and military foundations of the Ptolemaic dynasty of Egypt (323-30 BC). When Alexander the Great died in 323 BC, Ptolemy, one of Alexander’s leading Macedonian generals, became satrap (governor) of Egypt. In 304 he declared himself king.” *Collier*

“The principal enemies of the Ptolemies were the Seleucids, with whom they fought a half dozen major wars.” “A long series of wars between the Seleucids and the Ptolemies of Egypt began during his reign. This rivalry continued throughout the third century and into the second. The principal bone of contention was southern Syria.” *Collier*

To recap the above history, we find that the empire which Alexander built was parceled out to his four generals: Lysimachus, Cassander, Seleucid and Ptolemy. It is at this point that we have the wars of the kings of the South (Ptolemy) against the kings of the North (Seleucid).

---

## North & South Kingdoms

Verse 5 takes in Ptolemy I Soter of Egypt (king of the South) and Seleucid I Nicator (king of the North). Verse 6 happened in about 252 BC when Antiochus II married Berenice, the daughter of Ptolemy.

“Antiochus II (Theos). Antiochus II, who reigned 261-247 BC, continued the struggle with the Egyptians, but finally made peace by marrying Berenice, daughter of Ptolemy Philadelphus of Egypt.” *Collier*

“Berenice. d. c.246 BC Daughter of Ptolemy II Philadelphus and his sister Arsinoe II; (Berenice married) (c.252) Antiochus II Theos and persuaded him to renounce (his) former wife Laodice and her children; after (the) death of Antiochus, (Berenice) was killed by supporters of Laodice, thus provoking her brother Ptolemy III Euergetes into (a) Third Syrian War against Laodice and Seleucus II.” *Infopedia*

Verses 7 & 8 are historically correct in the revenge that Ptolemy III took on the king of the North for the murder of his sister Berenice.

“PTOLEMY III (282?-221 bc ), called Ptolemy Euergetes (“benefactor”), king of Egypt (246-221 bc ), the son of Ptolemy II. He reunited Cyrenaica and Egypt, invaded the Seleucid Kingdom of Syria to avenge the

murder of his sister and her infant son, the heir to the Seleucid throne, and established Egyptian naval predominance in the Aegean Sea. Ptolemy III was a liberal patron of the arts and added to the collection of the Alexandrian library. His rule marked the height of Egyptian power, prosperity, and wealth under the Ptolemies.” *Infopedia*

Verse 9 tells us that the king of the North would not like Ptolemy III for ransacking his kingdom. Therefore Seleucus II turned on Egypt and invaded it. But he was not successful. Because of a revolt by his younger brother, Antiochus Hierax, he had to withdraw.

“Seleucus II Callinus (r. 247-226 b.c.). With Antiochus II’s son, Seleucus II, a new factor, dynastic strife, enters the history of the dynasty. When the king, at war with Egypt, appointed his younger brother, Antiochus Hierax (the Hawk), viceroy of all Asia Minor north and west of the Taurus Mountains, Antiochus revolted. With the Gauls as allies he inflicted a severe defeat on Seleucus at Ancyra (modern Ankara) in about 236 b.c. and forced him to cede the western half of his empire.” *Collier*

In Verse 10 we are told that his sons “will prepare for war and assemble a great army, which will sweep on like an irresistible flood and carry the battle as far as his fortress.” In history, we have the fulfillment of this prophecy.

“ANTIOCHUS III, called The Great (242-187 bc ), king of Syria (223-187 bc ), the son of Seleucus II and brother of Seleucus III (r. 225-223 bc ), whom he succeeded. He was the most distinguished of the Seleucids. Having made vassal states out of Parthia and Bactria, he warred successfully against the Egyptian king Ptolemy V and in 198 bc obtained possession of all of Palestine and Lebanon.” *Infopedia*

“Antiochus III, c.242-187 BC, succeeded to the throne of the SELEUCIDS in 223, when the kingdom was controlled by a powerful minister and rebellion was spreading in Iran. He defeated the rebels, rid himself of the minister, and conquered much of Phoenicia, Syria, and Palestine from the Ptolemies of Egypt.” *Grolier*

But the king of the South, “Ptolemy IV won (a) decisive victory over Antiochus at Raphia (217);” *Infopedia*

War after war continued between the dynasties of the houses of the Ptolemy's and the Seleucids. During this time we take a little break from the wars that are going on between these two rivals and see one going on that involves the Jews.

# Jews Rebel

Verse 14 states, “in those times many will rise against the king of the South. *The violent men among your own people* will rebel in fulfillment of the vision, but without success.” Did this happen? Did the Jews (your own people) rebel without success? Yes.

“The Maccabees led the Jewish people in their struggle for freedom from the kingdom of Syria. Their exploits and legends about them are recounted in the Old Testament books Maccabees (q.v., books). Prominent members of the family include the following.

“Mattathias, or Mattathiah (d. 166? bc ), priest of Modin, northwest of Jerusalem. In 168 bc the Seleucid king Antiochus IV Epiphanes forbade the practice of Judaism and also decreed that altars to Greek gods be set up in the Temple at Jerusalem and in country towns. Mattathias, then an old man, refused to comply and killed a royal officer and a Jew who did comply. Subsequently (167 bc), with his five sons and many faithful Jews, Mattathias fled to the mountains and began a revolt against Antiochus. He died soon after, leaving his son Judas in command of the rebellion.

“Judas, or Judah (d. 161 bc), third son and successor of Mattathias. One of the great generals in Jewish history, Judas, with a few thousand followers, defeated several numerically superior Syrian armies in succession (166-165 bc). In December 165 bc, he led his insurgent army into Jerusalem, purified the Temple, which had been used for Greek rites during the preceding three years, and restored the Jewish rites. This purification and restoration is commemorated by the Jewish festival Hanukkah (q.v.). Judas next began extensive military campaigns against the enemies of the Jews in and around Judea. As a result, Syria recognized the religious liberty of the Jews (163 bc). Judas then began to work for political independence as well and to this end enlisted the aid of Rome. Dissensions among the Jews, however, weakened his position. Although Judas won a great victory over the Syrians at Bethhoron (just northwest of Jerusalem) in 161 bc, he was killed in a subsequent battle fought nearby at Elsa.

“Jonathan. (d. 142? bc), brother and successor of Judas, youngest son of Mattathias. After the death of Judas, Jonathan continued for three years to lead a small band of insurgents. In 157 bc, the Syrians, engaged in an internal struggle for political power, made peace with him. Five years later, profiting from the internal conflict in Syria, Jonathan became high priest in Jerusalem and administrator of Judea. Thereafter, he alternately supported the Syrian kings and pretenders, using them against one another, while increasing Jewish territory and power. In 143 bc Tryphon (d. 138 bc), pretender to the

Syrian throne, decided to crush the power of the Jewish leader as a threat to his own influence. Jonathan was treacherously taken prisoner near Beth-shan (modern Beit Shean) by Tryphon, and he was ultimately killed.

“Simon. (d. 135 bc), successor and brother of Jonathan, second son of Mattathias. In 142 bc he negotiated a treaty with Syria by which Judea was recognized as politically independent. All Syrians were expelled from the citadel at Jerusalem. In 141 bc a great congregation of the Jewish people and priests chose Simon to be high priest and civil governor, and the two offices were made hereditary in Simon’s family. After six years of prosperous rule, Simon was assassinated by his son-in-law and chief rival for power.” *Infopedia*

The revolt did not succeed for long. Judea was soon to be ruled by the Romans.

---

## Back to the Future

In Verse 15 we go back in time to verse 14 to see why the Jews revolted. “Then the king of the North will come and build up siege ramps and will capture a fortified city. The forces of the South will be powerless to resist; even their best troops will not have the strength to stand.”

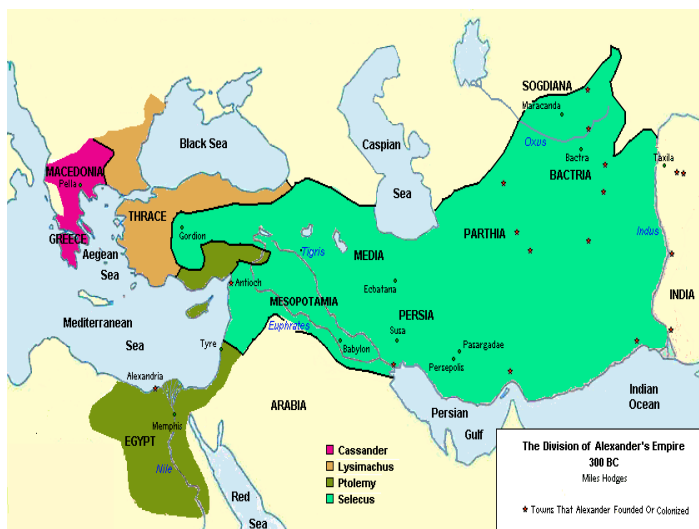
“ANTIOCHUS IV, called Epiphanes (“the illustrious”) (c. 215-164 bc), king of Syria (175-164 bc), son of Antiochus III. From 171 to 168 bc, he was involved in a war against Egypt, defeating two Egyptian kings, Ptolemy VI and Ptolemy VII. He captured Jerusalem, prohibited Judaism, and tried to establish the worship of Greek gods. Under the leadership of the Jewish priest Mattathias (died c. 166 bc) and his sons, the Maccabees, the Jews revolted (167-160 bc) and drove Antiochus from Jerusalem. Later he won victories over the Armenians and Persians.” *Infopedia*

As you can see from the account above, the fortified city to any Jew was Jerusalem. With the revolts of the Jews by the Maccabees, Jerusalem was recaptured for a while. But the revolt did not last. Even the Ptolemies who attempted to help the Jews were unable to do so.

Why is this chapter in the Bible? Because God is always concerned about His people. In order for the kings of the North (the Seleucids), and the kings of the South (the Ptolemies), to war against each other, they had to cross through the land of Judea, as you can see from the map. That involved the Jews. That is why God has it mentioned in Daniel. He wanted them to know what the future would hold and not to worry. All they had to do was just trust and obey Him. But instead, they took matters into their own hands and lost. The lesson is for us today. Trust God and obey Him and everything will

turn out great. Take matters into our own hands and things will be disastrous.

# Roman Invaders



The Ptolemies became so weak, as the Bible said they would, that “to protect themselves against the Seleucids, they cultivated friendship with Rome. Thus Egypt was saved in 168 b.c., when Roman intervention forced Antiochus IV to withdraw from the Egyptian delta, but the final result was that Egypt tended to become more and more a Roman protectorate.” *Collier*

With the introduction of Roman power into the feud that was going on between the Seleucids and the Ptolemies, it was just a matter of time before it became the dominant factor in the area. Verse 16 tells us that the “invader will do as he pleases; no one will be able to stand against him. He will establish himself in the Beautiful Land and will have the power to destroy.”

There is a principle here I want you to understand. The Bible is using the terms “North” and “South” to describe two warring factions that involve the people of God. As these factions get taken over by other factions, the area of the world they involve grows and grows until by the end of Daniel 11 they encompass the whole earth. But the war is the same. The war entangles the people of God. Only the names change.

“Politically, the Middle East was divided between two states ruled by two of Alexander’s generals, the Ptolemies in Egypt and the SELEUCIDS in Syria and Mesopotamia. The constant strife between these two states and their internal weakness eventually led to the intervention of a rapidly rising power in the west: Rome. By 64 BC, Syria fell to the Romans, and, in 30 BC, Egypt was annexed, bringing to an end the Hellenistic kingdoms of the east. The Middle East, which had always been involved in the rivalries between two great powers, was now divided between the Roman Empire, which controlled its western portion around the Mediterranean, and the empire of the Parthians in Persia in the east”. *Grolier*

When Jerusalem was conquered “by the Romans under the general and statesman Pompey the Great in 63 bc resulted in no serious material disaster to the city. Its greatest prosperity was attained under Herod the Great. Besides a complete reconstruction of the Temple on a scale that was truly magnificent, involving the expenditure of vast sums of money, he undertook the building of the Xystus, an open place surrounded by a gallery; his own great palace, on the western side of the city; and a hippodrome, theater, and large reservoir. In addition to these works, minor improvements were made, including the general strengthening of the fortifications.” *Infopedia*

“The Romans set up a local dynasty, the house of Herod to rule most of Palestine; Herod the Great (r.40-4 BC) rebuilt much of Jerusalem, including the Temple. The Roman governors, however, retained ultimate control; one of them, Pontius Pilate, authorized the execution of Jesus Christ.” *Grolier*

“The dynasty of Herod was a family of Idumaeen Jews who ruled various regions in Palestine as client kings or governors under Rome from 37 BC to AD 70. Herod the Great and Herod Antipas figure prominently in the Bible. The former ordered the slaughter of the HOLY INNOCENTS at the time of Christ’s birth, and the latter executed JOHN THE BAPTIST.

“Herod the Great’s grandfather and father, both named Antipater, were governors of the province of Idumaea who rose to power during the waning days of the MACCABEES. Following the conquest (66-63 BC) of Syria-Palestine by the Romans, Herod’s father, d. 43 BC, through skilled diplomacy, achieved Roman citizenship and appointment as procurator (principal administrative official) of Judea. Herod the Great, b. c.73 BC, was made king of Judea by the Romans and ruled from Jerusalem after 37 BC. An imperious king and capable general, Herod promoted Hellenization among the Jews. He founded the city of CAESAREA and rebuilt much of Jerusalem, including the Temple. He was notoriously cruel, however; he executed three of his sons and his second wife.” *Grolier*

As you can see, Rome became the “super power” of the world, and of Israel. The house of Herod established himself in the “Beautiful Land and will have the power to destroy.” He did. He even used his power to destroy Jesus. But let’s go back to how all this took place.

Verse 17 says that the Roman Empire would make an alliance with the king of the South by marrying a daughter of the king of the South, but that the plans

would not succeed. Did that happen? Of course. The Bible is always right.



“CLEOPATRA, more precisely, Cleopatra VII (c. 69-30 bc), ill-fated queen of Egypt (51-30 bc), celebrated for her love affairs with Julius Caesar and Mark Antony. Cleopatra was the daughter of Ptolemy XI Auletes, king of Egypt (c. 112-51 bc). On her father’s death in 51 bc Cleopatra, then about 17 years old, and her brother, Ptolemy XII (63-47 bc), a child of

about 12 years, succeeded jointly to the throne of Egypt with the provision that they should marry. In the third year of their reign Ptolemy, encouraged by his advisers, assumed sole control of the government and drove Cleopatra into exile. She promptly gathered an army in Syria but was unable to assert her claim until the arrival at Alexandria of Julius Caesar, who became her lover and espoused her cause. He was for a time hard pressed by the Egyptians but ultimately triumphed, and in 47 bc Ptolemy XII was killed. Caesar proclaimed Cleopatra queen of Egypt.

“Cleopatra was then forced by custom to marry her younger brother, Ptolemy XIII (59-44 bc), then about 11 years old. After settling their joint government on a secure basis, Cleopatra went to Rome, where she lived as Caesar’s mistress. She gave birth to a son, Caesarion (47-30 bc), later Ptolemy XIV; it is believed that Caesar was his father.” *Infopedia*

Verse 18 says that he will also “turn his attention to the coastlands and will take many of them,...”. “In August 49 a lightning campaign secured Spain, and Caesar then crossed to Greece.” *Grolier*

“In 47 BC Caesar went to Anatolia, where he defeated Pompey’s ally Pharnaces, king of Bosphorus, at Zela; this victory occasioned Caesar’s famous boast *Veni, vidi, vici* (“I came, I saw, I conquered”). He returned to Rome, but in December 47 he crossed to North Africa to meet a new threat from the Pompeian forces. After victory at Thapsus, he returned home to an unprecedented quadruple triumph in 46 BC. Pompey’s sons, however, organized new resistance in Spain. Caesar’s victory over them at Munda, on Mar. 17, 45, was the hardest of all.” *Grolier*

“Under Caesar, Rome controlled all of Italy, Gaul, Spain, Numidia, Macedonia, Greece, Palestine, Egypt, and virtually all of the Mediterranean islands”. *Grolier*

Then the verse goes on to say that “a commander will put

an end to his insolence and will turn his insolence back upon him.” This word “insolence” in the NIV is a play on words, in Hebrew, of the word “dagger”. Now you will understand the historical account better.

“In 44 BC, Caesar, likening himself to Alexander the Great, began to plan the conquest of Parthia. Fearing that he would become an absolute king, many whom he had earlier pardoned conspired to murder him. The conspirators, led by Marcus Junius Brutus and Gaius CASSIUS LONGINUS, stabbed him (with a dagger) at a meeting of the Senate in Pompey’s theater on Mar. 15 (the Ides of March), 44 BC. Falling at the foot of Pompey’s statue, Caesar addressed Brutus in Greek: ‘Even you, lad?’” *Grolier* Verse 19 tells of his stumble and his fall, “to be seen no more.” In Verse 20, we are told that his “successor will send out a tax collector to maintain the royal splendor.”

“Augustus, b. Sept. 23, 63 BC, d. Aug. 19, AD 14, was the first Roman emperor (27 BC-AD 14). Named Gaius Octavius, he was the son of Gaius Octavius, a Roman senator, and Atia, the niece of Julius CAESAR. Augustus was a title of honor conferred on him in 27 BC by the Senate. Octavius was only 18 years old when Caesar was assassinated (Mar. 15, 44 BC). In his will, Caesar adopted Octavius, whose official name then became Gaius Julius Caesar. This did not give Octavian (as modern historians call him) any special privileges, but he was able to use the magic of Caesar’s name to win over Caesar’s veterans.” *Grolier*

“His official name became Emperor Caesar Augustus, and he was called Augustus (the Exalted). In 23 he received the tribunician power for life and assumed in this way the role of protector of the Roman people. He also received the right to intervene in those provinces administered by the Senate. In 12 BC he became high priest (pontifex maximus), the head of Roman state religion, and in 2 BC he received the title ‘Father of His Country.’” *Grolier*

“**Luke 2:1** - Luke is the only Gospel writer who relates his narrative to dates of world history. *Caesar Augustus*. The first and (according to many) greatest Roman emperor (31 B.C. - A.D. 14). Having replaced the republic with an imperial form of government, he expanded the empire to include the entire Mediterranean world, established the famed *Pax Romana* (“Roman Peace”) and ushered in the golden age of Roman literature and architecture. Augustus (which means “exalted”) was a title voted to him by the Roman senate in 27 B.C. *census*. Used for military service and taxation. Jews, however, were exempt from Roman military service. God used the decree of a pagan emperor to fulfill the prophecy of Micah 5:2”. *Compton’s NIV*

As you can see, it was this Caesar Augustus who sent out

the decree to take a census, which is recorded in Luke 2:1. See how accurate the Bible is. Also, note that in 27 BC he (Caesar Augustus) was given the title, “exalted”. Jesus was anointed in 27 AD and had the title “Immanuel”, “God with us”. Satan knew Christ was coming and was trying to take the attention away from the true “Exalted One”. Then we are told in the same verse that he would be “destroyed, yet not in anger or in battle.” “Although he was never in good health, Augustus’ will helped him to survive. After his death, on Aug. 19, AD 14, he was deified.” *Compton’s*

Augustus died, as the Bible says, “not in anger or in battle” but quietly in sleep from an illness. Verse 21 tells us that he would “be succeeded by a contemptible person who has not been given the honor of royalty.” Did this happen? Yes, the next ruler was Tiberius who did **not** come from royal line. Augustus “was succeeded by his adopted son, Tiberius.” *Compton’s*

“In 12 BC, Tiberius was forced to marry Augustus’s daughter, Julia. In the event of Augustus’s death he was to act as tutor of Augustus’s grandsons by Julia’s previous marriage. Tiberius resented his role, and from 6 BC to AD 2 he lived in retirement in Rhodes. After the premature deaths of the grandsons, Augustus adopted (AD 4) Tiberius and recognized him as his successor.” *Grolier*

Not only was he adopted, but the Bible says that he would be “contemptible” as well. “Tiberius is remembered as a monster and tyrant. Historians describe him as a man who had practiced every imaginable vice and who tortured and killed with ferocity.” *Compton’s*

“Old, ridden with disease, and physically repulsive, Tiberius became mean and cruel. He built for himself palaces with prisons, torture rooms, and places of execution. Eventually he had Sejanus murdered by Macro, the new head of the Praetorian Guard. The last years of the emperor’s life reached a peak of cruelty.” *Compton’s*

The section of verse 21 which states that “he will invade the kingdom when its people feel secure, and he will seize it through intrigue” could refer to the following.

“In ad 26 Tiberius left Rome and withdrew to Campania, and the following year went to the island of Capreae (modern Capri), leaving Rome under the power of Lucius Aelius Sejanus (d. AD 31), the prefect of the Praetorian Guard. Finally realizing that Sejanus was trying to seize the imperial power, Tiberius had him and his supporters put to death in ad 31.” *Infopedia*

“A scheming and suspicious ruler, Tiberius instituted a reign of terror, especially after 23, when Sejanus, prefect of the Praetorian guard, became his chief advisor.

Numerous senators, and also members of the family of his nephew Germanicus CAESAR, were accused of treason and executed; in 31 Sejanus met the same fate.” *Grolier*

Verse 22 reads more accurately, “And the arms of the flood are overflowed from before him, and are broken; and also the leader of the covenant.” *Young’s Literal Translation*

This is an interesting verse. You see, Tiberius is the leader of the government that put Jesus, the “leader of the covenant” to death. It was the Roman Empire, the government that ruled the world, that put Jesus, the ruler of the universe, on a cross. As it broke the body of Jesus, so it (he) too would be broken.

“Pontius Pilate, the fifth Roman procurator (governor) of Judea (AD 26-36), condemned Jesus Christ to death. Appointed under Emperor Tiberius, he also had jurisdiction over Samaria and part of Idumea.” *Grolier*

“In March of AD 37 Tiberius became ill. When it appeared he would recover, Macro smothered him with a pile of blankets on March 16.” *Compton’s*

With this verse, a change takes place, a change so profound that it is easy to miss. Let me give you a little history in order to help you understand what is happening.

God is only concerned with events that affect His children. He really doesn’t care to meddle in the affairs of the wicked, they can do what they want. As Jesus said, “Let the dead bury the dead.” But when the wicked start to meddle with His people, then His wrath is activated.

Before the flood, the world became so wicked that it was affecting His people. God told Noah He was going to wipe out the earth because of its wickedness. Therefore He had Noah build an Ark to escape. Next, Sodom became so wicked it was affecting His people. Therefore, He sent His angels to destroy it and bring out His children.

Egypt became so wicked that it was affecting His people. Therefore He sent His angel to destroy all the first born and to bring out His children.

The Canaanites became so wicked that they were affecting His children. Therefore He used His people, the Jewish nation, to destroy them.

When the Jewish nation became too wicked, God used the Babylonians to humble them. But the Babylonians became proud. Then God used the Medes and the Persians to humble them and set His people free. The



Persians became proud and God sent the Greeks to humble them. They also became proud and began to mistreat the people of God. God sent the Romans to humble them.

As the Romans helped the Jews, God allowed the Roman Empire to expand as no other nation had. But when the Roman Empire, in partnership with the Jews, killed His Son, that started the death spiral for the Roman Empire. It began to fall apart and lasted only another three hundred years before being dismembered.

Today we can see the same happening, not only in America, but around the world. America was raised up to protect God's Protestants. But now, America is turning against God and His truth. It only took three hundred years after the death of Christ for the Romans to fall apart. America, at the time of this writing, is 239 years old. How soon before it too falls apart? Can you see it happening today?

This verse, verse 22, is the dividing line between the Roman Empire and the next empire that would be used by the devil to do his bidding. The death of the "prince of the covenant" (NIV, vs 22) divides history. God is no longer concerned with the Romans or the Jewish nation. In His time they have already been destroyed. Now He wants to let His people know what the next empire would do to His people, the Christians.

We must define "His people" so we know what we are looking for. His people have always been those who "obey what I command." His people are those who go out "teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you." John 14:15; Matthew 28:20. His people are not a "church" or any earthly organization.

From Adam to Noah, Noah to Abraham, Abraham to Moses, Moses to David, David to the prophets and the prophets to Jesus. From Jesus through His disciples to us. The gospel has always been the same. The teaching of righteousness has always been the same: Stop sinning, Be perfect and Keep the Ten Commandments to "get" (earn) eternal life. This includes the keeping of the 7th day Saturday Sabbath.

When the Jewish nation ceased to teach that message, and killed their God, it was taken from them and given to the men and women in the world of every nation who would accept it. That is why Paul says that the Gentiles (you and me) are to be "grafted in among the others and now share in the nourishing sap from the olive root,...". Romans 11:17.

All Christians, if they are true Christians, are to become spiritual Jews, teaching the same righteousness that God gave the Jews to teach to the world. Hebrews tells us that "we also have had the gospel preached to us, just as they

did; but the message they heard was of no value to them, because those who heard did not combine it with faith (works)." Hebrews 4:2.

But in Daniel 11, verse 23, we see another power coming up that would be the anti-Christ ("anti" means "in place of") and would try to destroy the real Christian gospel by replacing it with one of its own. In verse 23 we jump almost 300 years to about the year 325. As you will notice from the beginning of this chapter, God is only concerned with the major events. He did not provide a play by play account. He is only interested in those earth shaking events that would be recorded down through history for us to verify that He was correct and knows the future.

Rome was falling apart. It was no longer to be the power of concern. Another power was rising that would take the place of Rome. The only difference being that in place of a localized, civil power, this was to be a worldwide civil and spiritual power. This power was seen by Paul when he stated in his letter to the Thessalonians, "For the secret power of lawlessness is **already at work**; but the one who now holds it back will continue to do so till he is taken out of the way." 2 Thessalonians 2:7.

John saw it when he stated, "Children, it is the last hour, and as you have heard that antichrist is coming, so now many antichrists have come. Therefore we know that it is the last hour." 1 John 2:18. One of those antichrist was his own student, Ignatius, who developed the church system as we have it today and substituted the 7th-day Sabbath for the pagan 1st-day Sunday. This will be discussed later.

---

## Rise of the Anti-Christ

"Anti" means "against". But if I stand "in place of" something, that means I am against it by taking its place. Satan was working to build a parallel religion that would replace true Christianity. It would be so close to the real thing that if it were possible, even the very elect would be deceived. This counterfeit was at work in Paul's day. But who was holding him back?

The Romans were. So in verse 23 of Daniel 11, we see where this secret power of lawlessness was to make an agreement with the power that was holding it back. "Don't let anyone deceive you in any way, for that day (the coming of Christ) will not come until the rebellion occurs and the man of lawlessness is revealed, the man doomed to destruction. He will oppose and will **exalt himself over everything that is called God or is worshiped, so that he sets himself up in God's temple, proclaiming himself to be God.**" 2 Thessalonians 2:3, 4.

John states in 1 John 4:3, “but every spirit that does not acknowledge Jesus is not from God. This is the spirit of the Antichrist, which you have heard is coming **and even now is already in the world.**”

Who is this power that “sets himself up in God’s temple, proclaiming himself to be God?” Who is he who will “oppose and will exalt himself over everything that is called God or is worshiped”?

“First, however, Christianity had to settle its relation to the political order. As a Jewish sect, the primitive Christian church shared the status of Judaism in the Roman Empire, but before the death of Emperor Nero in 68 it had already been singled out as an enemy. The grounds for hostility to the Christians were not always the same, and often opposition and persecution were localized. The loyalty of Christians to ‘Jesus as Lord’ however, was irreconcilable with the worship of the Roman emperor as ‘Lord’ and those emperors, such as Trajan and Marcus Aurelius, who were the most deeply committed to unity and reform were also the ones who recognized the Christians as a threat to those goals and who therefore undertook to eliminate the threat.” *Infopedia*

“The conversion of Constantine assured the church a privileged place in society, and it became easier to be a Christian than not to be one.” *Infopedia*

“Following the example of his father and earlier 3d-century emperors, Constantine in his early life was a solar henotheist, believing that the Roman **sun god, Sol**, was the visible manifestation of an invisible ‘Highest God’ (summus deus), who was the principle behind the universe. This god was thought to be the companion of the Roman emperor. Constantine’s adherence to this faith is evident from his claim of having had a vision of the sun god in 310 while in a grove of Apollo in Gaul. In 312, on the eve of a battle against Maxentius (c. 250-312), his rival in Italy, Constantine is reported to have dreamed that Christ appeared to him and told him to inscribe the first two letters of his name (XP in Greek) on the shields of his troops. The next day he is said to have seen a cross superimposed on the sun and the words ‘in this sign you will be the victor’ (usually given in Latin, in hoc signo vinces ). Constantine then defeated Maxentius at the Battle of the Milvian Bridge, near Rome. The Senate hailed the victor as savior of the Roman people. Thus, Constantine, **who had been a pagan solar worshiper**, now looked upon the Christian deity as a bringer of victory. Persecution of the Christians was ended, and Constantine’s co-emperor, Licinius (270?-325), joined him in issuing the Edict of Milan (313), which mandated toleration of Christians in the Roman Empire. As guardian of Constantine’s favored religion, the church was then given legal rights and large financial donations.” *Infopedia*

“The pope at Rome had the additional claim to prestige of being the direct heir of St. Peter, who was considered the first bishop of Rome. It was due, initially, to a series of activist Roman popes that the papacy grew in influence, but even more important was the compromise, paralysis, and ultimate collapse of Roman government in the West. As political authority disintegrated, the bishops stood firm for what they saw as the truth and the ancient order, and the only representative of that order in Rome was no longer the emperor or the Senate but the pope, holder of the chair of St. Peter.” *Infopedia*

It was the power of the pagan Roman Empire that kept the Roman Catholic Church from rising. But when an agreement was reached between the Roman Catholic Church and Constantine, the Papacy grew to great power. “He will act deceitfully, and with only a few people he will rise to power.” Daniel 11:23. How true that text is. History proves again the truth of God’s Word.

“The Holy Roman Empire was an attempt to revive the Western Roman Empire, whose legal and political structure deteriorated during the 5th and 6th centuries, to be replaced by independent kingdoms ruled by Germanic nobles. The Roman imperial office was vacant after the deposition of Romulus Augustulus in 476. During the turbulent early Middle Ages the traditional concept of a temporal realm co-extensive with the spiritual realm of the church had been kept alive by the popes in Rome.” *Infopedia*

“On December 25, 800, Pope Leo III crowned Charlemagne emperor. This act established both a precedent and a political structure that were destined to figure decisively in the affairs of central Europe. The precedent established the papal claim to the right to select, crown, and even depose emperors that was asserted, at least in theory, for nearly 700 years.” *Infopedia*

The Roman Catholic Church claims that the pope is God on earth. They claim that he has the power to forgive sins. They claim he literally sits **in the place of God** on earth. That is what the Greek word “anti” means: “in place of” or “against”. The pope is the “anti-Christ” since he has **taken the place of God on earth**. Today, any organization that takes the place of the teachings of Christ is “anti” or “against” Christ.

Verse 24 continues with the rise of the Catholic Church. As true Christians began to feel secure, they let down their guard against the deceptions of the Catholic Church. The Catholic Church invaded them with its pagan doctrines and philosophies. It literally achieved worldwide domination and control of men’s souls.

As stated earlier, starting with verse 23 we have a shift in time and space. The Roman Empire is coming to a close.

The Jewish nation is no longer the entity through which the Lord would use to teach His truths. Two new powers would arise on the scene. These two new powers would be the Catholic Church “Christianized paganism”, and the Muslim power, another form of paganism. These two powers would be used by the devil to destroy God’s people. The wars between these two powers are outlined in brief between verses 23 and 29. These wars are called the Crusades.

---

## The Crusades

“CRUSADES, military expeditions undertaken by Western European Christians between 1095 and 1270, usually at the behest of the papacy, to recover Jerusalem and other Palestinian places of pilgrimage from Muslim control. The name crusade (from Lat., “cross,” the emblem of the Crusaders) *was also applied, especially in the 13th century, to wars against pagan peoples, Christian heretics, and political foes of the papacy.*”

“The origin of the Crusades is rooted in the political upheaval that resulted from the expansion of the Seljuk Turks in the Middle East in the mid-11th century. Western Christians viewed the conquest of Syria and Palestine by these aggressive Muslims with fright and alarm. Turkish invaders also penetrated deep into the Christian Byzantine Empire and subjected many Greek, Syrian, and Armenian Christians to their rule. *The Crusades were in part a reaction to these events, as well as serving the ambitions of 11th-, 12th-, and 13th-century popes who sought to extend their political and religious power. Crusading armies were, in a sense, the military arm of papal policy.*” (Verse 24).

“They also offered an outlet for the ambitions of land-hungry knights and noblemen. *At the same time, the expeditions offered rich commercial opportunities to the merchants of the growing cities of the West, particularly Genoa, Pisa, and Venice.*” (Verse 24 – “*distribute plunder, loot and wealth among his followers.*”)

“Crusading thus had a broad appeal to numerous Europeans. Some went on Crusades out of greed, some out of religious fervor; almost all Crusaders sought adventure, and many of them believed that their participation would virtually guarantee personal salvation. Every Crusader probably had different reasons for participation.”

“The Crusades began formally on Tuesday, Nov. 27, 1095, in a field just outside the walls of the French city of Clermont-Ferrand. On that day Pope Urban II preached a sermon to crowds of laypersons and clergy attending a church council at Clermont. In his sermon, the pope outlined a plan for a Crusade and called on his listeners to

join its ranks. *The response was positive and overwhelming. Pope Urban then commissioned the bishops at the council to return to their homes and enlist others in the Crusade. He also outlined a basic strategy: Individual groups of Crusaders would begin the journey in August 1096. Each group would be self-financing and responsible to its own leader.*” (Verse 25).

“The groups would make their separate ways to the Byzantine capital, Constantinople, where they would rendezvous. From there, in concert with the Byzantine emperor and his army, they would launch a counterattack against the Seljuk conquerors of Anatolia. Once that region was under Christian control, the Crusaders would campaign against the Muslims in Syria and Palestine, with Jerusalem as their ultimate goal.

“In broad outline the First Crusade conformed to the scheme envisioned by the pope. Recruitment went forward vigorously during the remainder of 1095 and the early months of 1096. Five major armies of noblemen ultimately assembled in late summer, 1096, to set out on the Crusade. The majority were from France, but significant numbers also came from Lorraine, Burgundy, Flanders, and southern Italy.

“The pope had not foreseen the popular enthusiasm that his Crusade aroused among non-noble townspeople and peasantry. Alongside the Crusade of the nobility a popular one materialized among the common people. The largest and most important group of popular Crusaders was recruited and led by a Picard preacher known as Peter the Hermit. Although the participants in the popular Crusade were numerous, only a tiny fraction of them ever succeeded in reaching the Middle East; even fewer survived to see the ultimate triumph of the Crusade at Jerusalem.

“Resting at Antioch for the remainder of the summer and early fall, the Crusaders set out on the final leg of their journey in late November 1098. Now they avoided attacks on cities and fortified positions in order to conserve their forces. In May 1099 the Crusaders reached the northern borders of Palestine; on the evening of June 7 they camped within sight of Jerusalem’s walls.

“The city was at this point under Egyptian (*king of the South*) control; its defenders were numerous and well prepared for a siege. The Crusaders attacked briskly. With the aid of reinforcements from Genoa and newly constructed siege machines, they took Jerusalem by storm on July 15; they then massacred virtually every inhabitant. In the Crusaders’ view, they purified the city by washing it in the blood of the defeated infidels.”

“A week later the army elected one of its leaders, Godfrey of Bouillon, duke of Lower Lorraine, to rule the

newly won city. Under his leadership the army then fought its last campaign, defeating an Egyptian army at Ascalon (now Ashqelon, Israel) on August 12. Soon afterward the great majority of the Crusaders returned to Europe, leaving Godfrey and a small remnant of the original force to organize a government and to establish Latin (Western European) control over the conquered territories.”



“The victories of the First Crusade were in large part due to the Crusaders’ not confronting a united Muslim world but instead dealing with a number of isolated and relatively weak Muslim powers. The generation after the First Crusade, however, saw the beginning of Muslim reunification in the Middle East under the leadership of Imad ad-Din Zangi (1084-1146), ruler of Mosul and Aleppo. Under Zangi, the Muslim forces scored their first major victory against the Crusaders by taking the city of Edessa (present Urfa, Turkey) in 1144; they then systematically dismantled the Crusader state in that region.” (Verse 25)

“The papacy’s response to these events was to proclaim the Second Crusade late in 1145. The new expedition attracted numerous recruits, among them the king of France, Louis VII, and the Holy Roman emperor, Conrad III. Conrad’s German army set out for Jerusalem from Nuremberg in May 1147; the French forces followed about a month later. In Anatolia the Germans fell into an ambush, from which only a few escaped. The French army was more fortunate, but they also suffered serious casualties during the journey, and only part of the original force reached Jerusalem in 1148. In consultation with King Baldwin III of Jerusalem and his nobles, the Crusaders decided to attack Damascus in July. The expedition failed to take the city, however, and shortly after the collapse of this attack the French king and the remains of his army returned home.”

“The failure of the Second Crusade left the Muslim powers free to regroup. Zangi had died in 1146, but his successor, Nur ad-Din (1118-74), was able to expand his realm into a major power in the Middle East. In 1169 his forces, under the command of Saladin, took control of Egypt. When Nur ad-Din died five years later, Saladin succeeded him as ruler of a Muslim state that stretched from the Libyan Desert to the Tigris Valley and

surrounded the remaining Crusader states on three fronts. After a series of crises during the 1180s, Saladin finally invaded the kingdom of Jerusalem in force in May 1187. On July 4 he decisively defeated the Latin army at Hattin (Hittin). In the after-math of this victory, Saladin swept through most of the Crusader strongholds in the kingdom of Jerusalem. Jerusalem itself surrendered to him on October 2. At this point the only major city still in Crusader hands was Tyre in Lebanon.” (Verse 25 continued)

“On Oct. 29, 1187, Pope Gregory VIII (d. 1187) proclaimed the Third Crusade. Western enthusiasm for the plan was widespread, and three major European monarchs enlisted in its ranks: the Holy Roman emperor, Frederick I Barbarossa, the French king, Philip II Augustus, and the English king, Richard I Lion-Heart. The kings and their numerous followers constituted the largest Crusading force that had taken the field since 1095, but the outcome of all this effort was meager. Barbarossa died in Anatolia while on his way to the Holy Land, and most of his army returned to Germany immediately following his death. Although both Philip Augustus and Richard Lion-Heart reached Palestine with their armies intact, they were unable to recapture Jerusalem or much of the former territory of the Latin Kingdom. They did succeed, however, in wresting from Saladin control of a chain of cities along the Mediterranean coast. By October 1192, when Richard finally left Palestine, the Latin Kingdom had been reconstituted. Smaller than the original kingdom and considerably weaker militarily and economically, the second kingdom eked out a precarious existence for another century.”

“No subsequent Crusade achieved anything like the military success of the Third Crusade. The fourth one (1202-04) was plagued by financial difficulties. In an effort to alleviate these, the leaders agreed to a plan to attack Constantinople in concert with the Venetians and a pretender to the Byzantine throne. The Crusaders succeeded in taking Constantinople, which they then plundered shamelessly. The Latin Empire of Constantinople, created by this Crusade, survived for less than 60 years and contributed nothing to the defense of the Holy Land.”

“In 1208, Pope Innocent III proclaimed a Crusade against the Albigenses, a religious sect in southern France. The ensuing Crusade (1209-29) was the first to be fought in Western Europe.”

“The Fifth Crusade (1217-21) had a promising beginning with the taking of the Egyptian seaport of Damietta in 1219. The strategy, sensible as far as it went, called for an attack on Egypt, the capture of Cairo, and then a campaign to secure control of the Sinai, seen as a link between Egypt and the Latin Kingdom that would cut off

the remaining Muslim powers from the wealth and grain supplies of Egypt. Implementation of this strategy, however, fell short of the goal. The attack on Cairo was abortive, and promised reinforcements failed to materialize. In August 1221 the Crusaders were forced to surrender Damietta to the Egyptians, and the expedition broke up.”

“The Crusade of Holy Roman Emperor Frederick II differed in approach from all the others... Undaunted, Frederick embarked for the Holy Land in June 1228. *There he conducted his unconventional Crusade almost entirely by diplomatic negotiations with the Egyptian sultan Al-Kamil (r. 1218-38). These negotiations produced a peace treaty by which the Egyptians restored Jerusalem to the Crusaders and guaranteed a 10-year respite from hostilities.* (Verse 27) *At the same time, the pope had proclaimed a Crusade against Frederick, raised an army, and proceeded to attack the emperor’s Italian possessions. Frederick returned to the West to cope with this threat in May 1229.*” (Verse 30)

“Nearly 20 years elapsed between Frederick’s Crusade and the next large expedition to the Middle East, which was organized and financed by King Louis IX of France after the Muslims recaptured Jerusalem in 1244. Louis spent four years making careful plans and preparations for his ambitious expedition. At the end of August 1248, Louis and his army sailed to Cyprus, where they spent the winter in further preparations. Following the same basic strategy as the Fifth Crusade, Louis and his followers landed in Egypt on June 5, 1249, and the following day captured Damietta. The next phase of their campaign, an attack on Cairo in the spring of 1250, proved to be a catastrophe. The Crusaders failed to guard their flanks, and as a result the Egyptians retained control of the water reservoirs along the Nile. By opening the sluice gates, they created floods that trapped the whole Crusading army, and Louis was forced to surrender in April 1250. After paying an enormous ransom and surrendering Damietta, Louis sailed to Palestine, where he spent four years building fortifications and strengthening the defenses of the Latin Kingdom. In the spring of 1254 he and his army returned to France.”

“King Louis also organized the last major Crusade, in 1270. This time the response of the French nobility was unenthusiastic, and the expedition was directed against Tunis rather than Egypt. It ended abruptly when Louis died in Tunisia during the summer of 1270.”

“The expulsion of the Latins from the Holy Land did not end Crusading efforts, but the response of European kings and nobles to repeated calls for further Crusades was feeble, and later expeditions accomplished little. Two centuries of Crusades left little mark on Syria and Palestine, save for the castles, churches, and fortifications that the Crusaders left behind. The principal effects of

the Crusades were felt in Europe, not in the Middle East. *The Crusades had bolstered the commerce of the Italian cities, had generated interest in exploration of the Orient, and had established trade markets of enduring importance. The experiments of the papacy and European monarchs in raising money to finance the Crusades led to the development of systems of direct general taxation that had long-term consequences for the fiscal structure of European governments.* (Verse 28) Although the Latin states in the East were short-lived, the experience of the Crusaders established mechanisms that later generations of Europeans used and improved on when they colonized the territories discovered by the explorers of the 15th and 16th centuries.” *Infopedia*

Starting in verse 30, we have another break in the old Crusade, and a beginning in a new Crusade. The Crusades were a bust and amounted to nothing more than wasted life. Except for the Catholic Church, most nations had been drained of their money fighting these wars. However, they were very profitable to the Catholic Church.

“Ships of the western coastlands will oppose him, and he will lose heart.” Verse 30

We have the same analogy in Revelation 18:17-19. Sea captains and ships stand for the churches (ships) and their ministers (sea captains) who profited from the Catholic Church and her pagan doctrines. Since all churches will come under the power of the Catholic Church at the end of time, Revelation 18:17-19 makes perfect sense.

---

## The Reformation

“REFORMATION, great 16th-century religious revolution in the Christian church, which ended the ecclesiastical supremacy of the pope in Western Christendom and resulted in the establishment of the Protestant churches. With the Renaissance that preceded and the French Revolution that followed, the Reformation completely altered the medieval way of life in Western Europe and initiated the era of modern history. Although the movement dates from the early 16th century, when Martin Luther first defied the authority of the church, the conditions that led to his revolutionary stand had existed for hundreds of years and had complex doctrinal, political, economic, and cultural elements.” *Infopedia*

“In England the beginning of the movement toward ultimate independence from papal jurisdiction was the enactment of the statutes of Mortmain in 1279, Provisors in 1351, and Praemunire in 1393, which greatly reduced the power of the church to withdraw land from the control of the civil government, to make appointments to

ecclesiastical offices, and to exercise judicial authority.” *Infopedia*

“The 14th-century English reformer John Wycliffe boldly attacked the papacy itself, striking at the sale of indulgences, pilgrimages, the excessive veneration of saints, and the moral and intellectual standards of ordained priests. To reach the common people, he translated the Bible into English and delivered sermons in English, rather than Latin. His teachings spread to Bohemia, where they found a powerful advocate in the religious reformer John Huss (Jan Hus). The execution of Huss as a heretic in 1415 led directly to the Hussite Wars, a violent expression of Bohemian nationalism, suppressed with difficulty by the combined forces of the Holy Roman emperor and the pope. The wars were a precursor of religious civil war in Germany in Luther’s time. In France in 1516 a concordat between the king and the pope placed the French church substantially under royal authority. Earlier concordats with other national monarchies also prepared the way for the rise of autonomous national churches.” *Infopedia*

“Then he will turn back and vent his fury against the holy covenant. He will return and show favor to those who forsake the holy covenant.” Verse 30.

“The Protestant revolution was initiated in Germany by Luther in 1517, when he published his 95 theses challenging the theory and practice of indulgences. Papal authorities ordered Luther to retract and submit to church authority, but he became more intransigent, appealing for reform, attacking the sacramental system, and urging that religion rest on individual faith based on the guidance contained in the Bible.” *Infopedia*

“In the Scandinavian countries the Reformation was accomplished peacefully as Lutheranism spread northward from Germany. The monarchical governments of Denmark and Sweden themselves sponsored the reform movement and broke completely with the papacy. In 1536 a national assembly held in Copenhagen abolished the authority of the Roman Catholic bishops throughout Denmark and the subject lands of Norway and Iceland; and Christian III, king of Denmark and Norway, invited Luther’s friend, the German religious reformer Johann Bugenhagen, to organize in Denmark a national Lutheran church on the basis of the Augsburg Confession.” *Infopedia*

“The early reform movement in Switzerland, contemporaneous with the Reformation in Germany, was led by the Swiss pastor Huldreich Zwingli, who became known in 1518 through his vigorous denunciation of the sale of indulgences. Zwingli expressed his opposition to abuses of ecclesiastical authority by sermons, conversations in the marketplace, and public disputations before the town council. As did Luther and other

reformers, he considered the Bible the sole source of moral authority and strove to eliminate everything in the Roman Catholic system not specifically enjoined in the Scriptures. In Zurich from 1523 to 1525, under Zwingli’s leadership, religious relics were burned, ceremonial processions and the adoration of the saints were abolished, priests and monks were released from their vows of celibacy, and the Mass was replaced by a simpler communion service.” *Infopedia*

“In 1559 delegates from 66 Protestant churches in France met at a national synod in Paris to draw up a confession of faith and rule of discipline based on those practiced at Geneva. In this way the first national Protestant church in France was organized; its members were known as Huguenots. Despite all efforts to suppress them, the Huguenots grew into a formidable body, and the division of France into Protestant and Roman Catholic factions led to a generation of civil wars (1652-98). One of the notorious incidents of this struggle was the St. Bartholomew’s Day Massacre, in which a large number of Protestants perished.” *Infopedia*

The Catholic Church, as you can see from the historical facts above, attempted to “vent his fury against the holy covenant.” He did this by fighting against the Protestant movement that was bringing people back to the holy covenant, the Bible only and the Ten Commandments instead of church doctrine.

Verses 31 on through 35 explain the terrible time of persecution that the Catholic Church gave to those who refused to bow down to its teachings. The Catholic Church believed, and still does, that the pope is the head of the church and is “god on earth”. That is how it attempted to “abolish the daily sacrifice.” Verse 31. If Jesus is no longer needed to forgive sins, since the Catholic Church claims to have that power, then it does away with the daily sacrifice that Jesus has provided. It will “set up the abomination that causes desolation.” Verse 31.

The Catholic Church does this by setting up the church and its teachings in place of true Christianity and the teachings of Jesus. It does this by substituting the simple Lord’s Supper with the pagan sacrament service.

“Less radical than the English church reformer John Wycliffe, Huss nonetheless agreed with him on many points. On a practical level, both men vigorously condemned church abuses and attempted, through preaching, to bring the church to the people. On the doctrinal level, both ... regarded the Bible as the ultimate religious authority, and held that Christ, rather than any inevitably corrupt ecclesiastical official, is the true head of the church.” *Infopedia*

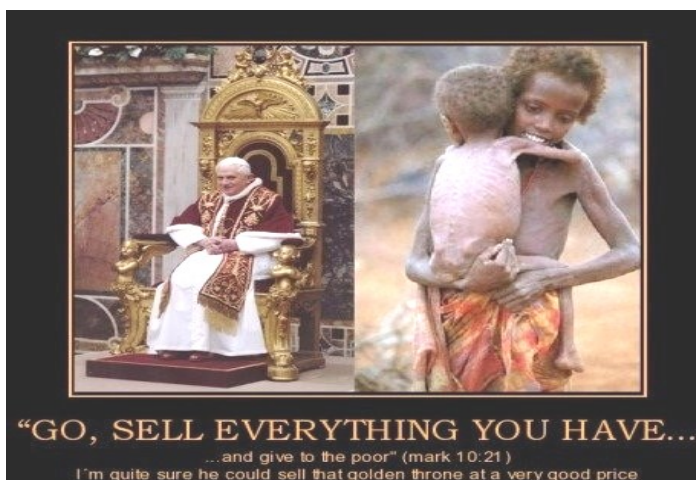
Verses 6 through 39 show us a better picture of the

papacy and its wickedness. “He will exalt and magnify himself above every god and will say unheard-of things against the God of gods.” In Revelation 17:5 the papacy is called “Babylon the Great, the mother of harlots . . .” In prefiguring this “Babylon”, Habakkuk 1:7 states that “their only laws and rules are the ones they make up”.

## Papal Supremacy

The Catholic Church claims that the pope is “God on earth”. It claims that he has the power to forgive sins. It claims that he is infallible. All of these attributes belong to God only.

Verse 37 and 38 show that, unlike the apostles who lived humbly and without money, he would live in a palace and with lots of money. His god would not be the God of the fathers. Go on line and look at the wealth of the Catholic Church.



I believe Verse 40 has to do with Islam joining forces against the “West” in an all out-war to defeat the “Christian” West. I believe that the “king of the North” will be the Western “Christian” powers under the spiritual control of the Catholic Church. That they will “invade many countries and sweep through them like a flood.” Many Muslims believe that we, the West, are already “sweeping through them like a flood”. That is one reason why so many terrorist attacks are pointed towards the West.

I believe that the Islamic nations will be defeated (vs. 42,43) and will accept the “god” of the “Christian” West as their god. That is when the Catholic Church will build a temple in Jerusalem on the “Temple Mount”. In verse 45 it says, “He will pitch his royal tents between the seas at the beautiful holy mountain.”

I believe the plans have already been drawn up by the Vatican to place a temple for the pope on the holy mount in Jerusalem. The nation of Israel, I believe, has invited

the pope to set up residence there in order to keep the peace. I believe that even the Muslims have accepted this plan. Both Israel and the Palestinians believe that the Temple Mount should be placed under religious and international control and not political.

This report is from *U.S. News & World Report*, May 11, 1998. “There is strong support among the prelates, for example, for strengthening the church’s efforts under John Paul II to reunite the Christian churches and to improve relations with other religions. ‘The world will never believe if we are divided’ says Cardinal Francis George of Chicago. Church leaders in the years ahead, he says, ‘will have to look at the divisions among Christ’s disciples’ and seek to resolve them. This suggests that the strongest papal candidate may be one with solid credentials in ecumenical affairs...”

And to whom are the priests, Cardinals and subjects of the Catholic Church bound to? Is it Christ? No! Listen to what the pope says. “With a trembling hand, Pope John Paul II leans forward and places a red silk biretta on the bowed head of the Chilean archbishop who kneels before him. The crimson color, the pope reminds the prelate, is a sign of ‘the dignity of the office of cardinal, signifying that you are ready to act with fortitude, even to the point of spilling your blood’ for **the sake of the church.**” *U.S. News & World Report*, May 11, 1998.

And that is the problem with “church”. Our loyalties have been given to our churches and not to God. All churches today are “anti-Christ” or “stand in the place of Christ”. That is why the Bible tells us to get out of them.

And what about all those ceremonies? Why are they needed? Did God command us to have all those ceremonies that our churches are involved in? No! Listen to what Napoleon said: “Is it not a fact that the Catholic religion appeals more strongly to the imagination by the pomp of its ceremonies than by the sublimity of its doctrines? When you want to arouse enthusiasm in the masses you must appeal to their eyes.” *The Age of Napoleon: Durant*

This is what Revelation 13 is all about, the church becoming more powerful than God in our lives. That is what happens when mankind gives its allegiance to the church instead of to God. We are to have no other gods before us. We are to make no allegiance to any other power in the universe. We are only to give our blood for Jesus, who gave His blood for us. “For My own sake— Yes, for My own sake!—I’m doing it; indeed, how can I be profaned? Furthermore, I won’t give My glory to another.” Isaiah 48:11.

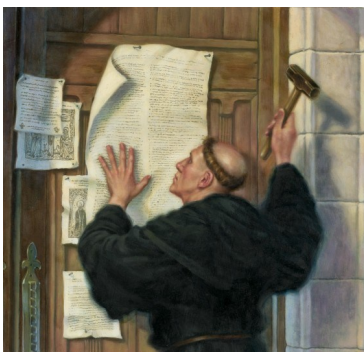
It is the Catholic Church and its prostitutes, the Protestants, that will force the world to bow down at its feet and worship it. All who refuse will be persecuted,

jailed, imprisoned, tortured and killed.

That church, the Catholic Church, is in the process of uniting all Christian churches under its satanic power. That is why we are told throughout the Bible that we are to come out from all these institutions and churches. We are to serve God and God alone.

I would like to share with you what Joseph Ratzinger, Pope Benedict XVI, who was elected the 265th pope in 2005, said as quoted from U.S. News & World Report - May 2, 2005 "He warned that the use of Scripture to evaluate church teaching 'was one of the most dangerous currents to flow out of Vatican II.'"

Plainly stated, he is saying that the church and tradition are to be our "God" and Scripture is of no value if it disagrees with church dogma. The Catholic Church believes your salvation lies in the church, not in the teachings of Jesus.



A final note. On October 31, 1517, Martin Luther nailed the 95 theses to the door of the Catholic Church, challenging it on doctrines of salvation. That one act separated the "Lutheran Church" from the Catholic Church. Many Lutherans gave their lives for the truth.

On October 31, 1999, the Lutheran Church and the Catholic Church signed a statement agreeing on the doctrines of salvation. How sad. All churches are "coming home" to the Catholic Church, just as the Bible predicted. I even know of a major Sabbath keeping denomination that has signed the same agreement.

Please, recheck your church's doctrine. Plainly ask your pastor. Write your General Conference President and other leading men of your denomination or church. Find out if they are still believing and teaching the teachings of Jesus:

1. Be Perfect
2. Stop Sinning
3. Keep the Ten Commandments to "get" your eternal life.

If they are no longer teaching these truths that Jesus taught then you must come out of your church. It is no longer of God! You may be intimidated to stay by peer pressure. But don't give in. They may call you a "separatist". So what?! Listen to the Bible.

**"Therefore come out from them and be separate, says the Lord. Touch no unclean thing, and I will receive**

**you." 2 Corinthians 6:17**

Folks, it is time to be known as "separates". It is time to stand up and be counted. Walk out of any church, which does not teach the teachings of Jesus, with your head held high. Your eternal life depends on it.

After all, isn't that what your church is asking members of other churches to do? To walk out of their church and join yours? To be "separates" from their church to join yours? Then why not walk out of your church and join the final movement of God by obeying the teachings of Jesus as He commanded us to: perfectly?

---

## October 22, 1844

Daniel 8:14—And he saith unto me, Till evening—morning two thousand and three hundred, then is the holy place **declared right**. 1898 YOUNG'S LITERAL TRANSLATION

Daniel 8:14—And he said to me, For two thousand, three hundred evenings and mornings, then the **sanctuary will be vindicated**. 1993 GREEN'S LITERAL TRANSLATION

Daniel 8:14—And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the **sanctuary be cleansed**. 1769 KJV

Daniel 8:14—And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred evenings [and] mornings; then shall the **sanctuary be cleansed**. 1901 AMERICAN STANDARD VERSION

Daniel 8:14—And he said to me, Until two thousand and three hundred days; then shall the **sanctuary be cleansed**. 1833 WEBSTER

Daniel 8:14—He said to me, 'It will take 2,300 evenings and mornings; then the **sanctuary will be reconsecrated**.' NIV

Daniel 8:14 is an intriguing verse. Repeatedly in the Bible we have warnings of the sanctuary being destroyed if the Jewish nation disobeyed God's Ten Commandments. Isaiah, Jeremiah and Ezekiel all foretold of the destruction of Jerusalem and the temple. Jesus foretold of the destruction of the temple of His day.

But here we have a message of a sanctuary being "reconsecrated", "cleansed", "vindicated" and "declared right". What is being expressed here? What sanctuary is being referred to? And when will all this take place?



with the obvious. If we can determine the time, then the other two questions will be easier to answer. What are the 2300 evenings and mornings? When do they begin and when do they end?

When God gives a riddle, it is always referenced Biblically. Using the Bible to unlock the mysteries of the Bible is the wisest and safest method of interpretation. What are 2300 “evenings and mornings”?

To answer this we go back to Genesis 1. We find that God has given us the answer to this part of the riddle. In Genesis chapter one we find God creating a world for man to live on. At the end of each day, we have the following information.

- “**And there was evening, and there was morning - the first day.**” Gen. 1:5
- “**And there was evening, and there was morning - the second day.**” Gen. 1:8
- “**And there was evening, and there was morning - the third day.**” Gen. 1:13
- “**And there was evening, and there was morning - the fourth day.**” Gen. 1:19
- “**And there was evening, and there was morning - the fifth day.**” Gen. 1:23
- “**And there was evening, and there was morning - the sixth day.**” Gen. 1:31

In the Hebraic thought, an “evening-morning” sequence, or unit of time, was always equated to one literal 24 hour day. In God’s time, and in the Hebraic time, when the sun set, that ended that day and began the next “day”. Saturday began when the sun set on Friday. The sun setting on Saturday was the end of that day and Sunday was then beginning. The sun setting on Sunday was the end of that day and the beginning of Monday.



This is why both the King James Version and Webster’s version of the Bible have it translated as “days”. That would be the appropriate understood translation for our thinking of today.

OK, we now have 2300 days, but when do they begin and when do they end? Would God give us such an important text and then laugh at us and thumb His nose at us? No. God has given us all the help we need, and even tells us when this time period begins.

To understand this, we need to do a little time traveling.

Let’s take a trip back in history to the time of Daniel. It is 550 BC and King Belshazzar has just begun his co-reign with his father. His father was out in Arabia and son Belshazzar kept the palace in line.

The Bible says that in the third year of Belshazzar’s reign Daniel had a vision. This would put this vision of chapter eight right about 547 BC. Daniel is watching the ram (the Media - Persian Empire) charge across the land toward the west, north and south. And that is what it did.

Then out of the west came a goat that knocked the stuffings out of the ram. This goat then ruled the world. The goat represented Alexander the Great and the Greek Empire. Now remember, Daniel is seeing all of this in about 547 BC; about ten years before the Media - Persian Empire would come to power, and 210 years before Alexander the Great charged into Asia.

Daniel is intrigued by what he sees. After the goat rules, the vision says, “In the latter part of their reign, when rebels have become completely wicked, a stern-faced king, a master of intrigue, will arise.” Daniel 8:23. Then we are given some attributes of this master of intrigue. They are:

- **Become very strong, but not by his own power**
- **Cause astounding devastation**
- **Succeed in whatever he does**
- **Destroy the mighty men and the holy people**
- **Cause deceit to prosper**
- **Consider himself superior**
- **Feel secure**
- **Destroy many**
- **Take his stand against the Prince of princes**

Putting this vision in context with chapters 2 and 7 we find a striking parallel. All three of these visions are concerned with just one thing, the controversy between Good and Evil; between God and Satan. The rise and fall of nations is just a consequence of that war. God is trying to assure His people that He will win in the end.

In this passage we find that the master of intrigue fits very well with the little horn of Daniel 7. In fact, they are the same entity. This stern-faced king is none other than the papacy (Roman Catholic Church). Let’s look at the attributes the Bible gives and their fulfillment in the papacy. The papacy became very strong. But not by its own power. It had no army. It had no fighting force. It depended on the civil governments and civil armies for its power.

- It caused astounding devastation to the truth of God by accepting the pagan practices and teachings. It literally substituted paganism for Bible teachings.
- I think we can agree that the papacy does succeed in

whatever it does.

- Through persecution it did destroy the mighty men of God and those who lived the righteous, holy life of Christ. The mighty men of the Bible, the prophets, were substituted for church tradition and doctrine. “The Roman Catholic position on the authority of the Bible was given its modern form at the Council of Trent (1545-1563). In opposition to the Protestant Reformers, who made the Bible the sole basis of their belief, the fourth session of the Council (1546) decreed that **tradition**—the part of revelation that is not written down in the Scriptures, but is transmitted through the teaching of the Church—was of equal authority with the Bible. Catholics were forbidden to read any translations that had not been approved by the Church and that were not accompanied by commentaries in conformity with **Church tradition**. For a time the reading of translations required special permission from the pope or the Inquisition.” *Collier’s*
- He is so deceitful. He claims to be the representative of God. Yet he teaches paganism and is consigning men and women to eternal death through his false teachings.
- I think we can agree that the pope considers himself to be superior. He claims to be “God on earth”. He claims to be able to forgive men of their sins and either admit or keep them out of heaven.
- No problem with feeling secure. Hitler, communism, nobody messes with the pope.
- During the 1260-year rule of the Catholic Church, it killed millions of people. That is pretty close to destroying many.

Since he sets himself up as “God on earth” he has taken his stand against the Prince of princes, Jesus Christ. He claims to have all the powers of Jesus. He stands as the substitute for Jesus. We don’t need Jesus Christ as our Savior, we have the pope or the church. What blasphemy.

**(See the solar disk? Symbol of the pagan sun-god worship.)**



The last part of this vision says that “he will be destroyed, but not by human power.” Daniel 8:25. How true that will be. When God destroys him it will not be by

human power.

OK, Daniel has seen enough for now. He can’t take all this wickedness that the stern-faced king is causing. Daniel “was exhausted and lay ill for several days”. He was deeply concerned. When would all this take place?

God is in no rush. We have a God who is in control. The vision was for things that would take place and **continue on** into the “distant future.” Most of this vision would not occur during Daniel’s lifetime. This vision was for us so we would know and understand that God sees the end from the beginning. We can rest upon the Rock and not be moved by all the events that are taking place around us. So don’t be concerned about the Illuminati, or the New World Order, or any political events. Conspiracy theories are not of God, but of the devil to take our minds off of the One who has it all under control. God will take care of politics. You take care of being right with God.

In answer to Daniel’s natural curiosity as to when all this would take place, God waited, and waited, and waited a long time before revealing the answer. When we are told to have patience, we seem to think in terms of hours. In this case, it was years before Daniel got his answer.

In Daniel chapter nine, verse one, we find that he gets an answer to his prayer in the first year of Darius. This seems to be in 538 BC. That makes this a nine-year-old answer. Think you could wait that long for an answer? After nine years, and Daniel being close to 60 years of age, God gives him the answer to the beginning of the 2300-day prophecy.

Daniel 9:24 begins by saying, “Seventy ‘sevens’ are decreed for your people and your holy city...” The word “decreed” means to “cut off”. What is this time period “cut off” from? From the previous 2300 days in the vision of chapter 8. That is why it is specifically mentioned as being for “your people and your holy city”. It goes on to tell us that the beginning of all this time, the 2300 days, starts “From the issuing of the decree to restore and rebuild Jerusalem...”. Was there such a decree? Can we find it? Yes, we can.

Going back to the book of Ezra, we find in Ezra 7:11 that King Artaxerxes gave Ezra a letter to take with him back to Jerusalem. This letter gave Ezra the authority to rebuild Jerusalem, “appoint magistrates, and judges to administer justice to all the people of Trans-Euphrates”. Ezra 7:25.

In reading the Biblical and the historical accounts, we find that this command was in 457 BC. In our discussion of Daniel nine we explained this as the beginning date. Now that we have a beginning date, where does 2300 days take us?

If we take these days literally, we end up around 451 BC. Nothing really great happened in that year. Yes, the Temple was in a state of repairs, but nothing that would call for such an emphasis as Daniel 8:14 suggests.

Remember what we have learned? Prophetic time must be calculated prophetically. As the vision is symbolic, so is the time symbolic. We have learned that in prophetic time one day equals a year. We find this in Numbers 14:34 and Ezekiel 4:6. Yet beyond these two texts, we have a multitude of texts showing that in their everyday language there was an idiom of expression that thought in this vein. For example:

- In Genesis chapter five we read in the King James Version that “all the **days**” of each person was so many **years**.
- Genesis 6:3: “his **days** will be a hundred and twenty **years**.”
- KJV Genesis 9:29: “**And all the days** of Noah were nine hundred and fifty **years**.”
- KJV Genesis 47:9: And Jacob said unto Pharaoh, “**The days of the years** of my pilgrimage are an hundred and thirty years: few and evil have the days of the years of my life been, and have not attained unto the days of the years of the life of my fathers in the days of their pilgrimage.”
- Daniel 2:28: “He has shown King Nebuchadnezzar what will happen in **days to come**.” (This was a prophecy of **years** into the future.) Have you ever looked back into your life and noticed how the years of your life seemed to go by as fast as days?

As you can see, prophetic “days” and years can be interchanged in the thinking of the ancients. Looking at this in that light, we take the 2300 days and expand them to 2300 literal years. Using 457 BC as our starting point we find that Daniel 9:24- 27 works out perfectly.

In using the literal concept of years for days, as the Bible gives us authority to do, we see that the first 490 years of this vision is perfectly orchestrated. The time line fits.

Those are the points that make up the 490 years that were “cut off” or “decreed” for the Jewish nation. With the rejection of Christ, the Jewish nation could not be a part of the 1810 years which remained of the 2300 years of Daniel 8:14. That privilege went to the “Gentiles”.

Adding 1810 years to AD 34 we come down to 1844. What happened in 1844? What sanctuary was to be declared right, vindicated and cleansed?

Many people claim that these prophecies do not refer to the nations as stated above. That they only refer to a time and day closer to the “end of time”. They claim this because of what the angel Gabriel said to Daniel in Daniel 12:9, “Go your way, Daniel, because the words are closed up and sealed until the time of the end.”

That is not true. Throughout the Bible we have many statements to the effect of the “Time of The End.” Yet there have been many “Time of the End” prophecies that have nothing to do with the Second Coming of Christ. Even the concept of “The Great and Terrible Day of the Lord” is not necessarily a Second Coming concept.

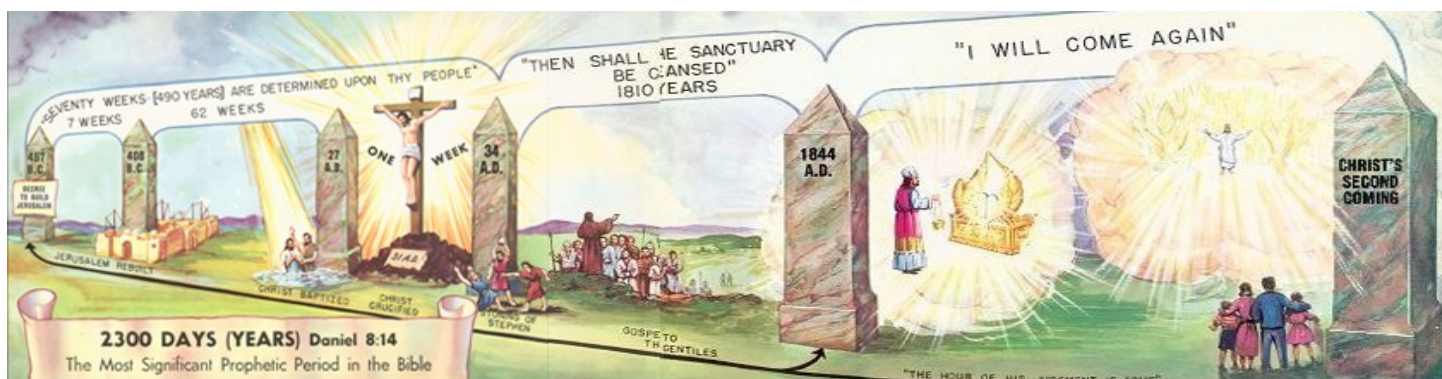
Noah spoke of the “End of Time” and of the “Day of the Lord” and of the “Great and Terrible Day of the Lord”. But that wasn’t the Second Coming of Christ. It was only a little washing of the earth. Only a prelude to the “End of Time”.

Jesus spoke of the “End of Time” to Abraham when He spoke of the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah. But that had nothing to do with the Second Coming of Christ. It was **their** end of time.

There was even an “End of Time” for Egypt if it did not let the Israelites go. And an “End of Time” for Jerusalem and Judea and Israel if they did not repent and return to God. He was going to destroy them. That was an “End of Time” for them also.

There was also an “End of Time” of their captivity at the end of the 70 years. They were able to go home. That was an end of their captivity time.

When Christ came, He put an “End” to the Jewish



economy as they knew it. That was also an “End of Time”. “In **the last days**, God says, I will pour out My Spirit on all people.” Acts 2:16-21. That was Peter speaking. He was quoting the prophet Joel and using that text in reference to his time, then. Was that the “Last days”? No. But it was for them under the old temple plan at that time.

When Jesus told the disciples about the “End of Time”, He was talking about two end of times. The end of time that would come to Jerusalem in 70 AD and the “End of the World” at His Second Coming. In this way, the Christians who listened to Jesus were prepared for their “end of time” with the destruction of Jerusalem. They were saved from being destroyed by Titus in AD 70.

Those who continue listening to Jesus will also be saved from the destruction that is about to come upon all mankind. Jesus is about to destroy this planet and everyone on it. If you want to be saved, you had better start listening to Jesus. His prophecies have never failed. And that is just the point. All these prophecies are pointers and arrows to show us the way. Arrows that we can follow and know that we are at the “End of Time” which will bring the Second Coming of Christ. But yet, they will also have another fulfillment in a more literal sense at the “End of Time” when Jesus comes.

All prophecy has multiple fulfillments. They must be relevant **to the people of their day**, and through history. If not, what is the sense of giving them at that time? God could wait until the “end of time” before giving “end of time” prophecies. God does not waste His time, nor the time of the prophets.

How do we know this? We know this because when Daniel gave the meaning of the dream to king Nebuchadnezzar in chapter two of Daniel, He stated that it “will happen in days to come”. That is the same as “Time of the End” or “End of Time”. Yet we understand that it was to let the king know that he was not as powerful as he thought he was. That his kingdom would be overtaken by another, and another after that, etc. Keep in mind, the “end” of each kingdom represented an “End of Time” for that kingdom.

But, the vision would continue on down **TO** the “End of Time” and would play a part in the “End of Time”. Same with all of the book of Daniel. The visions were all beginning around and about the time of Daniel and would continue down through history to the “End of Time”.

The visions had meaning to the Jews of Daniel’s day since their “End of Time” of captivity was coming to a close and these visions parallel that end. But they also will have more “End of Time” fulfillments to come. So why was it to be sealed up until the “Time of the End”? Because sealing something means that it cannot be



changed. These visions were **sure and certain** and could **not be changed**. They were sealed, as a king would seal a document, not meaning that it had to wait until a certain time, but to make sure that it could not be changed. And you can be very sure that they will not, nor can not, be

changed and that they have been fulfilled, are being fulfilled and will be fulfilled again; right on time.

---

## TRANSFER OF SIN

“Then have them make a sanctuary for Me, and I will dwell among them.” Exodus 25:8.

God is always seeking a dwelling place. If you are traveling away from home, how nice it is to have a dwelling place to rest. In fact, the dictionary defines a “sanctuary” as a “safe place”, a “resting place”. How true that is. When traveling we want to find a safe, resting-place for the night.

We live in a world of darkness. The night of sin has settled down around us. It is not safe out there. Sin is lurking around like a lion, seeking whom he may destroy.

Jesus wants us to have sanctuaries for Him to dwell in. He wants us to have places where people can come to feel safe and secure. A place where travelers in this dark world can find rest for their weary souls. We need to make our homes, and our body temples, a place of sanctuary for those around us.

Moses was in the desert with over two million men, women and children. God wanted to dwell among them and give them rest. He asked them to make a sanctuary **for Him**. They did. This sanctuary was not for the people. It was not a “church” for them to congregate “in”. In fact, if they were to go inside, they would be struck dead. They were to commune with God in their homes and out in nature. However, this “sanctuary”, for God to dwell in, would give the Israelites safety as long as they were obedient to the laws of God. Same in our lives. Our bodies are to be “sanctuaries” for God to dwell in if we are obedient to His Ten Commandments.

An interesting point is that they were not to make this sanctuary as they wanted it, but only as they were directed. They were to make it exactly as they were told. “Make this tabernacle and all its furnishings **exactly like the pattern** I will show you.” Exodus 25:9.

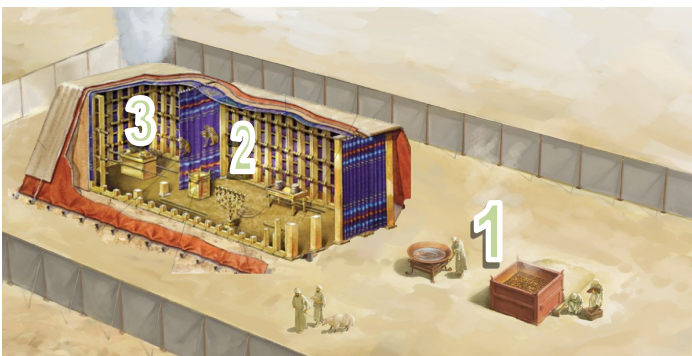
God is very particular. You see, sin and death come from

disobedience. Eternal life and joy come from obedience. But this is not what you hear from the pulpit in most churches today. What you hear is that you can live the best you want to and Jesus makes up the difference. That is not what the Bible teaches. We are to live exactly as the Bible teaches. Our homes, our bodies and all that we have are to be exact patterns of the divine model.

Jesus is our example of perfection. He said that we are to follow Him. He came to set us an example of what our lives should be. He said, "But the world must learn that I love the Father and that I do *exactly* what My Father has commanded Me." John 14:31.

The temple in the wilderness was an example of the perfection that we are to have in our body temples. We are to make our body temples "exactly like the pattern I will show you." What pattern did He show us? A perfect, righteous, sinless pattern is what He showed us. He commands us to "Be perfect, therefore, as your heavenly Father is perfect." That is the command. That is the pattern. That is the only way we can get to heaven. Matthew 5:48.

To understand Daniel 8:14 and what the "sanctuary be cleansed" means, we must understand the earthly sanctuary that God instructed Moses to build. Since it is the pattern of the heavenly sanctuary it shows us what is taking place **in the heavenly sanctuary**.



As you can see from the illustration of the temple, the sanctuary was divided into three main parts: 1) Courtyard, 2) Holy Place and 3) Most Holy Place. Earlier, we learned what part these sections played in the symbolic plan of salvation. They did not save you; they only represented the plan of salvation. Only Jesus saves us. This temple was only a pointer that helped the worshiper understand the plan of salvation. Since we covered the plan of salvation earlier, we will not repeat it. What we are interested in is the "cleansing of the sanctuary" and its relevance to our lives.

Just as significant as the burning of the sacrifice was the placing of the blood. It wasn't just the sacrifice that symbolically cleansed, it was the giving of the blood. That blood was very significant. The priest took a portion of the blood and sprinkled it at the altar of incense in the Holy Place. That is very important. "Then the anointed priest shall take some of the bull's blood and



carry it into the Tent of Meeting. He is to dip his finger into the blood and sprinkle some of it seven times before the Lord, in front of the curtain of the sanctuary. The priest shall then put some of the blood on the horns of the altar of fragrant incense that is before the Lord in the Tent of Meeting." Leviticus 4:5-7.



In essence, the sin of the sinner is being **transferred from the sinner to the sanctuary**. You might say that his sin is being "recorded" in the temple. Our recording angels, who are writing everything we say and do in our record books, physically accomplish this symbolic act. "The dead were judged according to what they had done **as recorded in the books**." Revelation 20:12. Repeatedly the Bible talks about our acts being recorded in a book that is kept in the temple sanctuary.

Day after day the blood of sinners is being accumulated in the heavenly Most Holy Place. That is where God dwells. Sinners who have confessed their sins have now been set free from that sin. But the sin must still be dealt with. The sinner is now free of the sin, but the sin is still in need of a final resting place. Even though Jesus can forgive the sinner, the sin must be atoned for. **It cannot remain in the sanctuary forever.** It must be destroyed. It must be blotted out. Paying the penalty for your sin does not blot out the sin itself.

Moral Law  
Of Covenant  
NOT ABOLISHED

Ordinance Law  
Of Covenant  
ABOLISHED



Mat 5:17 "Do not think that I have come to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I have not come to abolish them.

Heb 7:24 But because Jesus lives forever, he has a permanent priesthood.

Rom 3:31 Do we, then, abolish the Law by this faith? Of course not! Instead, we uphold the Law.

Heb 9:9-10 This illustration for today indicates that the gifts and sacrifices being offered could not clear the conscience of a worshiper, since they deal only with food, drink, and various washings, which are required for the body until the time when things would be set right.

When Jesus died on the cross, His blood was provided to pay **the penalty** for our **past sins**. However, the sin was transferred from the sinner who confessed, turned away from and stopped sinning, **to the temple sanctuary in heaven**. As the type on earth symbolized, so the reality is taking place in Heaven.

Jesus stands in the heavenly temple as our great High Priest. “Therefore, since we have a great high priest who has gone through the heavens, Jesus the Son of God.” Hebrews 4:14. “We do have such a high priest, who sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven, and who serves in the sanctuary, the true tabernacle set up by the Lord, not by man.” Hebrews 8:1, 2.

Jesus is removing all confessed, turned-away-from sins and taking responsibility for them. However, the sin is still hanging around in the books in heaven. “How much more then, will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself unblemished to God, cleanse our consciences from acts that lead to death, so that we may serve the living God. Hebrews 9:14. Notice, it did not cleanse the sin, it cleansed our consciences. We are clean of the sin, but the sin is still to be dealt with. Jesus is bearing our sins in heaven at this time. But eventually they must be completely done away with. “So Christ was sacrificed once *to take away the sins* of many people; and He will appear a second time, *not to bear sin*, but to bring salvation to those who are waiting for Him.” Hebrews 9:28.

That is where Yom Kippur comes in. That was the day that all the sins for the past year were done away with. That was the “cleansing of the sanctuary.” In the Bible it is called, the “Day of Atonement”. Leviticus 23:27.

“Yom Kippur, the Jewish Day of Atonement, is celebrated in early fall on Tishri 10 of the Jewish calendar, 10 days after ROSH HASHANAH, the New Year. Regarded as the Sabbath of Sabbaths, *Yom Kippur is marked by fasting, confession to God of sins committed during the last year, and prayers of forgiveness*. Observance begins on Yom Kippur eve with the kol nidre service of repentance. *Originally, Yom Kippur was the only day of the year when the high priest entered the inner sanctuary of the Temple* (the Holy of Holies) to offer sacrifice. A goat—the so-called scapegoat—symbolically carrying the sins of the Jewish people, was then driven into the desert.” *Grolier*

All year long the sins of the people have been **transferred from them to the sanctuary**. The sins are now waiting for the Day of Atonement to be cleansed **from the temple**. Once a year all the people who have had their sins confessed, turned away from and transferred to the temple, gathered around the sanctuary. They were to “hold a sacred assembly and deny yourselves, and present an offering made to the Lord by fire. Do no work on that day, because it is the Day of Atonement, when atonement is made for you before the Lord your God. Anyone who

does not deny himself on that day must be cut off from his people.” Leviticus 23:27-30.

Every day throughout the year, one lamb, or equivalent, was to be used as a substitute for the sin of the sinner. On the Day of Atonement, two goats were to be taken. The priest was to present them “before the Lord at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting. He is to cast lots for the two goats – one lot for the Lord and the other for the scapegoat.” Leviticus 16:7, 8.

This is interesting; two goats are taken, not just one. One for the Lord, representing the sacrifice of Jesus Christ on the cross for our sins, and one as a scapegoat. What was the scapegoat? We shall soon see.

Taking the goat for the Lord, the priest was to “slaughter the goat for the sin offering for the people and take its blood behind the curtain and do with it as he did with the bull’s blood: He shall sprinkle it on the atonement cover and in front of it. *In this way he will make atonement for the Most Holy Place because of the uncleanness and rebellion of the Israelites, whatever their sins have been.*” Leviticus 16:15, 16.

You see, all year long the people were cleansed of their sins by their sins being transferred to the Sanctuary. Now the Most Holy Place had to be cleansed of the sins that were transferred to it throughout the year. Atonement had to be made for it. The people were symbolically clean, but now the people, the **camp and the temple** were symbolically clean. “Because on this day atonement will be made for you, to *cleanse you*. Then, *before the Lord, you will be clean from all your sins.*” Leviticus 16:30.

So where did the sins go? That is what the scapegoat is all about. Jesus has paid the *penalty* for sin, but the sin must be destroyed. The scapegoat represented, symbolically portrayed, the destruction of sin. The priest was to “lay both hands on the head of the live goat (scapegoat) and confess over it all the wickedness and rebellion of the Israelites – all their sins – and put them on the goat’s head. He shall send the goat away into the desert in the care of a man appointed for the task. The



*goat will carry on itself all their sins to a solitary place.*” Leviticus 16:21, 22. It’s as if the priest went into the temple and gathered up all the sins that had been placed there throughout the year, and placed them on the head of the scapegoat.

Jesus has paid the price for our sins. He bore them away from us to the heavenly temple to be in storage until they are to be dealt with eternally. Jesus is not going to carry them on Himself for all eternity. That would be the same as having sin for all eternity. The Bible tells us that sin and sinner will be destroyed for all eternity; not hanging around.

Before we get to that part, though, we must back up a little bit. The Day of Atonement was a judgment day. It was a day that decided who would live and who would die, or be “cut off” from the community. If a person had confessed all his sins and had transferred them throughout the year to the temple, then on the Day of Atonement, he would be judged clean and free from sin and would be allowed to live.

If, on the other hand, a person who had not confessed or turned away from his sins, he would have been found guilty and would have been destroyed, cut off, from the community. In order to enter into the judgment you wanted to have all your sins blotted out from your record and transferred to the record in the temple. “Atonement is to be made once a year for all the sins of the Israelites.” Leviticus 16:34.

The significant aspect of that last statement is the fact that they were not atoned for during the year. The sins were only laid up in the sanctuary until the Day of Atonement. Then they were atoned for.

The same is true now. It is not “once saved always saved”, but a continuously being saved. Waiting until “He will appear a second time, not to bear sin, but to **bring salvation** to those who are waiting for Him.” Hebrews 9:28.

If a person turned away from his sin and stopped sinning, then his sin was atoned for on the Day of Atonement. However, if he had confessed his sin and brought a lamb, but did not turn away from his sin and continued in it, he would be destroyed on the Day of Atonement.

“Therefore, son of man, say to your countrymen, ‘The righteousness of the righteous man will not save him when he disobeys, and the wickedness of the wicked man will not cause him to fall when he turns from it. The righteous man, if he sins, will not be allowed to live because of his former righteousness. If I tell the righteous man that he will surely live, but then he trusts in his righteousness and does evil, none of the righteous things he has done will be remembered; he will die for the evil he has done. And if I say to the wicked man, ‘You will surely die,’ but he then turns away from his sin and does what is just and right ... none of the sins he has committed will be remembered against him. He has done what is just and right; he will surely live.’” Ezekiel 33:12-16.

The New Testament says the very same thing. “If we deliberately keep on sinning after we have received the knowledge of the truth, no sacrifice for sins is left, but only a fearful expectation of judgment and of raging fire that will **consume** the enemies of God.” Hebrews 10:26, 27.

Since the earthly temple was a symbolic play of the real life temple in heaven, it demonstrated what was taking place in heaven. All day long, for as long as a person

lived on this earth, he must be confessing and turning away from his sins. He cannot have any unconfessed sins hanging around him at the investigative judgment. If he does, he will be cut off from the community of those who will be found in heaven.

Those who have been confessing their sins and **turning away from them** so that they are living the perfect, righteous, sinless life of Jesus, will be declared righteous before God at the investigative judgment. “Blessed are those who wash their robes, that they may have the right to the tree of life and may go through the gates into the city.” Revelation 22:14.

As the sanctuary cleansing began on the Day of Atonement, so in real life, the **heavenly sanctuary** began to be cleansed on October 22, 1844. Why does it need to be cleansed? Because, as shown by the symbolic sanctuary, all the confessed, turned away from sins, from Adam to us have been transferred from the sinner to the temple by the blood of Jesus. Just as the sin was transferred symbolically by the blood of the lamb to the temple. You might say “Spring Cleaning” began in the Heavenly Sanctuary on October 22, 1844.

---

## SANCTUARY BROUGHT LOW

There was also another reason for this cleansing, or restoring of the temple. In Daniel chapter eight verses nine through 13 we find the worldwide pagan “Christian” church doing several things.

1. **It grew until it reached the host of heavens.**
2. **It threw some of the starry host down to earth.**
3. **It trampled on them.**
4. **It set itself up as great as the Prince of the host (Jesus Christ: Acts 5:31)**
5. **It took away the daily sacrifice from Jesus.**
6. **The place of the sanctuary was brought low.**
7. **The daily sacrifice was given over to it.**
8. **Truth was thrown to the ground.**

These things would happen, said the “holy one” until the end of the 2300 days. So, what happened on October 22, 1844?

The first thing that took place was the “beginning of the end”. Daniel 8:14 was the time prophecy that takes us down to the investigative judgment. The heavenly sanctuary is in the process of being cleansed.

“As I looked, thrones were set in place, and the Ancient of Days took His seat.” Daniel 7:9. Here we have the

beginning of the investigative judgment. Everyone who has ever lived and now dead, must pass before the reviewing panel of God. "The court was seated, and the books were opened." Daniel 7:10.

In 1844 the Court of the Universe was seated, much like the U.S. Supreme Court taking its seat to hear a case. Every recording angel who had attended a person on earth brought his book to that court. "A river of fire was flowing, coming out from before Him. Thousands upon thousands attended Him; ten thousand times ten thousand stood before Him." Daniel 7:10. In the Hebrew the sense of this verse is One coming into a mighty hall where all the angels had been waiting for Him. Then, as He entered, they all stood up. After the One came to His place, the angels then sat down and court was in session. Now let's go back up and take a look at what is being judged.

1. The worldly Christians have grown to the power of "heaven". They claim that you are saved by belonging and adhering to their church or organization. Not true. We are saved only through Jesus and His teachings: the truth.

2. Throwing some of the starry host (saints) down is symbolic of the persecution that would take place. Righteous people are called saints. We belong to the family of God. The worldly churches are trying to cast us down from our high calling and make us "sinners" as they are; trying to keep us from the power of Jesus that purifies and cleanses us.

3. It (the established church) trampled on them. During the 1260 years that the Catholic Church ruled the world, it killed millions people. Persecution will again arise by the "Christian" churches against the saints of God who keep His Ten Commandments. Churches are suing other churches. Trampling truth. They do not teach the teachings of Jesus.

4. The churches have set themselves up as our savior. They teach their pagan teachings as the teachings for eternal life. They have set themselves up in place of God and Jesus Christ, the Way the Truth and the Life. This is now all churches, including the Sabbath keeping churches.

5. The worldly churches take away the daily sacrifice of Jesus by making it of none effect. They tell you that you can go on sinning, and it is OK because Jesus died and His blood covers us. NO! You must not crucify the Son of God all over again and subject Him to public disgrace. His death will not save you, nor His blood cover you, if you do not obey Him and stop sinning and become

perfect as He is through His power. He died to give us the power to **conquer** sin in our lives right now!

6. The teachings of the truths of the sanctuary have been brought low and are almost forgotten by the worldly churches. They don't want you to know that your sins will be brought up in judgment. They fight the truths of God to pacify you and teach you "peace, peace" when there is no peace. Have you confessed all your sins and turned away from them? You must. Your name may come up at any moment now in the Court of the Universe. What will be the outcome? Will you be able to stand in the assembly of the righteous, perfect, sinless people? Or not?

7. The daily sacrifice was given over to it because it has taken it and perverted it. You don't need Jesus any more. All you need is "speaking in tongues" and to "claim the name" or go to a "praise" worship to be saved. But that is not what Jesus teaches. You must daily die to self and to sin and live daily, the righteous, perfect sinless life of Jesus.

8. It threw truth down to the ground and trampled it underfoot (vs 13). The worldly churches are teaching paganism that has been passed down to us through the Catholic Church. If you try to teach the teachings of Jesus: Stop sinning, be perfect, and keep the Ten Commandments to "get" eternal life to the churches, and they will spit on them and trample on them. They don't want to hear it.

In 1844 God began to make it all right again. He took back His sanctuary and opened the "windows" of heaven. "Then God's temple in heaven was opened, and within His temple was seen the **ark of His covenant.**" Revelation 11:19. God let the truth shine out. Truth that had been trampled on, hidden and twisted, was now shining brightly to the world. Now the whole world would know that the sanctuary was not the earth, as was once thought by the worldly churches, but is in heaven. Now the world would see that God is judge and High Priest, not the pope or any church. God began to set the record straight.

God was cleansing, reconsecrating and vindicating His sanctuary in heaven, and His authority. With a loud cry the message was given to the earth. It literally filled the whole world. In the 1800's there was a great religious awakening. The entire world was expecting Jesus to come and cleanse the sanctuary. However, they thought the earth was the "temple" that would be cleansed.

So how did God bring the attention of the world to His temple and the cleansing, reconsecrating, that was going



on? He sent the three angels' messages of Revelation 14:6, 7.

# 3 Angels' Messages



“Then I saw another angel flying in midair, and he had the eternal gospel to proclaim to those who live on the earth – to every nation, tribe, language and people. He said in a loud voice, ‘Fear God and give **Him glory**, because the hour of His judgment has come. Worship Him who made the heavens, the earth, the sea and the springs of water.’” Revelation 14:6, 7.

The main points of this proclamation are as follows:

1. Gave the Eternal Gospel
2. Given to Everyone on Earth
3. We are to Fear God
4. The Hour of His Judgment HAD Come
5. Worship Him as Creator

**The first point is the eternal gospel.** Most of the worldly churches do not teach the eternal gospel. They teach that the gospel is the good news of Christ being born, living, dying and rising again. Wow! They say, that is good news. Then they go off and make idol worship out of a pagan holiday called Easter. They shout for joy over the resurrection of Christ.

However that is not the eternal gospel! If it was “**the** gospel”, it could not be eternal. It would have a beginning and would be called the “New Testament Gospel”. However, it is called the **eternal** gospel. Why?

The eternal gospel is from eternity. The good news has always been, “If you obey the Ten Commandments you will have eternal life”. That is the **eternal good news**. Adam and Eve were given it in the Garden: obey and live eternally, disobey and die. They broke the Ten Commandments and instead of paying the penalty immediately, they were given grace to keep them alive physically so they could experience, once again, the good news of the gospel: that if they obeyed the Ten Commandments they could once again have eternal life.

The good news has always been: Stop sinning, be perfect and keep the Ten Commandments to have eternal life. The angel came to Mary and said, “You are to give Him the name Jesus, because He will save His people **from their sins**.” Matthew 1:21. That is the good news. That is

the gospel. We can be saved, right now, **from our sins** and never again have to be bound by them nor live in them. We can be set free from sin, right now!

John the Baptist was sent to preach the “good news” to the world. He was sent to “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children and the disobedient to the wisdom of the righteous – to make ready a people prepared for the Lord.” “To remember His holy covenant (Ten Commandments).” “To enable us to serve Him without fear in **holiness** and **righteousness** before Him all our days.” “To give His people the knowledge of salvation.” Luke 1:17, 72, 74, 77.

When John began preaching, he was preaching a “baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins.” He was a “voice of one calling in the desert, ‘Prepare the way for the Lord, make straight paths for Him.’” He taught the people to “produce fruit (works) in keeping with repentance.” Luke 3:3, 4, 8.

When Jesus sent out His disciples to teach the gospel, they did not go out teaching the birth, life, death and resurrection of Jesus. One half of that had not yet been accomplished. No, they went out teaching people that they were to stop sinning, and to prepare their lives for the kingdom of God that had come to them.

In fact, Jesus never taught His disciples about His death until about three months before He died. And when He taught them, He always “took the Twelve aside”. Luke 18:31. He never told them in public. And even after telling His disciples about His death and resurrection, “they did not understand what He meant.” Mark 9:32. How could they teach what they did not believe or understand?

Why is the resurrection of Christ not the “Good News”? Because it doesn’t make any difference **for our salvation**. Did you know that it is not the resurrection that was important, but **the death** that was all-important? It was the **death** of Christ that **paid the penalty** for sin, not the resurrection. **If** Jesus had never risen from the grave, we still would have had eternal life. He was willing to give His life, eternally, that we might have eternal life. His resurrection was not important **for our resurrection**. His resurrection was **just the result** of His righteous, obedient and perfect life. That is all. The same for us. If we live His righteous, obedient and perfect life, we too will be resurrected. Yet look at how mixed up we have become in our teaching and thinking.

Remember, Jesus represented the lamb. The lamb was slain. The lamb was not raised to life after being slain. It is the death of Christ that pays the penalty for our past sins. There is nothing in all the temple symbolism that represents the resurrection of Christ. And yet, that is about all you hear today is the resurrection and the

“benefits” of Christ’s resurrection. But how few are understanding His death.

At the last supper, **Jesus never mentioned His resurrection.** He gave them the symbol and memorial **of His death.** Nevertheless, we have all but forgotten His death. We do not want to be reminded that we also are to die to self. Instead, we want to have the glory of the resurrection without the pain and suffering of the sacrifice. We want the world **and** eternal life. Can’t be done!

So where did we pick up this ritual of Easter and resurrection idolatry? Simple, if you know your history. Let’s start with the Bible. In Ezekiel 8:14, 15 we read, “Then He (Jesus) brought me to the entrance to the north gate of the house of the Lord, and I saw women sitting there, mourning for Tammuz. He said to me, ‘Do you see this, son of man? You will see things that are even more **detestable** than this.’”

What was “detestable”? The worship of Tammuz! The weeping was a form of worship for Tammuz. God detested it. Why? For that answer we go to the history books.

“Another prevalent myth of pastoral societies, often enacted as sacred drama, was the search of the earth goddess for her lost lover, brother, or child who either has been killed or has disappeared from Earth. Symbolizing death and the return of vegetation and life (resurrection), this myth was recorded as early as 3000 BC in the Babylonian cult of ISHTAR (Innina) and Tammuz...”. *Compton’s Encyclopedia*

“The cult of Tammuz, under the west-Semitic name of Adoni (my Lord) and the Greek equivalent Adonis, was widespread throughout the Mediterranean world. According to still extant mythology, **Tammuz died, descended to the lower world, was resurrected, and ascended again to earth and then to heaven.** During his absence the earth remained sterile and the flocks were plundered. Because of his close association with the realm of nature, the fields and animals, he was called “the shepherd.” *Collier’s Encyclopedia*

Do you see? Are you getting the picture? The reason God does not want us to have anything to do with Easter is because it is a pagan holiday that dates as far back as 3000 years **before** Christ. He didn’t want any mingling of righteousness with wickedness. That is why we are not to “celebrate” His resurrection.

“According to the Venerable Bede, the name Easter is derived from the pagan spring festival of the Anglo-Saxon goddess Eostre, and many folk customs associated with Easter (for example, Easter eggs) are of pagan origin.” *Compton’s Encyclopedia*

“Popular Easter customs have included the ‘Easter laugh,’ in which the congregation was moved to laughter by the preacher’s **telling amusing stories** that contained a moral lesson; games played with decorated eggs, ... and dramatic representations of the Resurrection.” *Collier’s Encyclopedia*

It was the Catholic Church that adopted the pagan ritual of Easter. The Protestants have adopted it from the Catholics. Now you can understand how stupid it is for Protestants to speak against the Catholics, when the Protestants teach and practice almost every single pagan doctrine that the Catholic Church teaches. There is no difference between a Catholic of today and a Protestant of today. Both are observing pagan rituals.

Do we praise God for the resurrection of Christ? YES! Thank God for raising Him from the dead. But His resurrection has nothing to do with **your** eternal salvation unless you live as He lived. Only those who follow Jesus into the death of their old natures, and put on Christ’s new creation, will follow Christ in His resurrection.

**The second point** is that this Good News, which God is waiting for His church to proclaim, must be taught to all the world. It was taught briefly between 1844 and 1900, but then was lost. When this gospel, stop sinning, be perfect and keep the ten Commandments to get your eternal life, is given to every nation, tribe, language and people, then Jesus will come.

**The third point** is to fear God. He deserves our respect and fear. He holds in His hands our eternal destiny. If you do not fear Him, you will not obey Him. The world has tried to downplay that fear. They teach that He is just a good drinking buddy and a good Joe-blow that we can slap on the back and have a good laugh with. That He is a God of “love” and we don’t need to be afraid of Him or fear Him. How sad. In addition, their lives reveal that attitude. They still go on sinning.

**The fourth point is the why.** Why are we to accept this eternal gospel to fear God and stop sinning? Because **the judgment has begun!** In 1844 the investigative judgment began. Starting with Adam and Eve, their books were opened and their lives were compared to the standard of righteousness: the Ten Commandments. If they humbled themselves and accepted the power of the Messiah in their lives, by keeping the Ten Commandments perfectly, then their sins would be blotted out from their books and their names registered in the Book of Life. If they had not stopped sinning, then their sins could not be blotted out and they would have to pay the penalty for their sins. Soon He will be to **your** book.

**The fifth point** is that God deserves our worship. We must be teaching people **how** to serve God. Jesus said,

before He left for heaven to be our High Priest, teach “them to obey everything I have commanded you.” Matthew 28:20. But is that what we are doing? No! We are teaching paganism and worldly, man-made, teachings and traditions.

Notice that this fifth point tells us Who this God is that we are to worship. He is the Creator of heaven, earth, the sea and the springs of water. This is an exact parallel of the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment of the Ten Commandments. We are to come back to the God who not only created the world, but also the Sabbath. We are to teach people how to keep the 7<sup>th</sup>-day (Saturday) Sabbath. The world teaches the pagan tradition of the 1<sup>st</sup>-day (Sunday) sabbath. But that day is the devil’s counterfeit to God’s Sabbath.

Now you can understand the significance of this angel’s message. **It is loud.** It is to all the world. It is so very important. Every soul must make a decision. Every soul must decide to either worship the God of the Saturday, 7th-day Sabbath, or the god of the 1st-day, Sunday. One will give you eternal life, the other eternal death.

The hour of His judgment has come. The court has been set. The books are being opened. What will your book reveal? Is your life ready to be reviewed by God and the holy angels?

This message was begun in 1844 at the end of the 2300 days which began in 457 BC. In 1798 the time prophecy of Daniel 7:25 came to an end. The world was beginning to experience a great religious revival. But by the 1880’s most of the fervor of the churches had died out. They had become steeped in tradition and were, and are, unwilling to accept the truths as **taught by Jesus.**

### The Second angel was beginning to sound around 1960.



Around 1960, the second angel “followed and said, ‘Fallen! Fallen is Babylon the Great, which made all the nations drink the maddening wine of her adulteries.’” Revelation 14:8.

It was in the early 1960’s that humanism began to be taught in the schools and churches with greater force. “Humanism, an educational and philosophical outlook that emphasizes the personal worth of the individual and the central importance of human values as opposed to religious belief, developed in Europe during the RENAISSANCE, influenced by the study of ancient Greek and Latin literature and philosophy. Humanism thus began as an educational program called the humanities, which inculcated those ancient secular values which were consistent with Christian teachings. The Renaissance humanists were often devout Christians, but

they promoted secular values and a love of pagan antiquity.” *Grolier*

“By the 18th century the word humanism had come to be identified with a purely secular attitude—**one that often rejected Christianity altogether.** In the 20th century the term has taken on a number of different, often conflicting, meanings. In the works of the pragmatist philosopher Ferdinand Schiller (1864-1937) humanism is seen as that philosophical understanding which stems from human activity. Irving BABBITT used the word to describe a program of reaction against romanticism and naturalism in literature. Jean Paul SARTRE developed a scientific humanism preaching human worth based on Marxist theory, and the **Roman Catholic Jacques MARITAIN tried to formulate a new Christian humanism based on the philosophy of Thomas AQUINAS.** The American Humanist Association, which grew out of the Unitarian movement, holds that human beings can satisfy religious needs from within, discarding the concept of God as inconsistent with advanced thought and human freedom.” *Grolier*

God says to this church, “I know your deeds, that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish you were either one or the other! So, because you are lukewarm – neither hot nor cold – I am about to **spit you out of My mouth.** You say, ‘I am rich; I have acquired wealth and do not need a thing. But you do not realize that you are wretched, pitiful, poor, blind and naked.’” Revelation 3:15, 16. All the Christian Churches have apostatized.

### The third angel was beginning to sound around 1990.



“A third angel followed them and said in a loud voice: ‘If anyone worships the beast and his image and receives his mark on the forehead or on the hand, he, too, will drink of the wine of God’s fury, which has been poured full strength into the cup of His wrath. He will

be tormented with burning sulfur in the presence of the holy angels and of the Lamb... There is no rest day or night for those who worship the beast and his image, or for anyone who receives the mark of his name.’” Revelation 14:9-11.

As we have already learned, the mark of the beast is Sunday worship and the acceptance of the teachings of the modern worldly churches, such as “saved by grace”. **Those who voluntarily keep Sunday** instead of Saturday, and who have accepted the worldly, pagan traditions, have the mark of the beast.

Who are the true saints of God? “This calls for patient endurance on the part of **the saints** who *obey God’s*

# The Scapegoat

*commandments and remain faithful to Jesus.”* Revelation 14:12. Those who keep the Commandments of God are saints. Those who do not are beast worshipers. This doesn't mean just keeping one or two of them, like Saturday as the Sabbath. It means living them perfectly, without breaking one of them.

The Day of Atonement was a miniature end-of-time play. As the people came out of the camp, the world and their associations with the pagans, to assemble and confess their sins, so we must do the same. We must come out from the worldly churches that keep the pagan Sunday and teach the pagan concept of grace. “Then I heard another voice from heaven say: ‘Come out of her, My people, so that you will not share in her sins, so that you will not receive any of her plagues.’” Revelation 18:4.

“Flee from Babylon! Run for your lives! Do not be destroyed because of her sins. It is time for the Lord's vengeance; He will pay her what she deserves.” “Come out of her, My people! Run for your lives! Run from the fierce anger of the Lord.” Jeremiah 51:6, 45.

It is now time to come out of **all** churches. Not one is teaching the truth. Any denomination, church, minister or priest who teaches that we are saved eternally by grace is not teaching truth. They have accepted the pagan, humanistic teachings of saved by grace and tradition. The church has become their savior. Many “love” their church and their “prophet”, but like the Jews who loved their church and their prophets, they hate God and refuse to listen to those of us He is sending to wake them up. It is time to come out. Not to start a new church, but to live righteously and perfectly. We are to prepare our lives to fit into the heavenly kingdom. We must start washing our robes and purifying ourselves so we will be able to stand in the sight of a perfect God, perfectly.

That was the symbolic message of the temple and the Day of Atonement. The people spent a few days prior to the Day of Atonement washing their clothes and getting their minds and hearts ready to meet their God. Are you getting your mind and heart ready to meet the God of the Bible and the Seventh-day (Saturday) Sabbath?

A note: please keep in mind, these messages are going to be proclaimed again in far greater volume. They have been going out, but as we near the end of time, there will be a worldwide proclamation such as has never been heard or seen to prepare the world for the coming of Jesus.



“When Aaron has finished making atonement for the Most Holy Place, the Tent of Meeting and the altar, he shall bring forward the live goat. He is to lay both hands on the head of the live goat and confess over it all wickedness and rebellion of the Israelites – all their sins – and put them on the goat's head.” Leviticus 16:20, 21.

Two goats were taken: one for the Lord and one for the scapegoat. The one for the Lord, representing Jesus and His death to pay **the penalty** for our sins, had already been slain in verse 15. This scapegoat can not be Jesus. He did not, nor does He ever, bear sins twice for us. Hebrews is very explicit about that. “So **Christ was sacrificed once** to take away the sins of many people...” Hebrews 9:28. (Notice: “many”, not all.)

So who does the scapegoat represent? When we go back into Biblical history we see an important principle taking place. Lucifer is always trying to get us to sin by breaking God's law, and Jesus is trying to get us to resist and turn away from sin by keeping God's law.

Lucifer is the originator of sin. Sin belongs with him and on him. We only choose whether or not to participate with him in his original sin. We are not the originator of sin, Lucifer is. What Leviticus 16 is trying to symbolize through these two goats is quite simple. Jesus pays the penalty for our sins, if we confess and turn away from them. But He is not going to keep them and bear them forever. Sin and sinner will be destroyed forever says the Bible. It will not be hanging around, either on Jesus, or in an “eternally” burning hell. The Bible tells us that sin will be eternally destroyed; never to rise again.

Since the wicked will receive the reward for their sins, they will be paying the price for their sins. They will have to accept the wages of their sin: death. They will die **for their own sins** because they refused to accept the sacrifice of Jesus for their sins.

They did this by refusing to turn away from their sins through faith in the power of Christ. They may have believed in Christ historically, but they refused to believe in Him and His teachings to stop sinning, be perfect and keep the Ten Commandments for eternal life.

Now that those sins are accounted for, what happens to the sins of the saints that have been confessed, turned away from and taken from the saints through the power of Christ? Christ paid the penalty, but what happens to the sins? That is what the scapegoat is all about. The scapegoat, “will carry on itself all their sins to a solitary place...” Leviticus 16:22.

“Azazel, in Jewish legend, demon or evil spirit; symbol of uncleanness; in ancient rites of Yom Kippur sins of Jewish people were transferred to scapegoat who was sent into the wilderness to the evil spirit and thrown to its death; described in later rabbinic writings as fallen angel.” *Compton’s Encyclopedia*

The scapegoat represents the devil, Lucifer, the originator of sin. When the time comes, as we shall see later, **all the sins of the righteous people, whom Jesus took away from them and stored up in the heavenly temple, will be placed on the head of Lucifer.** He brought them into this world, he can have them back. Not only will he have to pay the penalty for his own wickedness, but he will also have to accept responsibility for all the sins he provoked the righteous to commit.

He will “carry on itself all their sins to a solitary place.” Lev. 16:22. That is exactly what will happen. In the end of time Lucifer will be “seized... that ancient serpent, who is the devil, or Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. He threw him into the Abyss, and locked and sealed it over him, to keep him from deceiving the nations anymore until the thousand years were ended.”... “But fire came down from heaven and devoured them. And the devil, who deceived them, was thrown into the lake of burning sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown.” Revelation 20:2, 3, 9, 10.

The universe is now clean. **Sin has been destroyed.** Sinners and the originator of sins have been destroyed. All sins have been wiped out. Not one sin will be left in a universe that has a “new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had **passed away.**” “He will wipe every tear from their eyes. There will be **no more death, or mourning or crying or pain, for the old order of things has passed away.**” Revelation 21:1, 4.



When will the end of time come? When will all this take place? What are the signs of His coming? Are they still to take place, or have most of them been already fulfilled? In this section, I am going to lay it out for you in a manner, I hope, that you will be able to see CLEARLY, just how far we are into the end of time.

### Let’s recap what we have already learned

Daniel two told us that time would continue down from

the head of gold, Babylon in 605 BC, to the toes, our day. At that time, and “in the time of those kings, the God of heaven will set up a kingdom that will never be destroyed, nor will it be left to another people. **It will crush all those kingdoms and bring them to an end,** but it will itself endure forever.” Daniel 2:44.

Just taking that text we find that we are living in the last days. There will be no other Western European nation to rise and take the place of the ten toes: England, Germany, Switzerland, France, Italy, Portugal and Spain. (As we learned earlier, three were uprooted by the Catholic Church and are no longer a part of this message.)

The next large-time prophecy is given in Daniel seven. We are told in Daniel seven, verse 25, that the “saints will be handed over to him (Catholic Church) for a time, times and half a time.” As we have studied, that time period ran from AD 538 to AD 1798 when the pope was taken captive. That fulfilled the time prophecy of Daniel seven and Revelation 12:6, 14; 13:3, 5. (Time, times, half of time; 1260 days; and forty-two months are all the same time period.)

The next time prophecy that brings us down to our day is Daniel 8:14 and 9:25-27. As we have learned earlier, these prophecies are one. They began in 457 BC and have been fulfilling in a continuum of successive dates down to our day: 457 BC, 408 BC, AD 27, AD 30 and AD 1844.

Let’s take a look at some more prophecies and see how close they bring us to the close of probation. The disciples came up to Jesus one day and asked Him, “when will this happen, and what will be the sign of Your coming and of the end of the age?” Matthew 24:3. In mercy to the disciples Jesus answered this question in combination. One part of this prophecy had to do with the destruction of Jerusalem. The other part had to do with the end of the world. Since both parallel each other, it makes perfect sense for Jesus to combine the allegories. Also, to the disciples, the destruction of Jerusalem was the “end of the world” or “end of time” for them.

In every “age” there is an “end of time” for those people. The prophecies of the Bible have a primary fulfillment and many secondary fulfillments that would be understood by each generation. If you were a Jew or Christian at the time of the disciples, your end of time would come with the destruction of the Temple. In your world that would be the end. Martin Luther, based on the reading of prophecy as he understood it, thought the end of time would take place in his day, the 1600’s.

In verse four we find the first sign dealing more specifically with the end of Jerusalem. After Christ, many people arose and claimed to be THE “messiah”. However, the disciples had been warned. All true

Christians gave them no heed. Today we would not be fooled by such a claim. We know that the Messiah has already come. However, if you rephrase that just a little bit, it will sound very familiar. “I have Christ living in me.” “I come in the Name of Christ.” “I am filled with the Holy Spirit.” “Our church is spirit filled.” “We speak with tongues.” “I am prophet so and so”. “Our church is the remnant”. “You must belong to our church”.

Sound familiar? Jesus said that these would “deceive many”. Matthew 24:5. Just because they claim to have the Holy Spirit, or claim to have Christ living in them or claim to come in the Name of Christ, doesn’t mean they work for Jesus. Watch out! We must take everything to the Bible and test the spirit that is claiming to have Christ. If the spirit teaches the teachings of Jesus: stop sinning, be perfect and keep the Ten Commandments to “get” eternal life, it is from God. If not, it is from the devil. 2 John 1:8-10.

The next is wars and rumors of wars, nation against nation. What is interesting about this prediction is Jesus said **don’t concern yourself about this part of the prediction.** There will always be wars and conflicts, for those are everyday things and have nothing to do with the end of time. “You will hear of wars and rumors of wars, but see to it that you are NOT ALARMED. Such things must happen, but **the end is still to come.**” Matthew 24:6.

So what do we look for? “Famines and earthquakes in various places. All these are the **beginning of birth pains.**” Matthew 24:7,8. “Nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. There will be great earthquakes, famines and pestilence in various places, and **fearful events and great signs from heaven.**” Luke 21:10.



However, looking at the Greek words for "nation" and "kingdom", one can see a direct parallel to what is

happening today. Instead of the word "nation", let us put in the Greek word "race". Look at what the Democratic party is doing, pitting race against race. Then, if we substitute the Greek word "royalty" for "kingdom", yes, royalty is being pitted against each other. Think "royalty" of Hollywood, industry and etc.

You see, it is the devil who likes to bring famines, earthquakes, pestilence, etc. The Lord Jesus is always trying to protect us from these assaults of the devil. God

loves us. However, if we remove ourselves from His protection, then we will be visited with these things. Today, people, scientists and governments want you to believe these things are happening because of global warming. They aren’t. They are happening because the world has rejected God’s laws. It is a sin thing.

Job was an example. The Lord removed His protection just so the universe and the world could see the true character of the devil. This was a very special circumstance. In the end of time God has promised, like the Israelites in Egypt, that none of these plagues would fall on His special people who are earning their eternal salvation by obedience to the Ten Commandments.

The reason they are falling on the world is because the world has rejected the truths of God. They will become more RELIGIOUS, but not Christian. The world will set up its own **religious laws. Look at the acceptance of drugs and homosexuality.** Soon the world will pass the Sunday law forcing all to follow the devil’s religion. Because of that, the Holy Spirit is being withdrawn (pushed away) from the world and is being poured out in greater power on the righteous who keep the Ten Commandments of God and His Seventh-day Sabbath. In verses 10 through 12 we find:

- Many will turn away from the faith
- Many will betray and hate each other
- Many false prophets appearing
- Many people being deceived
- Increase of wickedness
- Love of most growing cold

Do we see that today? In no other time of history, except for the time directly preceding the flood, do we find all these things taking place. They are happening now. They are and always have been the true test of coming disasters. God is only interested in righteousness. As we learned earlier, if there were only 10 righteous people in Sodom and Gomorrah, He would have spared them.

If Jerusalem had only a few righteous people in it, God would not have destroyed it by the armies of Babylon. But because at the time of the flood, Sodom, Egypt, Jerusalem in 605 BC, Jerusalem again in AD 70 and the world today, there are only a remnant of righteous, God must destroy the world and remake it. He cannot tolerate sin. The world has all together cast off the Law of God and it cannot be stopped.

“So when you see standing in the holy place the ‘abomination that causes desolation’, spoken of through the prophet Daniel – let the reader understand — ... for then there will be great distress, unequalled from the beginning of the world until now – never to be equaled again.” Matthew 24:15, 21.

What is supposed to be holy? The churches, our bodies and the Word of God along with the Ten Commandments are to be holy. What is happening today? The churches no longer teach the truth of the Word of God. They have mixed humanism, socialism and evolution into their teaching. No longer is the Word of God taught as the Rock we can stand on, but as a philosophy that we silly little humans can improve upon. The Ten Commandments are no longer taught as relevant to our lives. (At least not all of them.) “Saved by grace” and unconditional love is taught instead of “Saved by obedience”. Homosexuality and “free love” are now accepted in the church. All an “abomination” unto the Lord.

The “distress of those days” that Jesus spoke about, referred specifically to the 1260 years that would be ruled by the Catholic Church. That time ended, as noted above, in 1798. Nevertheless, a parallel time of distress called the time of Jacob’s trouble is soon to burst upon us.

How close is the end of time? Jesus said that “Immediately after the distress of those days” certain signs in the sky would happen. What were those signs? In Revelation we are given a fuller picture of these events. Revelation 6:12, 13 is outlined as such:

- There was a great earthquake
- The sun will be darkened
- The moon will not give its light (turn red)
- The stars will fall from the sky

If you check your encyclopedia, you will find that these events have already taken place. Let’s do them in order.

- “The Lisbon Earthquake of 1755. Portugal, Spain, and northern Morocco were subjected to three strong shocks in the forenoon of Nov. 1, 1755. Lisbon was near the northern end of a zone of great damage which extended south into Morocco. It was All Saints’ Day and, as many of the churches were destroyed, the loss of life was very heavy. In Lisbon, **probably 20 percent or more of the population perished as a result of the earthquake** or the great sea wave generated by it, and over half the houses were ruined. The shocks were felt over much of Europe affecting an area of at least 1,500,000 square miles.” *Collier’s (Stay out of the churches!)*
- “Almost, if not altogether alone, as the most mysterious and as yet unexplained phenomenon of its kind, in nature’s diversified range of events, during the last century, stands the *Dark Day of May Nineteenth*, 1780,—a most unaccountable darkening of the whole visible heavens and atmosphere in New England,—which brought intense alarm and distress to multitudes of minds, as well as dismay in the brute

creation, the fowls fleeing, bewildered, to their roosts, and the birds to their nests, and the cattle returning to their stalls. Indeed, thousands of the good people of that day became fully convinced that the end of all things terrestrial had come; many gave up, for the time, their secular pursuits, and betook themselves to religious devotions.” “*Our First Century*” by R.M. Devens, published 1879

- That night, when the darkness ended, the moon was darkened and looked blood red.
- “Extensive and magnificent showers of shooting stars have been known to occur at various places in modern times; but the most universal and wonderful which has ever been recorded is that of the thirteenth of November, 1833, *the whole firmament, over all the United States, being then, for hours, in fiery commotion!* No celestial phenomenon has ever occurred in this country, since its first settlement, which was viewed with such intense admiration by one class in the community, or with so much dread and alarm by another... During the three hours of its continuance, the day of judgment was believed to be only waiting for sunrise... Impromptu meetings for prayer were held in many places.” “*Our First Century*” by R.M. Devens, published 1879

As you can see, we are at the end of earth’s history. All time prophecies came to an end, on or before 1844. All except one, the time prophecy that tells us the length of the plagues. The Bible says that there is no more time. Revelation 10:6. How true that is. We are like the world before the flood, living on borrowed time. The ark of God is being built right now to house the remnant of God. Are you ready to forsake the world and its churches to prepare for a new world?

An interesting point can be made with Noah and his ark. It would seem to me that if you were living back in that day, and had money, what would you do? Would you take a chance that Noah might not be right? Would you build yourself an ark, just in case? I have no problem with the concept that there may be hundreds of arks littering the Ararat mountain range. That maybe the reason why so many people claim to have found “the” ark.

But you see, God didn’t say, build your own ark. He told them that they had to get into the one Noah was building. Even if it wasn’t pretty or luxurious. Even if you had to feed animals and shovel manure. It might be stinky and smelly, but it was **the one** that would save you. Why? Because God said so. It was the one with His protection. It took humility to get into it.

You may have had your ark sitting behind the house, just in case. And when the rain came, your family may have

had time to jump in and close the door. But you didn't survive because the flood was so great, the storm so intense, that even Satan feared for his life. Your ark, along with all the others, leaked, sank and was destroyed.

But you say, Jesus stated that we would not know the day nor the hour; that only the Father knows these things. You are correct. I don't know the **day or the hour**. However, I will be able to tell you the year. You see, Jesus comes as a thief in the night, not to the righteous, but to the wicked.

"Now, brothers, about times and dates we do not need to write to you, for you know very well that the day of the Lord will come like a thief in the night. While people are saying, 'Peace and safety,' destruction will come on them suddenly, as labor pains on a pregnant woman, and they will not escape." 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3.

Here we have stated very clearly that the day of the Lord comes on those who are saying, 'Peace and safety.' Look at the world around you. What do you hear? Everyone is talking about the peace and safety of the church. The peace and safety of being a Christian. The peace and safety of the government. How the new world order will bring peace and safety to this world. How we are all to get along and come together in unity and peace. How the government will control our economy and the stock market will never crash again. Right! Homeland Defense!

All of that is a waste of time. They are lost. They don't know the times of destruction that are ahead of us. "But you, brothers, **are not in darkness** so that this day should surprise you like a thief." "So then, let us not be like others, who are ASLEEP, but let us be alert and self-controlled." 1 Thessalonians 5:4, 6.

The whole reason for Daniel, chapters 2, 7, 8, 9, and Revelation are to prepare us for the close of probation. If you are prepared you won't be caught asleep nor be surprised by the thief. Revelation was given to "show His servants **what must soon** take place... what you have seen, what is now and what will take place later. Blessed is the one who reads the words of this prophecy, and blessed are those who hear it and take to heart what is written in it, **because the time is near.**" Revelation 1:1, 19, 3.

If you're being taught that it is a long way off and is for the distant future, you're being taught wrong. If you are being taught about a secret rapture, you are being taught wrong.

Time is not running out, it is out! "The time has come for judging the dead." Revelation 11:18. We are living the last months of earth's history. Are you ready for your probation to close? Are you ready to meet your Creator

face to face? Have you lived up to His perfect, righteous Law of love? If not, are you ready to surrender your life to Him Who loves you and gave Himself for you?

As with Noah's ark, so today. Many people are attempting to build their own "ark". Many are trying to do it their way. Look at all these churches and buildings that are being built. But they won't save you. Stop building churches!! No time for that. You will sink and burn with them. God's way is not for beautiful buildings, but characters of perfection. Characters that represent the perfect, righteous, sinless life of Jesus. Stop trying to build your own "ark" and get on board the one that Jesus says to get into.

---

# DATES

Another way to look at this is to combine all the prophetic dates and see them being fulfilled like this:

- 
- 605 BC – Rise of the Babylonians
  - 538 BC – Rise of the Medo-Persian
  - 457 BC – Command to restore Jerusalem
  - 408 BC – Walls rebuilt
  - 331 BC – Rise of the Greeks
  - 168 BC – Rise of the Roman Empire
  - AD 27 – Anointing of Christ
  - AD 30 – Death of Christ
  - AD 34 – Stoning of Stephen
  - AD 457 – Break up of Rome begins
  - AD 538 – Rise of Catholic Church
  - AD 1755 – Great Earthquake
  - AD 1780 – Sun turns dark
  - AD 1780 – Moon turns blood red
  - AD 1798 – Pope taken captive
  - AD 1833 – Stars fall from heaven
  - AD 1844 – Cleansing of the Sanctuary
  - AD 1960's – Abomination of holy places
  - AD 2005 – Increase in: Earthquakes, famines, droughts, hurricanes, tornadoes, floods, fires, outbreaks of diseases, tornadoes and many more natural disasters.
- SOON:** - International Sunday Law enacted and probation closes: seven months later, Jesus comes.

---

## When is Jesus Coming?

The Bible is actually very plain on this. The problem is, we tend to see only what we want to see. So let us look at what the Bible actually says. Let's start with Daniel 2. We were told that the ten toes (seven after three were uprooted) would never unite. The problem is, they are in the process of uniting. That means Jesus must come right



# A Grave Misconception

before they are all united or just after. How soon before they unite? Have you ever heard of the EU (European Union)? Keep reading the news. It seems to be falling apart.

Next, we are told that the world will unite behind the “mark of the beast”. We know that “mark” to be the universal Sunday law. How close are we to that? Let’s work backwards.

1. In order for the Sunday law to be worldwide, every country must agree to it. How close are we to that? Most of Europe already has mandatory Sunday laws.
2. In order for the Sunday law to be worldwide, every Sabbath keeping entity must agree to it. That means that the government of Israel and all Jews must agree with it. All Sabbath keeping religions will accept it: Seventh-day Adventist, Seventh-day Baptists, Seventh-day Lutheran’s, Church of God - 7th day, Seventh-day Pentecostals, etc., etc.
3. In order for the Sunday Law to be worldwide, every Muslim will have to submit to it. That means that some great event must take place to force Muslims to accept the keeping of Sunday as a holy day instead of their holy day: Friday. What will that be?
  - a. Some major terrorist attack?
  - b. A combined attack against the West by the Islamic nations
  - c. Islam democratically voted out for Christianity
  - d. Whatever happens, in the end, to save face after losing the “battle”, the Islamic holy men will admit that Allah and the “Christian God” are one and they will accept Sunday as their Holy day.
4. Every person on the planet will have to be identified and tracked. Revelation tells us that the one-world government will be able to force ALL to obey the Sunday laws. Do you have a cell phone? You are identified. Almost everyone on earth has a cell phone.
5. For the International Sunday Law to go into effect, Protestants and Catholics will have to join hands and unite. This would have seemed impossible up until the mid 1900’s. What will drive them into each other’s arms?
6. To combat the pagan, atheistic movements for a one-world government, the only other choice is for Protestants to accept the international government that is already in place, the Catholic Church. This happened once before during the fall of Rome. The only institution the civilized world could count on was the church. It will happen again.
7. Watch carefully as the pendulum swings from the godless Left to the religious right to combat crime, riots and the decay of the American system under Democratic rule.

Watch the world’s events carefully. Slowly but surely the devil is bringing disasters, natural and man-made, that will “require” the world to become a dictatorship. In order to keep peace, safety and the mass migration of immigrants from disrupting the world, a one-world government will be accepted by all the world.

At this point in our study I feel that it is necessary to make a practical application of what we have been studying. We have talked a lot about works, obedience and doing our duty. These concepts are all in the Bible. Yet, what you mostly hear in the modern pagan churches of today is the concept of “relationship”.

This is how you will most often come across this concept. “Oh, obedience is fine, but before we can be obedient, we must develop a relationship with Jesus.” Or, “Keeping the Ten Commandments is fine, but before we can do that, we must have a love relationship with Jesus.” Or, “Only through Jesus can we keep the Ten Commandments, therefore we must first develop a relationship with Him in order to keep them.” Or, “We keep the Commandments because we are saved, not to be saved.”

Then of course, they go on sinning. They talk about themselves as “having a relationship with Jesus” and “being saved”, yet they continue to be disobedient. They negate their own arguments. Let me explain to you the one and only way to develop a relationship with Jesus as outlined in the Bible.

Lucifer stood in the presence of God. He had a relationship with God. Yet, that did not keep him from being disobedient and sinning. Being disobedient got him thrown out of heaven. Now he is no longer able to develop that relationship.

The same goes with us. If you are living with someone in an attempt to know them, but do not obey them, you can not develop a “relationship”. If you go around the house breaking things and hurting the other person, you will be asked to leave. Then what relationship will you be able to build?

On the other hand, if you are living with someone in an attempt to know them in order to build a relationship, the first thing you do is be courteous. The second is to be obedient. The third is to do your duty. By doing all of these things you will be able to remain in the presence of that person. By remaining in the presence of that person you will be able to develop a relationship.

This is why there is no text in the entire Bible telling us to “develop a relationship” with Jesus. What the whole Bible commands us to do is to be obedient. Only by being obedient to Jesus, following in His footsteps, will we be able to develop a relationship with Him. It is then, through that relationship, that we will be able to enter His home and spend eternity developing a closer relationship.



# WARNINGS OF GOD

# RESULTS OF WARNINGS

Warning: Obey God: Do not eat from that tree!

Warning: Stop sinning or be destroyed by flood.

Warning: Leave Sodom or be destroyed.

Warning: Stop sinning and let my people go worship me.

Warning: Do not sin and follow the practices of the pagans.

Warning: Stop sinning. Nation will rise against nation. The little horn will rise. Daniel 2, 7, 8

Warning: Jesus will come to set the example & pay the penalty for sin. Daniel 9

Warning: Jerusalem will be destroyed: Luke 21:6, 20

Warning: The Ottoman Empire will rule for 391 years and 15 days.

Warning: Catholic Church will rule and destroy many for 1260 years. Daniel 7:24-25

Warning: The two witnesses would be killed. After 3 ½ days (years) they will rise again. Rev. 11

Warning: End of 2300 days. Judgment begins.

Warning: Just before I come, four things will happen to get your attention:

1. There will be a great earthquake
2. The sun will not shine
3. The moon will turn blood red
4. The stars will fall: Rev. 6:12, 13

Warning: After ruling 1260 years, the Catholic Church will receive a deadly wound, but it will be healed and kill again. Rev. 13:3

4000  
to  
1900

1437  
BC

586

805 bc  
to  
588 ad

27  
ad  
30

70  
AD

1449  
to  
1840

538  
to  
1798

1793  
to  
1797

457  
bc  
1844

ad

1929

Disobeyed: Thrown out of garden and died.

Disobeyed: Flood came and wiped them out.

Disobeyed: Died

Disobeyed: Egypt's army and first born sons were destroyed. Egypt ruined.

Disobeyed: Jerusalem and the temple of God were destroyed.

Disobeyed: Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece & Rome came and went just as foretold. Rome broke into 10 nations. Three nations were uprooted by Catholic Church.

Jesus came and taught truth. Then He was killed for teaching truth and showing us how to live.

Disobeyed the truth: Jerusalem destroyed by the Romans.

From July 22, 1449 until August 11, 1840, the Ottoman Empire ruled.

Catholic Church ruled the world. All nations bowed down to it. Then the pope was taken captive by France.

French outlawed the Bible for three and a half years (November 1793 to June 1797.) Then they came back to life and filled the earth.

Judgment began in 1844

1. November 1, 1755: Great Lisbon Earthquake
2. May 19, 1780: The Great Dark Day
3. May 19, 1780: The moon turned blood red
4. November 13, 1833: Most extensive and magnificent showers of shooting stars ever to occur, as recorded by man.

Catholic Church was recognized by Mussolini and again became powerful. All the "Christian" churches teach its doctrines and keep its 1<sup>st</sup> day sabbath.

# THE END

# Volume III

## CHURCH

The first battle, I feel, that is the most important psychological barrier to overcome is the addiction we have for our pastors, churches and denominations. It's actually idol worship. Nowhere in all of scripture does it say that we are to "go to church" for our salvation. There was no church building for Adam and Eve to worship in. There was no church building for Enoch to walk with God in. Try "walking" with God in your next church service and see what they do to you. You may be asked to leave. That is precisely the point. God does not want us "going to church" in our churches. In fact, there was no "church" until 3,500 years after Adam.

Back to our examples. Noah had no church building to worship God in. (Unless you count the ark as his "church". It was a very smelly church.) All of these Men of God, prior to the flood, walked with God by literally "walking" with God in the "church" of God: the forests and fields of nature. That is where God is. That is where we will come into close communion with God. Why? Because God made the forests and the fields. He created nature.

Man prefers to worship their man-made-gods in churches since man built and created the church building. It reminds him of his pride and ego. He goes to worship himself and the religion he has created to supplant the worship of God. All churches do today is entertain. It is a "feel-good" religion that glorifies the works, wisdom and education of man. Not one is teaching the true gospel and the teachings of Jesus. Jesus didn't say, "Go sit and be entertained in church". He told us to go and teach only what He commanded us. See how the churches of today have you breaking the command of Jesus for their man-made laws and traditions?

It was after the flood that man decided to build the first "church". It was called the Tower of Babel. God didn't appreciate it and destroyed it. He doesn't appreciate our churches either. He will destroy them.

Abraham was a man of God. He never built a church to worship God. His son Isaac was a man of God and he never built a church to worship God. Where did he worship? The same place all the righteous men went, "He went out to the field one evening to meditate." Genesis 24:63. That is what he was doing the evening he met his future wife, Rebekah.

But you say, Moses built a temple in the wilderness. Yes he did. But it was not a "church". It was not a place where the people came to worship "IN". It was a house for the Ten Commandments and the Presence of God to

live among His people. Only three times a year did the people gather around the Temple. (Try suggesting that to your church: meeting only three times a year.) The people went out and worshiped in the quiet places of the fields, valleys, mountains and woods. Out while tending to their work, in the open and in their homes, they worshiped God. If anyone attempted to enter the temple, except a priest, he was struck dead.

It was in the fields where David first learned to worship and pray to God. He was a shepherd and wrote many of his Psalms while watching the sheep, or in the desert running from Saul. And Samuel never built a church for worship. All his worship services were conducted outside. 1 Samuel 9:12, 13.

Nowhere in the Old Testament will you find any building being built for the purpose of worshiping God as a "church". You will find many texts and historical references which show that those who built "churches" were the pagans. 2 Kings 10:18-27. All the pagans built temples to congregate in and do their pagan worship in. But God's true worshipers were not to build "churches".

It was during the time of the Jewish Babylonian captivity that they began to build synagogues. They copied the system of "church" worship from the pagans. Now they had a place to gather and worship in, just like the pagans. But understand, God did not tell them to do this. This was of man's design, not God's. God wants us to meet Him in our homes, in our work and in His nature. He is to be a real God in our real lives, not just a once-a-week, in-a-building, God.

Ignatius Theophorus "was an Apostolic Father and student of John the Apostle and was the third bishop of Antioch." He was "born in Syria, around the year 50; died at Rome between 98 and 117." Ignatius in his letters began to express the concept of a universal "visible church" from which "those who separate themselves from it cut themselves off from God." (Wikipedia).

Instead of Jesus being the head of the Spiritual Church or "body of Christ", Ignatius wanted men of the church to stand "in place of" Christ and control the church. Remember what Jesus said? "The true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for the Father is seeking such people to worship Him. God is spirit, and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth." John 4:23, 24.



From the time of Ignatius on we begin to see "visible" churches taking shape and revolving around bishops. Ignatius instituted the "church" order and hierarchy of office claiming that the bishop presided "in the place of God" and to instigate the

“primacy of the See of Rome”: the pope. “Ignatius is claimed to be the first known Christian writer to argue in favor of Christianity’s replacement of the Sabbath with the Lord’s Day.” (Wikipedia). In other words, he began the movement to begin a “church” system to be **“in place of”** God’s spiritual church system and within that “church” system to substitute the pagan 1st day Sunday to be **“in place of”** God’s Holy, 7th day Sabbath of the Ten Commandments. Keep in mind, in the Bible, the “Lord’s day” has always been the 7th day Sabbath of the Ten Commandments. Ignatius simply attempted to equate the phrase “Lord’s Day” with the 1st day, pagan Sunday. How well it has worked! He also attempted to equate “church” with God. How well that has worked! “Church” and “Sunday” go hand in hand with the pagans. “Anti-Christ”.

“The earliest Christian meeting places were converted houses called *titulae*. After Christianity was legitimized by the Edict of Milan in 313, basilicas and centralized churches sprang up quickly in the next 50 years throughout the Roman Empire.” *Infopedia*

“From the beginning, the Church was organized as a constellation of individual churches, each centered in a city or town, and each led by a bishop. Bishops of the more important towns exercised leadership over the churches in surrounding communities. By the fifth century a system of church organization emerged in which the bishops—known as patriarchs—of the five great sees of Rome, Constantinople, Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem presided over the Church in their respective regions, while the emperor was expected to protect the Church and safeguard doctrinal unity.” *Collier’s Encyclopedia, 1998.*

As you can see, the first “churches” of the early Christians were homes. Throughout the New Testament we read where the Christians met in homes. When Jesus sent out the disciples, He sent them out, not to church buildings or synagogues, but to homes. “When you enter a house, first say, ‘Peace to this house’. If a man of peace is there, your peace will rest on him; if not, it will return to you. Stay in that house, eating and drinking whatever they give you, for the worker deserves his wages. Do not move around from house to house.” Luke 10:5-7.

It is interesting to note that Jesus, when speaking about a place of prayer, did not talk about a synagogue, or a temple, but He said, “My house will be called a house of prayer for all nations.” Mark 11:17. Interesting, a house. In Acts we read that the early Christians were “Day after day, in the temple courts and **from house to house...**”. Acts 5:42. Why the “temple courts”? Because that is where the Jews were. Therefore, the Christians were there in order to convert them.

Paul said, “You know that I have not hesitated to preach anything that would be helpful to you but have taught you publicly and from **house to house.**” Acts 20:20. I

see, publicly and from house to house. Would publicly be like what Jesus did, teaching from the seashore beside the Lake of Galilee? Or how about when Jesus was sitting in Peter’s boat to teach the multitudes? Maybe it was like Jesus who sat on the mountainside to give the “Sermon on the Mount”? I don’t remember the Bible talking about any “sermon in the church”? Do you? Sounds to me like somebody is following the wrong example in our “churches” of today. I do remember Jesus reading scripture in synagogues, but they threw Him out. They will do the same to you if you teach what Jesus taught.

The author of Hebrews says, “He (Jesus) was faithful to the one who appointed Him, just as Moses was faithful in all God’s **house**. Jesus has been found worthy of greater honor than Moses, just as the builder of a house has greater honor than the house itself. For every house is built by someone, but God is the builder of everything. Moses was faithful as a servant in all God’s house...”. Hebrews 3:2-5. Sounds to me like the “house” where God wants to meet with us is not a “church” building, but the simple assembling of Christians who love the Lord. Verse 6 goes on to say, “But Christ is faithful as a Son over God’s house. And we are His house...”. I see, God wants **us** to be His “house” to dwell in. No mention there of expensive church buildings.

1 Peter 2:5 states very plainly that “you also, like living stones, are being built into a spiritual **house** to be a holy priesthood, offering spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ.” We are the church. Wherever we meet together, that is the church. The texts at the end of this section will clearly show that the early Christian church revolved around homes, not “church buildings”. You see, God wants us to be free. Each of us is to be personally responsible to God. No man can tell you your duty. I can tell you what God says. I can tell you about Righteousness. But it is your responsibility to accept it or reject it. Churches were to be left free. Churches were the people wherever they met. The most important aspect of a loosely consolidated home-church system was for everyone to be able to speak his or her mind. Each was to be able to speak what God had shared with him/her.

This method of meeting and communicating left the church free from dictatorship and control by man. The Holy Spirit could then move among the people and individuals could be used to talk to and instruct the “church”. You will find that happening throughout the Old and New Testament. This text will give you an example in the Old Testament. 2 Chronicles 20:14.

The true church of Christ is to be able to meet and share ideas, share concepts and by the use of the Holy Spirit and through search of Scriptures, Old and New, they were to try the spirits and test the spirits and come to a unity of truth based on Scriptural truth. You see, I have tried that. I have gone into churches to see if they would like to have a Bible study. They were so afraid they

might learn truth that they threw me out. My Bible tells me that it is the wicked who are afraid. The righteous have nothing to be afraid of and are commanded to search and study.

As we noted above in the historical notes, Ignatius was used by the devil to develop a “church” system that became obedient to a hierarchy of men, not God. The whole purpose of the “church” system was to control the thoughts and the will of man. Instead of each individual coming to his own personal experience with God, he was now told what to believe, what to think and how to live it. As the “Christian” churches proliferated, each breaking away from the one before, they continued to set up this system of control. Each denomination broke away from the one before it and set up its own “box” to hide itself from God and to control its members. They would come so far with a certain doctrine, and then stop and go no further. That is why you have over 42,800 denominations worldwide with an average of 10 new ones organized each week. *World Christian Encyclopedia*.

Yet, who is teaching the gospel as Jesus commanded us to teach it? Now you can see the truth of Revelation 17:5, “Mystery: **Babylon the Great** [Catholic Church], The Mother of **Prostitutes** [All the Protestant churches that join her in her teachings] and of the abominations of the earth.”

Every single “church” on earth today is controlled by a power system. Whether it be from the top down, or from the bottom up. Bottom up being the members of the congregation. If a minister is hired by a Sunday keeping congregation, do you think he is going to teach the truth about the 7<sup>th</sup> day, Saturday, Sabbath? Most will not. Do you think he is going to risk his paycheck, power and status over “a day”? Of course not. What will he do? “For the time will come when men will not put up with sound doctrine. Instead, to suit their own desires, they will gather around them a great number of teachers to say what their itching ears want to hear. They will turn their ears away from the truth and turn aside to myths.” 2 Timothy 4:3, 4.

Instead of lifting up Christ, let me quote to you what a major “Christian” church paper wrote. “*The church and the (church paper), the (church paper) and the church: they are conterminous. In manner peculiar to our faith communion, paper and church blend, interact, and foster each other. The (church paper) is the leading edge of the church. The (church paper) seeks to represent the church, to advance the church, and to articulate the church.*”

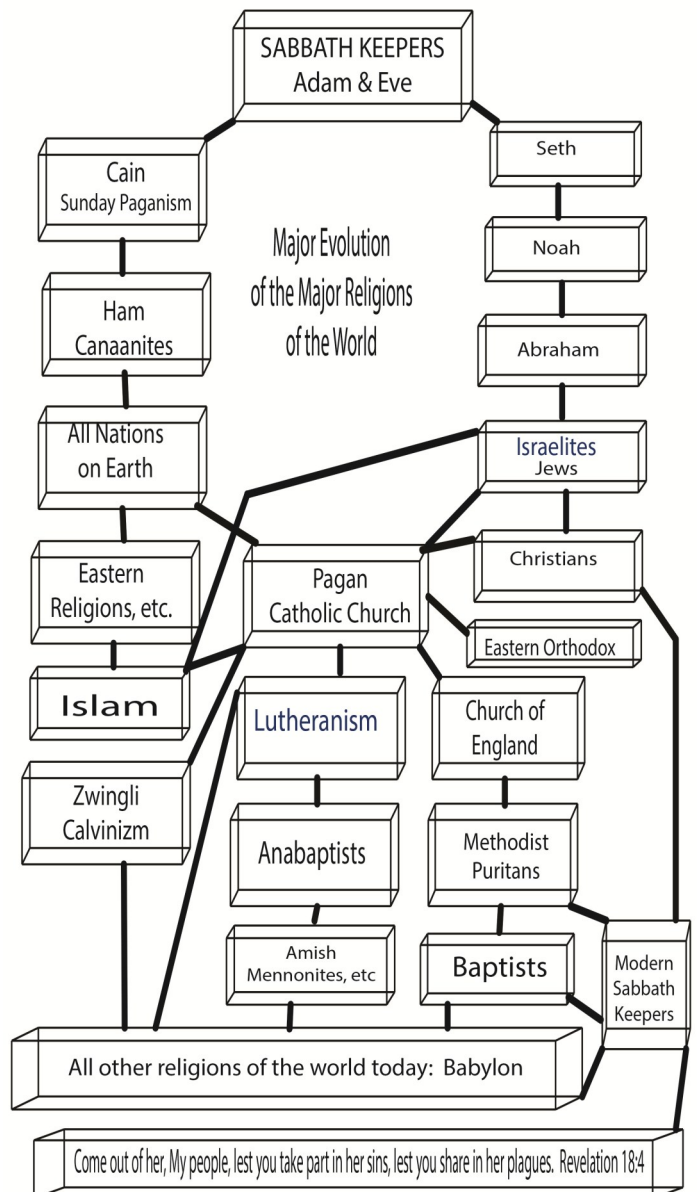
Not much there about Jesus, is there? It’s all about “church”. And that was a Sabbath keeping church.

Have all the “churches” fallen today? Are any teaching the pure Word of God? Since few will be saved, as Jesus said, can you see why? And yet everyone is thinking they are going to heaven. Everyone thinks that his/her

church teaches the truth. That’s because they have given their salvation to the church. They have stopped seeking for truth and have made the church, the denomination and the minister their god. Since they have accepted another god into their life, they cannot go to heaven. They have broken the 1<sup>st</sup> commandment, “Thou shalt have no other gods before Me.” “Oh, that one of you would shut the temple doors,...” Malachi 1:10.

Because of the “church” system of today, no new truth is allowed into the churches. Not one church system will allow a “different” concept to be taught than what has already been accepted. They do not want “discord” in their churches. They do not want to be shown that they have been wrong all these years. That wouldn’t look very good, would it? So the “churches” of today are blissfully stupid while entertaining their people on the way to hell. However, instead of letting in God’s truth, they are bending over backward to let in worldly standards, like homosexuality and women’s ordination.

“However, the Most High does not live in buildings made



by human hands. As the prophet says, ‘Heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool. What kind of house can you build for me,’ declares the Lord, ‘or what place is there in which I can rest? It was my hand that made all these things, wasn’t it?’ You stubborn people with uncircumcised hearts and ears! You are always opposing the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors used to do.” Acts 7:48-51. Nothing has changed in 2000 years.

It is the devil’s “church system” that prevents the free exchange of ideas to flow from church to church, or even member to member. Since no church wants to be wrong, they forbid their people to study with any other church or read anything that does not come from the “official” church system. That brainwashing is in every church. It is expressed in many different ways, but to prove it, just ask a member of a different church if they would like to have Bible studies with you. They will probably decline stating that they have Bible studies at their church. They are not willing to hear new ideas or explore other possibilities. How sad.

No true Christian has any fear of learning. We **are** to hear. We **are** to read. We **are** to test the spirits. I have read the different doctrines of most denominations and religions including the Islamic faith. I have even read the Koran. That is how I know who is and who is not of God. Are we making “church” our god, or are we making God our church?

But what do we do with the text in Hebrews 10:25 that tells us not to forsake the assembling of ourselves together? Nothing. Every day when I read the mail from inmates, I am assembling with them in spirit. When I am on the phone with other Christians, I am “assembling” with them. When I am in chat rooms with other Christians, I am “assembling” with them. It doesn’t say to “assemble in a church building”. But most importantly, it tells us that when we assemble, we are to be “exhorting [one another]”. Not much of that going on in our churches. Maybe we are doing the wrong “assembling” in our churches.

So how am I supposed to worship God? Instead of listening to your preacher, your church, your denomination or group, why not let God answer that question? Here is His simple answer. “Therefore, I urge you, brothers, in view of God’s mercy, to offer your bodies as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to God – **this is your spiritual act of worship**. Do not conform any longer to the pattern of this world (or its churches), but be transformed by the renewing of your mind.” Romans 12:1, 2.

The Old Testament understood that concept. When Jacob was running away from his brother, he went to sleep one night, under the stars and the Lord revealed Himself to Jacob. In the morning Jacob said, “This is none other than the **house** of God; this is the gate of heaven.” Genesis 28:17. They understood that any place they met with God was the “house” of God, even if there was no

building present.

How simple. Simply put, true worship is living the holy, righteous, perfect life that God wants us to live. If you make the “church” your god, you lose. If you make God your church, you have eternal life.

“Do not be unequally yoked with unbelievers. For what partnership has righteousness with lawlessness? Or what fellowship has light with darkness? What accord has Christ with Belial? Or what portion does a believer share with an unbeliever? What agreement has the temple of God with idols? For we are the temple of the living God; as God said, ‘I will make my dwelling among them and walk among them, and I will be their God, and they shall be my people.’ Therefore go out from their midst, and be separate from them, says the Lord, and touch no unclean thing; then I will welcome you.” 2 Corinthians 6:14-17. Get out of your church now.

## Related Texts

|                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Acts 2:2        | Acts 9:11           |
| Acts 9:17       | Acts 10:6           |
| Acts 10:17      | Acts 10:22-25       |
| Acts 11:3       | Acts 12:12          |
| Acts 16:13-15   | Acts 28:30          |
| Romans 16:5     | 1 Corinthians 16:19 |
| Colossians 4:15 | 1 Peter 2:5         |

---

# TITHES & OFFERINGS

Now that we know what the true church should look like, simply the meeting of people who love the Lord, how do we support it? And what is the purpose of supporting the true church of God? Can we support anyone we like? Do we support those who make us “feel good”?

First of all, they will be teaching the “everlasting gospel”. The gospel that Jesus taught was not a gospel of Himself, (His birth, life, death and resurrection) but a gospel of our obligations to God. Our obedience. Our need to be perfect, stop sinning and to keep the Ten Commandments in order to earn “get” our eternal salvation. That is what Jesus taught. That is the **eternal**, everlasting, gospel.

Therefore, all you have to do is ask your pastor if he teaches those teachings. He will probably say no. If he says anything other than “Yes I do”, leave and find a people that do teach them. If you can’t find a people that teaches them, follow the example of Jesus and begin teaching them. Set up a “home-church” in your home and invite your family, friends and neighbors for Bible study and worship. That is what Jesus did wherever He

found Himself.

The reason “churches” of today are growing is simply that they are not practicing or teaching what Jesus told us to do. Instead of setting up entertainment systems, we need to be setting up educational systems. All the pews in our churches should be removed. Tables and chairs should be installed. Good lighting and plenty of rulers, pens, pencils, paper, computers, iPads, laptops and other avenues of research. Get a computer and hook it up to a large screen TV and use the Bible studies on our web site. God will bless you.

As we gather in our “churches”, we then need to learn how to defend the gospel and how to teach it. That is what Jesus said, remember Matthew 28:20? Organized into teams, we would then:

1. Learn
2. Practice what we learned on our families, friends and neighbors
3. Come back and share what we experienced
4. Learn some more
5. Practice what we have learned
6. Continue this sequence

Our tithes and offerings are to go to support, not a church, but those who teach the gospel. There are lots of “good” organizations out there doing “great” things like feeding the hungry and clothing the naked and helping the children, etc., but that is not where our tithes and offerings are to go. Let the worldly churches and organizations take care of the world. Jesus said, “let the dead bury the dead”. What did He mean? Unless the people are taught how to stop sinning and live perfectly, they will die eternally. When Jesus said to feed the hungry and clothe the naked, he didn’t mean to drop off a check at an organization. He meant to deprive yourself of your own food and supply the need of someone close to you. But you are not to waste God’s tithes and offerings paying salaries to the pagans. The Catholic Church does the greatest amount of “good” in the world today. But you can’t support it with your tithes and offerings. The organization is not of God.

“With every gift and offering there should be a suitable object before the giver, not to uphold any in idleness, not to be seen of men or to get a great name, but to glorify God by **advancing His cause.**” 1T 194

“Who serves as a soldier at his own expense? Who plants a vineyard and does not eat of its grapes? Who tends a flock and does not drink of the milk? Do I say this merely from a human point of view? Doesn’t the Law say the same thing? For it is written in the Law of Moses: ‘Do not muzzle an ox while it is treading out the grain.’ Is it about oxen that God is concerned? Surely He

says this for us, doesn’t He? Yes, this was written for us, because when the plowman plows and the thresher threshes, they ought to do so in the hope of sharing in the harvest. **If we have sown spiritual seed among you, is it too much if we reap a material harvest from you?** If others have this right of support from you, shouldn’t we have it all the more? But we did not use this right. On the contrary, we put up with anything rather than hinder the gospel of Christ. Don’t you know that those who work in the temple get their food from the temple, **and those who serve at the altar share in what is offered on the altar? In the same way, the Lord has commanded that those who preach the gospel should receive their living from the gospel.**” 1 Corinthians 9:7-14.

There you have it. “The Lord has commanded that those who preach **the gospel** should receive their living from the gospel”. The tithes and offerings are not to go to a “church”, but to people who teach the gospel. They are to be supported so they can continue to teach the truth. If they are not teaching the truth as Jesus taught it, then you are to withdraw your support from them. Truth is **not** what **you think** it is. Truth is not what **you want** it to be. Truth is not what your church teaches. Truth is what Jesus taught. If your church, no matter how righteous it may seem, no matter how much “good” it may do, no matter if God raised it up, if it is no longer teaching the gospel as Jesus taught it, you must withdraw your support. Remember what 2 John 9-11 says? If you continue to welcome those who do not teach the truth as Jesus taught it, you will share in their wickedness.

So how much are we to give to God? Considering we owe our very lives to Him, it is not surprising that we owe Him everything that we have. However, God is a God of love. He loves us and does not want us to be in need. In fact, if we will demonstrate His character of giving, He has promised to provide us with everything we need for this life and the life to come.

Let us take a look at what an average farmer would give to the Lord. What was it that the Lord required for a farmer to give back to God? I suppose that before we ask what God wants, we ought to take a few moments and understand the concept of “giving to God”. How can I give to God when I am down here and He is up there?

The first text is Mark 9:37, “Whoever welcomes one of these little children in **My Name** welcomes Me...”. The next text is Matthew 25:35-40. Jesus stated, “For I was hungry and you gave Me something to eat, I was thirsty and you gave Me something to drink, I was a stranger and you invited Me in, I needed clothes and you clothed Me, I was sick and you looked after Me, I was in prison and you came to visit Me...”

“Then the righteous will answer Him, ‘Lord, when did we see You hungry and feed You, or thirsty and give You



something to drink? When did we see You a stranger and invite You in, or needing clothes and clothe You? When did we see You sick or in prison and go to visit You?" "The King will reply, 'I tell you the truth, **whatever you did for one of the least of these brothers of Mine, you did for Me.**'"

This sets up the truth that what we do for the **worthy** poor and needy is what we would do for Jesus. Going to church is what we do for ourselves. Nothing mentioned above about doing for ourselves or going to church. That won't get you into heaven. It is what you do for others. So now, let's go back to the Bible and see how that concept and principle was implemented.

In Genesis we find the example of that Christian principle displayed in Abraham. When three guests arrived near his home, "he hurried from the entrance of his tent to meet them and bowed low to the ground." He said, "Do not pass your servant by. Let a little water be brought, and then you may all wash your feet and rest under this tree. Let me get you something to eat, so you can be refreshed and then go on your way—now that you have come to your servant." Genesis 18:2-5. If Abraham had not invited the strangers in, he would have lost a "Lot". But Abraham was a true Christian.

Then in Leviticus 19:18 we find where the Lord showed how the people could practically demonstrate His command, "... love your neighbor as yourself". In Leviticus 19:9 He said, "When you reap the harvest of your land, do not reap to the very edges of your field or gather the gleanings of your harvest. Do not go over your vineyard a second time or pick up the grapes that have fallen. **Leave them for the poor and the alien.** I am the Lord your God."

You see, they were to sacrifice some of their crops for the good of those who did not have. Let's look at this from a practical point of view. If you don't reap to the edges of your field, and you are following the command with all the generosity that God was implying here, you could leave 5% of your income for the poor. This goes even further. Again, we limit God's command for our own selfishness. But let's look at the practical way it was understood in their day. In the book of Ruth, we find where Ruth went into the field of Boaz to "pick up the leftover grain". Boaz even gave orders to his men, "Even if she gathers among the sheaves, don't embarrass her. Rather, pull out some stalks for her from the bundles and leave them for her to pick up, and don't rebuke her." Ruth 2:1-23.

Here you see the full extent of the implementation of a simple command of God. Not content to just leave the edges, the ones whose hearts were full of love for God even let the poor walk behind the harvesters and pick up the leftovers. All of this could easily be another 5% or

more given to God through His poor children.

In Exodus we find where the Lord commanded the people to "Bring the best of the firstfruits of your soil to the house of the Lord your God." Exodus 34:26. Again, being generous to do the Lord's will could easily mean bringing another 5% of your harvest to the Lord's house to feed those who preached the gospel and take care of the **worthy** poor.

In Leviticus 7 we find where the people were to bring offerings to the Lord. These were voluntary offerings of thanks and praise for all the goodness that God had done for them. "These, then, are the regulations for the burnt offering, the grain offering...". Leviticus 7:37. These had nothing to do with sin, but thankfulness. Looking at this from the point of view of a person who loved the Lord and wanted to bring thank offerings to the Lord to feed His ministers, he could easily bring another 5% of his flocks or grains, etc. You will find a practical demonstration of these offerings in 1 Kings 8:64.

But the most important was the tithe. All the others were more or less freewill offerings and varied in their generosity. ***But the tithe was a set, mandatory offering that is necessary for God's ministers who teach the gospel to live by.*** The other offerings would be what we might call today, "bonuses" and "overtime" pay. ***But the tithe was sacred to the Lord.***

The tithe is 10% of everything that you earn, not what you have left over. The gross of your personal income is to be tithed 10% to support the work of the Lord. You are then to live on what is left, remembering to bring the bonuses and overtime to the Lord's work also. Do unto the Lord's work as you want Him to do for you. This does not apply if you own a business. First deduct the amount spent to run your business, then, what is left over is yours to be tithed. Leviticus 27:30 states, "A tithe of everything from the land, whether grain from the soil or fruit from the trees, belongs to the Lord; it is holy to the Lord."

Numbers 18:21, "I give to the Levites all the tithes in Israel as their inheritance in return for the work they do while serving at the Tent of Meeting."

But the problem is, we have become greedy. That is why so few are going to heaven. We want everything this world has to offer and are not willing to give up but what we "have to". Even then we give grudgingly. God hates a griper and complainer. He loves those who recognize they owe Him everything and are happy to give Him what He needs to operate His ministry. "Each man should give what he has decided in his heart...for God loves a cheerful giver." 2 Corinthians 9:7.

In Malachi God said, "'Will a man rob God?' Yet you

rob Me. But you ask, ‘How do we rob You?’ **In tithes and offerings.** You are under a **curse**—the whole nation of you—because you are **robbing** Me. Bring the whole tithe into the storehouse, that there may be food in My house. Test Me in this, says the Lord Almighty, and see if I will not throw open the floodgates of heaven and pour out so much blessing that you will not have room enough for it.” Malachi 3:8-12.

We are to bring the **whole tithes and offerings** to God. Let’s add up what God requires in our tithes and offerings.

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>Leaving the edges of your field, etc.:</b>        | <b>5%</b>  |
| <b>Bringing the first fruits of your occupation:</b> | <b>5%</b>  |
| <b>Bringing other offerings:</b>                     | <b>5%</b>  |
| <b>Tithes:</b>                                       | <b>10%</b> |
| <hr/>  |            |
| <b>Total of all tithes and offerings:</b>            | <b>25%</b> |

Church members are running around talking like fools. They claim that they put God first in their lives. That God means so much to them. Yet, let’s see if God is first in their lives? Do they bring 25% of their gross income to the Lord’s work? No. First they get what they want, and if there is anything left over, they might throw a few pennies at God and claim they are so righteous and deserving of His blessings. What a joke.

But you say, I can’t do that and keep up the life style that I want. That is precisely the point. Jesus says, “And everyone who has **left houses** or brothers or sisters or father or mother or children or **fields** for My sake will receive a hundred times as much and will inherit eternal life.” Matthew 19:29.

Who do you love? God or a piece of dirt on some vacant property? Who do you love? God or that big house you live in? Are you willing to downsize so that this ministry, which was called by God, can get the message out to those who are hungry and thirsting for righteousness? Or are you coveting your house, your properties, etc. and just making noises with your mouth in honor of God. That is why Jesus says, “These people honor Me with their lips, but their hearts are far from Me.” Mark 7:6. And where are their hearts? On their dirt, their houses and other things that are just going to get burned up.

One day a rich man came to Jesus. He wanted to know what he had to do to get eternal life. Jesus told him plainly, “If you want to be perfect, go, sell your possessions and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come, follow Me.” Matthew 19:21.

You and I cannot follow Jesus until we have given up our

property and families and everything we have for Jesus in our hearts. To be ready to sacrifice when God calls for it. If you can’t give 25% of your income to the work of the Lord, then you don’t love the Lord. You can’t go to heaven. You can downsize if you loved the Lord. You can live for a whole lot less. But are you willing to SACRIFICE for Jesus? He did for you. “To this you were called, because Christ suffered for you, **leaving you an example**, that you should follow in His steps. He committed no sin, and no deceit was found in His mouth.” 1 Peter 2:21, 22.

Is it any wonder so few are going to heaven? Everyone wants what this earth has to offer, **and** heaven. Can’t be done. Unless we are willing, and show that willingness by actual demonstration, to give up our extra properties, **downsize** from our big homes and live as simply and as cost effective as possible, we can’t get to heaven. The whole reason for this is to have the funds to support Jesus in reaching His lost children who are dying for the truth. If you can’t do that, you can’t be in heaven with His children.

Any wonder we “Christians” don’t make such a big impression on the worldly people? They don’t see any difference between our wants and wishes compared to theirs. In 1 Peter 2:11, 12, Peter says, “Dear friends, I urge you, **as aliens and strangers in the world**, to abstain from sinful desires, which war against your soul. Live such good lives among the pagans that, though they accuse you of doing wrong, they may see your good deeds and glorify God on the day He visits us.”

Can that be said of you? Are you giving up your properties, your big houses and toys for God so that when your neighbors see it, you can say, “We are giving all this up for Jesus in order to support His work. We believe He is coming soon, and all of this is just going to be burned up.” Or maybe you don’t believe He is coming soon? Maybe you are asleep and don’t see the signs because your properties and big houses are getting in the way of your sight.

“Jesus has purchased redemption for us. It is ours; but we are placed here on probation to see if we will prove worthy of eternal life. God proves us by trusting us with earthly possessions. If we are faithful to impart freely of what He has lent us, to advance His cause, God can entrust to us the immortal inheritance. ‘Ye cannot serve God and mammon.’ (Matthew 6:24) ‘If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him.’” (1 John 2:15)

Jesus tells us, “For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.” Matthew 6:21. Where is your heart? Where is your treasure? Is it some dirt on a vacant lot? Is it a big house you really can’t afford, but it fits the size of your ego? Maybe it is time to look at the cross of Jesus and kneel at the feet of Jesus. Feel the blood as it

drops on you. Maybe it is time to give up this world and begin putting your treasure in heaven by way of lives redeemed for Jesus.



There will come a day when you will have to look Jesus in the eye. What will He say to you? Will He commend you for getting such a great sound system? Will He praise you for your great entertainment system? No, I think He has already told us what He will say. "Depart from Me, you who are cursed...". Matthew 25:41.

Why are you hanging on to the things of this world? Please let go. Please give them up. Please give them to the work of God so others can find eternal life. Then in the kingdom of God many will come up to you and thank you for your sacrifice so they could hear the gospel.

If you don't, many will come up to you and point the finger and say, "You knew about this heaven and how to get there, but you refused to give up your selfishness so I could learn." And the two of you will burn side by side.

The question is, do you really believe the Bible? The answer is obvious by your actions. If you are selling and giving your property and monies, even if it hurts, to help the ministry, it shows you believe. If you are hanging on and making excuses for your wicked coveting of God's gifts, then you don't believe.

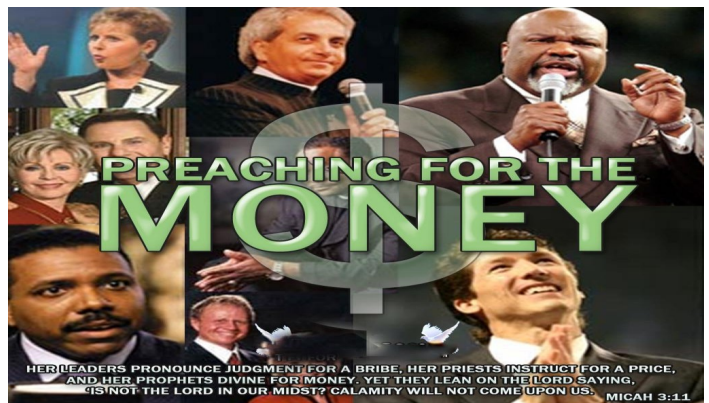
The early disciples of Christ believed. They not only gave up their property and homes so others could hear the truth of the eternal gospel, they gave of their lives. In order to get to heaven you must have the same mind in you as they had. Listen to what they thought of "their" property.

"All the believers were one in heart and mind. **No one claimed that any of his possessions was his own, but they shared everything they had.** With great power the apostles continued to testify to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and much grace was upon them all. There were no needy persons among them. For from time to time **those who owned lands or houses sold them,** brought the money from the sales and put it at the apostles' feet, and it was distributed to anyone as he had need." Acts 4:32-35

This ministry has great need. So many people are in need of the truth. Yet very few are willing to give to Jesus and His children. Hundreds are dying each month because we do not have the funds to send them these books. What will God say to you? What can you sacrifice so others can have eternal life?

God never commanded you to go on "church raising expeditions". He never said to go see how many churches you can build. He said that we are to teach people to obey what He has commanded us. Matthew 28:20. That can be done from house to house. Think of the money that could be saved if we would only follow the teachings of Jesus. Think how many people could be reached if we put His money into people instead of into buildings.

Many feel that all churches do is ask and beg for money. That is correct. Since all the "organized" churches are not of God, they must support their organizations. They have salaries to pay, retirements to set aside for, big, expensive houses and buildings to pay for and medical insurance, etc., etc. Then of course, if you are struggling, giving your money to a church, look to see if the pastor is struggling or if he is sending his kids to expensive schools while you can hardly put food on the table. All of that is sin. Such selfishness. Request books from us and begin handing them out to all around you and watch the Lord bless you.



I truly believe that this earth is coming to an end and that Jesus is coming. I believe the Bible. The whole purpose of giving is to develop within us a character like Jesus. Jesus could provide all the funds necessary with a snap of His finger. But that would not develop character within us. We have a responsibility to our fellow man, as Jesus had for us. He gave up everything for us. In order to get to heaven, we must demonstrate that same attitude and commitment. This ministry has had to turn away thousands of inmate requests because of lack of funding.

What excuses are you making in order to hang on to this world and the things of this world? I plead with you to give up this world. Lift your eyes to heaven and let the things of this earth go. Whatever the Lord has placed in your hands, show to the Lord that you are a good steward of His property and return it to Him through His ministry so it can be used for the proclamation of the true gospel. That is how we work hand in hand with God. Our hands become His. Our feet become His. Our property becomes His. All that He has given us, we need to give back to Him. The more we give, the more we will

receive in return.

Some have suggested that tithing is no longer required in the New Testament. Jesus never did away with tithing. In fact, He taught it as our obligation, Matthew 23:23. But who are you tithing to? If you are tithing to a Laodicean church, then you are helping the devil. Not one Laodicean church is of God. Is your church rich, increased in wealth? That is not God's church. Remember, He is standing outside that church and is knocking to be let in. No, the true ministries of Jesus are those that are struggling, and have nothing, as Jesus lived. It was the Pharisees who were rich and thought they were blessed by God. Who was this poor upstart from Galilee: this independent? Who are you supporting? (Remember, it was tithing, Sabbath keeping, church going people who put Jesus on the cross. Be very careful.)

---

## FOOD, DRINK & CLOTHES

Okay, what's all this business I hear about having to eat this, or that, or you can't eat this or that? Drink this! Don't drink that! You must wear this! You can't wear that and be a Christian!!

Well, if you are in a "country club church" all of that is very important. After all, everyone goes around judging each other by each other. Everyone is measured by someone else. Listen, did you notice that girl with her dress too high? Did you see the boy with all those rings in all those places protruding out of his body? Did you see what she was eating? Oh, they just aren't our kind of people.

But that is why God hates our churches. They drag us down to the level of man and we sit around looking no higher than ourselves or the one next to us.

What does the Bible say about all this "country clubbing"? "We do not dare to classify or compare ourselves with some who commend themselves. When they measure themselves by themselves and compare themselves with themselves, they are not wise... For it is not the one who commends himself who is approved, but the one whom the Lord commends." 2 Corinthians 10:12, 18.

That is why churches (the organizational structures) are so dangerous. All Biblical history proves that they eventually lead away from God to man. They claim that they are the "representatives of God" and that by obeying them you are obeying God. What a farce. That is what

the Mormons believe. That is what the Jehovah's Witnesses believe. That is what the Catholic Church believes. That is what the Muslims believe. That is what the Jews believed. Those churches that teach that are not of God.

All organized and structured churches and religions will tell you the same in some form or another. But that has never been true in biblical history. Never did God work through an organized religious hierarchy. He always worked through individuals. Most of the time it was through individuals **outside of the organization** He had to call to speak to the organization since the organization was no longer obeying or listening to Him. What a trip! Those organizations that claimed to be of God were the very ones God was attempting to contact and bring back to Him. Most of the time the organized churches refused to listen to God. They were too busy playing god and hating His servants. Remember Revelation 3:20?

Okay, so back to our original questions about foods, drinks and clothes. Do these things have anything to do with our eternal salvation? NO!!! In fact, Jesus wanted to make it quite plain that none of that had anything to do with your **eternal salvation**. Jesus said, "Therefore I tell you, do **not** worry about your life, what you will eat or drink; or about your body, what you will wear. Is not life more important...". Matthew 6:25. Matthew 15:17 says, "Don't you see that whatever enters the mouth goes into the stomach and then out of the body?"

As we learned in our last two volumes, the only thing needful for salvation is obedience to the Ten Commandments. Nowhere in the Ten Commandments does it talk about food, drink or clothes; nowhere! Now, if Jesus said not to worry about these things, why are we and our churches so consumed with them? Because, they are a smoke screen that the devil uses to keep us out of heaven. So blow away the smoke and let's come back to truth. "So whatever you believe about these things keep between yourself and God." Romans 14:22. **Good advice.**

But you say, doesn't the Bible teach us not to wear jewelry? If you have to ask that question, then you don't know. And that is the problem. Most people know nothing about the Bible. They have only listened to and parroted what they have been told by others who don't know their Bibles. So let's take a look at this jewelry business.

The text that is most used comes from 1 Peter 3:3. "Your beauty should not come from outward adornment, such as braided hair and the wearing of gold jewelry and fine clothes." There you say, "See, I told you we were not to wear gold and jewelry." Oops, you forgot the "fine clothes". But then, since we like fine clothes, we will conveniently forget about that part. And so it goes. We

pick and choose what we want, and throw the rest away. We use only that which we keep and can hurl at others. It is all hogwash.

Let's take a closer look at this text. First of all, Peter does not say, "Don't wear gold jewelry and fine clothes". He says, **Don't let YOUR BEAUTY** come from gold jewelry and fine clothes. That is a big difference. You see, God never changes the rules for eternal salvation. He can't say something is okay for eternal salvation in the Old Testament, and then say it is not okay in the New Testament. As we learned in the first two volumes, Jesus **NEVER** changes **His eternal truth for salvation**.

In the Old Testament you will find where everyone wore jewelry. The book of Judges tells of Gideon, a man of God, who, after defeating the Midianites, asked, "that each of you give me an earring from your share of the plunder. (It was the **custom** of the Ishmaelites to wear gold earrings.)" Judges 8:24. In Exodus the Lord told Moses, "Tell the Israelites to bring me an offering. You are to receive the offering for Me and from each man whose heart prompts him to give. These are the offerings you are to receive from them: gold, silver and bronze; blue, purple and scarlet yarn and fine linen; goat hair; ram skins dyed red and hides of sea cows..." Ex. 25:1-6.

These items were not stashed in a bank. They were used in their every day living and wearing. Fine linen was used for their clothes and bed sheets. Gold and silver were used for bracelets and rings, etc. God had and has no problem with us wearing any of this. So what is the problem? Pride!!!

Paul says, "I also want women to dress modestly, with decency and propriety, not with braided hair or gold or pearls or expensive clothes, but with good deeds, appropriate for women who profess to worship God." 1 Timothy 2:9.

Psalms 49:20 states, "A man who has riches without understanding is like the beasts that perish." God is not against riches. He does have a problem with our working for "food, drink & clothes" to the detriment of our salvation.

Proverb 23:4, 5 states, "Do not wear yourself out to get rich; have the wisdom to show restraint. Cast but a glance at riches, and they are gone, for they will surely sprout wings and fly off to the sky like an eagle." Does that sound like most of us who ended up in prison? Maybe we should start listening to God.

Going back to Peter we find that our beauty is to come from the inside. If you want to wear jewelry, just don't let it be your beauty. If you are looking into the eyes of Jesus, you will fall in love with His character of love and you will want His beauty to shine out of you.

Now though, that is where our eternal salvation comes in. And again, that is why we cannot judge others by outward appearances. I can judge by the Ten Commandments, but I cannot judge by dress, food and drink. You will have to stand before the judgment seat of Christ one day. You will have to answer to Him for what you have and what you do with it. Me, I just have to love you!

Let's take food. Of itself, not a problem. It has nothing to do with eternal salvation. But, if you make food your idol, your god, and it controls you, and you are overweight, then you are breaking the Ten Commandments. Same goes with drink and clothes. That's where you have to be very careful in what you do and how you do it. You have a higher standard to meet than just the eyes and ears of those around you.

This is where Paul comes into being. In 1 Corinthians 3:16, 17 he says, "Don't you know that you yourselves are God's temple and that God's Spirit lives in you? If anyone destroys God's temple, God will destroy him; for God's temple is sacred, and you are that temple."

Now that is heavy. That encompasses food, drink and clothes. Jesus says not to worry about these things. He is correct. I don't worry about them because I finally came to the point to where they have absolutely no meaning in my life. I only eat to live, drink to keep from getting thirsty and wear or not wear what is necessary to accomplish my daily tasks. Everything I do is for God's glory. If you are using these things to destroy your temple, the temple that God has created, then you are in deep trouble. That just proves that you are not a Christian and are living for this world.

If you are wasting God's money on these things beyond what is needed and necessary for living, you are stealing from God's work and breaking the Ten Commandments. Are you coveting food, drink and clothes, etc? That also is breaking the 10 Commandments.

Now we come to drugs, alcohol, tobacco and other substances that are harmful to the body temple of God. If you use these things and they are in the process of destroying your body temple, now it becomes a salvation issue. Now you are breaking the Ten Commandments by killing yourself and committing adultery against God. It may be a slow suicide, but you are still destroying the body temple just the same. (This only has to do with what we take in voluntarily.)

Personally, I am a vegetarian. It has been proven that a vegetarian will live many years longer and healthier than one who is not. When I, at the age of 40, was going through the reception process in prison, I had to go through the doctor's line and get examined. When it was all done, the final doctor looked at my chart and then at

me. He looked again at my chart and then back at me. I could tell there was something puzzling him. Finally he asked me, “How old are you?”. I told him I was 40. He said, “You have the health of a 10 year old.”

You see, all this eating, drinking and clothes stuff is not for eternal life, but for our present life. Besides, Adam and Eve wore no clothes for about 600 years, until they sinned. And God laid down our best eating choices in the Garden of Eden. Let’s turn to Genesis and see what God thinks is best for us to eat.



Genesis 1:29, 30 says, “Then God said, ‘I give you every seed-bearing plant on the face of the whole earth and every tree that has fruit with seed in it. They will be yours for food. And to all the beasts of the earth and all the birds of the air and all the creatures that move on the ground—everything that has the breath of life in it—I give every green plant for food. And it was so.’”

An all vegetarian life-style right from the beginning. Why? Because God knew that it was the healthiest. He wanted us to live forever so we could have a very long and happy relationship with Him. He would be very sad if we ended it too soon. Yet, that is just what we are doing, going through life quickly and miserably and ending too soon what could have been a long and wonderful relationship with God and His creation. Slow down and live longer!

Therefore, not only am I a vegetarian, but I don’t drink alcoholic beverages, use drugs or tobacco in any form. I stay away from coffee and tea and live a wonderful, healthy life without any of those things burdening me.

While doing time in a prison, there was a gentleman who had been in for a long time. He was one of those who worked out on the weight pile and worked hard at keeping fit. After a few months he came up to me and stated that he had been watching me. He could tell that I was different from all the other inmates.

He also noted that I didn’t eat any of the meat served in the cafeteria. (I could see where this conversation was going.) He wanted my meat. He was looking for a way to trade whatever he had for all my meat. But after explaining to him why, he was impressed. He decided to cut back on all meat except fish and see what would happen.

In two weeks he was back. He told me that he felt healthier and could work out longer and better. He then said that he was going to go off all meat for one month to

see what would happen. At the end of the month he was a total vegetarian. He looked healthier, felt better and his attitude was on the positive side. His mind was clearer and he was happier. That is what God wants for us. It all starts with what we eat.



Here is an interesting note. In “The Story of Civilization III” by Will Durant, page 34, he states, “The Roman army conquered the world on a vegetarian diet,...”. Garbage in, garbage out. Fill your bodies with the nuts, fruits, grains and vegetables that God created for us to eat, and you will find your bodies and minds becoming healthier and happier.

The food restrictions of Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers and Deuteronomy were for a very specific purpose. Not for their eternal salvation, per se, but for their physical health and happiness. But it was phrased in a spiritual context because that is what the people understood. They would never have understood cholesterol count, blood pressure and heart rate. But by obeying what God told them, they were the healthiest people on the face of the earth. You can be too.

Oh, by the way, not only does the scientific community back up the facts that a non-meat diet is healthier, but let’s look at the Biblical account and see what it has to say. In Genesis chapter one we have God giving man the perfect food groups. What was the result of that healthy life-style? Well, in chapter five we read where almost everyone who lived after sin and before the flood, lived about 900 years. Wow, I can handle that.

Now let’s look at what happened when God allowed man to eat meat. In Genesis 9:3 we read, “Everything that lives and moves will be food for you. Just as I gave you the green plants, I now give you everything.” Why did God **allow** man to eat meat after the flood? Because the longer man lived, the more vile he got. So God had a simple way of shortening our life span. He allowed us to eat meat. In chapter 11 you will read that the life span of man started to drop, drop and drop. After the flood, Noah, a vegetarian, lived another 350 years for a total of 950 years. But his sons didn’t live much over 600 years. Their sons didn’t live much over 400 years. Then they dropped to 200 and finally, they were lucky to reach 150 years. By the time of David and Solomon we read where 70 and 80 years were about all they could eke out.

As our modern society has become more health-wise, we have realized how deadly our eating habits are. As we have become better eaters, our life spans have been improving. How totally biblical. This concept of healthy living was very well known among the Hebrews.

When Daniel was taken captive to Babylon, we read where “Daniel resolved not to defile himself with the royal food and wine, and he asked the chief official for permission not to defile himself this way... But the official told Daniel, ‘I am afraid of my lord the king, who has assigned your food and drink. Why should he see you looking worse than the other young men your age?’... Daniel then said... ‘Please test your servants for ten days: Give us **nothing but vegetables to eat and water to drink**. Then compare our appearance with that of the young men who eat the royal food, and treat your servants in accordance with what you see.’” “At the end of the ten days they looked healthier and better nourished than any of the young men who ate the royal food. So the guard took away their choice food and the wine they were to drink and gave them vegetables instead.” Daniel 1:8-15.

Now about wine. You may be saying, “Yes, but Jesus drank wine.” Well... Yes and no. Again, don’t just listen to what people tell you, THINK! “Wine” in the Bible did not mean what it means today. You should never take a twentieth century concept and force it back onto a first century word. Instead, be intelligent. Be wise. Ask yourself if the word has changed in meaning over the centuries. That is the appropriate way to look at words that are in the Bible. Remember, the Bible was not written in the twentieth century. It was mostly written before Christ, and only a little bit was written in the first fifty years after Christ.

Now to the word “wine”. In the Bible you will find that the word “wine” actually refers to grape juice, you know, Welch’s Grape drink. But you must understand, they had no refrigerators back then. Refrigerators were not invented until about the 1930’s. Therefore, if you had grape drink one day, in a week or so you had wine. That is why we have the confusion over “wine” in the Bible. The word “Wine” can mean both. (After all, isn’t that what you do in prison? You steal the fruit and other ingredients from the mess hall and make “pruno” in your cell. In a week you are having a “high” time.)

What you will find, in deep search of the Word of God, is that God made “wine”, the pure grape drink fresh from the vine, for our enjoyment. That is what He made at Cana when He turned the water into “wine”. The Bible is full of wonderful sayings about the pure “wine”. (Medically, pure grape juice is healing.)

On the other hand, the Bible also has a lot to say about the alcoholic “wine” which causes drunkenness and problems. The Bible is full of bad sayings about that kind of “wine” and drinking. Keep in mind, God created us to be in full control of our faculties and minds. We are never to give up the control of our minds and bodies. That is what leads to sin. The Bible is all about self-control. You can’t have self-control if you are drunk.

Even Jesus, when offered a mixture of wine to ease His pain on the cross refused to accept it. He would not allow anything to reduce His ability to communicate with His Father. Should not we follow His example of self-control in all that we eat, drink and wear?

One last quick note: Only vegetarians will be in heaven. Boy, I bet that just woke you up. Now before you get all high and mighty, I know you are saying, “wait a minute, Jesus ate fish and He is in heaven.” You are correct. But remember, I didn’t say only those who are vegetarians on earth would be in heaven. I said, only vegetarians will be in heaven. You see, in order to eat meat, an animal has to die. Since there is no death in heaven, no meat will be eaten. (Remember, death comes from sin.) Therefore, all those in heaven will be vegetarians.

### GOOD WINE

Numbers 18:12  
Deuteronomy 7:13 (New Wine)  
Deuteronomy 11:14 (New Wine)  
Deuteronomy 12:17  
Deuteronomy 14:23  
Deuteronomy 14:26  
Deuteronomy 18:4  
Deuteronomy 33:28  
Judges 9:13 (Cheers up)  
2 Samuel 16:2  
2 Chronicles 31:5  
Nehemiah 10:39  
Psalms 4:7  
Psalms 104:15  
Proverbs 3:10  
Proverbs 31:6, 7  
Jeremiah 31:12  
Hosea 2:8  
1 Timothy 5:23

### BAD WINE

1 Samuel 1:14  
2 Samuel 13:28  
Psalms 60:3  
Psalms 75:8  
Psalms 78:65  
Proverbs 4:17  
Proverbs 20:1  
Proverbs 21:17  
Proverbs 23:20  
Proverbs 23:31-35  
Proverbs 31:4, 5  
Isaiah 5:11  
Isaiah 5:22  
Isaiah 22:13  
Isaiah 28:1  
Isaiah 56:12  
Jeremiah 25:15, 16  
Jeremiah 51:7  
Daniel 5:23, 24  
Hosea 4:11  
Hosea 7:5  
Nahum 1:10  
Ephesians 5:18  
1 Timothy 3:8  
Titus 2:3  
Revelation 14:8  
Revelation 17:2  
Revelation 18:3




---

## TATTOOS & BODY ART

What do you think? Can we tattoo ourselves and put on all that body art? Can we pierce our nose, tongue and ears? How about piercing our belly buttons and other private parts of the body?

Since the body, as we learned earlier, is the temple of God, I think we need to recognize that we do not own our bodies. They belong to God. “Do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, who is in you,

whom you have received from God? You are not your own; you were bought at a price. Therefore honor God with your body.” 1 Corinthians 6:19, 20.

Honor God with your body. Since God did not create you with all that body art and tattoos, I don't think He expects you to improve upon it. We already learned in Peter that we are not to let the outward be our beauty or our pride. Anyone who has put a tattoo on, or allowed body art to be put on, knows that it was done for pride and “beauty”. This goes right up against what God teaches.

The whole Bible teaches us that those who are of God have a simple, contented spirit that does not want to draw attention to themselves. Even Jesus did not purposefully draw attention to Himself. The Bible tells us “Just as there were many who were appalled at Him, His appearance was so disfigured beyond that of any man... He had no beauty or majesty to attract us to Him, nothing in His appearance that we should desire Him. He was despised and rejected by men, a man of sorrows, and familiar with suffering. Like one from whom men hide their faces He was despised, and we esteemed Him not. And His form marred beyond human likeness—.” Isaiah 52:14; 53:2, 3.

If you claim to be a “Christian” which means to be “Christ-like”, then you must follow in the footsteps of Jesus. You must not mar your body in any way. You must give it as a sacrifice, not to this world or your friends and the present fad; but to Jesus and eternity.

So what about body piercing? The same and even more so. The Bible is very plain that we are not to tattoo the body. Leviticus 19:28 declares that you are not to “put tattoo marks on yourselves.” That is straight up. It comes from the Lord. Read it. God does not want His masterpieces of art being destroyed by our sick and wicked minds. Now if God is so upset with just putting a mark or tattoo on our bodies, don't you think He hates it even more if we are cutting ourselves and drilling holes into His divine temple for our own pride and selfish egos? I think so. That even goes for “plastic surgery” when it is about pride and ego.

In ancient times when a person died, it was considered such a loss that those who were relatives and were very close to that person would show their respect and loss by cutting themselves. This was a sign of respect and great sorrow over the loss of the loved one. Yet, take a look at what God said about even this cutting of the body for a show of respect. “Do not cut your bodies for the dead...”. Leviticus 19:28.

Well, if He does not want us cutting our bodies for the sake of respect and to show our sorrow for the dead loved ones, I don't think He wants us cutting our bodies for our

own selfishness. It is easy to make all kinds of excuses. However, when you lay them at the feet of Jesus, there are no excuses. If you truly love Jesus you will respect His creation. Anything else is a slap in His face. You are taking the Name of the Lord in vain when you cut your body or put tattoo marks on it, then claim to be a “Christian”, one who is “like Christ”. That is breaking the third commandment. Anyone who breaks the commandments willingly cannot get into the Kingdom of God.

Okay, but you didn't know this information when you did these dastardly things to your body. What can you do now? Pray for God to forgive you and never again put a mark on, in or through your temple of the Holy Spirit. When and if you have the opportunity, have them repaired and taken off. Do what you can to cover them respectfully with clothing. And whatever you do, let others know that you were wrong when you did it. Stand up for Jesus. He was hung up for you. Should we do any less for Him?

---

## CONDUCT

“Finally, brothers, whatever is true, whatever is noble, whatever is right, whatever is pure, whatever is lovely, whatever is admirable—if anything is excellent or praiseworthy—think about such things.” Philippians 4:8.

It simply amazes me how many responses I get from people asking if it is possible to live the righteous, holy, sinless, perfect life of Christ. They will go to great lengths to quote the texts that show we have all been sinners. Then they ask, “How can we be perfect when the Bible says we have all been sinners?”

What amazes me is the fact that all these people who claim to be Christians refuse to listen to what Jesus says. The Bible does teach that we HAVE (past tense) been sinners. That is a correct statement. But that is all it is. Nowhere in the whole Bible will you find one verse that states that we **must remain** sinners.

What the Bible teaches emphatically is that even though we used to be, or have been, or may still be sinners, we DO NOT HAVE TO REMAIN IN THAT SICK CONDITION. Jesus came to do away with sin in our mortal bodies. Romans 6:6, 12, 13. The whole Bible is a treatise on how to stop sinning and how to become holy, sinless and perfect, right now, in the power of Jesus.

So how do we do that? “Be alert and **think straight**. Put all your hope in how kind God will be to you when Jesus Christ appears. Behave like **obedient children**. Don't let your lives be controlled by your desires, as they used to be. **Always live as God's holy people should**, because



God is the one who chose you, and he is holy. That's why the Scriptures say, 'I am the holy God, and you must be holy too.'" 1 Peter 1:13-16

Think about it. The reason you and I ended up in prison is because we were thinking about whatever it was that got us into prison. If we had not been thinking about that which put us in, then we would not have been in that position and would not have been put in prison. Wow, what a mouthful. But don't you see? By beholding we become changed!!!

(Those of you who have not been to prison, don't pat yourselves on the back just yet. Your sins are even greater since you don't even recognize them as sins. Just because your sin is acceptable by society, doesn't mean it is acceptable with God.)

Let's take a look at some who thought wrong. In Acts 8:22 Peter tells Simon, who had been baptized into the church, "Repent of this wickedness and pray to the Lord. **Perhaps** He will forgive you for having such a thought in your heart."

Get it? The thought was what caused the trouble. Paul tells us in Ephesians 2:3, "All of us also lived among them at one time, gratifying the cravings of our sinful nature and following its desires and thoughts." There it is again, our thoughts. That is why James is so point blank about this. He says, "But each one is tempted when, by his own evil desire (**thoughts**), he is dragged away and enticed. Then, after desire (**thoughts**) has conceived, it gives birth to sin; and sin, when it is full-grown, gives birth to death." James 1:14, 15.

This is why God has given us the Bible. Instead of putting our minds on the things of this world and all the junk that is going on in it, let's put our minds and thoughts on Jesus and on what is true, noble, right, pure, lovely, and admirable. Wow, what a difference that would make in our lives.

Hebrews 3:1 says the same thing, "Therefore, holy brothers, who share in the heavenly calling, **fix your thoughts** on Jesus...". As we fix our thoughts on Jesus, our attitude will be the same as that of Jesus. He had perfect love. What is love? First of all, we learned earlier in our study that love is the Ten Commandments. We would not know what love truly was without the Ten Commandments to point it out. But now, let's go even deeper and see how those Ten Commandments can be put into practice in a more practical, everyday environment.

1 Corinthians 13 is the chapter on Love and how to demonstrate it in our daily lives. Most of us will not go out and physically murder someone. Most of us will not go out and commit adultery. Most of us do not break the Ten Commandments in their grossest behavior.

However, *it is in the little things that we need to practice the keeping of the Ten Commandments*. So let's take a look at what we can do in our everyday life.

---

## Love is Patient



Now that's a toughie. When was the last time you were "patient"? Did you see something that you did not like and jumped in to change it? Did you hear something that disagreed with your way of thinking and jumped in to

correct it? Did you wait around to listen to the other person's opinion? Or did you turn and leave in an impatient manner? Are you patient with those who just irritate the &%\$#@ out of you? Boy, do we need a lot of work on that one. What does patience have to do with the Ten Commandments? Try stealing. You could have waited patiently until you earned it instead of stealing it. Or, you could be stealing that person's dignity by not listening to his/her point of view, etc. Can you think of any other commands you could be breaking?

What about road-rage? Driving can try anyone's patience. Try driving the speed limit and watch all the "patient" drivers behind you. Just try driving the speed limit with passengers. Patience! Wow, how hard to live the Christian life. We have so abused the term "Christian" that it has become anything we want it to be. We could even say, "That was a Christian killing". Do we ever stop to actually think?

I am sure you have all heard the "prayer", "Lord give me patience, and give it to me right now!" So few are going to heaven. Jesus has made that very plain. Are you starting to get the picture? Christianity isn't what you think it is, it is what God says it is. Are you living up to what God says you must be?

---

## LOVE IS KIND



"And whoever gives one of these little ones even a cup of cold water because he is a disciple, truly, I say to you, he will by no means lose his reward." Matthew 10:42.

Kind? Yep, kind!! Are you kind to people? Do you give of yourself?

177 Things are nice. Money is nice. But those are not the

kindnesses that Paul is talking about. The devil gives things. Jesus gave of Himself in kindness and acts of personal attention. Kind. Wow, what a concept. Taking the time out of your busy schedule to actually sit down with someone and be kind to them, listening to them and be willing to watch and enjoy what **they** are doing. Kind. When was the last time you were kind to someone as Jesus was?

What does kindness have to do with the Ten Commandments? Try Coveting. Maybe you are coveting the time that you need to be giving to someone else. Oh you say, I'm too busy with choir practice, or church activities. Maybe you are too much like Martha (Luke 10:38-42) and need to be more like Mary. When was the last time you MADE the time to sit with Jesus? **Your** works will not get you into heaven. Drop out of choir and church activities and find time to be kind to someone and be with Jesus. What you do to others you do to Jesus.

---

## LOVE DOES NOT ENVY

For those in prison, to be envious is hard not to do. When you have nothing, and you see an inmate with a locker full of food, it is hard not to envy. Envy and coveting go hand in hand. We envy what others have. We covet what they have. Then we steal and kill for what they have. That is why Paul says, "I have learned to be **content** whatever the circumstances. I know what it is to be in need, and I know what it is to have plenty. I have learned the secret of being content in any and every situation, whether well fed or hungry, whether living in plenty or in want." Philippians 4:11, 12.

Paul was talking to his young friend Timothy. He wanted to make sure that Timothy would be properly instructed in this matter. To Timothy, Paul said, "But godliness with contentment is great gain. For we brought nothing into the world, and we can take nothing out of it. But if we have food and clothing, we will be content with that. People who want to get rich fall into temptation and a trap and into many foolish and harmful desires that plunge men into ruin and destruction." 1 Timothy 6:6-9. "Keep your lives free from the love of money and be content with what you have..." Hebrews 13:5.



Another problem with envy is it tends to produce gossip. You know how it goes, you confide in a "friend" some information that you want to share, but want it kept confidential. Later on your "friend" becomes envious of you for some reason and then betrays your confidence. "Gossip betrays

a confidence, but a trustworthy man keeps a secret." Proverbs 11:13.

Talking about wicked people, Paul says, "They have become filled with every kind of wickedness, evil, greed and depravity. They are full of envy (there is that word envy), murder, strife, deceit and malice. **They are gossips**, slanderers, God-haters, insolent, arrogant and boastful; they invent ways of doing evil; they disobey their parents; they are senseless, faithless, heartless, ruthless." Romans 1:29-31.

All because of envy. The point is, evil is evil. A gossip who breaks faith and betrays a confidence is a wicked person. Of course she will not think so, but the Bible says she is. Never are we to base our judgment on what we feel, but on the facts as the Word of God calls it. It is something like football. You, standing in the stadium may see a play and feel that it was okay. The football player doing the play may feel that it was okay. In fact, the whole stadium may feel that it was OK. But if the referee says it was a wrong, it was wrong and that is that.

Again, that is why so few people are going to heaven. They think they have a right to gossip, or slander, or do this or that, since, they are "righteous" and the other person is a "sinner". There are people in the church going around talking about this person who is gay, or that person who is divorced or that one who did this or that. Some even take others to court. The Bible says that the one going around gossiping is wicked and will not be in heaven. People, keep your mouths shut. Practice self-control.

This is another part of envy, looking up to the neighbors. Look at what is happening in our society. Look at the long hours we are putting into work, and for what? For things of this world that are about to pass away. Why? No one is content. Everyone is off trying to find contentment. Work, work, work. Buy, buy, buy. Get, get, get.

The consequences of all this are broken lives, broken families, broken relationships. It doesn't have to be that way if you will follow the advice of the Bible. "Better one handful with tranquility than two handfuls with toil and chasing after the wind." Ecclesiastes 4:6.

"'For whom am I toiling', he asked, 'and why am I depriving myself of enjoyment?' This too is meaningless — a miserable business" Ecclesiastes 4:8.

Please folks, calm down, cut back and reduce your wants and your envy of what everyone else has. You don't need it. All you need is what Jesus offers. Peace, health, happiness, joy and eternal life. Let this world go.

Another aspect of this “envy” and “gossip” are the TV and radio talk shows. There is nothing more sinful, wicked and godless than these shows. Always gossiping and getting into everyone’s business. Totally against God. None of it does any good. All this airing dirty laundry is only for money, fame or spite. But lives are being ruined and destroyed. Be quiet, says the Bible, and know that God is God.

# LOVE IS NOT RUDE

Love is not self-seeking, it is not easily angered. These three run together.

Was Jesus “rude”? Yes – no. It depends on what side of the word you are standing. If rude to you means that someone has said or done something that offended you, then yes, Jesus was rude. If rude to you means that someone deliberately went out of his way to cause you trouble, then no, Jesus was not rude.

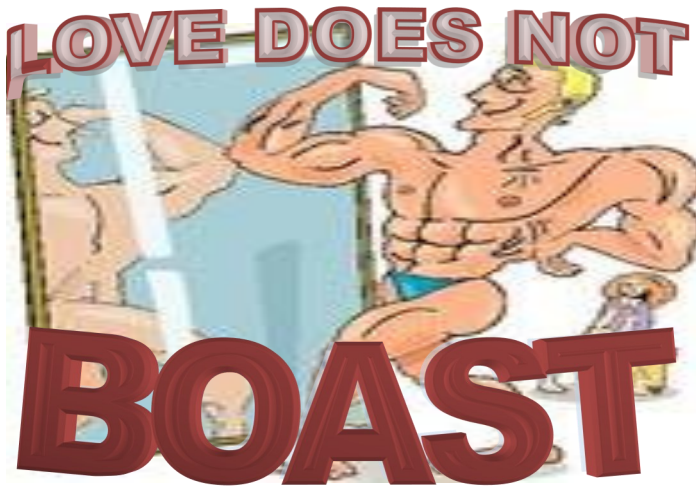
To illustrate this point, turn to Matthew 15 and read verses 1-16. If you were a Pharisee standing there during this discourse, you would say that Jesus was very rude to you and the Pharisees. Listen to what the disciples had to say as they watched these Pharisees.

“Then the disciples came to Him and asked, ‘Do you know that the Pharisees were offended when they heard this?’” Matthew 15:12. Absolutely. Jesus even answers this concept of rudeness. All wickedness is offended by righteousness. All the sinners will point fingers at the righteous and call them “rude” for saying such nasty things of them. I have been called vile by wicked people who think they are of God. This book has been called, “Scurrilous” and “of the devil”. Why? Because this book teaches truth, the teachings of Jesus, and they don’t want to hear it.

This is what Jesus says, “He replied, ‘Every plant that My heavenly Father has not planted will be pulled up by the roots. Leave them; they are blind guides.’” Matthew 15:13, 14. If you were a Pharisee, you would think that Jesus was very rude to say that. But you see, Jesus was just speaking truth. The wicked hate the truth. Did Jesus go out of His way to say wicked things about the Pharisees? No. They were the ones who came to Him to lodge the complaint. That can be read in the first two verses. Jesus was simply defending His disciples. In other words, the Pharisees brought it on themselves. Keep our mouths shut and we won’t be getting into so much trouble.

Jesus loves, but He never shrank from delivering truth, even if it meant being “rude”. However, it was always delivered in love. Going on we find where we could say that Jesus was “rude” again. “Peter said, ‘Explain the parable to us.’ ‘Are you still so dull?’ Jesus asked them.” Matthew 15:16. What if you were Peter? Would you not think that Jesus answered you in a rude manner? If you’re honest, I think you would think so. If not, see how you respond when someone says to you, “Are you still so dull?” You might take offense also.

To explain this concept more fully, we move to the



“The proud and arrogant man – ‘Mocker’ is his name; he behaves with overweening pride.” Proverbs 21:24. “A man’s pride brings him low, but a man of lowly spirit gains honor.” Proverbs 29:23.

Pride is quite a critter. People run around pointing fingers at people and saying, “You should not be proud”. Yet most of those pointing their fingers are very proud of the fact that they are pointing the finger in order to humble the one they think to be proud. Hmmmmmm.

You see, the Bible talks about good pride and bad pride. Paul talks about being proud of his “great confidence in you”. 2 Corinthians 7:4. Nothing wrong with an honest, Christ-like pride in something good. What God, and most humans hate, is the pride that is built on stupidity, falsehoods and lies. You know what I mean, the person who thinks he is something when he really isn’t. That is why we are not to compare ourselves among ourselves. Churches are so prideful.

Paul tells the Galatians that instead of comparing ourselves among ourselves or by ourselves, the true person will “test his own actions. Then he can take pride in himself, without comparing himself to somebody else.” Galatians 6:4. The concept being, true pride is actually humbling. If we look into the Law of God’s Ten Commandments and see that we are obeying them, that is something to be proud of, yet at the same time it will be very humbling. Be proud of all the good you can do. Be proud of being a Christian. If you are being a Christian, you will be humbling yourself to help your needy brother and sister.

# Keeps No Record of Wrongs

gospel of John. John, in chapter 6, is recording a dialog between Jesus and His antagonists. The speech Jesus was using was causing a lot of trouble among His hearers. So much so that they were “grumbling”. Jesus directly tells them to “Stop grumbling among yourselves.” John 6:43. They were very offended at Jesus and His manner of speech. They thought He was rude to them in His remarks. So offensive and “rude” was Jesus that “On hearing it, many of His disciples said, ‘This is a hard teaching. Who can accept it?’” John 6:60.

You see, in today’s world, as back then, if we are not “Politically Correct” (P.C.) in our speech, we might offend someone, or a church or a religion or a this or a that. The devil does not want us to be “rude”, but to keep truth to ourselves. Jesus was not afraid of being un-P.C. He taught truth. “Aware that His disciples were grumbling about this, Jesus said to them, ‘Does this offend you?’” John 6:61. Yes it did.

Are we to be “rude”? Absolutely not. We are to be truthful no matter what the consequences. I am not to hurt anyone. But if that person perceives a hurt just because I teach truth, that is his problem and not mine. But I will in no way go out of my way to be rude. In love, I must be gentle in all that I do, including the teaching of truth. But I must teach truth and let the marbles fall where they will. “The Word of the Lord is offensive to them.” Jeremiah 6:10.

Outside of truth we must not be rude. We must not desire the first place, or the best food or the best clothes or the this and the that. Let us do all in our power to gently and humbly love those around us, but never to the point of giving up the truth.

Jesus was never self-seeking, He was never easily angered. Did He get angry, Yes. But never over self. His anger was directed against sin and those who were hurting others. He stood up for truth and righteousness, but never for self. They could beat Him, spit on Him and do all manner of evil against Him, and that was okay. But the minute they went against truth, He was there to stand up for it and defend it without hurting them.

If you want to know how angry God gets, as we are to get, just read the book of Jeremiah carefully. See how God gets angry. Then, as a Christian, you get angry at sin and wickedness in your life, and refuse to walk in it any more.

Are we to hate? Absolutely. Amos 5:15 will tell you to hate evil and to love good. The problem is, we have all been brainwashed by the devil and allow sin and evil into our lives and think that it is okay. No, it is not. Get it out. Get angry at sin. Hate sin. Then live the righteous, holy, sinless life of Jesus by getting to know Him.

This is a hard one. Most people are destroying their lives by living in the past. They are harboring all the wrongs that anyone has supposedly done to them in real or in imagination. Their lives are being worn out by thoughts of revenge and anger. What a waste.

Maybe there were wrongs committed. But haven’t we all committed wrongs to others? Haven’t we all done something that was not right to someone else, either knowingly or unknowingly? That is why the Bible is so strong on forgiveness. You must let go. You must let the past be buried and let the grass grow over the burial site. Forget it. Your anger will not change the one who did you the wrong. Your anger will only destroy you.

Do you have to live with someone who is hurting you deliberately? No. The Bible says to leave them. Have nothing to do with them if they do not want to repent and turn from their hurtful behavior. But don’t take the anger with you when you leave. You can forgive them in your heart; leave and start a new life. Don’t let their wicked, miserable life destroy yours. Let it go and begin a new life in Jesus. But do everything in your power to bring reconciliation between the two of you. That is of God.

Keeping score of wrongs is a miserable way to live. It brings no satisfaction. At the end of life, what will you have to look back upon: nothing of any value. On the other hand, if your life is dedicated to loving God and serving all mankind, you will have a life to look back upon that will bring you immense pleasure and pride. When walking through a rose garden, stop checking out the thorns and keep your eyes on the roses. Life will be a lot happier.

This brings up the next point, revenge. We all make mistakes. But are we to continue making a person suffer for their mistakes? We call ourselves “Christians” and then act in the most devilish ways against those we think have hurt or harmed us. We have no love, no forgiveness and no grace towards those we feel have betrayed or wronged us, or those we love. That is of the devil, not Jesus.

In Matthew 18:21-35, Jesus gives a parable about forgiveness. Simply put, a man owed the king ten thousand dollars and could not pay it. When the king put him and his wife and children up for sale to pay the debt, the man fell on his knees and begged. The king was moved and forgave him his debt. But when that man went out and saw a fellow servant who owed him one hundred dollars, he grabbed him by the neck and began choking him and demanded his money. The fellow

servant fell on his knees and begged. But the servant had him thrown into jail until he paid the very last penny.

When the king heard of this, he sent for that wicked servant and said, “You wicked servant, I canceled all that debt of yours because you begged me to. Shouldn’t you have had mercy on your fellow servant just as I had on you?” Then he handed him over to the jailers to be tortured until he paid back all he owed.

The Bible says, “Do not take revenge, my friends, but leave room for God’s wrath, for it is written: ‘It is Mine to avenge; I will repay,’ says the Lord. On the contrary: ‘If your enemy is hungry, feed him; if he is thirsty, give him something to drink. In doing this, you will heap burning coals on his head.’ Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good.” Romans 12:19-21.

If you are the one taking out “God’s wrath” on your enemy, then God can’t do any more to punish that person. He now must punish you for your wickedness. Drop it. Leave it alone. Let go of your anger and wickedness against those you think are bad, evil or wicked. You are only making yourself like them, no matter how you justify yourself.

It is time to become like Jesus and to surrender to the Love of Jesus. Treat all men: the wicked, the evil, the derelict, the murderer, gays, the child molester and all those who are not of your caliber, with the same love and respect that you would want to be treated by Jesus. You may think you are better and that you deserve to be treated better by God. You’re not. In God’s eyes, you are worse off, since you don’t see your need.

That is why the Bible says, “I say to you that many will come from the east and the west, and will take their places at the feast with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob in the kingdom of heaven. **But the subjects of the kingdom** (those today who belong to a church and think they are Christians) will be thrown outside, into the darkness, where there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.” Matthew 8:11, 12.

Understand? Those whom you, the state, the church, the “good” society think are bad, wicked, and “not up to par” will be the ones to feast in heaven. Those who think they belong there, the “subjects” of the kingdom, will be thrown outside. The weeping and gnashing of teeth won’t be by the “wicked” but by the “righteous” who thought they were going to be in heaven and are now finding themselves burning up. They will be weeping and gnashing their teeth.

Why? Because they did not forgive. They did not love. They thought they had the right to act “like God” according to their perverse understanding of God. They never studied the beauty of holiness, of forgiveness, of

the loving kindness of God. Like Lucifer, they want the power of God to hate, hurt and bring vengeance, but they never learned to accept God’s meekness, love, kindness and forgiveness. We are to leave the “anger, hate, hurt and vengeance” we have **of others** to God. You are to practice the other attributes of Jesus if you want to get into heaven.

Yet look at all the “Christians” going to court against those they feel have hurt them or done them wrong. “Christians” who claim to believe the Bible refuse to listen to it or practice what it says. “But instead, one brother goes to law against another—and this in front of unbelievers! The very fact that you have lawsuits among you means **you have been completely defeated already**. Why not rather be wronged? Why not rather be cheated? Instead, you yourselves cheat and do wrong, and you do this to your brothers.” 1 Corinthians 6:6-8.

“Like water spilled on the ground, which cannot be recovered, so we must die. But God does not take away life; instead, he devises ways so that a banished person may not remain estranged from him.” 2 Samuel 14:14.

Did you understand that text? That is our example. If you think someone has done wrong to you or your family, etc., then it is your duty to do all in your power to bring that person back into fellowship so he will “not remain estranged”. That is true Christianity. If you are not doing that for others, God can not do that for you, and you will spend eternity “estranged” from God. It is called everlasting death.

Please surrender your pride, hate, hurt and all sin and let the love of Jesus into your heart. Forgive. Forgive. Forgive. That is the only way we will be forgiven by God.

---

## Love Does Not Delight in Evil, But Rejoices With the Truth

How often we walk around looking at the bad in things and people. How often we find ourselves thinking about the negatives of life. How many “Christians” are full of conspiracy theories. Always digging for the dirt in others, the church or something else. Why? What good does it do? Love won’t do that. Love will rejoice with the truth, positive truth, not negative truth. This affects most of what we do. What music do you listen to? What programs do you watch on TV? What video tapes, DVD’s or movies do you watch? What books do you read? What conversations are you involved with?

This takes us back to Philippians 4:8, “Whatever is true,

whatever is noble, whatever is right, whatever is pure, whatever is lovely, whatever is admirable—if anything is excellent or praiseworthy—think about such things.”

Yet we think that doesn't apply to us. We go to a movie, or watch a video, DVD or TV. We listen to certain music and think that we can handle this. We think that we are above the admonition given in the Bible and that we are stronger than God. And then we wonder why our lives are so filled with grief and sorrow. Why our emotional state is battered and depressed. It is because we are not listening to Jesus. We are on Satan's ground and he is beating us up. It is time to get off his ground and follow Jesus into heaven. Get out of the mud and stand on the Rock. That is where Jesus is. You can't get to heaven if you don't follow Jesus.

Love delights in the truth. If your church, denomination, minister, friend, music, video, TV programs are not teaching you positive truth that will make you perfect in Christ, TURN THEM OFF! Your life will be richer and happier if you will follow Jesus in every aspect of your life.

---

## Love Never Fails

Does that mean you are going to heaven because God loves you and His love never fails? Nope. His love never fails, but unless you have His love, you are not going to heaven. His love cannot get you into heaven. It can only provide you **with the way** to Heaven. But you must follow that Way. That Way is the Way of Love. Love is the Ten Commandments (Deuteronomy 7:9; 2 John 1:6). We have just seen how those Ten Commandments are to be fulfilled in every detail of our lives. They never fail.

No doubt about it, it is work. Keeping our eyes on Jesus is very hard work. The devil has invented more ways than ever before imaginable for keeping your eyes off what is true, noble, right, pure, lovely, admirable, and praiseworthy. The sad fact is, we feel right at home with most of his inventions.

But you say, “When Jesus comes, He will change me and force me to be good in heaven. I won't want to be a sinner there.” I'm afraid not, my friend. You see, there is no police force in Heaven. God's government is not run by force. There is not one police officer in Heaven. Not one jail cell. Not one speed limit. Not one building code. Not one government regulation. Nope, just ten simple commandments: the Covenant of Love. That is all a righteous person needs. If God could force you to be good in heaven, He would do it here on earth.

You see, the only people Jesus can take to Heaven are

those **who are living** the Heavenly life right now. If you are not, voluntarily, living the Heavenly life now, you won't live it in Heaven. Why? Because salvation and righteous living is a choice. You can live it now, **if you want to**. If you don't want to, you won't be. And if you aren't now, you won't then. God cannot force you into righteousness. Laws are only necessary to keep the wicked heart under control. Since there will be no wicked hearts in Heaven, there will be no need for laws or law enforcement. All who are in Heaven will be there voluntarily. They will be there because they love God's law and want to keep it - all of it from the heart.

Some may argue that they are what they are because of their genes or genetic code. That it would be un-Christ-like to condemn them or destroy them for “being born that way”. I believe that medical science will discover that genes are not set, but motivated. Genes can be changed, i.e. switched on or off, become dominant or dormant. How is this possible? The Bible tells us how.

God, who created us, created genes to be motivated by our behavior and our thinking. “For as the thoughts of his heart are, so is he...” Proverbs 23:7 These patterns of thought which then create patterns of behavior would then be transmitted “...to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me, but showing love to a thousand generations of those who love me and keep my Commandments.” Exodus 20:5, 6.

Now we understand the concept of what God has been trying to get across to us since the beginning of time. To Cain He said, “If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? But if you do not do what is right, sin is crouching at your door; it desires to have you, but you must master it.” Genesis 4:7. In the New Testament He said, “...continue to work out your salvation with fear and trembling...” Philippians 2:12. He knew that “love” would never compensate for work. Only by the power of the Love of God through our hard work would we, God's power with our power, be able to change the DNA genetic code of sin in our lives.

“Bygren and other scientists have now amassed historical evidence suggesting that powerful environmental conditions (near death from starvation, for instance) can somehow leave an imprint on the genetic material in eggs and sperm. These genetic imprints can short-circuit evolution and pass along new traits in a single generation.” *Why Your DNA Isn't Your Destiny*, By John Cloud Wednesday, Time Magazine, Jan. 06, 2010.

By the way, God's love never fails, but He does withdraw it. “‘When I called, they did not listen; so when they called, I would not listen,’ says the Lord Almighty.” “The flock detested Me, and I grew weary of them and said, ‘I will not be your shepherd. Let the dying die, and the perishing perish. Let those who are

left eat one another's flesh.'" Zechariah 7:13; 11:8, 9. Your choice! Obey and receive God's never failing love, or disobey and step outside of God's never failing love.

However, God knows that we need a law of principles so we understand what "love" is. Without the true love of Jesus in the heart, man must be ruled by laws. Since the 1960's when the churches down-played the Ten Commandments and became infatuated by the "you're OK, I'm OK" and the "Saved by Grace" philosophy, the laws of the land have more than tripled. With the Law of God in the heart, you don't need so many laws of man. Without the Law of love in the heart (Ten Commandments), you need more and more laws and regulations to control the wicked heart of man.

Militant Islamics also claim to love God. They run around claiming that Allah is kind and merciful while they slit your throat and cut off your head. They have made a commitment to **force** the world to accept Allah as the one and only God. Those who do not accept their god will be cut to pieces, mutilated and tortured.

The next time you hear your pastor, your church, your friend or anybody talk about, "all we need is love", watch out! What love is he/she talking about? The love of "my rights", "you must believe as I believe", or the love of Jesus who humbled Himself and served others and allowed others to walk all over His rights. That is the only love that will go to heaven.

---

# CONTROL

As earlier stated, churches were set up for the one purpose of controlling the thinking and actions of their members. Control is a very human thing. Why? Because our humanity is controlled by Lucifer. At no time in history has a "Christian" ever been in control of anything but himself. Why, because "Christians" can't control. It is against the nature of God to control. God is love. Love must give you the right to say "Yes" and the right to say "No".

Right in the beginning we see this. God was a Christian and could not control Adam and Eve to obey Him. He gave them their choice. Adam and Eve then became Christians and refused to control Cain. Cain refused to become a Christian and he tried to control Abel. When he couldn't, he killed him. Noah was a Christian. He did not control one person. Not one person did he "make" go into the Ark. He simply gave people the option. Only seven people chose to join him.

You see, it is Lucifer who wants to control people. Since He hates God, and everything God stands for, He hates freedom. He wants to be a god. He wants to be

worshiped just like God is worshiped. But because no one would worship Lucifer voluntarily, he must resort to control, force, lies, manipulation and stealth. Those under his control reflect his controlling character. Those under the influence of Jesus reflect His loving character.

This concept allows us to look at people, nations and organizations and see what influence they are under. Hitler wanted to control. When He couldn't make people obey him, he killed them.

Luther was a man of God. When he broke away from the Catholic Church he refused to have anything to do with control. Even when his "Protestant" friends wanted to go to war against the Catholics, Luther refused to bless their actions. Luther was for education, not force. It is the Spirit of God that must water the seed, not weapons of war.

On the other hand, the Catholic Church was for force. For centuries it had hidden the Bible and refused people the right to read it. The Catholic Church claimed the right to control every single person, organization and government on earth. Just like Lucifer, it wanted to be, and acted like, "god". Those who refused to bow down to its control were burned alive at the stake, roasted slowly over a fire until dead, stretched until their body parts gave way, sawed apart, tied and thrown into deep bodies of water and many other satanic acts of control. None for the "glory" of God, but for the power of man, church and Lucifer.

Since that time, other nations have learned well from the Catholic Church. Communism, Hitlerism, Pol Pot, Rwanda, the Serbs, Al-Qaeda and Islam have all taken their cue from the Catholic Church on how to annihilate and torture those they did not like but want to control.

In the Nineteenth, Twentieth and Twenty-first Centuries, religions began taking their cue from the Catholic Church. Look at the wars between Islam and Israelis, etc. The concept is the same. The only barrier keeping most religions from committing the same horrible and detestable acts are the laws of the land. However, in many countries of the world today, the state and the Catholic Church are working together to continue their wicked acts against those who refuse to honor man instead of God. Where the state is controlled by Islam, you have the same atrocities taking place.

An illustration of the power of the church to destroy is the attitude it has against those who provide abortion services. The attitude and influence of the church is what has motivated others to kill the doctors, nurses and destroy the clinics. Look at the same attitude directed against those who are homosexual. It is the attitude of the church that has given rise to those who hate, hurt and kill those who are homosexual.

I am not defending abortion or homosexuality. However, I am to love and educate, not force and kill. All force and killing for conscience sake is of the devil, no matter what the cause. The Theocracy of God ended with the Jewish nation. Free will is still the grace of God. We are to love and let God be the One to carry out any execution. You may not approve of what someone else does, but that does not give you the right to hurt them in any way, for conscience sake.

It is not a far leap to go from killing those who are homosexual and provide abortion services, to killing those who keep the 7<sup>th</sup> day Sabbath instead of the 1<sup>st</sup> day sabbath of the devil. “He (the United States of America) was given power to give breath to the image (Sunday worship) of the first beast (Catholic Church), so that it (United States) could speak and cause all who refused to worship the image to be killed.” Revelation 13:15.

Even in these United States there are prison and jail systems that are under the demonic concept of control. Many refuse to allow freedom of religion. This ministry has had to go before the Federal Court to allow inmates the right to this book.

This concept of control is taught in our homes. Fathers and mothers, even children are taught and encouraged to “be in control” of others. All society in today’s world is so involved in controlling that we don’t even recognize it for the evil that it is. Even “advertising” is no longer a gentle education, but an all-out war to control you and your thinking. Everything we do, from our education to the car we buy, to the house we live in to the clothes we wear and the food we eat are all expressions of our control over others.

Yet, listen to what a true Christian would be thinking. “Better a patient man than a warrior, a man who **controls his temper** than one who takes a city.” Proverbs 16:32. We are not to control others but learn how to control ourselves. That is very hard. There are fathers and mothers who yell and slap their children around, trying to control them, yet are unable to control even the amount of food they put within their own mouths. First control your own weight, attitude, anger, hate and unforgiving attitude, then you will be able to lead by example in **training up the children** in the way they should go. Proverbs 22:6.

Another example of control by governments is Politically Correct speech, known as P.C. You are not allowed to say this or that about someone or something for fear of hurting someone’s feelings. When I attempted to get these books into the Canadian prison system, the books first had to go before a committee.



Because the books taught truth, the committee refused to allow them in because the book pointed out the hypocrisy of churches and people who do not want the truth to be spoken. You will see more and more of this being enacted around the world.

Remember, it is the dragon who was and is “enraged at the woman and went off to make war against the rest of her offspring – those who obey God’s commandments and hold to the testimony of Jesus.” Revelation 12:17. If your church, minister, denomination, organization or government entity is making war against those who are quietly yet fervently obeying God’s commandments, including the 7<sup>th</sup> day (Saturday) Sabbath, you know immediately who is behind them. That old dragon, the devil.

You may think that “control” is going to have a bad, mean or sinister look to it. Not at all. Most of the “control” that is going on today is very subtle and under the guise of “good”. Let’s take a look at wickedness and see how it can express itself. You probably have this opinion of the devil as a mean looking, wild animal type always trying to hurt you. But that is what the devil wants you to believe. That is not the truth. He is an angel who is fallen, but still an angel of light.

By the way, this thing about “love” is way overblown. We tend to judge things by our own experience, by what we want, not by the truth. How do you think Lucifer got 1/3<sup>rd</sup> of the angels to follow him? Did he force them? No, God would not have allowed that. How did he do it? By “love”, “kindness” and “feelings”. Just the same things you see in the churches of today. The only problem is, the “love”, “kindness” and “feelings” he teaches are not of God. Instead of those emotions bringing us closer to obedience, they are used to take us farther away from obedience to God. That is what Lucifer used in heaven. The love that Lucifer used upon the angels is the same love he is using in the churches of today. It is a selfish love. It is a love based on what you must do for me.

Remember, he didn’t force angels to follow him, he couldn’t. But he could go up to them and smile, put his arms around them and say, “I love you. It is my highest desire to see you free from these Ten Commandments that are causing us so much trouble. We are all righteous. We are perfect. We have eternal life and are saved, we can’t fall or sin. What do we need these for? We can worship God on any day of the week. Why do we need this command that tells us we are to keep the 7<sup>th</sup> day holy? We are to keep every day holy. Let’s see if we can enlighten God and get Him to do away with these silly Ten Commandments. We are angels, we don’t need these rules, we are free.”

**Remember, Lucifer’s name means: Lucifer = ‘light-**



bearer’, “shining one, morning star, Lucifer”.  
(Strong’s Concordance)

“Light-bearer”. Yes, he stood in the presence of God and bore the “light”, messages, from God to all the angels. That is why the angels trusted him. He came from the throne of God with the messages of God.

Well, what do your ministers tell you? Don’t they tell you that they are the “messengers of God”? Don’t they tell you to “trust” them? Don’t they claim to be the “light-bearers” of God bringing you the message from God?

If they are not teaching the teachings of Jesus: stop sinning, be perfect and keep the Ten Commandments, including the 7<sup>th</sup> day (Saturday) Sabbath holy, in order to earn your eternal life, they are not from God. 2 John 1:9. They are not bringing you the message from the throne of God. “For Satan himself masquerades as an angel of light. It is not surprising, then, if his servants masquerade as servants of righteousness.” 2 Corinthians 11:14, 15.

So, does the message from your pulpit, minister, pastor, priest or denomination sound familiar? The same sly, “loving”, “kind” and emotional “feel good” attitude is being used in our churches today. That is how Lucifer got 1/3 of the angels to fall with him. Through “love”. That is what you hear in the churches today, “All we need is love.” No my friend, all you need is obedience. That is what proves your love. Without obedience you have no “love”. Your choice. You can follow Lucifer or Jesus. Both teach “love”, however, both “loves” go in two different directions. The “love” of Lucifer and the churches of this world will take you to eternal death. The “love” of Jesus will bring you to the foot of the cross in humble obedience to His Law of Love. It will bring you to obedience to Jesus. “Whoever has My commands and obeys them, he is the one who loves Me.” John 14:21. Whoever does not love Me does not keep My words. John 14:24.

---

## The BIBLE

“Accept him whose faith is weak, without passing judgment on **disputable matters**. One man’s faith allows him to eat everything, but another man, whose faith is weak, eats only vegetables... Who are you to judge someone else’s servant? To his own master he stands or falls...”. Romans 14:1, 4.

What does this have to do with the Bible? A whole lot. There are individuals, churches and whole denominations and other organizations running around passing judgment on **disputable matters**. These could be dress, drink, food or the Bible. “Our Bible is better than your Bible”.

“This Bible is ‘the’ Word of God. Yours is of the devil.” And so it goes. All breaking the very Bible they claim to uphold by their denunciations of “disputable matters.”

You see my friend, it doesn’t matter what Bible you have. You can find the everlasting gospel in any Bible. I can teach the everlasting gospel from a Mormon Bible, a Jehovah’s Witness Bible, a Catholic Bible, a Baptist Bible, a Lutheran Bible, or any of the translations and even the paraphrased Bibles you put in my hand.

I am sure that the Sadducees had their own sacred scrolls of scripture and the Pharisees had their own sacred scrolls of scripture. I am sure that if it was important to point out which was the “authorized” scripture, Jesus would have done it. It would have been recorded for all posterity. But it didn’t happen. Jesus was not concerned about which sacred scrolls they used, He was more concerned about whether or not **they obeyed** what they had. That was the problem, they were not obeying the truth they had.

As with the Jews, so with us. We are more concerned about how often we fast, what Bible we use, what we eat or drink, what we wear and how often we go to “church”. None of that is relevant in the Christian walk. Those are disputable matters, debatable matters that the Bible says to leave alone. Have nothing to do with them. So why are the churches so engrossed with them?

The devil is involved in a war against God. If he can keep the soldiers of “Christianity” involved in warring among themselves, he can keep them from fighting the real war. If he can wear them out and kill them off among themselves, he has won. Don’t you think it is time to learn the facts and stay out of the wrong war and get involved in the war Jesus wants us to fight? We need to get into unity with Jesus and His cause; not ours. So what do we do with the Bible “wars”? We do what the Bible says and get educated. “My people are destroyed from lack of knowledge.” Hosea 4:6. “A people without understanding will come to ruin!” Hosea 4:14. So let’s get educated and not be destroyed or come to ruin over the stupid, devil inspired, Bible wars.

### Here are some historical facts

God did not write any Bible and send it down from heaven. Not one “Bible” is hand delivered from God. Only the Ten Commandments were “hand delivered”. God did that for a purpose. He wanted to see if we could tolerate variations and still love each other. It is a good test. As you can see, most of those who call themselves “Christians” have flunked that test. Same reason God has allowed variations in the races. Some black, white, yellow, brown, etc. Can we get along without claiming one is better than another? They are just as prejudiced about the Bible as racists are about race. It is all sin! Sad

to say, those who fight over the Bible don't even obey that which was handed directly to us by God.

Since the KJV (King James Version) seems to be the "measure" by which all other Bibles are judged, either good or bad, let us begin with it. I suppose this is a good place to put in another text. "Have nothing to do with godless myths and old wives' tales; rather, train yourself to be godly." 1 Timothy 4:7. That seems to be the problem with those who espouse the KJV as the "Authorized" version from God. That is an "old wives' tale". Let us get the facts.

There are some Protestant groups who carry on and on about the KJV. They claim that it is "the" Word of God. That it is so sacred and perfect in translation that it is to be so revered that we shouldn't even read it. At least that is the attitude of most, since most have never read it entirely through. (Just to lay down the facts so you know I am not a hypocrite, as of 2017, I have read the Bible through over 100 times. I read it through about three times a year in order to let the Holy Spirit teach me.)

Now, back to the KJV. Is it any special Bible? NO!!!! Why is it considered to be so special? Foolishness!!!! But let's go back and look at the historical reasons for the KJV and understand why it was considered so special but why we should not consider it with any special consideration today. (2 Kings 18:4 is an example of worshiping something God commanded in the past, but was no longer needed and was being abused by the people in the present.)

"None of the original Bible manuscripts exist. They were lost centuries ago, and the texts that are now in the Bible represent copies of copies that were handed down in a variety of translations over many generations." *Compton's Encyclopedia*

Ah, now that's the problem my dear friend, **there are no "originals"** of any portion of the Bible. That is why this whole debate is useless. However, for those who are still stiff-necked and hardhearted, I will continue. What follows is a brief outline of the many volumes of works I have researched in order to make this as accurate as I can, yet keep it simple and easy to read.

Most manuscripts of the Bible were in the hands of, or under the control of, the Catholic (universal) Church from its founding until about 1947. This is fact. This also should tell you something. It should tell you that any Bible that has been under Catholic control is suspect. Why? Because, the Catholic Church does not have a very good reputation for preserving things in their original. It likes to change things in order to make the "Church" look good. (Remember what it did to the Ten Commandments?) So what does that have to do with the Bible?

Century after century monks, priests and scribes copied the manuscripts of the Bible. Century after century monks, priests and scribes of the church taught from these manuscripts. As they taught and copied, they would say to themselves, "Oh, this is hard for the people to understand, let me make it clearer." And so, the good meaning monk, priest and/or scribe might add a remark in the margin.

Well, another monk comes along and sees the "remark" in the margin and thinks that it was missed, so he now copies it in as "scripture". Oh my, do you see what is happening? Now we are having a lot of "scripture" added that was not there to begin with. "Texts" were being added that were not in the originals. That is a problem. Let's see how this came about in a practical illustration based on historical fact.

Look up 1 John 5:7 & 8 in the KJV and this is what you will find: "*For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. And there are three that bear witness in earth, the spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one.*"

Now let's read the same verses in the NIV (New International Version) of the Bible: "*For there are three that testify: the Spirit, the water and the blood; and the three are in agreement.*"

Wow you say, that is a big difference. Is the devil taking texts out of the Bible? Did the translators of the NIV have a diabolical scheme in mind? Nope and Nope. Here are the facts.

The words, "**bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. And there are three that bear witness in earth, the**" are **NOT** found in any Greek manuscript before the sixteenth century. Hummmmmmm. We have a problem here. There are two solutions that I can see.

1. John, the writer of the gospel of John and the letters of 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, & 3<sup>rd</sup> John and Revelation, either lived 1600 years and then said, "Oops, I made a mistake, I left out those words. I must enter them before I die or they won't think I'm a true prophet of God." Or
2. Someone in the 16<sup>th</sup> century (1500's AD) added them.

Okay, what is your vote? No educated person would believe the first solution. John did **not** live 1600 years. He died right around 100 AD. He did **not** write those "missing" words. Therefore, some agent of the Catholic Church had to have inserted them. That is the only explanation that I can see. But why?

Ah, to answer that question we have to go back into history. In the 3<sup>rd</sup> century a priest by the name of Arius

began teaching a doctrine that would eventually lead to many wars and kill hundreds of thousands of people. What was that doctrine? “**Arianism**, doctrine proposed by the priest Arius, repudiated by early Christian church as heresy, **that the Son is finite and created by the Father.**” *Compton’s Encyclopedia*. Simply put, it says that Jesus is inferior to the Father.

This doctrine was considered heresy by the Catholic Church. Throughout the history of the Catholic Church that doctrine kept popping up, over and over again. I would assume that sometime before the 16<sup>th</sup> century a good meaning monk inserted the words, “**bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. And there are three that bear witness in earth, the**”, in order to give “scriptural” authority to the Catholic Church’s doctrine that the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit are all one and that there is no difference between them.

All right, it is now firmly established in “Scripture” of the Catholic Church. So what if the Church had to add some words to a text. It is only to clarify the “truth”. Okay, but what about all the other additions. Look at Matthew 18:11. You won’t find that text in the NIV. Why? Because it is **not** in the earliest manuscripts. That brings us back to our original thought and purpose of this study. What Bible is correct, and can we still use the KJV in our studies?

First, a little more history in order to understand how we got our KJV. Keep in mind that the Catholic Church ruled most of the “Christian” world up through the 16<sup>th</sup> century. Protestantism was just beginning to emerge. It was being persecuted and wars were fought, but it was not anything of importance at this time in history. The Catholic Church still had control of most of the historical documents of the Church, including the manuscripts it so willingly “updated”.

Now comes the reformation. People were beginning to “wake up” with regards to the fact that the Catholic Church had been lying to them and keeping them from the Bible and its truths. The Bible had literally been chained up and kept from the masses. Luther translated the Latin Bible into German so the common people could read it and understand it themselves. But understand, the sources Luther used were still those that had been under the control of the Catholic Church. The Germans could read it, but it was still contaminated with “updated” texts.

In the 1600’s, England decided that it had had enough of the tyrannical control of the Catholic Church and parted company from it. However, keep in mind that it is still “Catholic” in nature. The only thing different was that now the king was the head of the church and not the pope. Instead of Englishmen paying their money to the pope, they now paid it to the king. He liked that. Other

than that, very little changed. The same manuscripts were used in the English church as were used in the Catholic Church, no difference.

For 50 years prior to the KJV, the Geneva Bible was THE Bible for English speaking people. It was the Geneva Bible that was used by the Pilgrims and was known as the “Protestant Bible” since it was the only Bible brought to America by the Pilgrims. The KJV was considered corrupted by the American Pilgrims. It wasn’t until 1782 that the KJV was first printed in America. Think on that fact.

King James did not like some of the “margin notes” referring to the Pope as the Antichrist in the Geneva Bible. His translators removed those notes but still translated from the manuscripts which had been under the control of the Catholic Church into English. Just as with Luther’s German version, so with the KJV, they were both based on manuscripts under the control of the Catholic Church.

Does this mean that salvation cannot be found in these versions? Absolutely not. Salvation can still be found in them. As I stated at the beginning of this section, I can teach the true gospel from any Bible. However, in our modern day of precise information, God had a wonderful surprise awaiting for us.

Since God could not trust the Catholic Church with the “original” manuscripts, He did a wonderful thing. He hid some of the oldest of them in clay jars, in caves for about 1800 years. The manuscripts which the Catholic Church, the German Protestants, the Swiss Protestants, the English Protestants had was enough to lead them to the truth as they needed for their time. However, God was going to bring a brighter truth out to the world. When it was safe for God to reveal the “oldest” manuscripts, He brought them out to the world. In 1947 the world was no longer under the control of the Catholic Church. God could safely bring out His hidden treasure.

“The first scrolls were found in 1947 in a cave on the northwest shore of the Dead Sea, in Jordan. They were found by a Bedouin shepherd whose account of the details of the discovery varied in later years. One version was that a runaway goat jumped into the cave. The shepherd threw in a stone and heard the sound of breaking pottery. He called another boy, and the two crawled into the cave. They saw several large pottery jars, most of them broken. Protruding from the necks of the jars were scrolls of leather wrapped in linen cloth. Although they were badly decomposed, it was possible to see that they were inscribed in a strange writing. There were seven scrolls.” *Compton’s Encyclopedia*

“For biblical scholars and for students of ancient Judaism and Christianity, one of the most exciting archaeological

finds ever made was the accidental discovery of the Dead Sea Scrolls. This miscellaneous assortment of leather and papyrus manuscripts was so named because it was found in caves near the Dead Sea.

“The first manuscripts were discovered by a Bedouin shepherd in a cave at Khirbat Qumran on the northwest shore of the Dead Sea in Jordan. Numerous other caves in the area yielded many more documents in subsequent years. Some of the manuscripts seem to have been produced by an ancient Jewish sect, the Essenes, who flourished about 2,000 years ago. Some of the oldest documents are books, or parts of books, of the Hebrew Bible. The writings date from 100 BC to AD 68, and were written in ancient Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek.

“In all, about 400 manuscripts were found. The writings have proved an invaluable source for reconstructing the history of Palestine after the 4th century BC and for elucidating the relationship of early Christianity to Jewish religious traditions.” *Compton’s Encyclopedia*

Since then, more documents have been found. These documents now give us the ability to reach back into the ancient past and see more clearly what the “original” manuscripts must have looked like. The NIV was a masterpiece of God. Through the NIV, He was able to bring about a Bible that was as accurate as any English translation can come in the original, and still be easy reading for the masses. It is as free from sectarian bias as probably humanly possible.

People will say, “Yes, but they left out texts and verses.” No, they didn’t leave out anything, they simply kept out the corruption that had been entered by the Catholic Church over centuries of “updating” and copying. Praise God for bringing to light more accurate and ancient manuscripts, and for providing us with men willing to take up the daunting task of bringing our modern Bibles into a more perfect harmony with the oldest manuscripts available.

The real problem is not the smoke screen that Lucifer has put up over which Bible is the “real” Bible, but are you obeying the Bible? I don’t care what Bible you are reading. Are you listening to the truth? Are you obeying what Jesus said in order to get eternal life? I challenge anyone to show me the following verses to be missing from any accurately published translation of the Bible.

1. **Matthew 5:48: “Be Perfect”.**
2. **John 5:14; 8:11: “Stop sinning”.**
3. **Matthew 19:16, 17: “Obey the commandments” to “get” eternal life.**

Those are the teachings and commands of Jesus that we are to be obeying. Matthew 28:20 tells us that we are to go and teach people how to **obey everything** that Jesus

**commanded** us. That is the real problem, not one organized denomination is doing that today. They refuse to teach the true gospel: Be perfect, Stop sinning, Obey the Ten Commandments and the 7<sup>th</sup> day (Saturday) Sabbath. Instead, they are all wound up over the debatables and the “disputable matters”.

To show you how far we have moved away from the original concept of living the sin-free life, to the concept today of “saved by grace” while we live in sin, I take you back to Justin Martyr (AD 100-165?). He stated in his treatise that Christians believed “that their hopes of eternal happiness were all forfeited if they allowed themselves in **any** known sin.” *History of Christianity, page 258*. It appears that we are missing something in our Christian concept today. I think that nineteen hundred years of time has not been good to the truth as they knew it when Christ taught it.

Back to translations. Keep in mind that most of the “changes” in texts with regards to the new translations are almost totally confined to the New Testament. But that is not a problem. Paul tells us that the Old Testament “Holy Scriptures are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus. All Scripture (**Only** Old Testament to Paul) is God breathed and is useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness, so that the man of God may be thoroughly equipped for every good work.” 2 Timothy 3:15-17. There was NO New Testament at the time of Paul. The New Testament, as we know it today, did not exist until approximately 300 years after Christ.

So you see, all this about texts and versions becomes a basic muted issue when you realize that our salvation is to come from the Old Testament, not the New Testament. The New Testament is nice and can help us understand how Jesus became the “Lamb of God”, our Sacrifice, but if you want eternal life and to be “equipped for every good work” then you must do most of your studying from the Old Testament. For those of you who claim to be followers of the KJV, that is a command from the KJV.

Jesus said the same thing, “If they do not listen to Moses and the Prophets, they will not be convinced even if someone rises from the dead.” Luke 16:31. In short, Jesus is saying, “your salvation is in the Old Testament. You can read all about My birth, life, death and resurrection in the New Testament, but it **will not** get you into heaven.” Only those who obey the Old Testament and follow what it says will get to heaven.

There is another very important aspect that needs to be considered in this debate: Language. The reason there was a Protestant reformation in the first place was to translate the Bible into the common language of the people. Luther translated the Bible into the German language. Others translated the Latin Catholic Bibles

into Swiss, French, Spanish and English. No reformation would have succeeded were it not for the Bible being translated **into the common languages of the people.**

So it is today. The modern Bibles, such as the NIV, are written in the common languages of the people. If people would read and study the Bible in their own common language, what a transformation would take place in our lives. The KJV is not written in the common language of the English-speaking people of today. Jesus came that the language of heaven might be brought in the language of the people of His time. "The Word became Flesh and made His dwelling among us." (John 1:14). We need to accept the same in the NIV and other modern translations. The devil wants to keep you from them. It has always been the devil, and those actuated by his spirit, who have fought against new translations that make the Bible easier to be understood by the common people.

In the sixteenth century the same fight took place between the Catholic Church and the new translations. In England, the bishop of St. Asaph, Standish by name, conducted services and preached, "Away with these new translations or else the religion of Jesus Christ is threatened with utter ruin." *D'Aubigne's History of the Reformation*. I hear the same thing from bigoted zealots today about the "new translations".

And that was in the early 1500's, just prior to the King James Version being written. That same spirit is alive and well today. I have had people denounce me with the hate and fury of demons for suggesting that it is "OK" to read anything but the KJV. Their attitude is simple: they would rather you die eternally holding a KJV in your hand than to have eternal life reading the NIV. "Ye blind guides, which strain at a gnat, and swallow a camel." Matthew 23:24 KJV. "Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye." Acts 7:51, KJV.

I like what Martin Luther said when translating the Latin Old Testament into the German language: "We must not, as asses do, ask the Latin letters how we should speak German, but we must ask the mothers in their houses, the children in the streets, the common people in the market place . . . we must be guided by them in translating; then they will understand us, and will know that we are speaking German to them." *The Story of Civilization - VI: Durant*.

The spirit of the devil is alive and well in all generations. Whose side are you on? Are you fighting the war of the devil against the translations, or are you a Christian in Christ's war, to use any and all translations as tools to best fight the war against sin? This book, inspired, dictated and directed by the Holy Spirit, is setting thousands of people free from sin. Jesus always adapted

His methods to those He was teaching. Should we, who claim to be His followers, do any less?

Some have wondered about the Apocrypha books. To put it bluntly and simply, they are not inspired. They have no place in the inspired Word of God. They do have some value in a historical sense, but no value in the Spiritual sense. "There is nothing of theological value in the Apocryphal books that cannot be duplicated in canonical Scripture, **and they contain much that runs counter to its teachings.** Nonetheless, this body of literature does provide a valuable source of information for the study of the intertestamental (between the Old and New Testaments) period." *Compton's*

In short, they are **not** needed for salvation and have nothing to offer in any way that can bring you into a closer walk with Jesus. That is one reason why the Protestant Bibles do not include them.

---

# YAHWEH

All right, what do we do with the word "Yahweh"? I get so many letters asking if we are to use this name, and only this name. Is it wrong not to use it? If I use this name, will it bring me any special added benefits? No! to all questions.

But you say, there are those who have shown me text after text that shows that we are to use the name of "Yahweh" and that it is very important. Okay, they may show you text after text, but not one of those texts has the original word in it. They may say "Yahweh", but "Yahweh" is not the original word. (See last chapter.)

The word in the Hebrew is: **01961 hayah {haw-yaw} a primitive root [compare 01933]; TWOT - 491; v AV - was, come to pass, came, has been, were happened, become, pertained, better for thee; 1) to be, become, come to pass, exist, happen.**

The above quote is from the Strong's Hebrew & Greek Concordance. Let me explain a little bit, again, about the Bible. The Old Testament was written in Hebrew, with about six chapters written in Aramaic. The New Testament was written entirely in Greek except for about one chapter in Aramaic. "The ancient Hebrew text **consisted only of consonants**, since the Hebrew alphabet **had no written vowels**. Vowel signs were invented by the Jewish Masoretic scholars in the sixth century A.D. and later." *Compton's Interactive NIV*.

Now that last is very important. NO VOWELS were used in the original writings of the Old Testament, and no spacing between the words. The actual word for what we call "Yahweh" was written, "YHWH". Now, tell me if

you would, how do you pronounce that? You can't. To explain it so you can understand the problem more clearly, this is the problem they faced:

*“Ivyrymchndwntybsvd”*

What did that say? That said, *“love you very much and want you to be saved.”* Did you figure that out on your own? Did you notice that there are no vowels in that sentence? That is the problem with trying to build a theology around the word “Yahweh”. It can't be done.

Now, both the Old and New Testaments were written without punctuation. They were written without any “chapters” or “verses”. Therefore, you did not go around in Christ's day quoting, Genesis 5:7. There was no such thing. You simply did what Christ did, you stated the book you were quoting from and you either knew it or you didn't.

“The chapter divisions we use today were made by Stephen Langton, archbishop of Canterbury, who died in 1228. The division of the New Testament into its present verses is found for the first time in an edition of the Greek New Testament published in 1551 by a printer in Paris, Robert Stephens, who in 1555 also brought out an edition of the Vulgate that was the first edition of the entire Bible to appear with our present chapters and verses. The first English Bible to be so divided was the Genevan edition of 1560.” *Compton's Interactive NIV*.

Okay, all I'm trying to say is, be very careful about people who run around saying this or that about the Bible. Especially when it comes to punctuations and pronunciations. Keep in mind, we are speaking in English and the Bible was written in Hebrew and Greek. Just that fact alone should make you very cautious about any pronunciations.

Not only did they not write in the vowels, they didn't even use or pronounce the name, “YHWH”. “At a late date it became a matter of binding scruple **not to pronounce the divine name**, and Jews (in reading the Scriptures) customarily substituted the noun *adonai*, which means ‘Lord.’” *Compton's Interactive NIV*.

Now, how are you, an English speaking person, going to know how to pronounce a name that was written without any vowels, in another language, and was not even pronounced because the Jews felt it was too holy to say the name? **They lost the pronunciation** for that name. It is no longer known.

Therefore, any such arguments about the name Jehovah or Yahweh are stupid and unprofitable for anything. Drop it and let it go. The devil is the only person you make happy with such stupidity. God is saddened by the wasted time we spend on such nonsense. “But avoid

foolish controversies and genealogies and arguments and quarrels . . . , because these are unprofitable and useless. Warn a divisive person once, and then warn him a second time. After that, have nothing to do with him. You may be sure that such a man is warped and sinful; he is self-condemned.” Titus 3:9-11.

Since we don't know what the actual word was that was used, most modern translations simply use the word, “LORD” when applying it to that person designated by YHWH. That makes sense. Let's keep it simple so we know who we are talking about. God is pleased with that.

What then do we call Jesus? We call Him what the Bible says to call Him. You can call Him any of the over 40 names that are used to designate Him. Read your Bible carefully and see how many names and titles He has. Then use which ever one you like. Jesus is more interested in your obedience, than in what you call Him. In John 14:15 Jesus said, “If you love Me, you will obey what I command.” He did not say, “If you love Me, you will call Me by such and such a name.” Keep that in mind, and let's get on with obeying Him:

1. **Be perfect**
2. **Stop sinning**
3. **Keep the Ten Commandments to “get” eternal life**

That is all Jesus wants of us. That is the gospel from Genesis to Revelation.

One other point of interest. The person in the Old Testament with the designation YHWH is the One we call Jesus in the New Testament. At no time did Jesus ever rebuke anyone for calling Him Jesus, or Christ, or Messiah, or King, or Lord, etc. It doesn't matter what you call Him. He just wants you to call on Him all day long.

In fact, when the disciples came to Jesus and asked Him how they were to address the Father, how they were to pray, Jesus did not explain to them the “proper” way to use YHWH. If it was important, if it “pleased” Jesus or the Father to be called that special Name, then Jesus would have made that perfectly clear. **He did not.** Instead, He used a very common, colloquial expression of endearment, “Pater” in the Greek. This word means, “Father”. You will find this over and over again in the New Testament (Matthew 6:9). Don't be a hypocrite (Matthew 6:5) and tell people what name they must use to “please” God. He is only pleased if you call on Him to help you to obey Him in order to get rid of sin in your life.

So, why was there such an important emphasis placed on “YHWH” in the Old Testament? I believe that Jesus had/has special names to designate His many roles and

positions in His work in Heaven and on Earth. In Heaven, Jesus is called “Michael”. That is His Heavenly name. In the Old Testament, Jesus at the time of Moses, was called “YHWH”. God gave the name “YHWH” to Moses to give to Israel as a “memorial” of their coming out of the land of bondage. It had nothing to do with “salvation” or “eternal life”. They were to remember this special name for the special work God did in delivering them from the bondage of Egypt. If it had to do with eternal life, then we have a real problem. Everyone before Moses would have been without eternal life. That would include Noah, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. None of them knew God by “YHWH”. For 2,500 years no one had known the name “YHWH”. In fact, before Moses, they knew God only by the name “Eloheem”. (Genesis 32:30). Are they all lost? NO! Salvation has always been the keeping of the Ten Commandments. God has never changed His salvation rules. “YHWH” was only for Israel. Exodus 3:13-15; 6:2, 3. In the New Testament the angel said, “You are to give Him the name **Jesus**.” Luke 1:31. Each name was a special meaning for His different responsibilities. “Jesus” means, “to save”. That is what Jesus came to do, save us from our sins. Until He died, He was not our “Savior” from sin.

There were many activities which were needed and required in the Old Testament but not needed today, they lost their significance in the New Testament.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>The name “YHWH”<br/>         Feast Days<br/>         Sacrifices of the Lamb<br/>         Temple Services</p> | <p>Circumcision<br/>         Levitical Priesthood<br/>         Stick to dig a poop hole<br/>         (Deut. 23:12-14)</p> |
|---|---|

These and many more were done away with at the cross and when Israel ceased to be a nation. They are no longer important. They never were important **for salvation**. The only thing that is important for salvation is, “Circumcision is nothing and uncircumcision is nothing. Keeping God’s commands is what counts.” 1 Corinthians 7:19.

# MICHAEL: JESUS

Why do I call Jesus “Michael”? Because the Bible does. Daniel 10:13, 21 and 12:1; Jude 1:9 and Revelation 12:7 are the only texts that mention “Michael” in this context. If you study these texts carefully you will find that they are all in reference to heavenly places or heavenly beings. Lucifer, having been a heavenly being, would have known Jesus by His heavenly name, “Michael”. In the New Testament, the two references where He is called Michael have to do with His heavenly duty, not earthly

duty.

Therefore, in Heaven He was known as “Michael”. In the Old Testament He was known as “YHWH” in commemoration of His “saving” Israel from the Egyptian bondage (Exodus 3:13-15; 6:2, 3); and in the New Testament as “Jesus” to commemorate His saving from sin (Luke 1:31).

Also, Jesus is the Chief Prince. Israel had many princes who were in charge of their tribes. But above them all was Michael, the Chief Prince. Why Prince? Because He had not yet received His Kingship. That would not take place until later. Notice, even Peter calls Jesus “Prince”. “God exalted Him to His own right hand as Prince and Savior that He might give repentance and forgiveness of sins to Israel.” (Acts 5:31) Nowhere in the Bible is a regular “angel” called a prince. Also Jesus said in John 14:27, “Peace I leave with you.” He is the Prince of Peace. Isaiah 9:6-7.

1 Thessalonians 4:16 and Jude 1:9 are the only texts to show us that Michael and the Archangel are the same person. “Arch” means leader, or “head of”. Jesus is “Leader” and “Head of” the angels. In both the Old and New Testaments Jesus is the one giving messages to angels to give to men. Why? He is the Head of the angels. Jesus is the One who is coming at the head of all the angels at His second coming. It is His voice, the voice of the Archangel, which He will use to call the righteous to life (John 11:25). Only God has the power to raise the dead. Jesus, the Archangel, will raise the dead at the end of time.

“Angel” **only means** “messenger”. Well, Jesus is a messenger. We find where the New Testament confirms this concept of Jesus being called “angel” since He gave messages. We know that Exodus 3:4 is very plain about who was in the burning bush and who it was who was talking to Moses. It was God (Jesus). Yet, listen to what Stephen said when he was filled with the Holy Spirit. “He (Moses) was sent to be their ruler and deliverer by God Himself, through **the angel who appeared to him in the bush.**” Acts 7:35. Why “angel”? Because He had a message to bring. He was a “Messenger”.

Again, in Exodus 19:20 it is God (Jesus) who “descended to the top of Mount Sinai and called Moses to the top of the mountain.” Again, listen to Stephen as he spoke by the Holy Spirit. “He (Moses) was in the assembly in the desert, **with the angel who spoke to him on Mount Sinai,** and with our fathers; and he received living words (Ten Commandments) to pass on to us.” Acts 7:38.

Now comes the positive proof that Jesus, God, is called an “Angel” in the Bible. Look at Genesis 48:15, 16. “... The God who has been my Shepherd (Jesus)..., the **Angel** who has delivered me from all harm...”. (NIV)



Remember, this is not the “angel” we are talking about. This is what we visualize as an “angel”, but this is not what we are talking about in this case. Remember, “angel” only means “messenger”. These beings are “messengers” and so they are the

most commonly understood concept for “angel”.

However, there is a better concept for “angel”. This is the concept of “angel” as the Old and New Testament writers would have understood it. Someone who gave a message. An “angel” or Jesus, or God the Father, or a prophet, or the donkey who gave Balaam a message can all be called “angel”, or messenger.



As a biblical point, in most cases, when the Bible says “angels”, that is, angels in the plural, it is talking about the flying angels we imagine with wings. That is what we understand. When the Bible talks about “Angel of the Lord” it is usually talking about Jesus, Michael, the Archangel. (See Genesis 16:7-13: Angel = LORD)

Jesus, Michael, is the “Arch” Angel. He is the “Head” Message Giver. Jesus is the Leader of the messengers (1 Peter 3:22). Messages that come from the Father go through Jesus who then gives them to the angels, or messengers, to give to us. But sometimes, Jesus Himself will give the message. Revelation 1:1, 8.

This concept is very simple when we put aside our prejudices and just accept the original meanings of the words as the original writers would have understood them. Unfortunately, we have 2000 years of brainwashing and propaganda to cut through in order to get our minds reoriented.

Angel is a broad term used to designate anyone who gives a message. Among the “angels” of heaven there are actual names for different groups of angels. Isaiah 6:2 shows us Seraphim and Ezekiel 10:1 shows us the Cherubim. These are actual names given to two different groups of “angels” who have very specific jobs. Hebrews 1:7, 13, 14 is talking about the “plural” kind of angels, the ones we think of as having wings.

Many have asked why, if Michael was “The Lord”, He speaks in the third person saying, “The Lord rebuke you!”? (Jude 9). Because Jesus is humble. Look at Mark 8:31, 32. Here we find Jesus speaking about Himself in the third person also. He did not speak directly about Himself as “I”, or “Me”, but as the “Son of Man”. See also Luke 18:31, 32 and Zechariah 3:1, 2. It is never

good to limit Jesus. Just believe.

I pray that this little study on Michael helps you to understand how broad and how deep the concept of Jesus goes. Check out Isaiah 9:6 for some more names of Jesus. Two more names are found in Matthew 1:21, 23. Therefore, understand that Michael and Archangel are only “titles”. No different than Jesus being called “Lamb”. I hope you don’t think of Jesus as a four footed animal going “baa, baa, baa” all day long, do you? Or how about the title “Rock”. Do you think of Jesus as a lump of granite? So why visualize Jesus as an “angel” with wings just because He has the title, “Archangel”? Don’t be so foolish. Visualize Him as “Leader” of the angels. Truly, He is the “Archangel”.

Yes my friends, the biblical evidence is undeniable that Jesus, Yahweh, Messiah, Michael and Archangel are all the same person. The word “Michael” means One “who is like God”. Yes, Jesus is God in every way.

---

## CHRIST AS HIGH PRIEST

Previously I have attempted to help you understand the prophecies of Daniel and Revelation. In those prophecies we learned how close we are to the end of time. We learned that the coming of Christ “is near, right at the door”. (Mark 13:29) However, this is two thousand years after He arose from the grave. Two thousand years after His ascension into heaven. What has Jesus been doing during these last two thousand years?

If you will come with me on a journey, I think we will discover what our wonderful Friend and High Priest has been doing these last two thousand years.

“He was taken up into heaven and He sat at the right hand of God.” Mark 16:19.

“But from now on, the Son of Man will be seated at the right hand of the mighty God.” Luke 22:69.

“Exalted to the right hand of God...”. Act 2:33.

“God exalted Him to His own right hand as Prince and Savior that He might give repentance and forgiveness of sins to Israel.” Acts 5:31.

“But Stephen, full of the Holy Spirit, looked up to heaven and saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing at the right hand of God. “Look,” he said, “I see heaven open and the Son of Man standing at the right hand of God.” Acts 7:55, 56.

“Christ Jesus, who died — more than that, who was



raised to life — is at the right hand of God and is also interceding for us.” Romans 8:34.

“...which He exerted in Christ when He raised Him from the dead and seated Him at His right hand in the heavenly realms...” Ephesians 1:20.

“Since, then, you have been raised with Christ, set your hearts on things above, where Christ is seated at the right hand of God.” Colossians 3:1.

“After He had provided purification for sins, He sat down at the right hand of the Majesty in heaven.” Hebrews 1:3.

“Who has gone into heaven and is at God’s right hand—with angels, authorities and powers in submission to Him.” 1 Peter 3:22.

“But when this priest had offered for all time one sacrifice for sins, He sat down at the right hand of God.” Hebrews 10:12.

Okay, where did Jesus go after rising from the dead? According to all these texts He went into heaven to be by the Father’s side. Now some have argued that He is “sitting” on a throne. That for two thousand years Jesus has “just been sitting” on this throne. That is dumb.



When Elizabeth became Queen of England, she took her seat on the throne during the coronation and became “Queen of England”. That act represented her assuming authority as head and “Queen” of England. But I hope you do not think that she has been sitting on that throne since the 1930’s. That would be awfully tiring. No, I think she has gotten up off that throne a few times and slept

in beds, traveled in cars and airplanes and even sat at tables and walked in the garden. In fact, the only time she sits on the throne is for very important “State” occasions. Other than that she never even sees the throne room.

The same with Jesus. He is not “sitting” on a throne. The concept of “sitting” is the same as with the Queen of England. It is a statement of fact that Jesus has taken authority. We find this concept in 1 Peter 3:22. When Jesus stood before the high priest and the counsel on the night He was arrested, they saw Him as a “man”. Jesus told them they would see Him at the “right hand” of God. That concept of “right hand” has to do with power, authority and acceptance. Notice how the concept of “right hand” is used in the biblical sense.

“James, Peter and John, those reputed to be pillars, gave me and Barnabas **the right hand** of fellowship...” Galatians 2:9.

“When I saw Him, I fell at His feet as though dead. Then **He placed His right hand** on me and said: ‘Do not be afraid.’” Revelation 1:17.

“Then an angel of the Lord appeared to him, **standing at the right side of the altar** of incense. When Zechariah saw him, he was startled and was gripped with fear. But the angel said to him: ‘Do not be afraid, Zechariah; your prayer has been heard.’” Luke 1:11-13.



What you will find throughout the Bible is that the right side was considered the side of acceptance, approval and favor. Therefore, the angel standing on the right side of the altar showed

favor to Zechariah. Placing the right hand on John showed approval, favor. Giving the right hand of fellowship to Paul showed approval and favor. This is a very important biblical concept. When we shake hands, normally, the custom is to shake with the right hand, again showing approval and favor.

After Jesus rose from the dead, He found the disciples fishing and said to them, “Throw your net on the right side of the boat and you will find some.” John 21:6. Why the right side? Because that was the side Jesus was standing on. By throwing the net toward Jesus, “they were unable to haul the net in because of the large number of fish.” Same in our lives. If we will “fish” on the “right” side of Christ, we will be perfectly successful.

The same when Jesus went to the Father, the “sitting down” was a verbal concept of power and authority. Being on the “right side” showed approval and favor. But equally important as the symbolic language is the actual fact that Jesus is on the “right side” of the Father.

Remember the earthly tabernacle is a copy of the Heavenly Tabernacle. So, let’s take a look again at the earthly tabernacle, the parts that would represent the heavenly tabernacle.

“These are the words of Him who holds the seven stars in His right hand and walks among the seven golden lampstands.” Revelation 2:1. Here we see that Jesus is walking among the seven golden lampstands.

In the illustration on the next page, you see how the golden lampstands were in the Holy Place of the earthly Temple. Therefore, in Revelation when John saw Jesus, he saw Him in the Holy Place of the heavenly Temple.



In the illustration of the earthly temple you can see that the Ark of the Covenant is in the Most Holy Place. That is where the Ten Commandments are kept. That is also where the presence of God was. The glory of God resided above the Ark. That Ark represents the throne room in Heaven where the Father sits. The Ten Commandments are the foundation of His throne. Psalm 89:14, Psalm 97:2, Psalm 119 are all about the Ten Commandments.

Looking into heaven, using the Ark as the throne, Jesus would be standing to the right of that throne. (Not your right, as you are looking at it, but to the right of the throne if you were sitting on it, looking at you, looking at it.) Jesus would be standing where the priest would be standing while ministering in the Holy Place. That is what Jesus was doing when He went to heaven. He was ministering in the Holy Place as our High Priest.

“Let us **fix our eyes on Jesus**, the author and perfecter of our faith, who for the joy set before Him endured the cross, scorning its shame, and sat down at the **right hand of the throne of God.**” Hebrews 12:2.

As our High Priest, He would be standing in front of the Altar of Incense offering up His prayers on behalf of us, His children, who had forsaken our sins and confessed them.

“**The point** of what we are saying is this: **We do have such a High Priest**, who sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven, and **who serves in the sanctuary, the true tabernacle set up by the Lord, not by man.**” Hebrews 8:1, 2.

So what is Jesus doing as High Priest? He is working very hard for our salvation. He is continuing the work He began while here on earth. He is directing His army in an attempt to stem the tide of evil on this planet. “Are not all angels ministering spirits sent to serve those who will inherit salvation?” Hebrews 1:14. Since Jesus is the Archangel, He is the director, the “Leader” of the angels. He directs them and sends them to minister to those who are fighting the good fight of faith. When we come into difficult situations, He sends us the angels to help us fight

the temptations. These angels will serve us and help us if we will humbly pray and request their help.

Jesus also sends the Holy Spirit to “teach you all things and will remind you of everything I have said to you.” John 14:26. Notice that the Spirit doesn’t tell us anything new, but to “remind you of everything I have said to you.” Those who run around claiming to have the Spirit and don’t need the Bible or anyone to teach them, are not of God. They do not have the Spirit of God. They have the spirit that was cast out of Heaven. The Spirit of God is in those who are teaching the teachings of Jesus: Stop sinning, Be perfect and Keep the Ten Commandments, including the 7<sup>th</sup> day (Saturday) Sabbath, in order to earn “get” your eternal life.

Last but not least, Jesus is directing His servants on earth. “It was He who gave some to be apostles, some to be prophets, some to be evangelists, and some to be pastors and teachers, to prepare God’s people **for works of service**, so that the body of Christ may be built up until **we all reach unity in the faith** and in the knowledge of the Son of God and become mature, attaining to the whole measure of the fullness of Christ.” Ephesians 4:11 -13. Notice, nothing there about building a “church”. No denomination mentioned. Just individuals doing the work of God.

That is what this book is all about. Jesus has used this little book of His to help build you up so you can reach the unity and maturity in the faith and attain to the whole measure of the fullness of Christ. I am simply fulfilling my duty. I am nobody special, just a simple servant of Jesus doing as He has dictated and directed me.

Again, the temple on earth in the Old Testament did the same things. God gave His messages to the priests who then passed them on to the people. “They told Ezra the scribe to bring out the Book of the Law of Moses, which the Lord had commanded for Israel... And all the people listened attentively to the Book of the Law.” Nehemiah 8:1, 3. Notice, no mention of entertaining the people.

Jesus takes the message as given by His Father and gives it to us to give to the people. “But the world must learn that I love the Father and that I do exactly what My Father has commanded Me.” “That I do nothing on My own but speak just what the Father has taught Me.” “For I gave them the words You gave Me and they accepted them.” John 14:31; 8:28; 18:8. Are you accepting the words of this book as they have come from Jesus?

Any church who does not “speak just what the Father has taught” is not of God. There is no room for opinion, church doctrine, committee declarations or any other man-made wisdom. The true disciple of Jesus **ONLY** holds to the teachings of Jesus. “**If you hold to My teaching**, you are really My disciples. Then you will know the

truth and the truth will set you free.” John 8:31, 32.

“The Lord, the God of their fathers, sent word to them through His messengers again and again, because He had pity on His people and on His dwelling place. But they mocked God’s messengers, despised His words and scoffed at His prophets until the wrath of the Lord was aroused against His people and there was no remedy.” 2 Chronicles 36:15, 16.

The same thing is happening today. The churches of the world are rejecting the messengers sent by God to bring the people back to His Ten Commandments and His 7<sup>th</sup> day Sabbath. The worldly churches despise and scoff at His prophets and messengers. His wrath is now falling upon the world. It will increase until the whole world is destroyed and His obedient people are taken off to be with Jesus. Please, do not reject the words of this book.

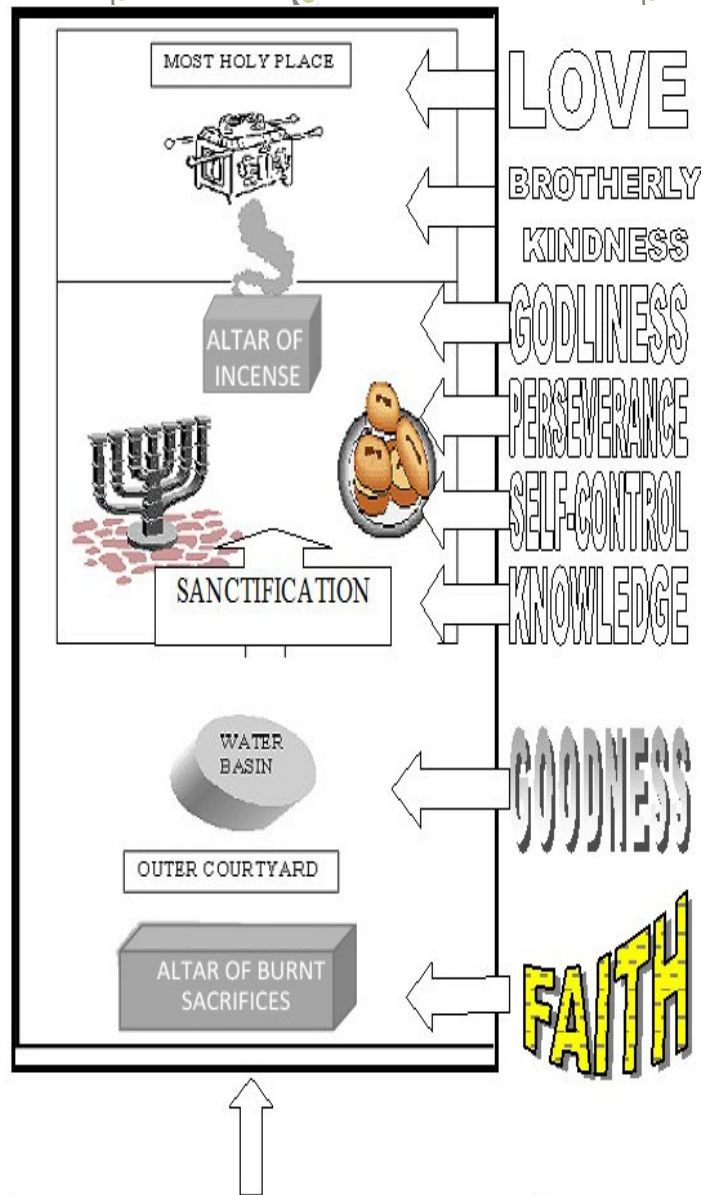
To the right, you see the eight (8) steps to perfection of 2 Peter 1:5-7 laid out in reference to the Temple. The first step is Faith. In order to be justified you must have faith that Jesus is able to wipe out your past sins. You must have faith that He, and He alone, can pay the penalty for your PAST sins. With that deep and abiding faith, you enter the courtyard of the sanctuary. After recognizing that Jesus is the Lamb who can take away your PAST sins, you then proceed to the second step at the water basin to wash your sins away. In the blood of Jesus, and through His power, you begin doing all the good you know how to do. You no longer do the sins of your past. You are born again and washed clean in the blood of Christ. You cannot continue in any KNOWN sin at this point.

Now you are entering the door of the Holy Place of sanctification and leaving justification behind. There is no more need for justification in your life at this point. Your past sins have been wiped out and thrown into the depths of the sea (symbolically of course). God no longer sees them. You are clean in His eyes. However, this cleanness will not save you eternally. It only allows you to continue in the salvation **process**. That process is called **sanctification**.

In the sanctification process you have a job to do. You must start by eating of the flesh of Jesus, His body, by learning about Him. This is the third step, knowledge. You must learn all you can about this new life and how you are to live and obey it.

As you learn what you must do, you are entering upon the fourth step, self-control. As you drink of the blood, sacrifice of Jesus, you enter into His self-control. You practice what you are learning. But this is not to be an on-again-off-again thing. It is not a momentary self-control. This self-control must be maintained. It is not “once saved always saved” but a continuous eating and

# Temple Diagram of 8 Steps



## JUSTIFICATION

drinking from God’s Word.

The fifth step is maintaining that self-control moment-by-moment, hour by hour, day after day, year after year. That is called perseverance. Through perseverance we no longer are sinning. When temptations arise, we use the self-control God has given us through His power to persevere in righteousness and say “no” to temptations. That is how we “follow” the example of Jesus.

This perseverance produces the sixth step of godliness.

You are now living the sweet smelling, aromatic life of God. This is His perfection. Through godliness, or Godlikeness, you are now fulfilling the two parts of the Ten Commandments. We continue fulfilling the Ten Commandments as we continue in step seven, brotherly kindness. This is “Love your neighbor as yourself”. This brotherly kindness is what happens when you are fulfilling the last six of the Ten Commandments. From here we demonstrate the eighth step. This step is the highest, or Agape, love. You are now fulfilling the second part: the first four of the Ten Commandments: love to God.

This diagram is the essence of the whole Bible. Everything in the Bible is simply a more detailed concept of this simple eight step process of getting to heaven. It has nothing to do with church, religion or denomination. It has everything to do with your personal relationship and work with God and His eight steps to His perfection.

“To those **sanctified** in Christ Jesus and called to be holy, together with all those everywhere who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ—their Lord and ours.” 1 Corinthians 1:2.

“But you were washed, you were **sanctified**, you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the Spirit of our God.” 1 Corinthians 6:11.

“It is God’s will that you should be **sanctified**: that you should avoid sexual immorality; that each of you should **learn to control his own body** in a way that is holy and honorable, not in passionate lust like the heathen, who do not know God; and that in this matter no one should wrong his brother or take advantage of him. The Lord will punish men for all such sins, as we have already told you and warned you. For God did not call us to be impure, but to live a holy life. Therefore, he who rejects this instruction does not reject man but God, who gives you His Holy Spirit.” 1 Thessalonians 4:3-8.

“May God Himself, the God of peace, **sanctify** you through and through. May your whole spirit, soul and body be **kept blameless** at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.” 1 Thessalonians 5:23.

“But we ought always to thank God for you, brothers loved by the Lord, because from the beginning God chose you to be **saved through the sanctifying work** of the Spirit and through belief in the truth.” 2 Thessalonians 2:13.

“...Who have been chosen according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, **through the sanctifying work** of the Spirit, **for obedience to Jesus Christ...**” 1 Peter 1:2.

**Grace** saves us **physically** from immediate death.

**Justification** does the same in a **spiritual way**. But **neither** will save you eternally.

Faith and Sanctification are the two vehicles that you must be in to be eternally saved. Grace and justification will get you to the vehicles, but you must open the doors of Faith and Sanctification and get inside. **That is the only way you can have eternal life.**

Keep in mind that these eight steps are to be constantly worked in “**increasing measure**”. “For if you possess these qualities in increasing measure, they will keep you from being ineffective and unproductive in your knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.” 2 Peter 1:8. If you constantly work these eight steps in increasing measure, every day putting them into practice, then you will never sin again in your life. You will live the pure and perfect, sinless righteous life of Jesus. “For if you do these things, **you will never fall.**” 2 Peter 1:10.

---

# MARRIAGE



Okay ladies and gentlemen, what are we going to do about marriage? How do we relate to it? Who am I married to? What constitutes marriage in the eyes of God? To answer these and many more

questions you didn’t even know you had, we will go to the Bible and start right from the beginning. That is always a good place to start.

In Genesis we read where God said, “It is not good for the man to be alone. I will make a helper suitable for him.” Genesis 2:18. There are two points here:

- 1) **It is not good for man to be alone.**
- 2) **We men need helpers who are suitable for us.**

Let’s start with the first point. Many of you in prison know what being alone is all about. Very few people on the outside understand this concept. And when I mean alone, I mean alone. No radio, no TV, no other human to talk to, etc. You folks in prison can understand that if you have done any great length of time. Those on the outside, give it a try. Turn off the TV, the radio, the tape and CD player and computer. Separate yourself from all contact with others for a week and see what happens. Trust God when He says, “It is not good for man to be alone.”

Now comes the hard part. A suitable helper! Men and women fulfill each other's needs perfectly. God designed it that way. Mentally, spiritually, intellectually, sexually and socially. Men need women. Women need men. The problem comes when we place ourselves outside of the role and position which God created for us. Remember when Lucifer moved outside of the position God created for him? Look how much damage and trouble he has caused us and the whole universe.

Choosing a "suitable helper" is no easy task in our world of sin. The Bible lays down what a "suitable helper" is. She must be pure, honest, kind, generous, obedient, respectful, able to raise children with patience and keep a house clean, tidy, neat and lovely for her family. Doesn't gossip, stays at home with the children and brings a good reputation to the family.

Many of you say that you will wait until you have "tried out the goods" before making a commitment. "I won't 'get married' and that way I won't be guilty of 'adultery'". That won't work. There is only one way to test the "suitable helper" and that is by using the measuring guide that God has set up. So let's get started.

The Ten Commandments forbid adultery. No problem you say, I won't get married until I find the right person. Until then, I'll just sleep around, but I won't get "legally" married. That should satisfy the "legal requirements of the Law". No, I'm afraid that won't work. You see, if you mean by "married", you are talking about a piece of paper from the state or "authorized" authority of the land, you are in for a big surprise.

If you want to get to heaven, you must play by heaven's rules. There is no such thing as "paper" in heaven. So how do you know when you are married? By using the standard God has laid down! How was it in the beginning? "For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and be united to his wife, and they will become one flesh." Genesis 2:24. One flesh? Be united? That is the key concept. When are you married? When you become "united". When is that? At the time of **intercourse**.

This is why the Ten Commandments only deals with "adultery". The moment you have intercourse with another person you are "married" in the eyes of God to that person. That is simple. Remember, God keeps everything simple. It is man who mucks everything up. Do we have more proof of this "marriage" concept? Yes. "Cain lay with his wife." Genesis 4:17. No government back then to issue "paper". They were married simply because he lay with her. "Isaac brought her into the tent of his mother Sarah, and he married Rebekah." Genesis 24:67. Do I need to tell you what they were doing in that tent?

But marriage went even beyond just the physical union. A man and woman could be "married" in the eyes of God before the physical union. In Genesis 19:12-14 we find where the angels asked Lot if he had, "sons-in-law, sons or daughters, or anyone else in the city **who belongs** to you?" Lot "spoke to his sons-in-law, who **were pledged** to marry his daughters." See, those who were "pledged" were considered those who "belongs to you".

"If a man seduces a virgin who is **not pledged** to be married and sleeps with her, he must pay the bride-price, and she shall be his wife." Exodus 22:16. This is very plain. The moment you have intercourse you are married: in God's eyes. Now notice that this has to do with a virgin who "is not pledged to be married". That is a big difference. Notice what happens to those who seduce a virgin who is **pledged to be married**, but has not had intercourse.

"If a man happens to meet in a town a **virgin pledged to be married** and he sleeps with her, you shall take both of them to the gate of that town and stone them to death—the girl because she was in a town and did not scream for help, and the man because **he violated another man's wife**. You must purge the evil from among you." Deuteronomy 22:23, 24. Jesus said the same thing in the New Testament. "But I say to you that everyone who looks at a woman **with lustful intent** has already committed adultery with her in his heart." Matthew 5:28.

God is as serious with marriage as He is with His 7<sup>th</sup> day (Saturday) Sabbath. Why? Because both were instituted by God. Both were instituted in the beginning BEFORE sin. Both were instituted for the purpose of bringing us the highest quality of good that God can bestow upon us. Now you understand why Lucifer is so busy trying to destroy both the 7<sup>th</sup> day (Saturday) Sabbath and the marriage union. Both are unions of the highest degree of sacredness. One to keep mankind pure among themselves, the other to keep mankind pure with His God.

Wow, you say, I have many wives then. Yes, you probably do. You may have a whole harem of wives. Actually, there is nothing **Biblically** wrong with that, as long as you treat all of them the Biblical way. How is that? "If he marries another woman, he must **not** deprive the first one of her food, clothing and marital rights." Exodus 21:10. However, just because God, in the past, in this sinful world, has 'winked' at our many wives, we are to obey the laws of the land we are living in. If those laws forbid multiple wives, then we must obey the law. We are to obey the authority that is over us: God, family, state, employer, etc., in that order.

Also, keep in mind that many wives, or polygamy, was only "allowed" because of sin. Divorce and polygamy were not part of God's original plan for our best good.

But because of sin, God has had to make a few adjustments for our stupidity. That doesn't break the Ten Commandments. Sin is the breaking of the Ten Commandments.

Since some of you may have many wives in the sight of God, you may be thinking to yourself that it will be better off for you to stay in prison than to support all those "wives" you have been accumulating. That may be. On the other hand, there is a way out. You see, Jesus said, "I tell you that anyone who divorces his wife, except for marital unfaithfulness, and marries another woman commits adultery." Matthew 19:9.

We live in a world that is full of sin. We have been deceived by the master of all deceptions. Many of us were ignorant of these truths. Of course, do you think Lucifer wants you to know these truths? Of course not. He wants you to sin and sin and sin. He wants you to burn right along with him. However, Jesus came to save sinners. If we repent of our past wickedness and give our sins to Him, He is faithful and willing to forgive us our past sins. But in order to receive that forgiveness, you must put those sinful behaviors behind you. No more intercourse with another person until you are ready to marry that person and perform your marital rights throughout eternity.

How do you know who to marry? Marry the person who is living the sinless, righteous, holy, perfect life of Christ. If that person you want to marry is not living that life, either wait until he/she does, or find someone else. But you say, what if there are no more people like that? You could be correct. There are very few people living on the face of this earth who will be going to heaven, therefore, the majority are not living the way God wants them to. If that is the case, do what Paul says. Read 1 Corinthians 7:1-40. That whole chapter is good information.

But let's say that you can't find anyone here on this earth. Does that mean that you won't ever have the wonderful blessings of a wife and children in heaven? Not at all. But you say, Jesus said, "At the resurrection people will neither marry nor be given in marriage." Matthew 22:30. That is correct. Everything Jesus says is perfect and correct. However, did you listen carefully to what He said? You see, Jesus was not discussing our marriage situation in the Earth made new, but only at the RESURRECTION. That is very important to keep in mind.

To understand, we really need to go back and read what brought all that about. It was the Sadducees who came and asked Jesus, "At the RESURRECTION, whose wife will she be...?". Matthew 22:28. The Sadducees did not believe in angels, in a resurrection, or eternal life. They believed that this life was all we got. Therefore, get it all now, and they did. No matter how you got it, get it now

because this was all you were going to get. That is why they were Sad – U – See (Sadducees). They were very sad since they did not believe in a life after this one.

The same could happen to you. You could become very sad and maybe not want to go to heaven if you couldn't have a wife or the wife and a family you now have. But that is not what Jesus is talking about. He gave the Sadducees only what they asked. They only asked about the "resurrection", so He gave them only information about the resurrection.

The fact is, my dear brothers and sisters, at the resurrection we are going to be very busy and there won't be much time or interest in marriage. First, we have to get off this planet. After we are resurrected, we will take a seven day trip back to heaven. Then, there is that little matter of judgment. There will be a thousand years of looking over the books and getting over our sadness for those who aren't there. A lot will be happening "at the resurrection".

"The resurrection" is a one thousand year process. The first resurrection of the righteous is only the beginning of the process. One thousand years later there will be the second resurrection of the wicked (Revelation 20:5, 6). That whole process is "The Resurrection" time. There will be no marriages taking place during that time.

However, after that time, everything will be made new. "Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away." Revelation 21:1. "The old order of things has passed away." Revelation 21:4. Jesus says, "I am making everything new." Revelation 21:5.

But you say, Jesus said we would be like the angels. Yes, but does the Bible say anywhere about the angels being married or single? No! To understand what Jesus meant, read Luke 20:36. Jesus is only talking about living eternally like the angels. Get the point? It will all be made new again, just as it was "new" at the beginning of the world when God created it new to begin with. And what did God create in that new earth? **He created marriage and the Sabbath.** Both of those were given to us from God. **Both were given to last eternally.** Both were given when the earth was made new in the beginning. Both were given before sin. Both will be given again when everything will be made new again. You will live eternally, just like the angels who obey God.

In Isaiah we read, "Behold, I will create new heavens and a new earth. The former things will not be remembered, nor will they come to mind." The same God here is speaking to Isaiah just as He was speaking to John in Revelation. And what will happen in the new heavens and new earth? Isaiah 65:17. "As the new heavens and

the new earth that I make will endure before Me, so will your name and **descendants endure**. From one New Moon to another and from one Sabbath to another, all mankind will come and bow down before Me.” Isaiah 66:22, 23.

See, the Sabbath continues. Wow, isn't that wonderful? God is the same God. The same God who created the Sabbath in the beginning, will continue the 7th day Saturday Sabbath in the “New” beginning. So will marriage. Heaven would be a very lonely place without children. Listen to Jesus again. “They will not toil in vain or **bear children** doomed to misfortune; for they will be a people blessed by the Lord, they and their **descendants** with them.” Isaiah 65:23.

And even in the New Testament Jesus confirmed the eternalness of marriage. Listen to Him as He defends marriage: “Jesus replied, ‘But at the beginning of creation God “made them male and female. For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and be united to his wife, and the two will become one flesh. So they are **no longer two, but one**. Therefore what God has joined together, let man not separate.’” So why would God separate them in heaven? He won't.

That is good news my brothers and sisters. Do not fear, God has a far better plan for you than you could ever imagine. Do not fret or worry. Just be obedient to Jesus and He will take care of everything you have ever dreamed about. The new world will be just like it was before sin entered. Marriage was before sin entered the world when Jesus told Adam and Eve, “Be fruitful and increase in number; fill the earth and subdue it.” Genesis 1:28. So it will be after sin. We will be fruitful and increase in number. We will fill the earth. That is what God created us for, to fill it and to have communion with Him. What sweet fellowship. What a wonderful God.

---

## Seven Last Plagues

“I saw in heaven another great and marvelous sign: seven angels with the seven last plagues - last, because with them God's wrath is completed.” Rev. 15:1.

In Revelation 14 we have the three angels' messages. Then it jumps to the coming of Christ. Now we go back to fill in the time between the three angels' messages and the coming of Christ. What happens after the three angels' messages have been given? That is the question, and chapter 15 gives the answer.

The three angels' messages were given to call all mankind back to the worship of God. To call mankind to

come out of the false religions and churches of the world which do not teach the Sabbath and teachings of God. But the world refused. Because they refused, God now pours out His seven last plagues.

The Bible is full of and/or, this/that, one extreme to the other extreme. In verses 1-4 we see that extremism. The last seven plagues are to be poured out on the wicked. The other extreme are the saints and eternal happiness. And why these extremes? Because light and darkness cannot dwell together. They can't even dwell close together. There is no grey area. That is why we are commanded to get out and get away from the wicked world and churches. That way we will not be contaminated with sin.

Why are they the saints? Because they “had been victorious over the beast and his image and over the number of his name.” In other words, **they came out of all the churches that are in the world today and stood alone for the teachings of Jesus. That includes coming out of the Sabbath keeping churches that are no longer of God.**

Now we go back in time to see the angels coming out of the temple of God. Why are they coming out of the temple of God? It is in that temple where “the Testimony was opened.”

Verse 5. That Testimony holds the Ten Commandments and the command to keep the 7th day Sabbath (Saturday) holy. That is the command which the world has forsaken and fought against. It is from there the angels come with the wrath and destruction of God on those who have broken His law.

Verse 8, “And the temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God and from His power, and no one could enter the temple until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed.”



Why could no one enter the temple? We have an example of this in the Old Testament. You will find this in 2 Chronicles 7:1-2. “When Solomon finished praying, fire came down from heaven and consumed the burnt offering and the sacrifices, and the glory of the Lord filled the temple. The priests could not enter the temple

of the Lord because the glory of the Lord filled it.” The concept here is much the same. As in the Old Testament, the worshipers came to the temple to have their sins forgiven, symbolically. In reality, the only way we can have our sins forgiven is by entering into the temple of heaven where Jesus is our High Priest. Only by coming into His presence in prayer and confession can we have our sins forgiven.

However, at this time, no prayers will be accepted. All mankind has had an opportunity to forsake their sins and accept the gospel of Jesus to be perfect, stop sinning and to keep the Ten Commandments to “get” your eternal life. Those who have rejected it are now forever sealed and doomed. The temple is closed for cleaning and renovations. No more sins will be accepted.

That is why the plagues will be “poured **full strength** into the cup of His wrath.” Rev. 14:10. You see, prior to this, throughout history, God has always poured out his wrath **mixed with mercy and grace**. We have lived under the grace of God for over six thousand years. That grace is coming to an end. When we study the Old Testament temple we find that the “mercy seat” of God was right above the Ark of the Testimony. God has always been merciful. Now, His mercy ends. “What has happened to us is a result of our evil deeds and our great guilt, and yet, our God, You have punished us **less than our sins have deserved**.” Ezra 9:13.

But that is not the case at the end of time. Time has run out for the sinner. The sinner has rejected all the grace of God by hanging on to his own stubborn will and the stubborn will of the churches. Now he must face the full fury of God with no restraint. Grace has run out for the human race.

---

## Revelation 16

Here we begin to see what lies ahead for those who continue to reject the love of God, His “Ten Commandments of Love” and His 7th day Sabbath. The first angel poured out his bowl and ugly, painful sores broke out on the people. These people are those who did not come out of their country-club churches and religions. They worshiped the Sunday sabbath against God’s plain statements. Or, like the Jews, made their Sabbath keeping churches their “god” but continued to sin.

The second angel poured out his bowl on the sea and turned it into blood like a dead man. Everything in the sea died. The wicked have been spilling the blood of God’s children for centuries. Now they must drink it.

The third angel poured out his bowl on the rivers and

springs and they became blood. All water will be blood. There will be nothing to drink. Egypt is an example of these plagues. If you believe in the Egypt experience, you better get out of your church now.

The fourth angel poured out his bowl on the sun, and it scorched people with fire. The Bible tells us how hot this will get. Isaiah 30:26 says, “the sunlight will be seven times brighter.” Do you have any idea what a sun seven times brighter will do to you? Talk about a “global warming”. The “greens” could never imagine what is coming. And no, it is not carbon that is causing it, but sinful lives.

The fifth angel plunged men into darkness. This will represent the state of their “truths” and “teachings”. They are in the pit of darkness because they have hung on to their sinful, dark ways. By this time there is no food left. No water to water the plants, and the heat has withered anything that was edible. You will gnaw your tongue and eat your children.

The sixth angel poured out his bowl and the great river Euphrates was dried up to prepare the way for the kings from the East. The “East” has always been an allegory for the Jews of idol worship and paganism. They came out of the East when God called Abraham out of Ur. The East was associated with everything anti-God. The great river Euphrates has always been a barrier to the East. Look at any map and you will see how the river Euphrates divides the “East” from the land of Israel. Many of the armies that attacked Israel came from beyond the Euphrates River.

But now the symbolic Euphrates river has been dried up. There are no more barriers. The nations of the world can unite against the people of God. How is this to happen? We must go back into our history to see how this will happen in the future. Look at the world today. Everyone wants peace and safety. Look at what has been happening from Bosnia to Israel and the Palestinians, Iraq and Iran, Korea, Africa, Asia and the Americas. All are fighting over nationalism or religion. Almost every war in history has been fought because of nationalistic or religious fanaticism.

So what will happen? I believe that the U.N. will carve up the world into 10 regional areas. These areas will be administered by 10 administrators. Why? Look at the mass migration of humanity caused by ISIS, Muslim and socialist governments. The world will no longer be this nationalism or that nationalism, but we will all be citizens of planet earth. All will be “one” under one government. No more wars! Peace and safety?

This one-world government, as depicted in Revelation 13, will rule the world, the economy and religion. I believe the Catholic Church will be the head of all



religions. Your church can exist only as long as it abides by the rules of the Catholic Church. That includes Sabbath keeping churches.

To help you understand this concept better, I am going to quote to you an editorial by Bill Carlson. He wrote this in the Yucaipa "The View", August 2000. He is reporting on his attendance to the "California School Boards Association's (CSBA) Curriculum Institute". This is what he heard and reported from them on what they are planning to teach the children in California Schools. However, it is not limited to California. All School systems have accepted this concept.

*"The efficiently presented, high-impact grand finale, 'Change Drivers of the 21<sup>st</sup> Century', took on an intimidating tone. Changes are coming' Big Changes and resistors who stand in the way, they warned, 'will be rolled over'. The message; Don't resist! Well, change is always coming, Carlson, and changes may bring improvement. Is that so bad? What changes are coming? More than you may want to know about! The speakers rarely stopping for questions, briefly explained each change from a series of lists projected to an overhead-viewing screen. The explosion of new information, technology and mutual dependence among nations were reasons used to promote the 'need' for globalization. The speakers depicted the 'new world' as one that will bring 'peace' and 'repairs' to the entire planet. With it will come:*

1. Global governance
2. Spiritualism based on eastern philosophy (will replace all traditional religions)
3. Wellness of mind, body, and spirit
4. Environmental protection (Environmental desecration will be justification for armed conflict)
5. Global citizenship (National Borders will be eliminated)
6. Co-housing of families
7. Local and global affinity groups such as Harley motorcycle clubs, wine sippers, mediators, etc.
8. Creativity, freedom, energetic self-reliance, and patriotism (These always thrive under totalitarian rule, don't they?!)

*A 'right balance' of these and other 'invigorates' will give new life to new global world designed by the genius of man. Or will it?... The United Nations General Assembly met in Geneva, Switzerland, to launch a plan to dramatically reduce national sovereignty, limit the ability of nations to govern their own affairs, and impose global taxes on developed countries, costing Americans trillions of dollars' to finance this madcap global scheme."*

When the symbolic Euphrates River is dried up, the Kings of the East, the heads of all the satanic religions, will be gathered together. Who are these Kings? Who

do they represent?

In verse 13 we see that "three evil spirits that looked like frogs" came out of the mouths of the dragon, the beast and the false prophet. Who are these critters?

The dragon we know. He is Satan in his rawest form. But Satan has always used a medium for his deceptive work. The rawest form has been paganism, the worship of idols. Are there religions today that worship pagan idols? Yes. Hinduism and Buddhism are idol worshipers, along with many other Eastern religions. Atheists and science also fall in this "idol" worship category. They worship "science".

But not everyone is so stupid as to bow down to a piece of carved stone. Therefore, the devil has also cloaked himself under the guise of Christianity. That is the "beast". You see, Jesus is referred to as the "Lamb of God". Hence, the power in Revelation 13 that comes up out of the land as a two-horned lamb is U.S.A., Protestantism. Most of the world's Protestants are bowing down to the Protestant movements of the U.S.A. Since the Protestants came out of the Catholic Church they will again unite with them, we will put all "Christianity" under this category. Ever hear of the "Religious Right"?

Then there is the false prophet. "Prophets" always have a nice ring to them. There are suckers born every few minutes who will follow a "prophet". So the devil has given the world a great one: Islam and the false prophet Mohammed.

Between these three religions, 99.999% of all the world's population has been accounted for. These three religions, which now stand apart from each other and at each other's throats with guns and bombs, will be brought together to fight against God in the person of His Son, Jesus Christ. But to fight against Jesus, they must first be united. How does that happen? "They go out to the kings of the whole world, to gather them for the battle on the great day of God Almighty." Vs 14. Just look at India and Pakistan. They are in a state of war. (Remember this is during the 7 last plagues. However, you will see the formation of this taking place as you read this.)

Just after the Iranian revolution, when militant Islam took over Iran, the conservative, militant, spiritual advisers of Islam from around the world gathered in Iran to plan for the destruction of all secular and religious governments that were not ruled by the "god" of the Koran. Now you understand 9/11 and all the fanatical attacks against the U.S. and other "Western" governments around the world since 1979.

"Across Western Europe, religious leaders, educators,

and policy makers describe a social collision between Muslims and non-Muslims. At its nucleus, they say, are radically different ideas about what constitutes religious extremism - and what is Islamophobia.” U.S. News & World Report, January 10, 2005: Europe’s Identity Crisis

But the “Christian” governments of the West, and the “pagan” governments of the East won’t allow it. Therefore, “They go out to the kings of the whole world, to gather them for the battle on the great day of God Almighty.” There will be a worldwide engagement in which Islam will be defeated. Because of its defeat, Islam will bow to the “god” of the West and recognize that the “god” of the Koran is the same as the God of the Bible. Then the world will unite as one and the International Sunday Law will be passed. Muslims, Buddhists, Hindus, Jews and all the world will accept Sunday as the world’s holy day and sabbath.

These three religions will be ruled, says the Bible, by the Pope, and eventually Satan as “The Christ”, from Jerusalem. After all, isn’t that where all three of these religions come together now? Such miracles, says the Bible, will take place that the whole world will accept the Pope as God’s representative on this earth. He will be invited to reign over all the world’s religions from Jerusalem.

What is the “great day of God Almighty?” That is the “day” or time in world’s history when the world has decided against the God of the Bible and has decided to set up its own god of this world. You see, the devil doesn’t want Jesus to come and take his kingdom away from him. He wants to stop Jesus dead in His tracks. How does he do that?

Ever hear of atomic bombs, neutron bombs and star wars? How about rockets to take bombs out into space to stop meteorites from hitting the earth. Ever hear of such things? I am sure you have. Those bombs and defense systems are not meant to be against the people of this world. Yes, they were used for that purpose, but that was/is only the sideshow. Lucifer was/is having mankind build them to stop his enemy, Jesus Christ when He comes back to pick up His people.

The devil doesn’t want to destroy this earth. He needs people to rule over. He needs kingdoms to reign over. A kingdom divided against itself cannot stand said Jesus. The devil does not want to be divided against himself. All these instruments of war will be used against Jesus. The devil does not want Jesus to come and disrupt his kingdom here.

When the nations united to destroy God the first time, God wiped them out by water. When they tried to reach into heaven, God destroyed the Tower of Babel. When they conspired together to kill Him on the cross, He

stated, “It is finished”. The Roman and the Jewish nations were destroyed.

Now that the world, under the leadership of Satan, is conspiring again to destroy Him through His children, He says, “It is done”. That’s it folks. It is finished. Jesus takes up the challenge and comes to show that He is God of gods and Lord of lords. That He rules and Lucifer is the usurper. While the world hurls missiles and bombs at Jesus, He is throwing down His own. “From the sky huge hailstones of about a hundred pounds each fell upon men. And they cursed God on account of the plague of hail, because the plague was so terrible.” Revelation 16:21.

---

## Revelation 18 & 19

Revelation 18 is basically about the destruction of that one religion that has so destroyed Christianity, the Catholic Church. The pope who claims to be so righteous, and yet is so wicked. He who claims to uphold the tenets of Jesus Christ, has destroyed the Ten Commandments and substituted man-made traditions for God’s commands. Every church, including the Sabbath keeping churches, have been infiltrated by the Catholic Church to bring them all back to the “Mother Church”. That is why they are all called, “Antichrist” in the Bible. “Anti” means “in place of”. They are all teaching and standing in the place of Christ because they are “against” Jesus Christ.

“Fallen! Fallen is Babylon the Great. The kings of the earth committed adultery with her, and the merchants of the earth grew rich from her excessive luxuries.” Revelation 18:2, 3.

All nations of the earth have representatives in Rome. All want to know what the pope is thinking. And the “merchants of the earth” are the religions of the world. Look at the Crystal Cathedral. Look at the “700 club”. Look at the wealth of religions today. All are getting rich off the teachings and doctrines taught by the Catholic Church. “Then I heard another voice from heaven say: ‘Come out of her, My people, so that you will not share in her sins, so that you will not receive any of her plagues.’” Revelation 18:4.

God will destroy that city, that mammoth religion that has destroyed the souls of men and women. It has substituted human commands and traditions for the plain and simple teachings of Jesus: Be perfect, Stop sinning and keep the Ten Commandments to keep your eternal

life.

Revelation 19 is about the triumph of Jesus against the wicked. He wins, they lose. Jesus comes riding out on His white horse. He comes to conquer in the “Word of God”. That Word, the Bible, the teachings of Jesus that the world has spurned, now will rule the world. Only those who have voluntarily submitted to that Word will live with Him.

There is no police force in heaven. No force will be employed to make people obey that Word. There will be no rack, no dungeon, no sword to command obedience. Only willful obedience will be accepted, both now and then. The coming of Christ will do nothing to change your character, it only sets it beyond all change. If you have not practiced obedience to the teachings of Jesus now, you wouldn’t practice obedience in heaven. Therefore, Jesus can not take you to Heaven.

“And I saw an angel standing in the sun, who cried in a loud voice to all the birds flying in midair, ‘Come, gather together for the great supper of God, so that you may eat the flesh of kings, generals, and mighty men, of horses and their riders, and the flesh of all people, free and slave, small and great.’” Revelation 19:17, 18. “The rest of them were killed with the sword (the Word of God) that came out of the mouth of the rider on the horse, and all the birds gorged themselves on their flesh.” Revelation 19:21.

---

## The Final Judgment

The end has come. Final judgment is about to take place. As in a court of law on earth, so now in the universe. Crimes have been committed. Accusing fingers have been pointed. Charges have been made. As a result of those charges, investigations have been made. Books have been kept. Everything relating to the charges have been investigated. The condemned have been found guilty. But with any judicial system, there is a review panel to be seated to review the justice of the whole process.

At this time there is no burning lake to burn in. The wicked have been consumed by the brightness of His coming. They lay dead over the face of the whole earth. The birds are allowed to come and have a feast devouring the flesh of the wicked.

All the righteous “came to life and reigned with Christ a thousand years.” Revelation 20:4. This is what is spoken of in 1 Thessalonians 4:15-17. The righteous have been taken off this planet and have returned with Jesus to the Holy City in heaven. There the righteous will open the books and judge the wicked and the evil angels. Every case will come up before them to judge. Was God just in letting me into heaven and not that person? Why was not that person allowed to come to heaven when he looked so religious in the eyes of man? All the answers will be written in their books for us to examine the secret things of their hearts.

The devil is thrown into the Abyss and chained there. This is symbolic of Lucifer being confined, with his angels, to this world. At this time the world is a mess. It has been destroyed by the coming of Jesus. The earthquakes, tidal waves, meteorites and other calamities have left the earth much the same way it was before Jesus began to form it in the beginning.

The word “Abyss” in the NIV is much the same in meaning as the word, “formless” and “empty” in Genesis 1:2. There is nothing here. All has been destroyed. The devil is “chained” here and there is no one to tempt. How terrible for him! The rest of the dead are not alive suffering somewhere, they are dead “and did *not come to life* until the thousand years were ended.” Revelation 20:5.

“When the thousand years are over” and all are satisfied with the justice of God, the righteous come back to this earth. The city of God comes down to this earth and settles on the mountain of Jerusalem. Jesus claims His own. This is His mountain and the devil can’t have it.

The wicked are raised to life and the devil goes out “to deceive the nations in the four corners of the earth... to gather them for battle.” “They marched across the breadth of the earth and surrounded the camp of God’s people, the city He loves.” Revelation 20:8, 9.

As the army of Satan advances against the city, Jesus is lifted up. His throne rises above the city and seems to fill the whole sky. Every eye is riveted upon that face of love. He is the judge of the whole earth; yes the whole universe.

The army comes to a halt. There is not a sound throughout the earth. The wicked now know that their continued rebellion is useless. They cannot win against the Majesty of Heaven. Their rebellion has only cost them their eternal life, happiness and the ruin of those

they loved. Selfishness! That is all they lived for. Their whole lives have been in rebellion against the truth. Against righteousness. Against the children of God.

“Earth and sky fled from His presence, and there was no place for them.” Revelation 20:11. The whole sky becomes a panoramic HDTV. The history of earth is replayed from the beginning of creation. Each person will be able to see the role he or she played in the history of this world. Every act will be revealed. Every thought discerned. “And I saw the dead, great and small, standing before the throne, and books were opened. Another book was opened, which is the book of life. The dead were judged **according to what they had done** as recorded in the books.” Revelation 20:12.

There is no doubt as to who is responsible for their salvation or death. Each one is judged according to what **they have done**. Each will look at his/her actions in the light of God’s eternal law, the Ten Commandments. Every rebellious act will be seen in its true, selfish light. After everyone has seen the part he/she has played in the warfare for this planet earth, the final judgment is passed out. The wicked, the rebellious, the stiff necked, the prideful, the selfish, the liars and all commandment breakers will all be sentenced to eternal death. This includes all who made church more important than obedience to Jesus.

“But fire came down from heaven and devoured them. And the devil, who deceived them, was thrown into the lake of burning sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown. They will be tormented day and night for ever and ever.” “Then death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. The lake of fire is the **second death**.” Revelation 20:9, 10, 14.

The concept here of “for ever and ever” does not mean that it will never go out. Jude makes very clear what is meant by that term. “In a similar way, Sodom and Gomorrah and the surrounding towns gave themselves up to sexual immorality and perversion. They serve **as an example of those who suffer the punishment of eternal fire**.” Jude 1:7. Sodom and Gomorrah are not continuing to burn. But the destruction is eternal: for ever and ever.

This is a fire **you** cannot put out. The effects of it are for ever and ever. It is “the second death” not life. There is no life outside of righteousness. Only the righteous have **eternal** life. The wicked will not spend eternity writhing in pain and suffering. My God is a God of love. The devil is a god of suffering, torture and pain. But he

is no longer alive.

This concept is expressed over and over in the Bible. Jeremiah 17:27 states, “But if you do not obey Me to keep the Sabbath day holy by not carrying any load as you come through the gates of Jerusalem on the Sabbath day, then I will kindle **an unquenchable fire** in the gates of Jerusalem that **will consume her** fortresses.” Was the fire unquenchable? No. It went out after the Babylonians set it ablaze. But it was a fire that had to burn itself out. No one could put it out.

Matthew 3:12 explains it again. “His winnowing fork is in His hand, and He will clear His threshing floor, gathering His wheat into the barn and burning up the chaff with **unquenchable fire**.” Unquenchable fire is the same as a fire that is for ever and ever. **You** cannot put it out. It is unquenchable. But after everything is burned up, it will go out naturally. But the **effect of the fire is eternal**.

“Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away.” Revelation 21:1. The earth and the fire that devoured it and the wicked are no longer. Everything has been burned to “ashes under the soles of your feet.” Malachi 4:3. And when it is done burning, “He will wipe every tear from their eyes. There will be **no more** death or mourning or crying or pain, for the old order of things has passed away.” Revelation 21:4.

“It is done.” Revelation 21:6. No more sin. No more pain. No more burning. No more wickedness. All is clean. The universe now pulsates with the purity that has not been known since before the fall of Adam. Now it is clean. Once more to be pronounced by God as “good” as He did in the beginning. “God saw all that He had made, and it was very good.” Genesis 1:31. No burning there! Only those who have cleansed themselves through obedience to the Ten Commandments will be there. Only the pure who have been obedient to the Ten Commandments will be there. “But the cowardly, the unbelieving, the vile, the murderers, the sexually immoral, those who practice magic arts, the idolaters and all liars - their place will be in the fiery lake of burning sulfur. This **is the second death**.” Revelation 21:8.

Make no mistake about it, “Behold, I am coming soon! My reward is with Me, and I will give to everyone **according to what he has done**.” Revelation 22:12. What reward will you get? Have you examined yourself against the Ten Commandments and the 7th day Sabbath to see if you are obedient? Are you pure and free from

sin? Do you trust Jesus so much that you will believe Him when He says that you must obey Him in order to get to heaven? Or do you believe your minister or church that says you don't have to do anything but "believe" or "saved by grace"? That belief had better translate into action and works. Those works of keeping the Ten Commandments.

**Your works decide your destiny.** You decide whether you go to heaven or hell. Your works will decide what reward you get. Please give your heart to Jesus and become obedient to His Ten Commandments. Jesus was obedient. Please follow His example. The Bible has given us the examples and the warnings, what will you do?

I beg of you, as Jeremiah begged the people of Jerusalem to leave Jerusalem to save their lives, so I beg you to come out of your church. Leave it now. Open up your home and use this book to hold Bible studies with. Listen to one of my favorite Bible Scholars.

"Babylon must apply to religious bodies that **were once pure** and have become corrupt. . . According to this scripture, many of God's people must still be in Babylon. And in what religious bodies is the greater part of the followers of Christ now to be found? Without doubt, in the various churches professing the Protestant faith. At the time of their rise these churches took a noble stand for God and the truth, and His blessing was with them. . . But they fell by the same desire which was the curse and ruin of Israel - the desire of imitating the practices and courting the friendship of the ungodly." GC

Look around you. If your church is not teaching the teachings of Jesus: Stop sinning, be perfect and keep the Ten Commandments to "get" your eternal life, then you must get out. That is how Jesus lived and that is what He taught. If your pastor, church or denomination is not teaching or living by the teachings and example of Jesus, get out now. Take everyone with you whom you want to see in Heaven. (Remember, it was tithing, church-going, Sabbath keeping people who were looking for the Advent of the Messiah who put Jesus on the cross.) Get out now!

If you are not living the perfect, sinless life, you are lost. Please, save yourself. Listen to Jesus and Jesus only and begin now to change your life.



# FLASH UPDATE

Pope John Paul II has written a letter.

APOSTOLIC LETTER  
DIES DOMINI  
OF THE HOLY FATHER  
JOHN PAUL II  
TO THE BISHOPS, CLERGY AND FAITHFUL  
OF THE CATHOLIC CHURCH  
ON KEEPING THE LORD'S DAY HOLY

This letter was written May 31, 1998. Let's see if it agrees with what we have been learning in this series. Does the pope have biblical authority to stand on? This letter is 39 pages long. It is numbered for easy referencing. Beginning with number 1, the first sentence reads:

"The Lord's Day – as Sunday was called from Apostolic times."

Well now, wait just a moment, was Sunday called "The Lord's Day" from Apostolic times? No. Not one apostle calls Sunday "The Lord's Day". It was Ignatius who started calling Sunday the "Lord's Day". He did not have authority from God!

Again, as we have already learned, "The Lord's Day" in the Bible is always in reference to the 7<sup>th</sup> day, Saturday, Sabbath. Jesus said, "I am Lord of the Sabbath". That is His day. He created it, He blessed it, He sanctified it, He rested in the tomb on it and He made it holy. Never was the 1<sup>st</sup> day, Sunday, given any of those designations from God. Never!!!

Does the pope agree that the Sabbath, the 7<sup>th</sup> day, is the Lord's Day? Absolutely. On page 22 number 63 states, "He (Jesus) performed many healings on **the Sabbath**, certainly not to violate the Lord's Day." This is in reference to the 7<sup>th</sup> day Sabbath, Saturday. That was the only Sabbath Jesus knew. The pope calls that day, "The Lord's Day" in this section. Why does He call Sunday the Lord's Day in the first sentence of this letter? Is he confused? I think so. Since there is no scripture to show a transfer of the Sabbath from the 7<sup>th</sup> day to the 1<sup>st</sup> day, he has to try to equate them as one in your mind. Don't be brainwashed.

The second paragraph starts out, "Rightly, then, the Psalmist's cry is applied to Sunday." Wait, wait just a minute. Do you mean to say, Mr. Pope, that David in his Psalms was writing about Sunday, the 1<sup>st</sup> day of the week? The 1<sup>st</sup> day was the pagan day to the devil and the sun-god? It was the day to worship Baal and Tammuz and all those gods of the devil. Those were the gods, and that was the day, that God put a curse on and condemned the people of Israel for worshiping. David wasn't talking about Sunday at all. Mr. Pope, you need to read your Bible.

Number 2 begins, "The Resurrection of Jesus is the fundamental event upon which Christian faith rests." Really? If it was the "fundamental event" upon which our faith rests, why didn't Jesus teach it? Why is it not the theme of the Bible? It isn't. The theme of Jesus' teaching is: Stop sinning, Be perfect and Keep the Ten Commandments to get into heaven. That is what our faith rests on. Read Hebrews 11. It is all about faithfulness in obedience and nothing about the resurrection.

But the pope is right. The resurrection is the fundamental event upon which the PAGAN "Christian" world's faith rests. The pope goes on to say in number 6, "In doing this, we follow in the footsteps of the age-old tradition of the Church." You bet. Easter is a demonic, **age-old tradition** of the pagan church that was never sanctioned by the writers of the Bible, both Old or New Testaments Jesus hates tradition. Read Mark 7:6-13 and see how much Jesus thinks of tradition. Nowhere in all of the Bible are we to follow tradition. True Christians follow the commands of Jesus. The pagan "Christians" follow the pagan traditions of the Church. The pope is absolutely correct in that statement.

Number 7 states: "The duty to keep Sunday holy..." The what? Would you please find in the Bible for me where it says that I have "the duty" to keep Sunday holy? It isn't there. Who has placed that duty on me? Only the pope and the Catholic Church. Every church that keeps Sunday as a holy or rest day, is paying homage to the devil and his servant: the Catholic Church.

Number 8 states: "For the Christian, Sunday is above all an Easter celebration...". Yep, that is correct for the pagan "Christian". As stated earlier, Easter comes straight out of paganism. You can refresh your memory by reading those sections in this work book.

Continuing on in this section we read, "According to the Priestly writer of the first biblical creation story, then was born the "Sabbath", so characteristic of the first Covenant, and which in some ways foretells the sacred day of the new and final Covenant." Now wait a minute. Let's see here. We have the true Sabbath being recognized in the first Covenant which God Himself proclaimed. Now, since God does not change, and the Ten Commandments haven't changed (we are still not allowed to murder or commit adultery are we?), what happened to the Sabbath? Where in all the Bible do you find God Himself changing the covenant from the "first" to the "final"? If God doesn't do it, it hasn't been done. Just because human wisdom takes some texts of some of the writers of the Bible and twist them to make it sound like God changed, He didn't change. They don't know what they are talking about. Again, to refresh your memory, go back to volume I and read about the Old and New Covenants.

Continuing on we read, "The People of God are called to enter into this same rest by persevering in Christ's example of filial obedience...". Oh Mr. Pope, I couldn't agree more with you. But Mr. Pope, Christ's example, "filial obedience" was always to keep and teach the importance of the 7<sup>th</sup> day Sabbath, not the 1<sup>st</sup> day pagan day. (Luke 4:16) Mr. Pope, why are you not following in the example, custom and teaching of Jesus?

Number 14 reads: "In the first place, therefore, Sunday is the day of rest because it is the day 'blessed' by God and 'made holy' by Him, set apart from the other days to be, among all of them, 'the Lord's Day'". Mr. Pope, please show me where in all the Bible God "blessed", "made holy" the 1<sup>st</sup> day Sunday. Why do you work so hard to change that which God has already blessed and made holy, the 7<sup>th</sup> day of the week, Saturday, the true and only Sabbath of God.

Number 18 reads: "Because the Third Commandment..." "Third Commandment"? The pope here is talking about the Sabbath. Check out your Bible and see which commandment talks about the Sabbath. It is not the "Third" but the Fourth Commandment. Why does the pope talk about it being the "Third"? Because, like everything else, he thinks he has the right to change what God doesn't want changed. The Catholic Church changed the Ten Commandments. They took out the 2<sup>nd</sup> commandment and split the 10<sup>th</sup> commandment. That was so they could worship idols and still keep "Ten" Commandments. Where did you get that authority Mr. Pope? Oh yes, you claim to be "God on earth" and can

change God and His Commandments.

By the way, all you Sunday keepers, if you keep Sunday, then you can worship idols. The same person who said it was okay to keep Sunday said it was okay to worship idols. If it is not okay to worship idols, then it is not okay to keep Sunday. It is time to stop honoring the devil and get back to honoring God.

Here we see the pope explaining that the Catholic Church changed the Sabbath. It wasn't God who changed it. Listen to the pope as we continue with number 18. "Christians ... made the first day after the Sabbath a festive day." Okay, let's give them that. Let's say that Christians decided to make Sunday a "festive day". What does that have to do with changing the Sabbath? Nothing!!! It gets better yet. The pope says, "We move from the 'Sabbath' to the 'first day after the Sabbath', from the seventh day to the first day: the *dies Domini* becomes the *dies Christi*!" Really? And who authorized this move? The Catholic Church!!!

When you, Mr. And Mrs. Sunday keeper keep Sunday, you are honoring the pope, not God. The Catholic Church will tell you that.

Number 19 says, "testifying to an already **well established practice** which had **evolved** from the early years...". I don't care how well "established" the practice was, I want a "Thus saith the Lord". Where does God say to change His Sabbath? And what about this "evolved" business. Are we talking evolution? Is God evolving His theology? I don't think so. My God doesn't change.

And now the Catholic Church agrees that Sunday is a pagan ritual. Listen to what the pope says in number 27. "Wise pastoral intuition **suggested to the Church the christianization of the notion of Sunday as 'the day of the sun'**, which was the Roman name for the day and which is retained in some modern languages. This was in order to draw the faithful away from the seduction of cults which worshiped the sun, and to direct the celebration of the day to Christ, humanity's true 'sun'. Writing to the pagans, Saint Justin (who?) uses the language of the time to note that Christians gather together 'on the day named after the sun', but for believers the expression had already assumed a new meaning which was unmistakably rooted in the Gospel."

Let me see if I have this right. The pagans worshiped the sun-god on Sunday, just as I have been explaining to you. The pope agrees with true history. So, in order to bring the pagans out of paganism, we will continue to use their pagan day of worship but just make it "Christian". Remember, the church also kept their idols and just "Christianized" them. Knock, knock; anybody home?

Why not bring them out of paganism by bringing them to the true God of the universe as Paul did, by bringing them to the true Sabbath of the true God, the 7<sup>th</sup> day, Saturday worship? But since the church adopted the pagan sabbath, Sunday, it also adopted pagan idol worship. They just changed the names, as we have learned, and as you can see, the pope agrees. And by the way, who is this "Saint Justin". Never read of him in my Bible. Have you?

Number 30 states: "The identity of this day must be protected and above all must be lived in all its depth. An Eastern writer of the beginning of the third century recounts that as early as then the faithful in every region were keeping Sunday holy on a regular basis. What began as spontaneous practice later became a juridical sanctioned norm."

Let's see, God commanded us to protect and "Remember" the 7<sup>th</sup> day Sabbath. The pope says we are to protect the 1<sup>st</sup> day, Sunday. Who will you follow? Just because "so called" Christians were apostatizing and joining the pagans in their Sunday worship doesn't give us the right to transfer our worship from God's 7<sup>th</sup> day to the pagan 1<sup>st</sup> day. (Remember, these "Christians" turned to Sunday keeping to avoid persecution.)

Number 32 states, "Significantly, the Catechism of the Catholic Church teaches that 'the Sunday celebration of the Lord's Day and his Eucharist is at the heart of the Church's life'". That is correct. God does not teach it, but the Catholic Church in their pagan Catechism teaches it. Sunday worship is and always has been at the heart of all pagan church worship.

Now notice how sly the pope is. You see, he has changed the Sabbath from the 7<sup>th</sup> day to the 1<sup>st</sup> day. Sounds good. But now see how it keeps going. Listen to number 39. "In Masses of Sunday and holy days of obligation...". And what? "Holy days"? Oh, now not only are we changing the Sabbath, but we now are going to add more "holy days" that are our "obligation" to keep holy. Okay all you Sunday Protestants, now you must keep all the other days holy that the Catholic Church has made holy. If you keep one of its days, you might as well keep them all. Picking and choosing which of its days you want won't cut it. You are already lost by breaking God's Sabbath, so go ahead and go all the way and start keeping all the other "holy days" of the Catholic Church.

You see, once the church starts changing God, then it must make it "obligatory" and must use force. No longer are we allowed to worship God as He commanded us, now we must be forced to follow the devil and his 1<sup>st</sup> day sabbath. Therefore, number 47 reads, "The Church has not ceased to confirm this obligation of conscience, that the Church had to make explicit the duty to attend Sunday Mass: more often than not, this was done in the

form of exhortation, but at times the Church had to resort to specific canonical precepts.” Canonical precepts? That is the same as saying they instituted the Inquisition. Remember it? That is not of God.

It goes on to say, “The Code of Canon Law of 1917... reiterates this, saying that ‘on Sundays and other holy days of obligation the faithful are bound to attend Mass.’ ...How vital Sunday is for the Christian life.” Oh, I see, it isn’t God who commands the keeping of Sunday, it is “The Code of Canon Law of 1917”. How nice. Oh yes, and of course, all you Sunday going Protestants, you must also keep those other holy days. They are “vital” to your life. Thank God I am not bound by all those man-made holy days nor the pagan 1<sup>st</sup> day worship. I obey God and keep His 7<sup>th</sup> day Sabbath very plainly and simply as God commands us to.

Number 52 says, “This rather traditional way of keeping Sunday holy...”. This what? Traditional way? What happened to Scripture and Scripture only? Where are the Scripture proofs to show us the “traditional way” of keeping Sunday holy? This pope is not a Christian (Christ like). But it gets better.

Not only are we now to keep the pagan 1<sup>st</sup> day holy, but we are to keep the other pagan holy days holy. And, “The faithful take advantage of Sunday rest to visit a Shrine, in a more intense experience of faith.” What was that? Oh, I see, now I must go visit a shrine on Sunday to get a “more intense experience of faith”. Wow, you Sunday keeping Protestants really have a lot to do on Sunday and the other “holy days”. You keep the devil’s 1<sup>st</sup> day sabbath, you keep his other pagan holy days and you worship at his shrines. All the things that the Old and New Testaments condemn. But who cares, you are not doing anything God tells you to do. You are only doing what the pope tells you to do.

Number 55 says, “Blessed be he who has raised the great day of Sunday above all other days.” Excuse me, but that is not found anywhere in my Bible. If you can find it in any accurately translated Bible, please let me know and I will personally give you \$1,000. (Since June of 1997, not one person has shown me the change in the Bible.)

Number 58: “This vision of faith shows the Christian Sunday to be a true ‘time for celebration’, a day given by God to men and women for their full human and spiritual growth.” Is that so? Again, show me where you find that in the Bible and I’ll give you \$1,000. In fact, just show me where Sunday is called, “Christian”. The only Christian Sabbath has always been the 7<sup>th</sup> day Sabbath of God. And by the way, Mr. Pope, are you telling me that Abraham, Isaiah, Jeremiah and the other prophets had not met their “full human and spiritual growth” because they condemned Sunday worship?

Here is a real doozer. Number 62 says, “It is the duty of the Christians therefore to remember that, the underlying reasons for keeping ‘the Lord’s Day’ holy – inscribed solemnly in the Ten Commandments – remain valid, though they need to be **reinterpreted** in the light of the theology and spirituality of Sunday.”

How was that? Oh, yes, the 7<sup>th</sup> day Sabbath is “inscribed solemnly in the Ten Commandments” and “remain valid”, but needs to be “reinterpreted”? Who gave them that authority to “reinterpret” that which God said was not to be added to or subtracted from? (Deuteronomy 4:2.)

Who has that authority? Apparently the pope thinks that he does. He says in number 63, “This is why Christians, called as they are to proclaim the liberation won by the blood of Christ, felt that they had the authority to transfer the meaning of the Sabbath to the day of the Resurrection.” Oh I get it, the blood of Christ does not liberate me from sin, it liberates me from the Ten Commandments so I can go on sinning and still be free. So now I am free to change the meaning of the Sabbath to the day of the Resurrection even though Jesus never said to do it. Now that I am liberated, I can kill, commit adultery, lie and break all the other commandments. How stupid!!!

The blood of Jesus makes the Ten Commandments absolutely mandatory. Jesus is my example. He kept them unto death, and He commands us to keep them even unto death. Anyone who attempts to change any of God’s commands will be burned in hell. (Revelation 22:18, 19.)

The pope tells us plainly who gave the pagan Sunday legitimacy. Number 64 says, “Only in the fourth century did the civil law of the Roman Empire recognize the weekly recurrence, determining that on ‘the day of the sun’ the judges, the people of the cities and the various trade corporations would not work”. Oh, let me see, the church had to wait for the civil law of the pagan Roman Empire to say it was okay. Nothing here to do with our obligation to God.

“Even after the fall of the Empire, the Councils did not cease to insist upon the arrangements regarding Sunday rest...it is still Sunday which remains the Lord’s Day.” Okay, so it is not God who insists upon Sunday, but the Church, following after the pagan Roman Empire. And again, who are you following? Are you following Jesus and the God of the universe by keeping His 7<sup>th</sup> day Saturday Sabbath holy, or are you following the pagan Roman Empire’s example of Sunday worship?

Here again the pope recognizes that it must force pagan Sunday worship because the true Christians will follow the example and command of Jesus to keep His 7<sup>th</sup> day



Sabbath. The pope says, “When, through the centuries, she has made laws concerning Sunday rest, the Church has had in mind above all the work of servants and workers...”. Of course, not God. “It needed greater regulation.” “Pope Leo XIII in his Encyclical *Rerum Novarum* spoke of Sunday rest as a worker’s right which the State must guarantee.” The state must guarantee? “Christians will naturally strive to ensure that civil legislation respects their duty to keep Sunday holy.”

Wow Pope, you really have it all backwards. One, it is not the state’s duty. Two, you have the wrong day, biblically. As the pope says, “In the words of Saint Ambrose...”. Saint who? I don’t remember a book in the Bible being written by Saint Ambrose? The Catholic Church is made up of pagan, demonic rules, regulations and traditions. Is that who you follow? Remember, all churches follow the Roman Catholic Church if they keep its Sunday sabbath holy or teach its doctrines. That includes yours!

The pope goes on to say in number 73, “The Christian Sunday is a ‘prophecy inscribed on time itself, a prophecy obliging the faithful to follow in the footsteps of the One who came ‘to preach good news to the poor...’”. Right statement pope, wrong day. If we follow in the footsteps of “the One”, we will be keeping His 7<sup>th</sup> day, Saturday, Sabbath as Jesus did. If you keep Sunday holy, you are following in the footsteps of the one who was thrown out of heaven and put Jesus on the cross, the devil. As the pope says in number 76, Sunday “is rooted in the most ancient tradition of the Church...”. The pagan church always is based on and continues the traditions of ancient paganism.

The pope goes on to say, “The holy Church venerates with special love the Blessed Virgin Mary, Mother of God...”. I don’t remember that verse in the Bible. I do think, though, that there were Catholics in the New Testament. Luke says that one yelled out, “Blessed is the mother who gave you birth and nursed you.” Sounds Catholic. But listen to what Jesus said. “Blessed **rather** are those who hear the Word of God **and obey it.**” Luke 11:27, 28. That is the problem with the Catholic Church and all the Protestant Churches who follow the Catholic Sunday. They are not obeying the Word of God to keep His 7<sup>th</sup> day, Saturday, Holy. Therefore, none of them are blessed, but will be thrown into hell.

Again the pope makes it very clear that it gets its authority not from God, but “firmly they are established in tradition, and how well they are supported by civil legislation.” How demonic. Nothing Christian about that! He goes on to say, “It should not be forgotten that these traditions...”. That is right, let us never forget that Sunday is a demonic tradition and has nothing to do with Christianity. Christianity is “Christ like” and Christ never kept Sunday holy, nor ever commanded it. He did

command that we keep His 7<sup>th</sup> day Holy. Are you listening? Are you willing to give up your demonic past and follow the true God?

As a final note, the pope says, “As they listen to the word proclaimed in the Sunday assembly, the faithful look to the Virgin Mary... From Sunday to Sunday, the pilgrim people follow in the footsteps of Mary.”

I thought that as the Word was proclaimed we were to look to Jesus. I thought that we were to follow in the footsteps of Jesus. Come on people. Wake Up!!! The Bible says to come out of all these pagan churches that are giving homage to the devil and his 1<sup>st</sup> day, Sunday, worship. Come out and stand up for God. Start keeping His 7<sup>th</sup> day, Saturday, Sabbath and see what blessings will come upon you.

After all, Mary kept the 7th day Sabbath holy. Let us remember that text. “So the women who had come with Jesus from Galilee, following close behind, saw the tomb and how his body was laid. Then they went back and prepared spices and perfumes, and on the Sabbath they rested according to the commandment.” Luke 23:55, 56. Let’s follow the example of Mary who obeyed Jesus and let’s keep the 7th day Sabbath holy.

#### NOTES

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## Historical

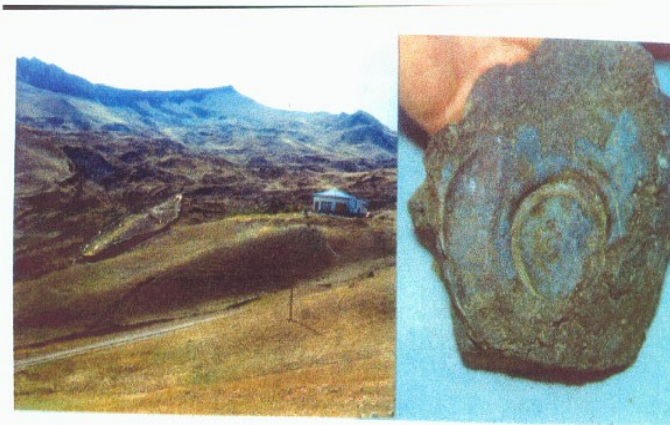
## Evidence for the Bible

What do we do with those Bible stories? Are they for real? Did they actually happen? Yes to all! Let’s take for an example the story of the flood. Did it really happen? Of course. How else are you going to explain fossilized ocean critters found on top of Mt. Everest? It is the only way to explain the Grand Canyon. It is the only way to explain why

every culture in the world has a “flood” story. It was handed down by Noah and his sons to their children and grandchildren, etc. Do we have proof that the ark actually existed? Yes we do. The following pictures are actual photos of the Ark.

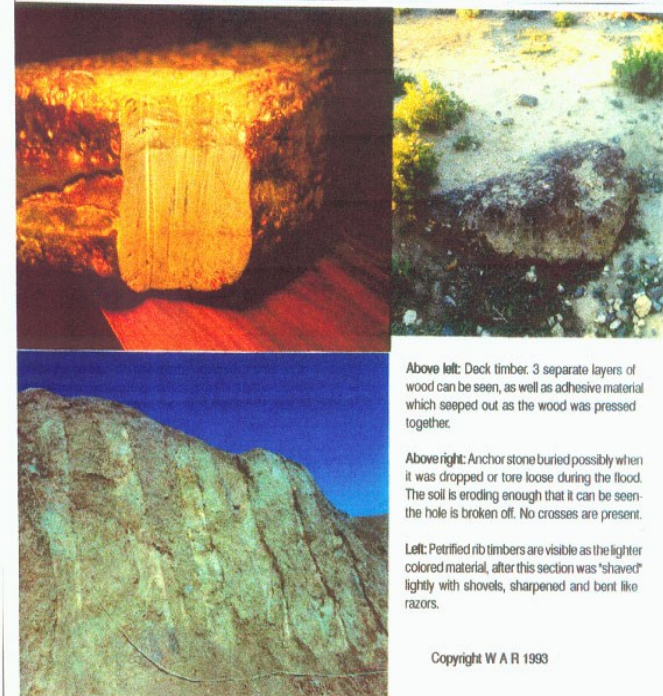
# NOAH'S ARK

Below, you can see the ark and the observation building built by Turkey to view the Ark. The photo beside it is a fossilized rivet used by Noah. The photos below them are of the wood. You can see the layers that were put together for strength. Below them are the ribs of the ark as they are showing through the mud that has encased the ark for a very long time.



Above: Noah's Ark and the Visitor's Center.

Above: Fossilized rivet found by Ron in June 1991.



Above left: Deck timber. 3 separate layers of wood can be seen, as well as adhesive material which seeped out as the wood was pressed together.

Above right: Anchor stone buried possibly when it was dropped or tore loose during the flood. The soil is eroding enough that it can be seen. The hole is broken off. No crosses are present.

Left: Petrified rib timbers are visible as the lighter colored material, after this section was "shaved" lightly with shovels, sharpened and bent like razors.

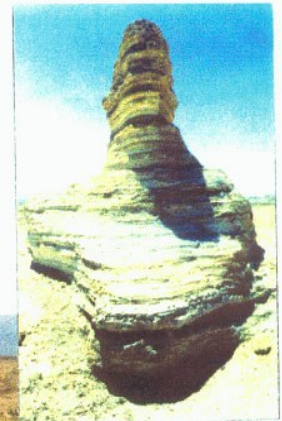
Copyright W A R 1993

# SODOM & GOMORRAH

Right top can see the shape of the “buildings” which are burned to ash. The fireballs (2nd picture on left) are found nowhere else in the world. Only at this spot. Bottom right photo is a “main entrance” to a building. These were found by the Dead Sea in Israel, right were the Bible said they would be.



Organized structure within the site of Gomorrah.



The "sphinx" shaped ashen object located several hundred yards outside the city gate of the site of Gomorrah.



A light yellow sulfur ball can be seen in the broken capsule that Richard Rives is about to pick up. Other sulfur capsules can be seen scattered all around.



Copyright W A R 1995

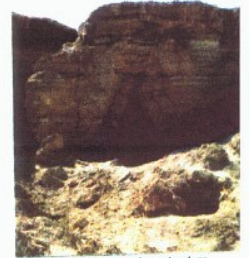
# 10



The ashen remains of Zoar, "is it not a little one?", can be seen at the southwestern end of the Dead Sea. It is the square-shaped area. (The "salt pans" are behind).



Viewing the remains of Gomorrah from Masada, an artificial platform area can be clearly seen in the top 1/3 of the photo. Ashen remains of structures atop this platform area can also be seen. Ancient cities of the middle-east built these high areas to contain structures relating to their religious activities.



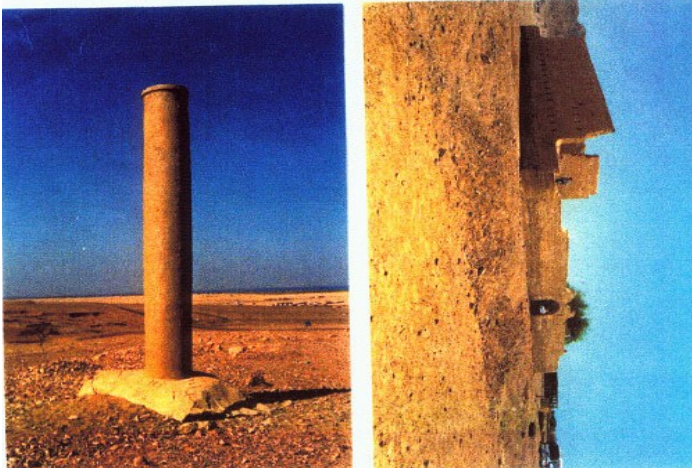
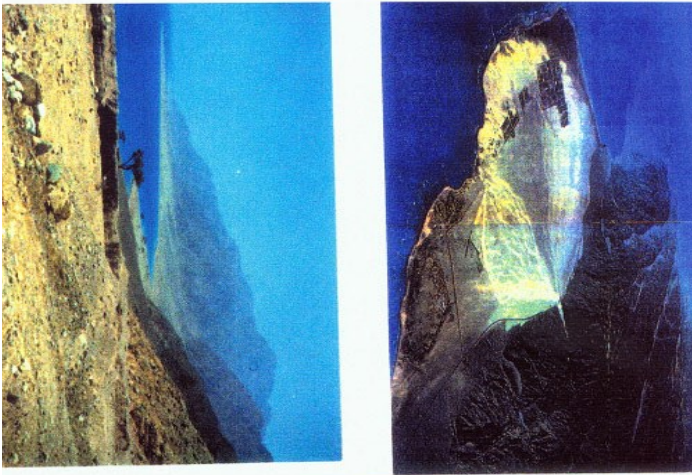
The entrance into an ashen structure.

# RED SEA CROSSING



After the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah, we have another magnificent display of God's power. This picture shows the route the Israelites took to the Red Sea. On page 211 you will see the beach area on the West side of the Red Sea from where the Israelites crossed over. That beach area is about 4 miles long and about 2 miles wide. Plenty of space to hold over 2 million people. You can see where they would have come through the canyon to come out onto the beach. This fits perfectly the description that is mentioned in the Bible.

# The Split Rock



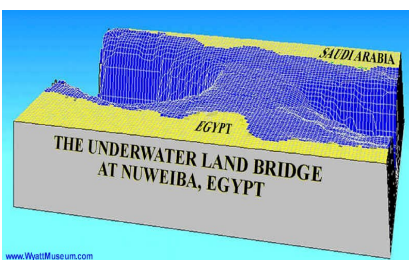
The photo above is the rock that was struck by Moses and split in two, causing water to come out. In the videos you can see very clearly the water erosion. As you can see, this is desert and there is nothing that could collect enough water to put water grooves in the rocks. Yet the water erosion is as plain as any found today made by a riverbed or gully. Yet this area of the world receives less than 1/4" of rain a year.

# Mt. Sinai

The standing round pole you see on the bottom left is one of two. The other one is on the Arabian side of the Red Sea. These poles have inscriptions on them which in effect say: "These monuments were erected by King Solomon, in honor of Yahweh to commemorate the crossing of the Red Sea." So where did they cross? In the picture, do you see where the two fingers of water move up, one to the left and one to the right? In between them is what we call the "Desert of Sinai" or the "Sinai Peninsula". Most of the world believes that the Israelites wandered around in that area for 40 years. Not so. They crossed the body of water known as the Gulf of Aqaba.

How do we know this? Well, there are the two pillars that stand one on either side of the Gulf of Aqaba. That is pretty good indication. But also, there are chariot wheels and horses hooves and human skeletons down at the bottom of the Gulf of Aqaba. How did they get there? The Bible says the sea swept over the Egyptians and drowned them in the sea. Not bad. The Bible is proven to be very accurate.

This picture shows the land bridge that crosses at exactly that spot. On either side of the land bridge, the water drops about 5,000 feet. Too steep to climb down for getting across.



But the land bridge (3D Model) is only about 1,000 feet deep at its lowest. This makes the crossing a very gentle 6% slope. That would be very easy to cross with wagons, horses, sheep and little children.



After crossing the Red Sea, the Israelites came to Mt. Sinai. There God gave to them the Ten Commandments. They spent over a year at mount Sinai building the tabernacle and preparing to cross the Jordan into the land of Canaan.

The Bible tells us that Mt. Sinai is in Arabia. Well, the Mt. Sinai that is on most maps is in the Egyptian desert of Sinai, not Arabia. You don't get into Arabia until you cross the Gulf of Aqaba. So the real Mt. Sinai must be in Arabia. (Galatians. 4:25).

The photo above is Mt. Sinai as viewed from Google Earth. You can see that the "cloud" of fire that God came down in sat on the mountain and burned those rocks. They have been tested and they are burned, they are not volcanic.

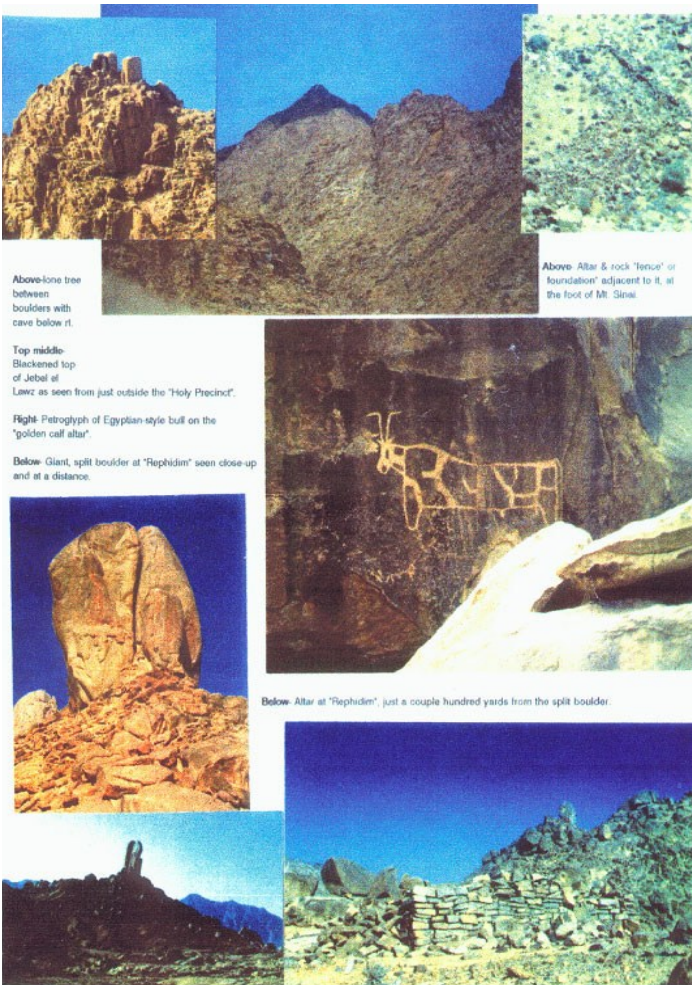
The first thing you notice when looking at the pictures is the blackened peak on top. What would make that peak black? There is no vegetation. Nothing there to burn. That mountain

# Validity of the Bible

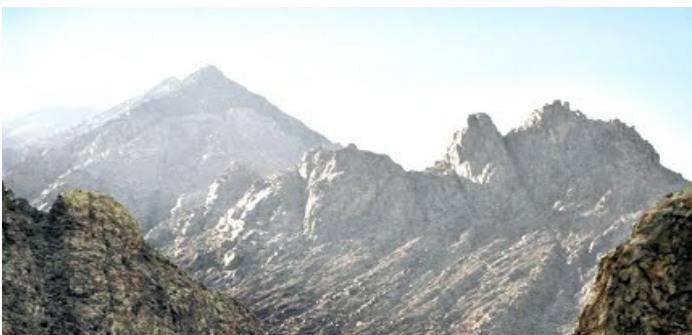
is a big rock pile. And look at how even the burn area is. Maybe it was caused by the cloud of fire that God came down in? The Bible says that the mount was all a smoke. Exodus 19:18.

Starting with the pictures below, the top left photo shows the cave where Elijah ran to. Beside it, another picture of Mt. Sinai. Beside it is the foundation of the altar used by Moses. Below it is a picture of a petroglyph of cows on the altar Aaron made. There are several of these cow shaped petroglyphs all around this Mt. Sinai area. These are the only cow shaped petroglyphs in all of Saudi Arabia. They are all just like the ones you find in the Egyptian tombs. Egypt is where the Israelites came from.

To the left another picture of the split rock. In the lower right hand corner is a picture of an altar. Moses built this altar to the Lord after they defeated their enemies at "Rephidim".



Another view of Mt. Sinai.



Through this book the Holy Spirit has attempted to show the validity of the Bible through prophecy. Through prophecy we have been able to show that God is and that He rewards those who love Him. We have been able to prove the Bible is of God and that it can be trusted. All unconditional time prophecies, up to this point, have come to pass.

But there may be some who are still swayed by the myths and theories of evolution. It is said that Adolf Hitler made a statement which is very relevant to this topic. He said:

**“If you tell a lie long enough, and loud enough and often enough, the people will believe it.”**

How true that is with the theory of evolution. Notice, it is just a theory. Evolution cannot be proven. Since no one was around to witness evolution, all we can do is theorize about it.

But you say, no one was around to witness the creation of the world. That is where you are wrong. Jesus was around then. After all, He created the world, and then He came and told us about it. That is what the Bible is all about. It is the written record of the truth. I don't see any written records of the "facts" or "truth" of evolution coming down to us from the past. Do you?

But let's step out from between the pages of the Bible for a few minutes and take a look at the scientific evidence. Which does it support: evolution or special creation?

Okay, let's look at evolution. Where are the scientific **facts** that support it? There are none. All you have are misguided people running around the world trying to match bones and "create" a missing link. Why are they trying so hard to "create" a missing link? Because there are **no** missing links.

Let's see, the theory of evolution states that the earth has been in the making for about 4.5 *billion* years. Wow. Accordingly, man was supposed to appear on the scene about 2 *million* years ago. Prior to that, there was supposed to be vegetation and other animals. Well, where is all that vegetation?

Did you know that the oldest living organism (a Bristle Cone Pine Tree on the coast of California) on planet earth today is only 4,200 years old? You didn't know that? How come? Were you too busy listening to the lies that are being proclaimed so long, so loud and so often that the facts got pushed aside?

If the earth is supposed to be 4.5 billion years old, why is the oldest living organism on the earth about 4,200 years old? Well, I have an idea about that. You see, the Bible says that



about 6,000 years ago, God created the earth and the heavens. Then about 4,300 years ago, He washed it clean with a flood. Now if you were beginning to grow after that, you would be about 4,200 years old. Interesting, seems to me like a perfect match.

“The facts are, however, that fossil remains are rarely, if ever, complete. The most numerous fossil remains are the teeth, which are commonly found detached or embedded in a fragment of the jaw. Cranial fragments are somewhat less common, and limb bones are often extremely rare. Thus, evidence for the existence of some of the structural criteria may not always be available. Added to this difficulty is the fact that available fossils are rare and that frequently there are large gaps in the continuous sequence of the evolving hominoid.” *Collier’s*

“Large gaps?” That is an understatement. Take “Lucy” for an example. The evolution community parades “her” around and says, “See, these are the bones of the ‘missing link’ between us and the monkeys”. Really? Did you know that those bones are only about 3 feet tall? A monkey is all she is. Not only that, but did you know that her “bones” were found over a mile and a half apart, and in two different strata layers of the earth? I wonder what it was that hit her and scattered “her bones” that far? Or maybe, they don’t belong to “her” at all. Maybe they are just bones of many different animals that prejudiced evolutionists have gathered up and stuck together.

Go up two paragraphs and read carefully again. Basically what it says is that there are **very few bones lying around to study and learn from**. Why are there very few bones lying around? That poses a very big problem to the evolutionists. Why?

You see, there are laws. There is a law of population statistics that says that the earth’s population can be stated as such: The population grows at an annual increase of 1% - 2%. And then, every 82 years, one half of the population is wiped out because of war, disease, famine, plague and pestilence, etc.

Okay, let’s take the law of population growth and use it on the theory of evolution. They claim that man has been around for about 2 million years. Starting with just one couple, a man and a woman, we have a real problem.

Because the problem is so huge, I am going to cut it back to only 41,000 years of human habitation on this planet. If humans only started populating the earth 41,000 years ago, using the law of population growth as accepted by all scientific disciplines, do you know how many people there would be on the earth today?  $2 \times 10$  to the 89<sup>th</sup> power. That is more than all the electrons in the whole universe, by some accounts. That is more than 150,000 people per **square inch** on planet earth! And they want me to believe that humans have been here for over a million years?

However, let’s take that same formula and use it biblically. The Bible tells us that about 4,300 years ago, four families stepped off the ark and repopulated the earth. Okay, using the same formula and stopping at the year 2000, we would find only about 6 billion people on the earth. Is that correct? According to all the population statistics, yes.

The theory of evolution just doesn’t stand up to its own theory. It keeps making a monkey out of itself. It ought to just accept the facts and believe the science that proves creation. By the way, more and more scientists are believing in creation. The “evidence” for evolution just keeps falling down.

Let’s take a look at the earth and see what it can tell us about its age. It can’t talk to us, so we have to use science to tell us. That is the problem with evolution, they don’t use science. They use “Well, I guess it’s that old.” Not very scientific. And how do they guess the ages? They find a bone and say, “This bone is 400 million years old.” How do they know? Because they found it in a layer of stone (sand) that they say is 400 million years old. Then they find a layer of stone (sand) and say, “This layer of stone is 400 million years old.” And how do they guess its age? They find a bone in it and say, because, this bone is 400 million years old. That is called “circular reasoning” and has no place in science.

But you say, they can date the rocks using radioactive material. Doesn’t that prove how old the earth is? No! You can find any age for this earth using that method. The radioactive material in the rocks comes in all ages. They just pick the one they like and use it. Not very scientific. Also, Carbon 14 dating is dependent on ultraviolet radiation. Because more UV is coming in now than it was even 2000 years ago it is giving us false readings. They are using a rubber ruler to measure with. Just stretch it to any length you want.

But the earth and the heavens do speak to us of a Creator. They do tell us of His work and how He did it. Listen to Psalms 19:1-4. “The heavens declare the glory of God; the skies proclaim the work of His hands. Day after day they pour forth speech; night after night they display knowledge. There is no speech or language where their voice is not heard. Their voice goes out into all the earth, their words to the ends of the world.” Are you listening? If you haven’t been, keep reading, and you will hear their voice and their knowledge. Then you too will become wise.

## What About?

The earth is like a giant magnet. Around it is “a powerful geomagnetic field that extends more than 40,000 miles (64,000 km) into space. The lines of force of this field emerge from one magnetic pole of the earth and reenter at the other.” *Collier’s*

The problem is, “the main geomagnetic field is changing with time. Its intensity has been continuously **decreasing** by 6 percent every 100 years.” *Collier’s*. Get that? It is “decreasing”. Now let me see, if the geomagnetic field is

losing one half its strength every 1400 years, which it is, that makes big trouble for the evolutionists.

That means that 1400 years ago, the geomagnetic field was twice as strong as it is today. 1400 years before that, it was four times as strong as it is now. After 10,000 years, the earth's electromagnetic field would have been so strong that no life could have existed. Going back 15,000 years the field would have been so strong that this planet would have been a **magnetic star**. That means that no life could have existed past 10,000 years ago. Big problem for the evolutionists. No problem for the creationist and an earth only 6,000 years old.

Take the oceans as another example of the mindlessness of evolution. The oceans are getting saltier each year. Based on their percentage of increase, why are they only 3.6% salt if the earth is millions of years old? A big problem for evolution. No problem for creationists and a 6,000-year-old earth.



How about the coral reef? After doing a 20 year study on the Great Barrier Reef off the coast of Australia, scientists found that it is only 4,200 years old. Interesting, why is it only 4,200 years old if the earth is millions of years old? Big problem for the evolutionists. No problem for the creationists. You see, about 6,000 years ago, God created the earth and the heavens. About 4,300 years ago He sent a flood to clean it up. The reef had to start over.

Did you know that the earth is slowing down? "The Earth's spin is gradually **slowing** down as a result of the influence of the tides."\* Since the earth is slowing down, that means it had to be going **faster** in the past. Big problem for the evolutionists. No problem for the creationists. Where did the dinosaurs go? If the evolutionists are right, they flew off into space. Get the point? Little humor.

How about the moon? Did you know that it is moving away from the earth at about two inches a year? "The loss of angular momentum from the Earth's rotation is transferred to the Moon's orbit and causes the Moon to **slowly recede from the Earth**."\*

Well, since it is moving away, that means that it **must have been closer**. Bad news for the evolutionists. Good news for the creationists. Just 2 million years ago the moon would have been so close to the earth that it would have drowned all living things, twice a day. Most living things can only drown once in a lifetime.



Remember, the moon causes the tides by its gravitational pull. You see, the tides, which the moon influences, would have been so high that they would have swept the earth. Nope, evolution just doesn't cut it. But creation does.

How about that sun? It is slowly losing 5 million tons of fuel a second. That means **that it is shrinking in size**. Well, if it is **shrinking in size**, then it must have been larger in the past. Hot problem for the evolutionists. 20 million years ago the sun would have been too close to the earth. Now I know what happened to the dinosaurs, they roasted. No problem for the creationists.

## LAWS

Evolutionists hate laws. All their evolution theories go against the laws of science. Let's take a look at the Big Bang theory. To put it simply, they believe that all the matter in the universe was once crammed into a tiny little dot no larger than the period at the end of this sentence. Wow, that is a mighty, crowded dot.

The question is, where did all that matter come from? Who created it? I know, but they don't want to know. But there is a problem. Not for the creationist, but for the evolutionists. "The first law, then, is a law of energy conservation. It states that, ...energy cannot be created or destroyed". (Infopedia). Where did the energy come from for the explosion? What made it move in the first place? Something or Someone had to put this thing into motion.



Another law is the law of Angular Momentum. What that law says is that if you have something spinning, say, in a clockwise direction, all the pieces that come off that item must also spin in a clockwise motion. Real problem for the evolutionists. No problem for the creationists. Why a problem for the evolutionist? They believe that the universe came from a spinning dot in the big bang.

You see, not everything in the universe is spinning in the same

# Scientific Evidence

direction. Just in our little solar system we have Venus and Uranus, planets that are spinning backwards. “Radar observations of the surface reveal that the planet (Uranus) spins backwards (clockwise observed from the North Pole) once every 243 days.” Collier’s

Why are they doing that? Who stopped them and then re-spun them in that direction? Can’t happen if they came from a Big Bang. Not only are the planets spinning in different directions, but there are moons that are spinning and traveling around planets in opposite directions to the other moons going around that same planet. Big problem to the evolutionist. No problem to a creationist.

The 2<sup>nd</sup> law of Thermodynamics is that everything tends toward disorder. “The law states that the entropy - that is, the disorder - of an isolated system - can never decrease. Thus, when an isolated system achieves a configuration of maximum entropy, it can no longer undergo change: It has reached equilibrium. Nature, then, seems to “prefer” disorder or chaos.” (*Infopedia*). Let’s see now. Evolutionists claim that everything is getting better. Yet the law states that everything is getting worse. What do you think?

If you painted your house this year, would it be getting better and better each year? Or would it deteriorate and get worse and worse each year until you finally had to get the paint and brush out and do it again? How about that automobile of yours? Does it get better over time, or does it need repairing over time? What about your body? Does it get better over time, or does it deteriorate and need fixing over time?

Evolutionists really have a problem. If we are supposed to be getting bigger and better with time, why is it that **everything found in the past fossil record is bigger and better. We, however, are smaller and worse off today?**

Why do we have sharks that are only 30 feet long today, **but in the fossil record they are over 60 feet long?** Why do we have dragon flies that are a few inches across when **the fossil record has them with a wing span of over three feet across?** Why is it that a certain club moss that grows about 18 inches now, **grew in the fossil record to be over a hundred feet tall?**

We are not getting better, **we are getting dumber, dumber and worse off.** This planet is falling apart. It needs a major overhaul. Somebody has to come back and make it right again or we are in real trouble. That is what this book is all about. He is coming back, and soon.

Do you believe in fairytales? I bet you do if you are an evolutionist. You see, all evolutionists believe in fairytales. They believe in the fairytale of the princess who kissed the frog and the frog turned into a prince. As much as they don’t want to believe that, the only difference between their belief and the fairytale of the princess and the frog is time. Evolutionists wave the magic wand of “time” to turn a frog into a man. If the princess kisses the frog and it turns into a prince quickly, that is an impossible fairy tale. But if the princess kisses the frog and in 20 million years it turns into a prince, that is science? Stupid.

“For He spoke, and it came to be; He commanded, and it stood firm.” Psalm 33:9.

Do we have scientific evidence that this happened? Yes. God left His fingerprints all over creation. He made it so you and I could hear His voice speaking to us, if we listen and watch and observe closely. Let’s see what we can find.

“With the discovery of RADIOACTIVITY at the end of the 19th century, however, geologists gained a much more precise tool for the dating of past Earth events. This tool, radiometric age-dating, is based on the fact that every radioactive element decays. That is, the so-called “parent” element emits radiation and particles until it is transformed by the loss into, eventually, a stable “daughter” element, **sometimes passing through a series of transformations into other radioactive elements before reaching this stability.** Each radioactive element also has its own pattern and rate of decay.” *Grolier*

“Absolute ages of deposition for sedimentary units are determined by RADIOMETRIC AGE-DATING. This technique measures the age of crystallization of a mineral in which small amounts of a radioactive element are incorporated. As the element decays, the decay products are trapped in the mineral. The ratio of radioactive element to decay product indicates the time since crystallization.” *Grolier*

As the above two paragraphs indicate, we can date the earth by the radioactivity that is left behind. You see, radioactive particles deteriorate by what is called “half-life” time. If a certain radioactive material takes one year to lose half its radioactivity, then we can measure the age.

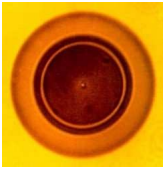
These radioactive chain reactions leave **signature rings** that can be measured. We can literally count the rings as the material was breaking down and know how long it took to break down. Then we will know how old the item is that had that radioactive chain reaction.

Now let’s put all of this together. The evolutionists say that the earth is 4.5 billion years old. They say that the crust of this earth, the granite, “was formed ages ago when magma (molten rock) cooled. This cooling took place below the Earth’s surface and slowly enough to permit formation of crystals.” *Compton’s*

Is that what happened? Nope. You see, inside the granite there are signature rings of radioactive material that has long since decayed and left. But the signature ring is still there. No problem you say, must have had a very long half-life. That way, as the granite cooled over millions of years, we are now able to see those signature rings. Nope.

One of those radioactive materials is Polonium 218. It only has a half-life of 3 minutes. In about seven half minutes there is nothing left to be recorded. That means that in less than 21 minutes the granite had to be completely formed and recording

in order to record Polonium 218. Wow, 21 minutes to form the granite of the earth. That is a pretty short time. I guess it didn't take millions of years for the earth to form. Only about 21 minutes.

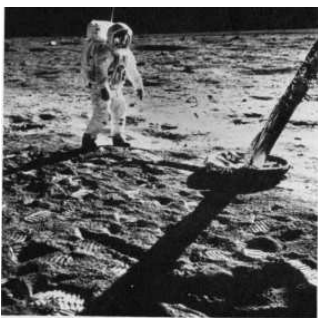


But it gets even better. We find Polonium 214 recorded in the granite. Now we are really talking fast. Polonium 214 has a half-life of — get this — point (that's with a period, a dot) .000164 seconds.

That means, that in less time than it takes for you to snap your fingers, the granite of this earth had to be completely solid, intact and functioning as a hard piece of rock in order to record that Polonium 214 deteriorating.

Did God create this world in an instant as the Bible says He did? You bet He did. Proven by science. Everything points to a very young earth. God created it only about 6,600 years ago. How do we know that?

Remember, if you are old enough, the landing of Neil Armstrong on the moon. If you are not old enough, check out the photos and read about it. Remember the space craft he used to land on the moon.



Astronaut Aldrin walks near the "duck foot" footpad of the Lunar Lander Eagle

Look at the landing pods it used in order to land on the moon. Why are they round? "Because little was known about the lunar surface when construction began in 1962, engineers designed the cantilever landing gear—consisting of four sets of legs, each ending *in a dish-shaped pod*—so that the vehicle could land safely and remain upright on a variety of surfaces." *Grolier*

What were they concerned about? Well, you see, the evolution scientist said that the earth and the moon were 4.5 billion years old. Now all during that time, cosmic dust has been falling on the moon. The scientists were afraid that the dust had accumulated to a depth of at least 50 feet.

Since there is no mechanism to assimilate that dust into the moon's surface, as there is on earth, they felt that it would be soft and loosely compacted. Therefore, they were afraid that the spacecraft would sink into it and be lost. That's the "why" for those big round pods. You could land on water with them and still float.

They sent up many unmanned space flights to measure the rate at which cosmic dust was landing on the moon. Sure enough, the rate at which it was falling would indicate, scientifically, that if the moon and earth were 4.5 billion years old, the outer limits would be 54 feet to 900 feet of dust on the moon. That's scientific.

Was there between 54 and 900 feet of dust on the moon? When Neil Armstrong landed, the first words out of his mouth, after his famous, "One small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind" was "It's solid". That one statement, "it's solid", threw evolution out the window and into the trash can. All

their human wisdom came to nothing. God said in His Word that He created it instantaneously and only about 6,600 years ago. How do we know?

Since they did all those measurements, they knew exactly how much dust was falling. They knew the rate at which it was landing on the moon. All they had to do was measure the depth of the dust and they would know exactly the age of the moon and the earth. Did they? Yes. "The most important scientific result of the Apollo missions has been to establish the existence of a *substantial lunar crust*." *Collier's*

They measured it and it turned out to be about one eighth (1/8) to one quarter (1/4) of an inch deep. That means that the moon and the earth, scientifically, are only 6,600 years old. Just like the Bible suggests. Keep in mind that Genesis chapter one tells us that God made the sun (greater light) and **the moon** (lesser light) at the same time as this earth.

There has been some very significant work done with light. Since the 1700's, light has been measured very accurately. What they have found is that it is slowing down. Just traveling through space makes light "tire" and slow down. This is why when scientists talk about knowing the distance of stars by the "red shift" of light, they are wrong. Those stars could be very close. How?

Since we know that light has been measured accurately since the 1700's, we know that it has been slowing down and leveling out in its speed. We can mathematically put that information in the computer and show for how long it has been slowing down and therefore, when it was first "created".

Using a powerful computer, they put the information in and found that going back to when light was "created" or going at an infinite rate of speed, we go back to 6,640 years + or - 20 years. That is how accurately we can determine the age of this earth, and the universe.

## Science VS Faith

Over the years, I have been reading the debate, i.e. scorn, that scientist have towards "Christianity". They call us stupid for accepting something they claim cannot be "scientifically" verified. They call us "dimwits" for believing in a "God" they say we can not see nor prove.

They look at all the religions of the world and claim that agnostics, atheists and scientists are far more "moral". They point to all the hatred and killings, holocaust and genocides they claim are caused by "Christianity" or people of faith. Then they smugly beat their chests and claim superiority.

With that in mind, I would like to make some observational points. Let's start with the last. The problem here lies in understanding definitions. Any good scientist will tell you that the first step is to identify the problem. Make sure that your words and definitions identify that problem correctly. "Christianity" means to be a follower of Christ. Not one true "Christian" ever started a war, or committed genocide or succumbs to hatred and killings. Why, because the moment you did that, you void your title as "Christian".



You can point to churches, denominations and people and say, "See, they are 'Christian' and they hate and kill and support all these bad things." But using a scientific process we would come to the rational conclusion that they are not "Christian" since they violate the teachings and examples of Jesus. You can be a person of faith, or belong to a church or religion, but you are not a "Christian" if you are not living as Jesus lived and commanded us to live.

Now, about scientifically verifying my belief. A scientist verifies his belief by measuring quantitatively that belief. If he can prove it by his measuring devices he claims it is "scientific" and no longer needs faith. But yet, that is faith. He has faith that his measuring devices are measuring what he believes, since no one can see "dark matter" or "quirks", as examples, etc.

In my experience I do the same thing. The Bible says that if I obey Him and do what He commands me, all my prayers will be answered. So I put Him to a scientific test. I obey Him and then I ask. Interesting things happens, everything I ask for comes to me. As with any scientific experiment, if it happens over and over again, God and the Bible must be proved true. There must be an Intelligent force out there who can hear me, see me and be able to move circumstances to answer those prayers. That is scientific.



How do the dinosaurs fit into all of this? Didn't they live 60 million years ago? Don't we have physical evidence that they existed? No - Yes.

Dinosaurs did exist. Some of them were created by God and had a very valuable part to play in the creation model. They were in fact created on the 5<sup>th</sup> and 6<sup>th</sup> days of creation, right along with man. So, yes, they are a fact of creation, but no, they did not live 60 million years ago. We have evidence today of man and dinosaurs living side by side. In the following photos you will see some of that evidence.

At Glen Rose, Texas, you can go to the Dinosaur State Park and see human and dinosaur foot prints in the same geological strata. The next picture shows you a human and dinosaur foot print at the McFall ranch where excavations have been and are being conducted. Over 54 human foot prints have been originally uncovered alongside dinosaur foot prints since about 1980.

A book to get and read, with pictures to back it up, is "Dinosaur, Scientific Evidence That Dinosaurs And Men Walked Together", by Carl E. Baugh, Ph.D. with Clifford A. Wilson, Ph.D. You can also order videos and other material from Dr. Baugh that will show the scientific evidence for creation. Creation Evidences Museum, P.O. Box 309, Glen Rose, TX, 76043-0309. Also From: Creation Science Evangelism, 29 Cummings Rd., Pensacola, FL 32503. The sample examples I give are mostly from their seminars and discussions.



Dr. Baugh shows that, in this case, the dinosaur and human footprints were spaced about 18 inches apart. This is at the McFall site.

In June, 1982, Dr. Wilson and Cliff Nickmier point to dinosaur and human footprints only 7-1/2" apart. They were recovered from under 12" of limestone with the press watching.



This fossil human finger was found in the Cretaceous layers along the Paluxy River. It compares favorably with the modern human finger.

Here is a piece of Ordovician sandstone in which a manmade artefact was found at London, Texas - part of the same Llano Uplift area as the Paluxy River. The wooden end of a man-made hammer is projecting out of the stone.



Here is the other side of the hammer. Both the wooden handle and the metal shaft were completely encased in the sandstone indicating that man was around to make it before the sandstone formed. Clearly that was not millions of years ago!

“The Cretaceous Period is the upper division of the MESOZOIC ERA, extending from about 140 million to 65 million years ago. Its name refers to chalk (creta in Latin), the characteristic rock formed during this period in many parts of Europe.” *Grolier*

Now let's get this straight. According to evolution, the Cretaceous Period was about 140 million to 65 million years ago. Way before “humans” walked the face of the earth. Yet, here we have a fossilized human finger that was found in the Cretaceous layer.

Oops. Evolutionists really hate these facts. They just can't explain them. So what do they do? They turn their heads and bury them in the sand and say, “I don't want to see that. It doesn't agree with what I want to believe.” How stupid of them. Like the Bible says, they are willingly stupid. (Sounds like a lot of churches when it comes to the 7th day Saturday Sabbath and the teachings of Jesus.)

The next picture of a hammer that was found encased in Ordovician sandstone. Now let's take a look at how old the evolutionist say Ordovician sandstone is. “The Ordovician Period, spanning the interval from 500 to about 425 million years ago, is the second period of the PALEOZOIC ERA of

geologic time. The name is derived from the Ordovices, an early Celtic tribe that once inhabited the area of northwest Wales where the characteristic strata were first described.” *Grolier*

Isn't that wonderful? Here we have a hammer that is obviously made by a human. Yet, it is found some 400 million years before the evolutionists say man existed.

Well, you say, somebody just buried it there. No, you see, this hammer is not buried in the sandstone, it has become “fossilized” in the sandstone. The sandstone had to be chipped away from it. It is encased in **stone**.

Secondly, when God does something, He does it very good. You see, this hammer is so sophisticated that it cannot be manufactured by any human technology today. It could only have been made before the flood with the atmospheric conditions they had and which do not exist today.

No my friend, evolution is a fairy tale. Creation is scientific fact. It is proven beyond a shadow of a doubt that God exists and that He created everything just as the Bible says. You can trust the Bible.

Please, do not give out this book. You are more than welcome to give out our address to every inmate. Share with them the information. Pass out the fliers.

God will bless you as you live in obedience to the teachings of this book.

Love in Christ,

*Ron*

(This ministry has a career position available for one who loves the Lord and wants to serve Him for the rest of his life. Let me know in advance so we can move your parole to this ministry. It may also be possible to receive a sentence modification to finish out your sentence here at the ministry. You will be trained to become the next director of this ministry. Your life will be a life of service and blessings to others. Please share this information to those around you.)

If you would like more material to read, please write and ask. God bless you as you live for Jesus.

Now that you have finished reading and studying the book, you may request the Answer Sheets.

JCPM  
P.O. Box 770  
Lucerne Valley, CA 92356





## Change Your Life Biblically

The Bible study, "Change Your Life - Biblically" is a workbook an inmate wrote who was moved by the Holy Spirit. He spent over seven years behind bars. He knows what you are going through. He has been there. This book **IS** about Jesus and Jesus only as our Teacher of salvation. Learn about the prophecies such as Daniel and Revelation. See the city of Gomorrah and the actual Mt. Sinai. It will "Change Your Life Biblically". Inmates from all over the world are finding it to be "Awesome".

After receiving your certificate, you may submit poems, artwork, short stories, etc. to be published on our ministry Facebook page. We also provide Bible studies, web pages, pen-pals, etc.

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Housing: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

Earliest Release/move Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Jesus Christ Prison Ministry

P.O. Box 770, Lucerne Valley, CA 92356

## Change Your Life Biblically

The Bible study, "Change Your Life - Biblically" is a workbook an inmate wrote who was moved by the Holy Spirit. He spent over seven years behind bars. He knows what you are going through. He has been there. This book **IS** about Jesus and Jesus only as our Teacher of salvation. Learn about the prophecies such as Daniel and Revelation. See the city of Gomorrah and the actual Mt. Sinai. It will "Change Your Life Biblically". Inmates from all over the world are finding it to be "Awesome".

After receiving your certificate, you may submit poems, artwork, short stories, etc. to be published on our ministry Facebook page. We also provide Bible studies, web pages, pen-pals, etc.

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Housing: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

Earliest Release/move Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Jesus Christ Prison Ministry

P.O. Box 770, Lucerne Valley, CA 92356

## Change Your Life Biblically

The Bible study, "Change Your Life - Biblically" is a workbook an inmate wrote who was moved by the Holy Spirit. He spent over seven years behind bars. He knows what you are going through. He has been there. This book **IS** about Jesus and Jesus only as our Teacher of salvation. Learn about the prophecies such as Daniel and Revelation. See the city of Gomorrah and the actual Mt. Sinai. It will "Change Your Life Biblically". Inmates from all over the world are finding it to be "Awesome".

After receiving your certificate, you may submit poems, artwork, short stories, etc. to be published on our ministry Facebook page. We also provide Bible studies, web pages, pen-pals, etc.

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Housing: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

Earliest Release/move Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Jesus Christ Prison Ministry

P.O. Box 770, Lucerne Valley, CA 92356

## Change Your Life Biblically

The Bible study, "Change Your Life - Biblically" is a workbook an inmate wrote who was moved by the Holy Spirit. He spent over seven years behind bars. He knows what you are going through. He has been there. This book **IS** about Jesus and Jesus only as our Teacher of salvation. Learn about the prophecies such as Daniel and Revelation. See the city of Gomorrah and the actual Mt. Sinai. It will "Change Your Life Biblically". Inmates from all over the world are finding it to be "Awesome".

After receiving your certificate, you may submit poems, artwork, short stories, etc. to be published on our ministry Facebook page. We also provide Bible studies, web pages, pen-pals, etc.

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Housing: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

Earliest Release/move Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Jesus Christ Prison Ministry

P.O. Box 770, Lucerne Valley, CA 92356

Please share with others



A career as the next director of this ministry is open for a young man. It isn't about what you know, it is about what you are willing to learn. Are you tired of your old life of failure? Do you want a new life Jesus is now offering? This is a life-time commitment to serve others. A new life now awaits you. Are you ready to study, learn and become the man God wants you to be? Return the questions perfectly filled out and start a new life.

JESUS CHRIST PRISON MINISTRY  
P.O. BOX 770  
LUCERNE VALLEY, CA 92356

Please share with others



A career as the next director of this ministry is open for a young man. It isn't about what you know, it is about what you are willing to learn. Are you tired of your old life of failure? Do you want a new life Jesus is now offering? This is a life-time commitment to serve others. A new life now awaits you. Are you ready to study, learn and become the man God wants you to be? Return the questions perfectly filled out and start a new life.

JESUS CHRIST PRISON MINISTRY  
P.O. BOX 770  
LUCERNE VALLEY, CA 92356



A career as the next director of this ministry is open for a young man. It isn't about what you know, it is about what you are willing to learn. Are you tired of your old life of failure? Do you want a new life Jesus is now offering? This is a life-time commitment to serve others. A new life now awaits you. Are you ready to study, learn and become the man God wants you to be? Return the questions perfectly filled out and start a new life.

JESUS CHRIST PRISON MINISTRY  
P.O. BOX 770  
LUCERNE VALLEY, CA 92356



A career as the next director of this ministry is open for a young man. It isn't about what you know, it is about what you are willing to learn. Are you tired of your old life of failure? Do you want a new life Jesus is now offering? This is a life-time commitment to serve others. A new life now awaits you. Are you ready to study, learn and become the man God wants you to be? Return the questions perfectly filled out and start a new life.

JESUS CHRIST PRISON MINISTRY  
P.O. BOX 770  
LUCERNE VALLEY, CA 92356

Please share with others

Please share with others

Please share with others

## Change Your Life Biblically

The Bible study, "Change Your Life - Biblically" is a workbook an inmate wrote who was moved by the Holy Spirit. He spent over seven years behind bars. He knows what you are going through. He has been there. This book **IS** about Jesus and Jesus only as our Teacher of salvation. Learn about the prophecies such as Daniel and Revelation. See the city of Gomorrah and the actual Mt. Sinai. It will "Change Your Life Biblically". Inmates from all over the world are finding it to be "Awesome".

After receiving your certificate, you may submit poems, artwork, short stories, etc. to be published on our ministry Facebook page. We also provide Bible studies, web pages, pen-pals, etc.

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Housing: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

Earliest Release/move Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Jesus Christ Prison Ministry

P.O. Box 770, Lucerne Valley, CA 92356

Please share with others

## Change Your Life Biblically

The Bible study, "Change Your Life - Biblically" is a workbook an inmate wrote who was moved by the Holy Spirit. He spent over seven years behind bars. He knows what you are going through. He has been there. This book **IS** about Jesus and Jesus only as our Teacher of salvation. Learn about the prophecies such as Daniel and Revelation. See the city of Gomorrah and the actual Mt. Sinai. It will "Change Your Life Biblically". Inmates from all over the world are finding it to be "Awesome".

After receiving your certificate, you may submit poems, artwork, short stories, etc. to be published on our ministry Facebook page. We also provide Bible studies, web pages, pen-pals, etc.

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Housing: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

Earliest Release/move Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Jesus Christ Prison Ministry

P.O. Box 770, Lucerne Valley, CA 92356

## Change Your Life Biblically

The Bible study, "Change Your Life - Biblically" is a workbook an inmate wrote who was moved by the Holy Spirit. He spent over seven years behind bars. He knows what you are going through. He has been there. This book **IS** about Jesus and Jesus only as our Teacher of salvation. Learn about the prophecies such as Daniel and Revelation. See the city of Gomorrah and the actual Mt. Sinai. It will "Change Your Life Biblically". Inmates from all over the world are finding it to be "Awesome".

After receiving your certificate, you may submit poems, artwork, short stories, etc. to be published on our ministry Facebook page. We also provide Bible studies, web pages, pen-pals, etc.

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Housing: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

Earliest Release/move Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Jesus Christ Prison Ministry

P.O. Box 770, Lucerne Valley, CA 92356

## Change Your Life Biblically

The Bible study, "Change Your Life - Biblically" is a workbook an inmate wrote who was moved by the Holy Spirit. He spent over seven years behind bars. He knows what you are going through. He has been there. This book **IS** about Jesus and Jesus only as our Teacher of salvation. Learn about the prophecies such as Daniel and Revelation. See the city of Gomorrah and the actual Mt. Sinai. It will "Change Your Life Biblically". Inmates from all over the world are finding it to be "Awesome".

After receiving your certificate, you may submit poems, artwork, short stories, etc. to be published on our ministry Facebook page. We also provide Bible studies, web pages, pen-pals, etc.

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Housing: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

Earliest Release/move Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Jesus Christ Prison Ministry

P.O. Box 770, Lucerne Valley, CA 92356

Please share with others

Please share with others

Please share with others



Please share with others



A career as the next director of this ministry is open for a young man. It isn't about what you know, it is about what you are willing to learn. Are you tired of your old life of failure? Do you want a new life Jesus is now offering? This is a life-time commitment to serve others. A new life now awaits you. Are you ready to study, learn and become the man God wants you to be? Return the questions perfectly filled out and start a new life.

A career as the next director of this ministry is open for a young man. It isn't about what you know, it is about what you are willing to learn. Are you tired of your old life of failure? Do you want a new life Jesus is now offering? This is a life-time commitment to serve others. A new life now awaits you. Are you ready to study, learn and become the man God wants you to be? Return the questions perfectly filled out and start a new life.

JESUS CHRIST PRISON MINISTRY  
P.O. BOX 770  
LUCERNE VALLEY, CA 92356

JESUS CHRIST PRISON MINISTRY  
P.O. BOX 770  
LUCERNE VALLEY, CA 92356



A career as the next director of this ministry is open for a young man. It isn't about what you know, it is about what you are willing to learn. Are you tired of your old life of failure? Do you want a new life Jesus is now offering? This is a life-time commitment to serve others. A new life now awaits you. Are you ready to study, learn and become the man God wants you to be? Return the questions perfectly filled out and start a new life.

A career as the next director of this ministry is open for a young man. It isn't about what you know, it is about what you are willing to learn. Are you tired of your old life of failure? Do you want a new life Jesus is now offering? This is a life-time commitment to serve others. A new life now awaits you. Are you ready to study, learn and become the man God wants you to be? Return the questions perfectly filled out and start a new life.

JESUS CHRIST PRISON MINISTRY  
P.O. BOX 770  
LUCERNE VALLEY, CA 92356

JESUS CHRIST PRISON MINISTRY  
P.O. BOX 770  
LUCERNE VALLEY, CA 92356

Please share with others

Please share with others